

Tadej Sakelšek
Adrian Mikhalchishin

THE POWER OF TACTICS

Volume 2



Become
a tactical
wizard



Chess
Evolution

Tadej Sakelšek
Adrian Mikhalchishin

THE POWER OF TACTICS

Volume 2



Become
a tactical
wizard



TABLE OF CONTENTS

TITLE PAGE

KEY TO SYMBOLS

PREFACE

INTRODUCTION

BECOME A TACTICAL WIZARD

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV

CHECK

PIN

DOUBLE ATTACK

UNPROTECTED PIECE

ATTACK ON THE KING

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS

MATING CONSTRUCTION

DEFENSIVE TACTICS

TACTICAL COMBINATIONS TO ACHIEVE PERPETUAL CHECK

STALEMATE COMBINATIONS

SACRIFICES USED TO ACHIEVE THEORETICALLY DRAWN POSITIONS OR
FORTRESSES

THE QUEEN SACRIFICE

SACRIFICING THE QUEEN TO ACHIEVE A MATING CONSTRUCTION

QUEEN SACRIFICE TO GAIN MATERIAL

SACRIFICING THE QUEEN FOR A DRAW

WARM UP

Exercises 1-24

Exercises 25-48

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV 3

Exercises 1-22

Exercises 23-44

Exercises 45-68

MATING CONSTRUCTION 3

Exercises 1-24

Exercises 25-48

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS 3

Exercises 1-20

Exercises 21-40

DEFENSIVE TACTICS 3

Exercises 1-22

Exercises 23-44

QUEEN SACRIFICE 3

Exercises 1-20

EXERCISES 3

Exercises 1-28

Exercises 29-56

Exercises 57-84

Exercises 85-112

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV 4

Exercises 1-28

MATING CONSTRUCTION 4

Exercises 1-16

Exercises 17-32

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS 4

Exercises 1-28

DEFENSIVE TACTICS 4

Exercises 1-18

Exercises 19-36

QUEEN SACRIFICE 4

Exercises 1-16

EXERCISES 4

Exercises 1-20

Exercises 21-40

Exercises 41-60

Exercises 61-80

Tadej Sakelšek
Adrian Mikhalchishin

The Power of Tactics

Volume 2

Become a tactical wizard



Responsible editor

Csaba Balogh

Cover designer

Piotr Pielach

Drawing by Ingram Image

Typesetting

i-Press <www.i-press.pl>

First edition 2019 by Chess Evolution

The Power of Tactics. Volume 2: Become a tactical wizard

Copyright © 2019 Chess Evolution

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without prior permission of the publisher.

ISBN: 978-615-5793-20-2

All sales or enquiries should be directed to Chess Evolution
2040 Budaors, Nyar utca 16, Hungary

e-mail: info@chess-evolution.com

website: www.chess-evolution.com

Printed in Hungary

KEY TO SYMBOLS

- = Equality or equal chances
- ± White has a slight advantage
- ∓ Black has a slight advantage
- ± White is better
- ∓ Black is better
- +− White has a decisive advantage
- −+ Black has a decisive advantage
- ∞ unclear
- ∞̄ with compensation
- ↔ with counterplay
- ↑ with initiative
- with an attack
- Δ with the idea
- only move

- N novelty
- ! a good move
- !! an excellent move
- ? a weak move
- ?? a blunder
- ! ? an interesting move
- ? ! a dubious move
- + check
- # mate

PREFACE

The middlegame is the most important part of the game, as the majority of encounters are decided there. We know that sometimes it is difficult to divide strategy and tactic, as they both have the same aim — to win the game. Strategy is the more difficult subject, because it involves planning and structures: tactics helps to conduct these plans in the fastest way.

In olden times it was the division of the style of players — TACTICAL and STRATEGIC. In modern chess this division practically does not exist, as every top player is able to operate with all tools. Still we can name as tactical-style players such great attackers as Mikhail Tal, Rashid Nezhmetdinov, Albin Planinc and Victor Kupreichik. Perhaps, in reality, their strategy was a bit simpler with the aim of direct attack on the opponent's king, and not simply attacking some weakness on the queenside, for example.

During the times of the Soviet chess school, the label TACTICIAN led to an underestimation of attackers. But we all know that the chess public enjoy attacking play and admire great attackers much more than pure, boring strategists. Of course, this attitude is connected with the openings.

For example, in gambits, players have to consider many more tactical elements than in, for example, the Carlsbad variation of the Queen's Gambit. Likewise, the Sicilian Defence with kings castled on opposite sides and fierce pawn attacks on both flanks; here tactics and sacrifices are in the air as the strategy was prepared from the first moves of the openings.

There are many valuable books on tactics, and many authors have presented classifications of tactical motifs and themes. But some of them are too academic — in modern times we require a much more practical education. For this reason, nowadays different test books have become very popular.

Become a Tactical Wizard is the second book in the series The Power of Tactics. In this second volume, the authors continue to develop their ideas from the first book — Tactics According to Smyslov — where they explain that in chess there are four main tactical elements (check, pin, double attack and unprotected pieces).

They have added very instructive exercises revolving around mating attacks and queen sacrifices to achieve different goals and, in my opinion an extremely important element, defensive tactics.

IGM Aleksandr Beliavsky.

INTRODUCTION

Tactics, including the calculation of variations, is the most important part of chess. Knowledge of openings, middlegames, endgames, strategy, technique, realization of the advantage and similar is also extremely important. But all this knowledge doesn't help us if we don't calculate properly.

There are many great books on tactics, wherein the authors have assembled different tactical motifs and elements. This area of chess is more or less very well covered in literature. This begs the question, why then have we decided to write and publish our book?

Firstly, during all these years that we have been working as chess coaches, we have collected a huge amount of instructive material, and it made sense to us to share it with our readers as well.

Secondly, you can never have enough tactics. Every chess player must solve as many puzzles as possible in order to grow stronger.

Lastly, we have been friends for many years and work well together, and we simply decided to show this through our books.

Our plan was rather ambitious — to publish a series of three books. The books are designed for different levels.

The second book in the series is divided into three parts:

1. A theoretical part where you will get to know the basics about tactical elements according to Smyslov (check, pin, double attack, unprotected piece). Mating attacks (typical motifs and mating construction), queen sacrifice and defensive tactics.
2. Exercises and solutions for level 3.
3. Exercises and solutions for level 4.

We prepared clear and, we hope, nice examples, plus a lot of exercises for levels up to 2100. Study, enjoy and use tactics as much as possible in your games! Combinations really are brilliant moments in a chess game.

RECOMMENDATIONS ABOUT SOLVING THE PUZZLES

At first try to solve every puzzle from the diagram itself. If it proves too difficult, then put the position on the board and try to solve it without moving the pieces. Exercises are divided into two levels, easier and then more complicated.

Adrian Mikhalchishin
Tadej Sakelšek

BECOME A TACTICAL WIZARD

In the first book we tried to demonstrate a slightly different approach to studying tactics, and we chose tactical elements according to a great champion — Vasily Smyslov — to do so. The second book is devoted to much more complicated tactical ideas and motifs. We will also continue to develop the ideas from the first book.

Every great player used tactics to achieve different aims. Some of them used simple tactical ideas for positional reasons, especially to accelerate their own plans or to stop the opponent's plan. Great players like Botvinnik, Smyslov, Petrosian, Fischer and Karpov used a lot of tactics after establishing fundamental positional preparation first — we usually call these tactical ideas Capablanca's small tactical gems. Some other great champions, such as Morphy, Alekhine, Tal and Kasparov, used more powerful tactical ideas to attack the opponent's king. In this book we will try to concentrate more on these beautiful and powerful tactical methods.

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV

As we have already mentioned in the first book, the great World Champion Vasily Smyslov came up with his own fantastic and very simple system to prioritise tactical elements. He considered check, pin, double attack and unprotected piece as the main tactical elements. All other elements are, according to him, of lesser importance. In games we mostly come across a combination of the aforementioned elements.

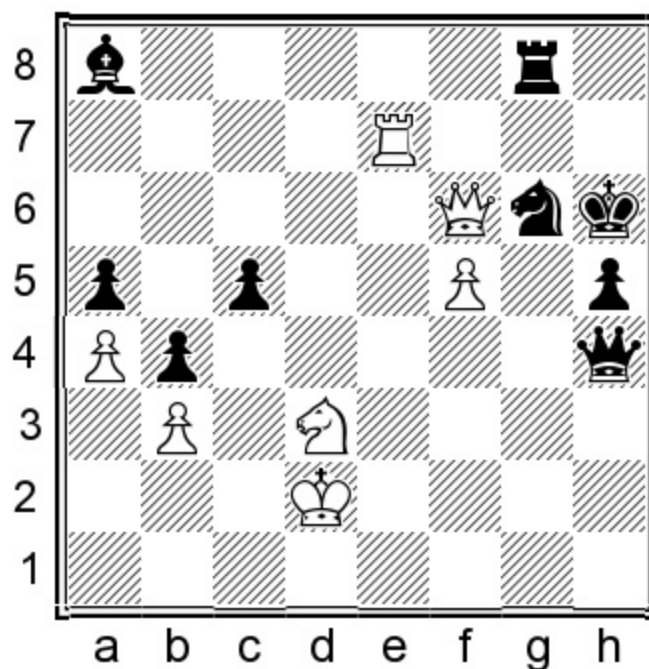
Let us see an example of each of the elements:

CHECK

Example 1

Miklos Nemeth

Mateusz Bartel



42.♖e6??

This was played in the game and Black won without any great problems. Instead he could have used one of the most common tactical elements — CHECK.

42.♖h7+! ♔xh7 43.fxg6+

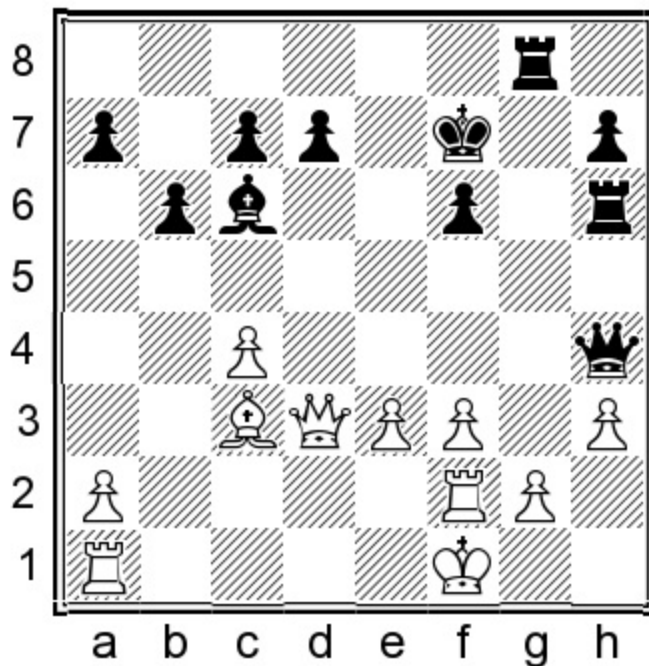
Again check, which at the same time creates an unprotected piece on h4. Now White is winning.

43...♖xg6 44.♗xh4+-

42.♖e6?? ♗xf6 43.♖xf6 ♔g5 44.♖xg6+ ♖xg6 45.fxg6 ♔xg6-- 0-1

PIN

Example 2



25...♖xg2!

With this rook sacrifice Black creates a very annoying pin.

26.♖xg2 ♔xh3 27.e4

27.♔f2 ♕xf3+-+;

27.♕d2 ♘xf3

Black is bringing extra pieces to the attack.

28.♔g1 (28.♖b1 ♖g6-- and the final piece joins the attack. Black is winning.) 28...♕h1+-+

27...♖g6--+

27...♖g6 White resigned in view of 28.♕d2 ♕h1+-+

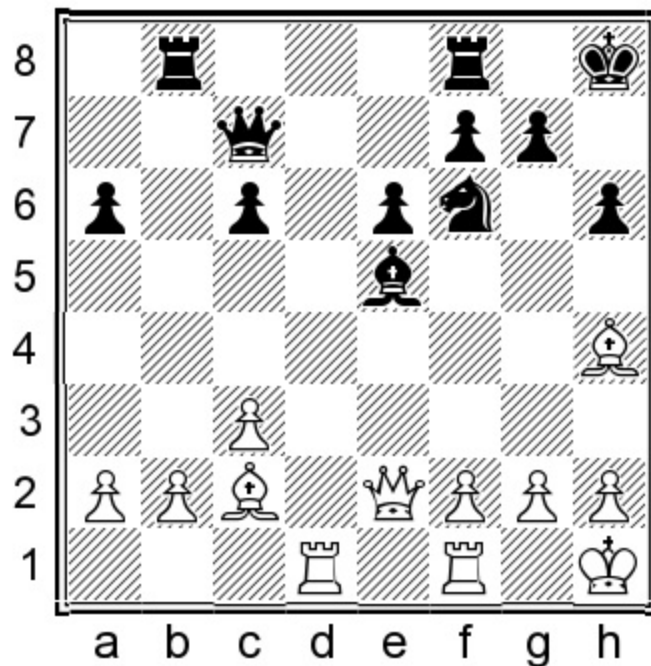
0-1

DOUBLE ATTACK

Example 3

Mikhail Nikitenko

Magnus Teitsson



The position is slightly better for White due to the superior pawn structure and the bishop pair. But White can create a nice double attack at the end of the variation.

21.f4! ♖xf4

21...♙d6 22.♖xf6 gxf6 23.♔d3+-

22.♖xf6! gxf6 23.♔e4+-

White is threatening to mate the opponent's king or otherwise capture the bishop on f4.

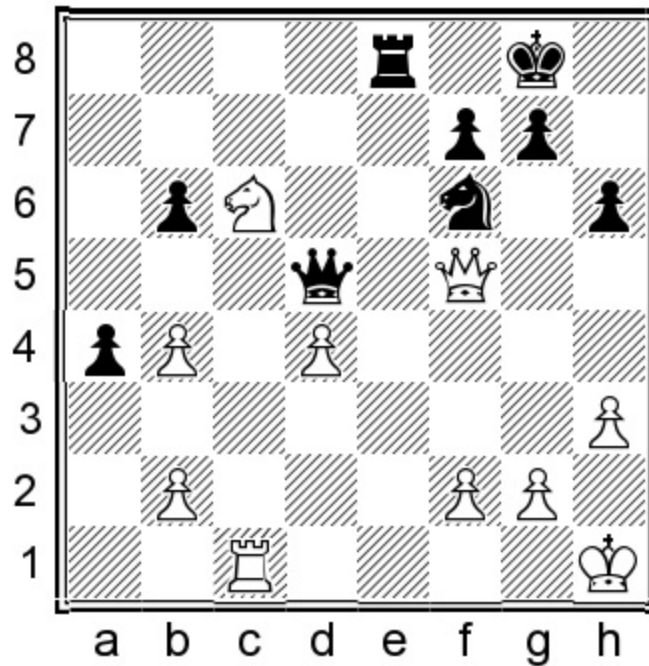
23...f5 24.♔xf4 1-0

UNPROTECTED PIECE

Example 4

Anatoly Karpov

Lubomir Kavalek



The former World Champion had an option here to create an unprotected piece and win the game in fine style. Instead he played

37. ♔xd5?

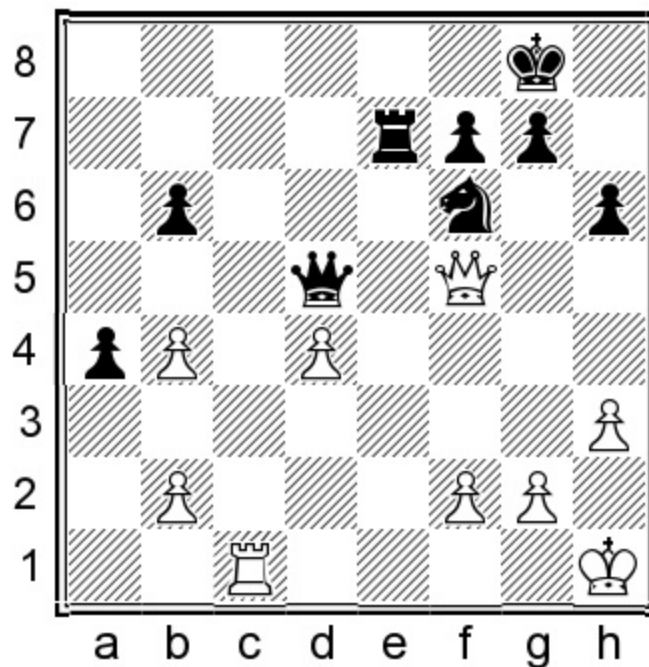
and after

37... ♘xd5=

the position became equal and the game eventually ended in a draw.

Instead **37. ♘e7+!** would have won the game.

On **37... ♖xe7** Black will have to give up his queen due to the weakness of the back rank.



38. ♖c8+! ♜e8 39. ♖xe8+ ♘xe8 40. ♚xd5+–

1/2

ATTACK ON THE KING

In chess we generally follow two strategies — the first one is connected with the idea of winning material. The second one is directed against the opponent's king. For both strategies we use different tactics. For the second strategy we tend, in many cases, to use different sacrifices to achieve an advantage in our development and to accelerate it. We also use the sacrifices to create weaknesses in the opponent's position around the king.

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS

Before starting any direct mating attack on the king it is necessary to involve as many of our forces as possible. Our pieces should be active and mobile, able to come closer to the opponent's king as quickly as possible.

The first step in this process is fast development of our pieces, together with sufficient control in the center. The second step involves the mobility of attacking pieces which will be necessary for a successful attack. The rule is simple — we should bring to the attack as many pieces as possible, preferably more than the defending side.

The preparation process applies to both sides — for the attacking and the defending sides alike. The player who is able to prepare his plan faster is usually more successful. In most cases the opponent's king has huge problems facing the attacking pieces if his own pieces don't match the attacking ones. Some trainers recommend counting the pieces participating in attack and defense. After that we should make a preliminary evaluation of the attack and defense based on which side has pure mathematical advantage in quantity. Of course, we should not use this rule automatically, but rather use it as a practical recommendation to bring to the critical place more forces if possible. Sometimes the quantity of the pieces is not as important as their coordination.

An attack must be directed into certain weakened points in the opponent's camp. For this reason, it is necessary to first weaken the position of the king. Usually players achieve this goal by charging forward with pawns, as for example in the Sicilian Defense or King's Indian Defense. It is a very natural and, in most cases, the 'cheapest' way to start the attack, as major material sacrifices are not necessary at this time.

Another way is more complicated and involves mostly pieces to weaken the opponent's king defenses. In many cases to achieve this goal it is necessary to sacrifice some of our pieces. We know a few typical or classical sacrifices to open the opponent's king position, as for example the Lasker sacrifice of two bishops, sacrifices of the bishop on h7 (h2) and h6 (h3) squares, sacrifices of different pieces on g7 (g2) and f7 (f2) squares. In positions with opposite-side castling, similar sacrifices can be used on the a2 (a7), b2 (b7), c2 (c7) and a3 (a6) squares. We can also use sacrifices to open the files in front of the king in order to clear the way for the heavy pieces to join the attack. At the end of the day, in such cases heavy pieces frequently decide the game.

We can also use sacrifices to prevent the opponent from castling, stranding our opponent's king in the center. These kinds of sacrifices were typical for representatives of 'middle ages' chess, such as Leonardo Giovanni da Cutri or Ruy Lopez. Players of these generations invented attacking play from

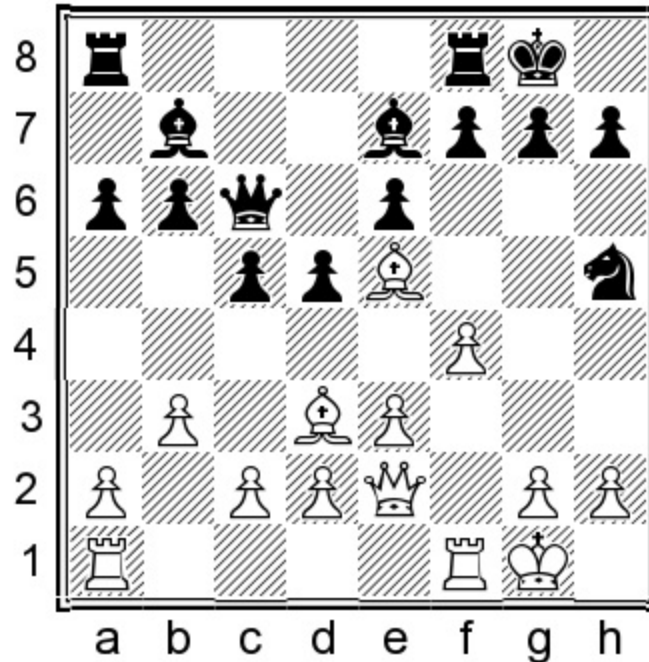
the very start. They used sacrifices in the opening to accelerate their development and to keep the opponent's king in the center. Nowadays we call these kinds of openings gambits.

LASKER SACRIFICE

Example 5

Emanuel Lasker

Johann Hermann Bauer



Emanuel Lasker, the 2nd World Champion, is remembered also by the sacrifice that carries his name — the Lasker sacrifice of the two bishops.

15. ♗xh7+!

White sacrifices the first bishop to open the opponent's king.

15. ♖xh5 f5=

15. ♗xh7+! ♜xh7 16. ♖xh5+ ♜g8 17. ♗xg7!

And another sacrifice. The idea behind this one is to open the second line in front of the king, leaving the monarch without protection.

17... ♜xg7

17...f6 18. ♗h6! (18. ♖g6?! ♖e8 19. ♖h6 ♜f7⇄) 18...♖e8 19. ♖g4+ ♜h7 20. ♖g7#; 17...f5 18. ♗e5 ♖f6 19. ♖f3 ♗f8 20. ♖g3+ ♗g7 21. ♗xf6+–

18. ♖g4+!

An important check. Remember — you will be able to checkmate the opponent much easier on the edge of the board.

18. ♖f3? ♖h8 19. ♖g3+ ♗g5 20. ♖xg5+ (20. ♖xg5+ ♜f6–+) 20...♜f8 21. ♖f6 ♖g8

18...♔h7 19.♖f3

Now the second piece joins the attack and the game is basically over.

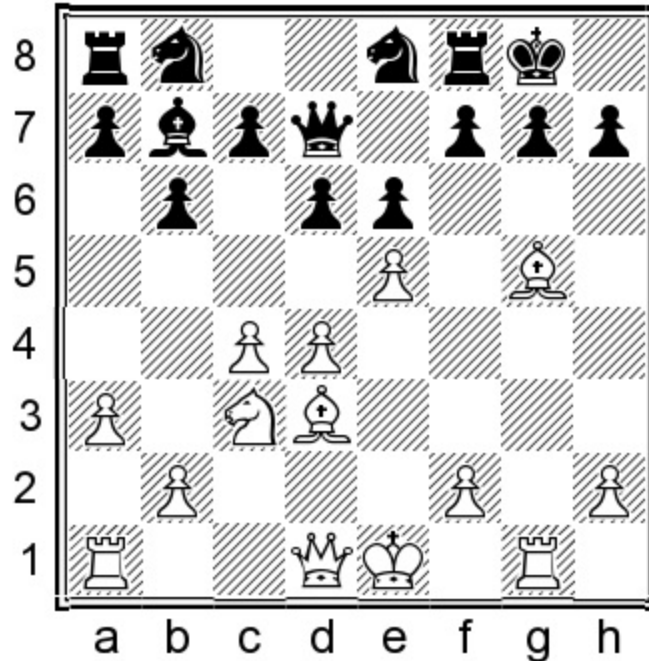
19...e5 20.♖h3+ ♕h6 21.♖xh6+ ♔xh6 22.♗d7!+- 1-0

SACRIFICES ON H7 (H2)

Example 6

G. Aczel

I. Kincs



White's pieces are much better placed than Black's. It is time for action!

13.♗xh7+-

A typical sacrifice of the bishop on h7, with the idea being to open the position around Black's king.

13.♗xh7+

Black resigned in view of 13...♔xh7 14.♗h5+ ♔g8 15.♗f6!+- and Black will simply get mated in the next few moves.

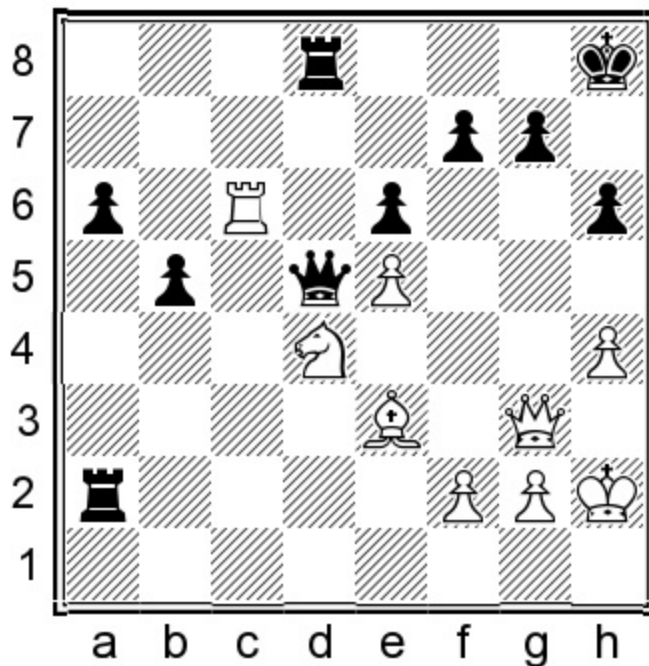
1-0

SACRIFICES ON H3 (H6)

Example 7

Davit Shengelia

Tadej Sakelsek



Black's position seems good as he has two connected passed pawns on the queenside. White must do something really quickly if he wants to save the game.

33. ♖xh6!

White uses a typical bishop sacrifice on h6 in order to weaken Black's kingside position and create a mating net.

33...gxf6 34. ♘f5!

Fantastic coordination of all White's pieces.

34...♖g8

34...exf5 35. ♖xh6#

35. ♖c8!

Another nice move, after which the game is over.

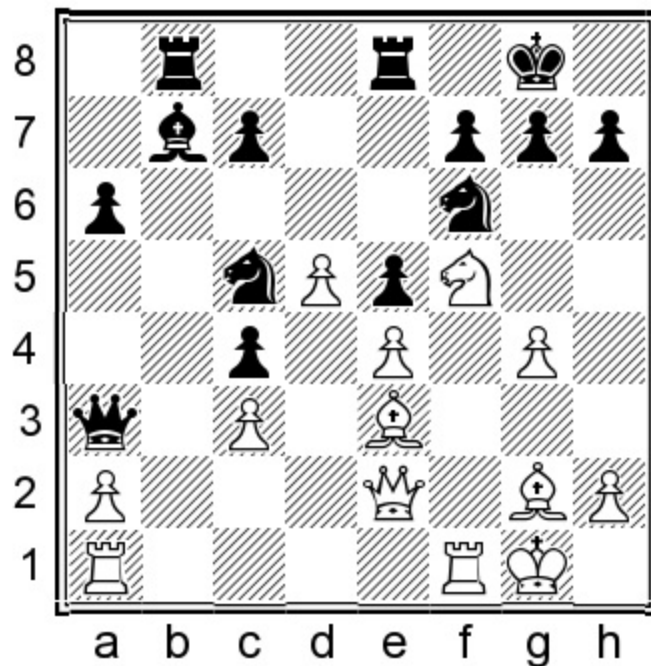
35...♖xc8 36. ♕g7# 1-0

SACRIFICES ON G7 (G2)

Example 8

Francesco Rambaldi

A. Delchev



The position is definitely winning for White, and likely in different ways, but in chess it is extremely important to win the game as soon as possible to avoid mistakes!

20. ♘g7!

White uses the opportunity to sacrifice the knight on g7 since most of Black's pieces are too far away to protect their king.

20. ♖xc4

This would also have been good.

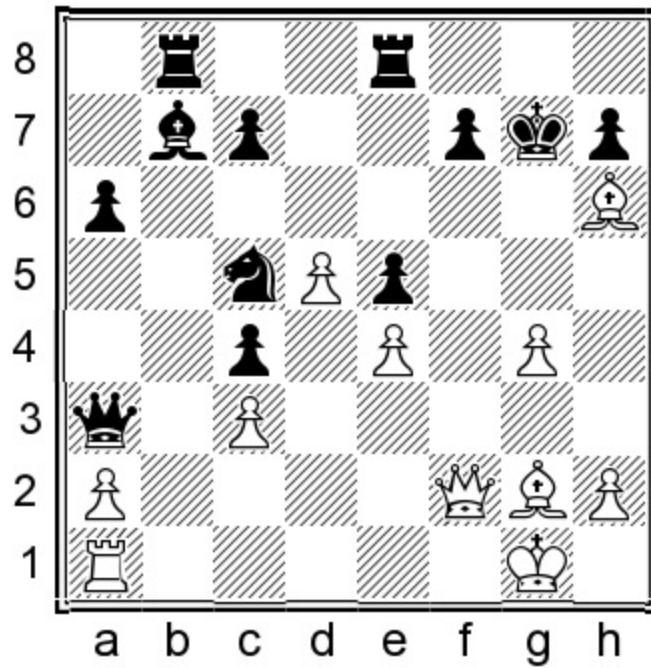
20. ♘g7! ♔xg7 21. ♖xf6!

This is the point behind the previous move!

21... ♔xf6 22. ♖f2+ ♔g7

22... ♔e7 23. ♖xc5+- and Black loses their queen.

23. ♖h6+!



And the final sacrifice, after which Black will just get mated.

23...♔xh6

23...♔g8 24.♚f6 ♞e6 25.dxe6+-

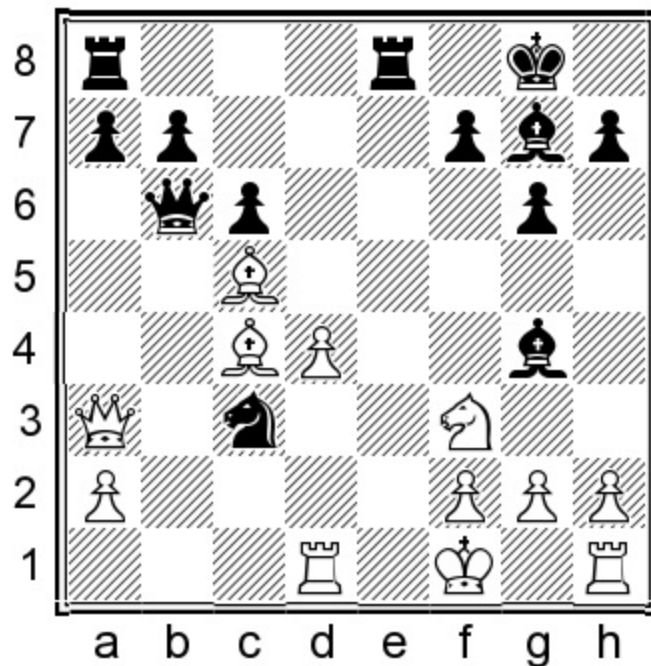
24.♚f6# 1-0

THE WINDMILL

Example 9

Donald Byrne

Robert James Fischer



One of the greatest players of all time has built up a position with great attacking possibilities.

17...♙e6!!

A fantastic queen sacrifice!

18.♙xb6

Hopeless is 18.♙xe6 ♖b5+ 19.♗g1 ♘e2+ 20.♗f1 ♘g3+ 21.♗g1 ♖f1+!

Here follows yet another typical mating construction — the ‘smothered’ checkmate. 22.♞xf1 ♘e2#;

18.♖xc3 ♖xc5! 19.dxc5 ♙xc3 20.♙xe6 ♞xe6–+;

or finally 18.♙d3 ♘b5

18...♙xc4+ 19.♗g1 ♘e2+ 20.♗f1 ♘xd4+

Black has constructed a ‘windmill’ position of some kind — a typical (mating) attack.

21.♗g1

21.♞d3 axb6 22.♖c3 ♘xf3–+

21...♘e2+ 22.♗f1 ♘c3+ 23.♗g1 axb6 24.♖b4 ♞a4 25.♖xb6 ♘xd1–+

The combination has ended with a great material advantage for Black. The rest of the game was easy for him.

26.h3 ♞xa2 27.♗h2 ♘xf2 28.♞e1 ♞xe1 29.♖d8+ ♙f8 30.♘xe1 ♙d5 31.♘f3 ♘e4 32.♖b8 b5 33.h4 h5 34.♘e5 ♗g7 35.♗g1 ♙c5+ 36.♗f1 ♘g3+ 37.♗e1 ♙b4+

37...♙b3!?

38.♗d1 ♙b3+ 39.♗c1 ♘e2+ 40.♗b1 ♘c3+ 41.♗c1 ♞c2#

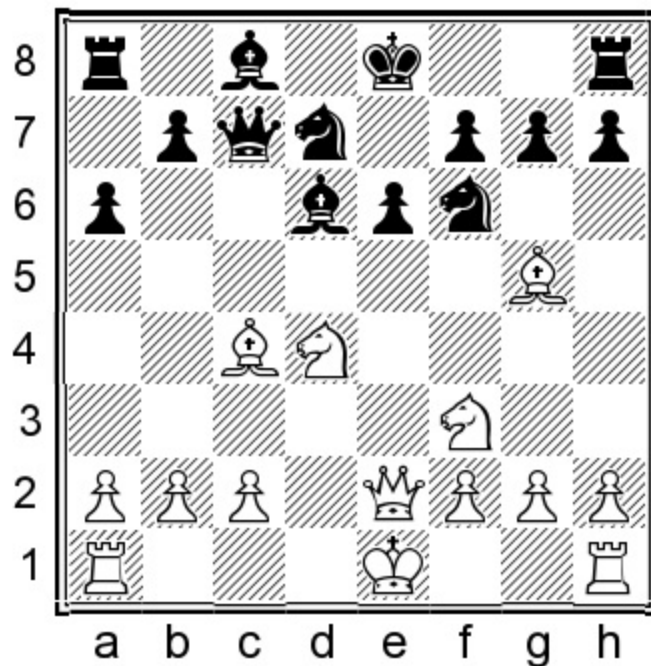
0–1

PREVENTING THE OPPONENT FROM CASTLING

Example 10

Michael Adams

Yunguo Wan



The position is better for White due to better development of his pieces. But he has to play very energetically to develop the initiative.

12. ♖xe6!

White evaluated correctly that a sacrifice of the knight on e6 would allow him to develop a strong attack.

If he would continue normally with 12. 0-0 then after, for instance, 12... 0-0 13. ♖ad1 b5, he would not have any advantage;

Wrong would be 12. ♗xe6 as Black can simply castle and have good compensation for the pawn.

12... 0-0! 13. ♗xf6 ♗b4+! 14. ♖f1 (14. c3 ♗xc3+! 15. ♖f1 ♖xf6 16. ♖c1 fxe6) 14... ♖xf6

12. ♖xe6! fxe6 13. ♖xe6+ ♗e7

13... ♖d8 was a better try for Black, but White can simply play 14. 0-0-0 and continue with the attack. 14... ♗f4+ 15. ♖b1 ♗xg5 (15... ♖e8 16. ♗xf6+ gxf6 17. ♖xf6+ ♖e7 18. ♖he1+-) 16. ♖xg5 ♖c5 17. ♖f7+ ♖c7 18. ♖xh8 ♖e5 19. ♖d5!+- and here is the key move of the variation. All other moves are losing for White.

14. ♖f7+ ♖d8 15. 0-0-0 ♖f8 16. ♖d4!

Nice and simple!

16... ♖xf7 17. ♖e6+ ♖e8 18. ♖xc7+ ♖f8 19. ♗xf7+-

And the attack finished with a big material advantage.

19. ♖xa8+-

1-0

Another complicated, but very spectacular tactic involves destroying the defensive coordination of

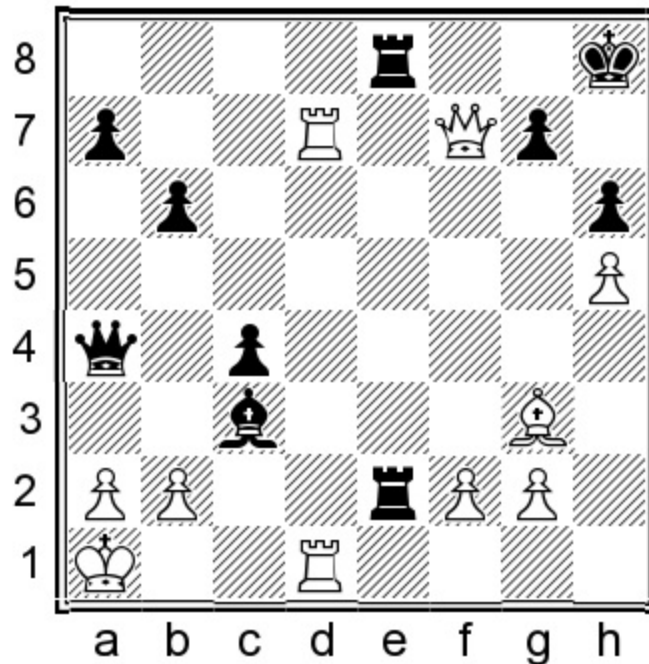
the opponent's pieces.

We call it an **ATOMIC BOMB!**

Example 11

A. Miles

L. Gonzalez



On the board we have a typical example of a position with opposite-sides castling; White is attacking Black's king and Black is targeting White's.

1.♙e5!!

A fantastic move — we are calling it the Atomic bomb. Suddenly the game is over as the bishop on e5 is protecting his king and at the same time destroying the coordination of Black's defense.

1...♖g8

1...♙xe5 2.♚xe8+ ♔h7 3.♚g6+ ♔h8 4.♖d8+ ♚e8 5.♖xe8#;

1...♖2xe5 2.♚xg7#;

1...♙xb2+ 2.♙xb2+–

2.♙xc3+– 1–0

MATING CONSTRUCTION

A mating construction is the final act of an attack on the opponent's king. We can achieve it in different ways, for instance by sacrifice. The main difference between a mating construction and a typical mating motif is that a mating construction can happen anywhere on the board.

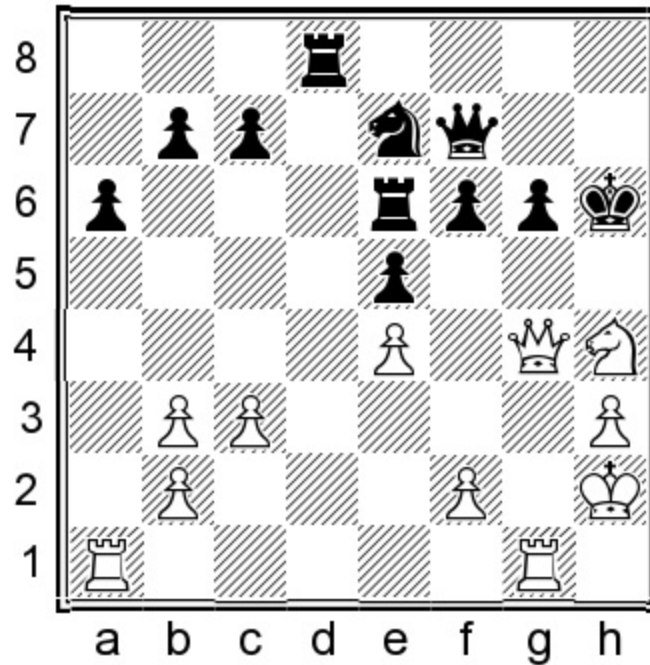
The placement of all the pieces around the attacked king form different constructions, which in many cases do not leave any free or safe place for the king to escape to. A knowledge of these constructions

is extremely useful and practical as they appear very often in many games. We must consider everything on the board in a dynamic way, as such constructions in most cases are not present on the board from the start of our combinations or forced variations.

Example 12

B. Socko

S. Brunello



30. ♘f5+!

White will build a mating construction by sacrificing his knight. Black has to accept the challenge as he cannot avoid taking on f5.

30... gxf5

30... ♘xf5 31. exf5 gxf5 32. ♖xf5 ♜d2 33. ♖a4!

White brings his last piece into the attack.

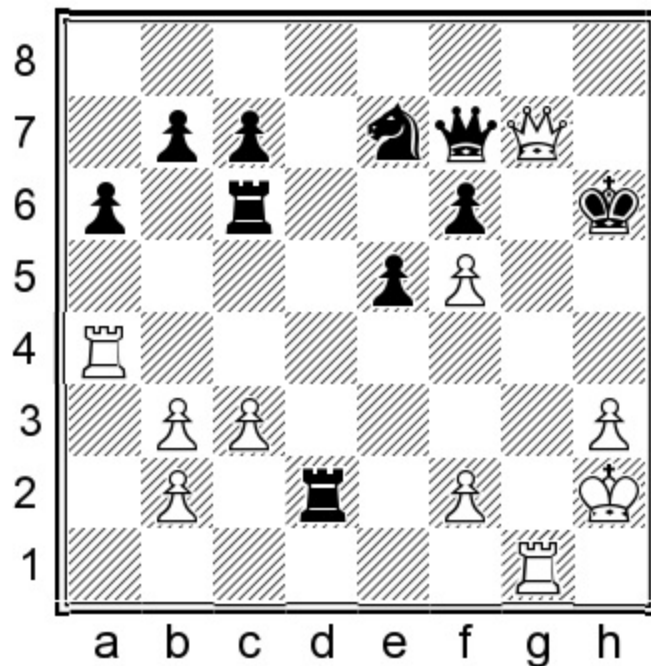
33... ♖h5 34. ♖h4!+-;

30... ♔h7 31. ♖h4+ ♔g8 32. ♘h6++-

31. exf5 ♜c6 32. ♖a4!!

The last piece joins in the assault.

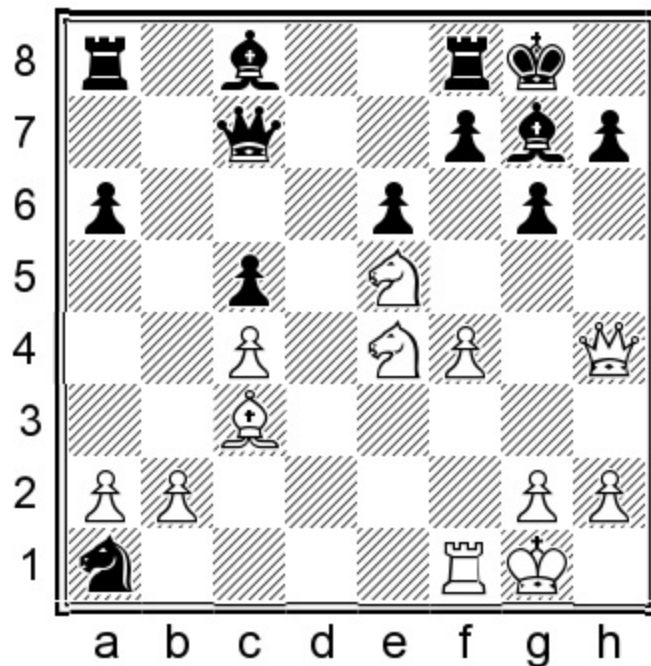
32... ♜d2 33. ♖g7+!



And White finished the game with a beautiful queen sacrifice.

33...♔xg7 34.♖h4# 1-0

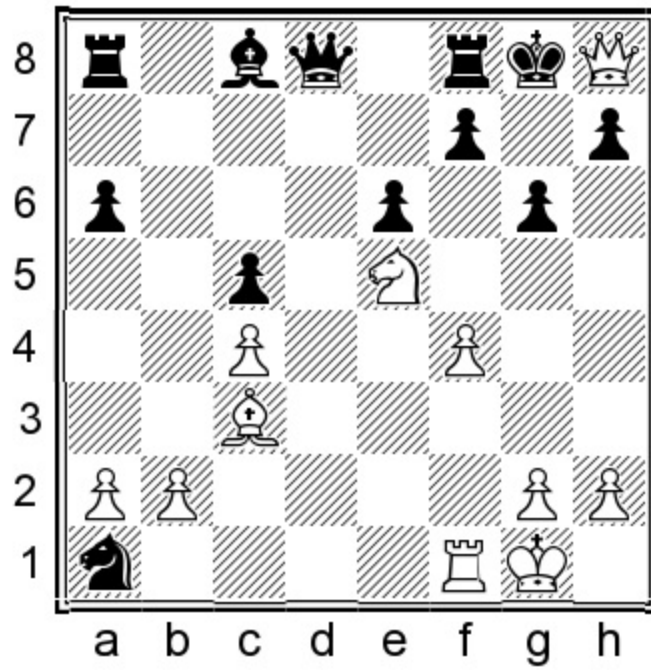
Example 13
Jiri Bolacky
Thomas Rode



19.♘f6+ ♔xf6 20.♔xf6 ♔d8

Black is a full rook up, but the long a1 — h8 diagonal is extremely weak. Can White exploit it?

21.♔h8+!!



Yes, he can! With a queen sacrifice he will build a fantastic mating construction!

21...♔xh8 22.♘xf7+ ♔g8 23.♘h6# 1-0

DEFENSIVE TACTICS

Tactics are such a powerful tool that they are also widely used in defense. Of course, tactics are not the only defensive method. We also know of other methods, such as an exchange of attacking pieces, a transfer of our own pieces closer to the king, or some transfers of the king to safer areas of the board. But in this chapter, we will discuss tactical defensive measures.

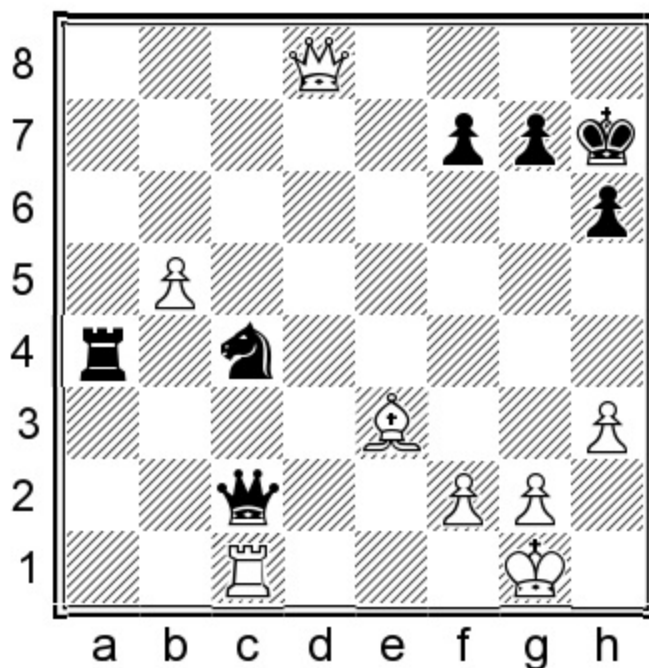
TACTICAL COMBINATIONS TO ACHIEVE PERPETUAL CHECK

This method is very common and widely used, involving a lunge at the opponent's king at the time the opponent is attacking in other places. We can use all kinds of sacrifices to achieve our goal, including her majesty — the queen.

Example 14

Gyula Sax

Sergio Mariotti



Black has less material and in addition his queen is under attack. But despite all that he finds an excellent escape from these troubles.

36...♖xe3!

Black sacrifices his queen to achieve the drawing mechanism.

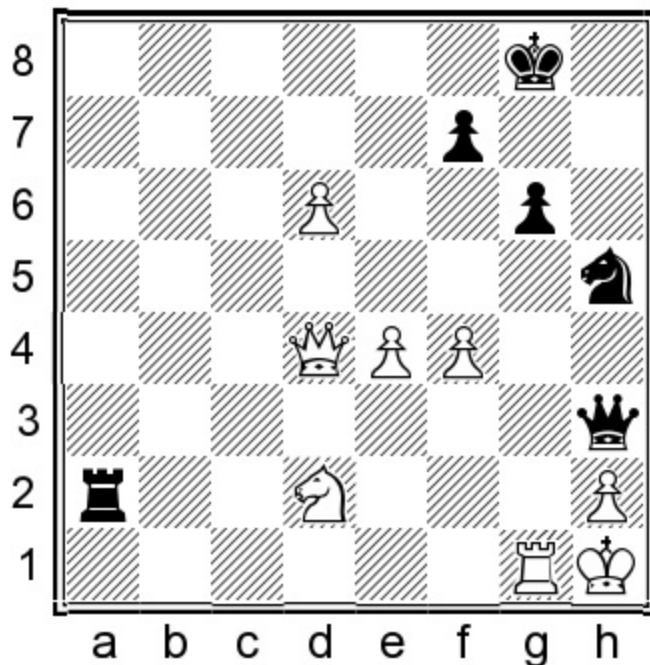
37.♟xc2 ♜a1+ 38.♞h2 ♜f1+

And a draw was agreed as White cannot avoid the perpetual check.

39.♞g1 ♜e3+ 40.♞h2 ♜f1+ 1/2

Example 15

Lajos Portisch

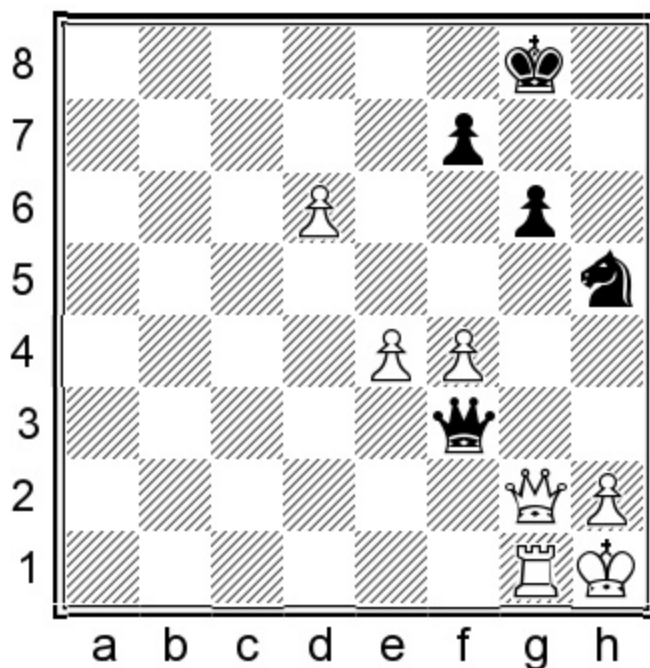


White's position seems really good due to his very strong passed pawn. But one of the greatest chess players of all time managed to find a very beautiful and instructive way to save the game.

42...♖xd2!

The start of a nice combination.

43.♔xd2 ♕f3+ 44.♔g2

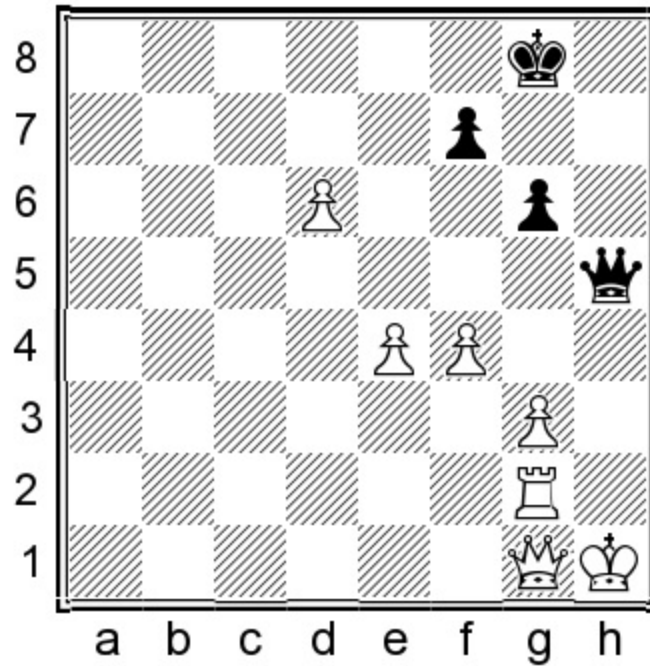


44.♖g2 ♕f1+ 45.♖g1 ♕f3+=

44...♘g3+!

The key move of the idea — now Black will secure a draw by using perpetual check.

45.hxg3 ♖h5+ 46.♚h2 ♚f3+ 47.♗g2 ♛d1+ 48.♚g1 ♖h5+

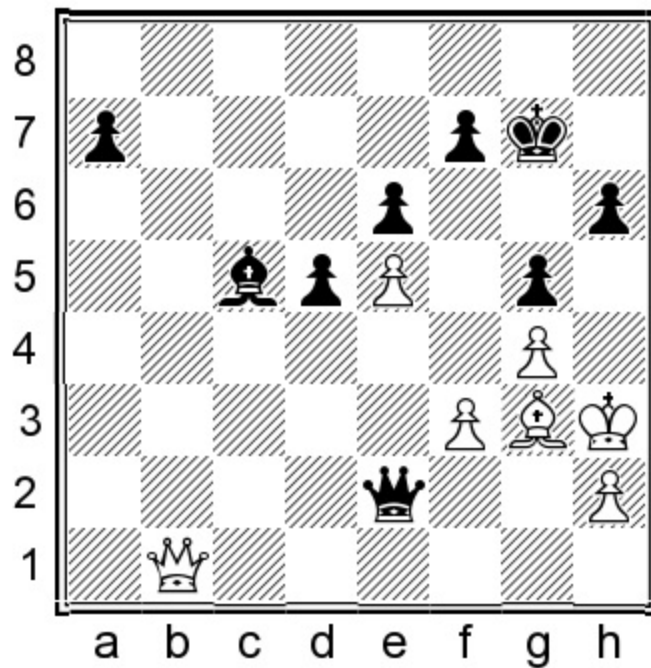


49.♗h2 ♚f3+= 1/2

STALEMATE COMBINATIONS

Generally, chess players believe that this method is used only in the endgame, but there are situations when the idea of a stalemate is used even in much more complicated positions.

Example 16
Jan Gombac
Luka Lenic



Black is completely winning, but the young Slovenian star let his guard down too soon and allowed his opponent to find a fantastic way to not lose the game.

36...♔xf3?? 37.♔h7+!! ♕f8

37...♕xh7 Stalemate!

38.♔g8+! ♕e7

38...♕xg8 is again stalemate.

39.♔e8+!

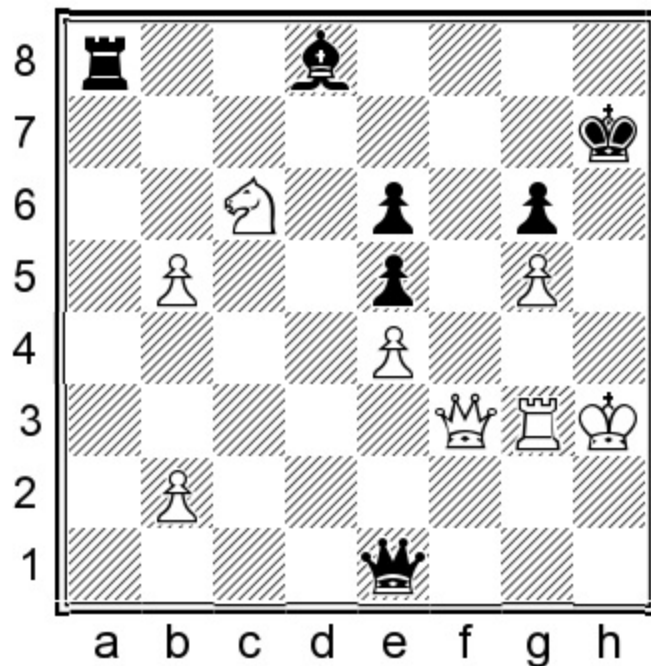
And Black can no longer avoid the stalemate.

39...♕xe8 1/2

Example 17

Reynaldo Vera Gonzalez Quevedo

Lutz Espig



Neither king is well-protected. White is without a doubt playing for a win due to the strong passed pawn on the queenside.

47...♙xg5!

Black finds a nice way to save the game.

48.♖xg5

White accepts the challenge.

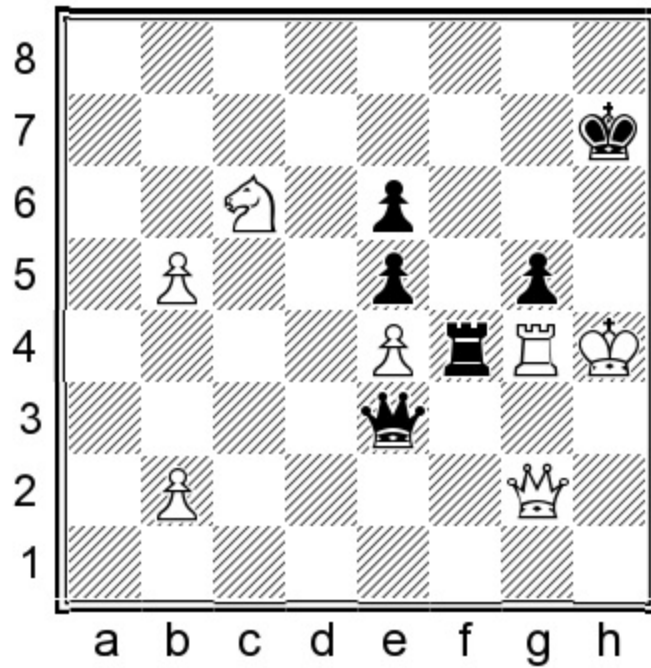
White could continue with 48.♘xe5 but after 48...♖f8 the position is not clear at all. Most probably the game would end in a draw anyway, since Black would be able to create enough counterplay on the kingside.

48...♖f8!

Continuation of the idea behind ♙g5.

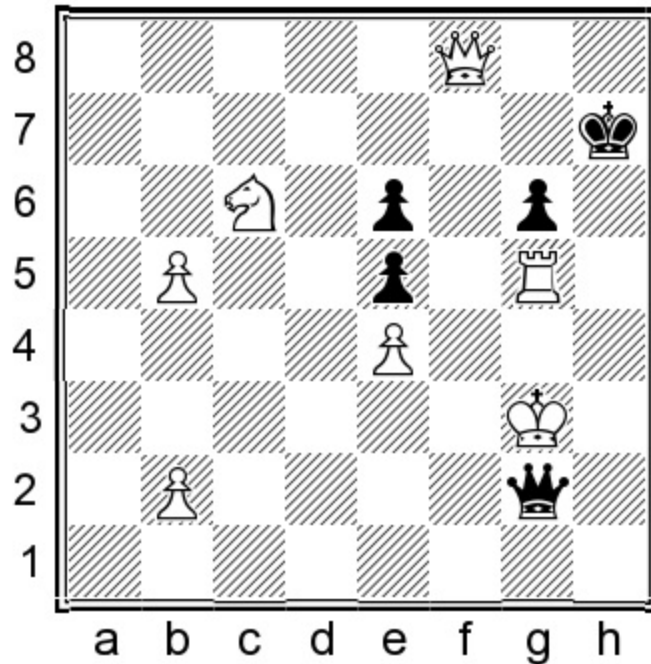
49.♚xf8

49.♚g2? ♚e3+ 50.♔h4 (50.♚g3 ♖f3–+; 50.♔h2 ♖f2–+; 50.♖g3 ♚h6+ 51.♔g4 ♚h5#) 50...♖f4+ 51.♖g4 g5+!



52.♔h5 ♖f6!-+

49...♖h1+ 50.♔g3 ♕g2+!



51.♔h4

51.♔xg2 Stalemate.

51...♖h3+= 1/2

SACRIFICES USED TO ACHIEVE THEORETICALLY DRAWN POSITIONS OR FORTRESSES

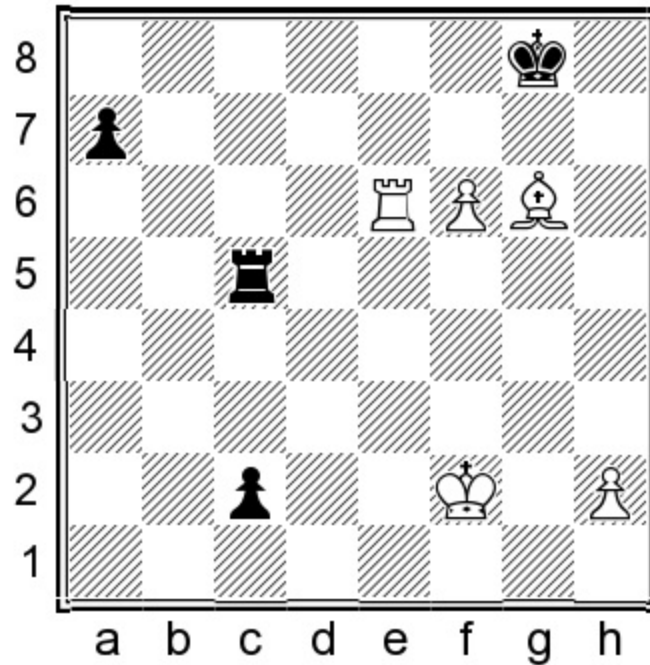
Here we can achieve theoretically-drawn draw positions mostly with the help of exchanging

operations, with some sacrifices thrown in. Such sacrifices are usually not very complicated but in order to get to the theoretically-drawn position we should sacrifice some or most of the material that is left on the board.

Example 18

Alexey Dreev

Leonid Yudasin



White has a significant material advantage. But in chess ‘material advantage’ doesn’t always mean that we will be able to win the game.

55...♖f5+!!

After 55...♖c8 56.♖e8+! ♖xe8 57.f7+ ♔g7 58.fxe8=♚ c1=♚ both players promote to a queen, but White is winning as he will be able to exchange these queens. 59.♚f7+ ♔h6 60.♚h7+ ♔g5 61.h4+ ♔f6 (61...♔g4 62.♖f5+ ♔f4 63.♚h6++-) 62.♚f7+ ♔e5 63.♚e7+ ♔d5 64.♚g5++-

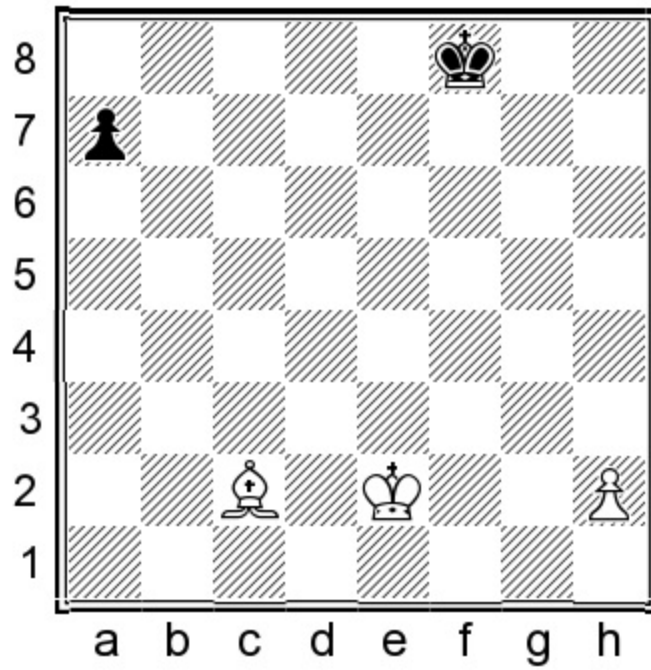
55...♖f5+!! 56.♔e2!

56.♖xf5 c1=♚-+; 56.♔g3 ♖g5+=

56...♖xf6! 57.♖e8+ ♖f8 58.♖xf8+ ♔xf8

This was the idea behind 55...♖f5 — transposition into a theoretically-drawn position.

59.♖xc2=



And a draw was agreed due to the 'wrong-coloured corner' bishop.

1/2

THE QUEEN SACRIFICE

Queen sacrifices are usually very spectacular as the queen is the most valuable piece. Such sacrifices are used to achieve different goals. For example, we can create a mating construction or we can save ourselves from a difficult position by achieving perpetual check or stalemate. The queen sacrifice can also be positional, or simply used to win material at the end of the combination.

SACRIFICING THE QUEEN TO ACHIEVE A MATING CONSTRUCTION

Generally, we can sacrifice the queen on any or all squares around the opponent's king. By doing that we destroy the opponent's defense and we are later able to create a mating attack or achieve a mating construction.

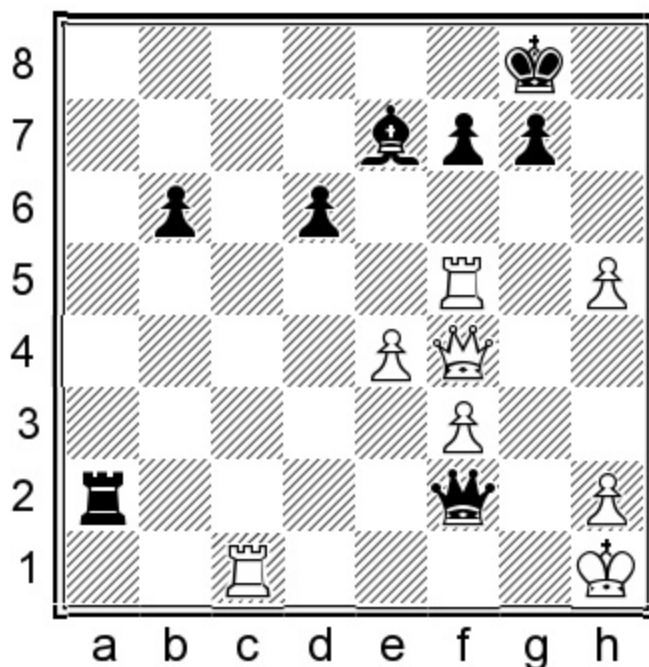
There are different 'typical' squares where we can sacrifice our queen:

SACRIFICE ON H6 (H3)

Example 19

Magnus Carlsen

Sergey Karjakin

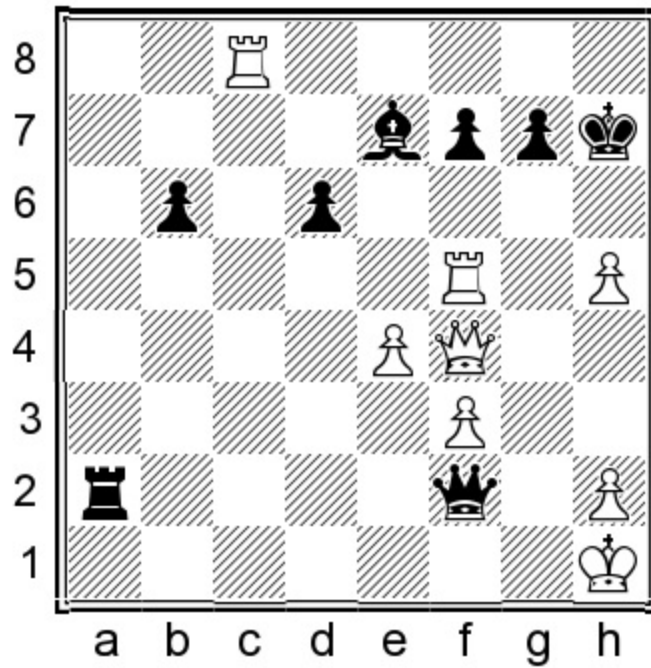


One of the most famous examples of the queen sacrifice on the h6 square in recent times. Magnus Carlsen used this idea in the final game of tiebreaks in his World Championship match against Karjakin.

49. ♖c8+ ♔h7

49... ♕f8 was also possible but it loses as well.

50. ♖xf8+! ♔xf8 51. ♖xf7+ ♔e8 52. ♖f8+ ♔d7 53. ♕f5+ ♔c6 54. ♖c8+ ♔b7 55. ♕d7+ ♔a6 56. ♖a8#



50. ♖h6+!!

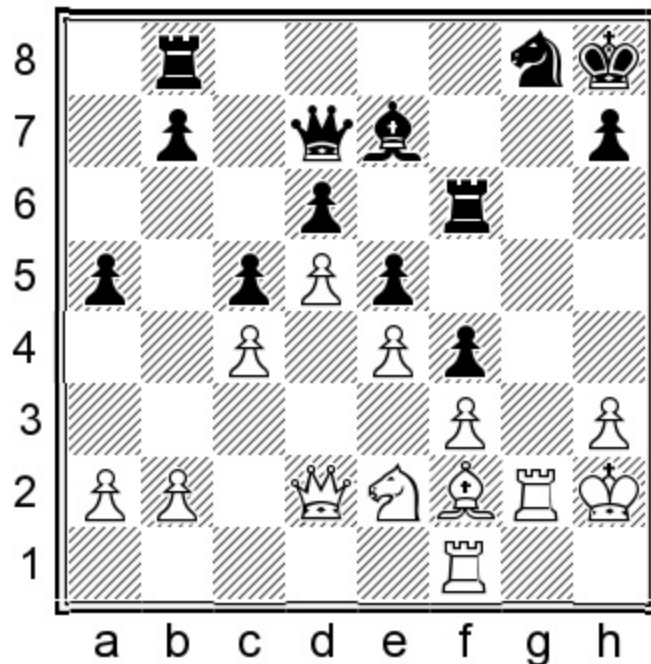
Here it comes — Carlsen finishes his mating attack with a spectacular queen sacrifice on h6!

50. ♖h6+ ♔xh6 (50...gxf6 51. ♖xf7#) 51. ♖h8#

Example 20

Y. Averbakh

A. Kotov



A typical queen sacrifice on h3 was also used by the great Aleksander Kotov.

1... ♖xh3+!!

Black starts the mating attack with a queen sacrifice.

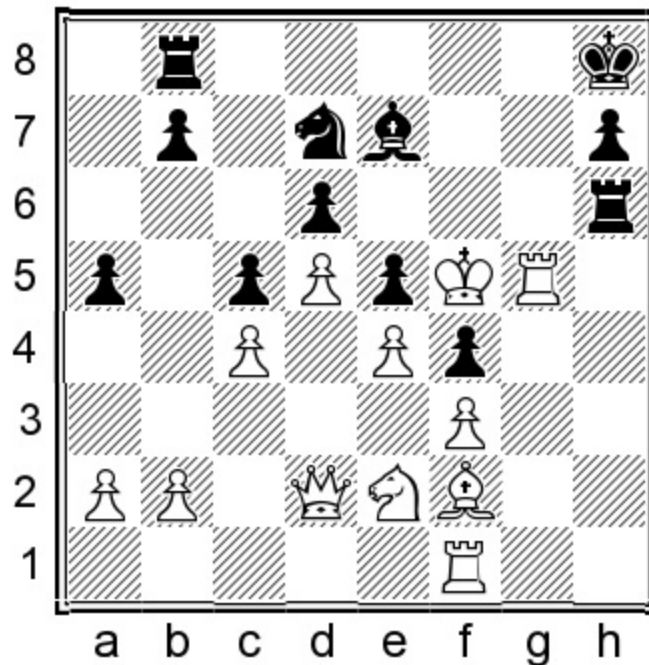
2.♔xh3 ♖h6+ 3.♔g4 ♜f6+ 4.♔f5 ♞d7!?

Black could have won even faster with 4...♞g4!! 5.♞xf4

(5.fxg4 ♖f8#, 5.♔xg4 ♖g8+ 6.♔f5 ♖f6#)

5...♖g8! 6.♞h5 ♖hg6!-+; 4...♖f8? 5.♔e6

5.♖g5



5.♖g7 ♖f8+ 6.♔g4 ♔xg7 7.♖g1 ♖g8 8.♔f5+ ♔f7! 9.♖xg8 ♖h5+ 10.♔g4 ♞f6#

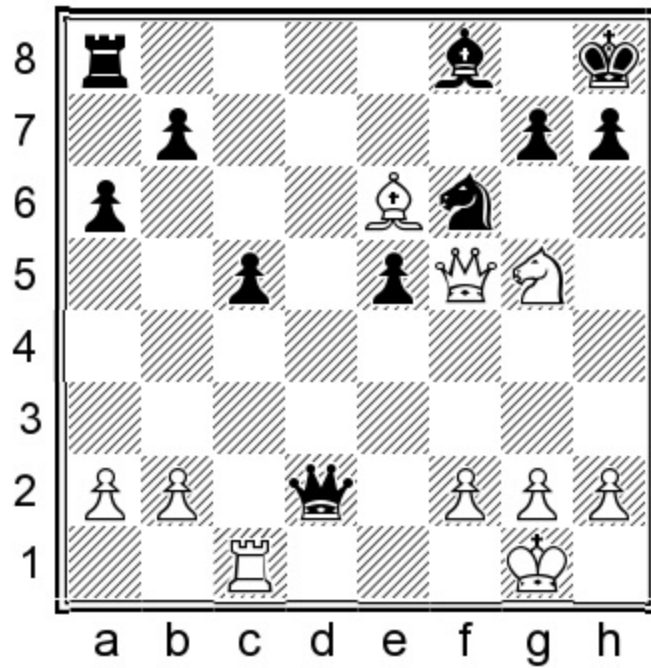
5...♖f8+ 6.♔g4 ♞f6+ 7.♔f5 ♞xd5+ 8.♔g4 ♞f6+ 9.♔f5 ♞g8+! 10.♔g4 ♞xg5! 11.♔xg5 ♖f7 12.♞h4 ♖g6+

12...♖g7+? 13.♔f5 ♖hg6 14.♞xd6 ♖xd6 15.♔xe5

13.♔h5 ♖fg7 14.♞g5 ♖xg5+ 15.♔h4 ♞f6--+ 0-1

SACRIFICE ON H7 (H2)

Example 21
Matulovic
Panagopulos



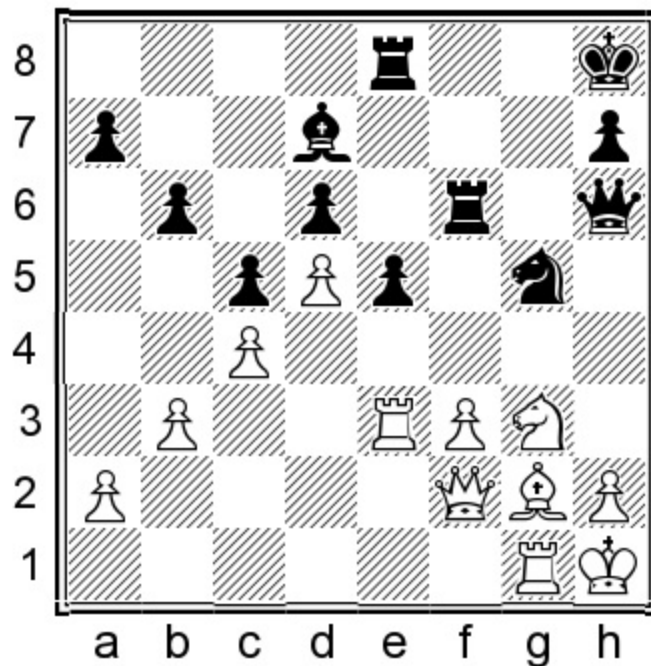
The h7 (h2) square is another typical square where one can sacrifice a queen.

1. ♚xh7+!! ♜xh7 2. ♜f7+ ♔g8 3. ♜xe5+! ♔h8 4. ♜g6#

A nice mating construction.

1-0

Example 22
Miroslav Filip
Tigran Petrosian



This positional advantage should be converted into a win with a tactical solution!

34...♙xh2+! 35.♔xh2 ♖h6+ 36.♕h3

36.♘h5 ♖xh5+ 37.♔g3 ♖g8!

The last piece joins the attack and mate is unavoidable.

38.f4 (38.♙c2 ♘e4#) 38...♘e6+ 39.♔f3 ♘d4+ 40.♔e4 ♕f5#

36...♘xh3!

36...♖xh3+? 37.♔g2+–

37.♘f5?

37.♔g2 was the best option for White.

37...♘xf2 38.♔xf2 ♖f8+ but Black should win this position with good technique as well.

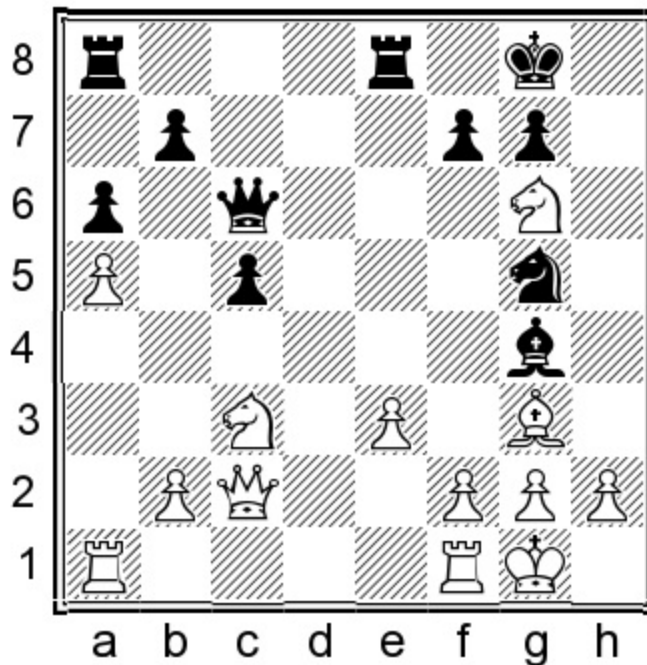
37...♕xf5 38.♙f1 ♘f4+ 39.♔g3 ♖g8+ 40.♔f2 ♘h3+–+ 0–1

SACRIFICE ON G7 (G2)

Example 23

Pal Benko

Christer Hartman



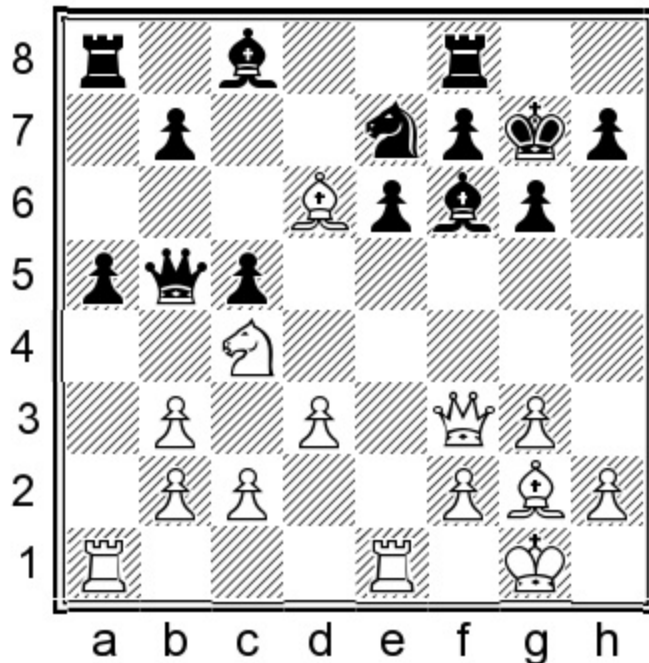
The 'hotspot' in this position is the g2 square.

21...♙xg2+! 22.♔xg2 ♕f3+! 23.♔g1 ♘h3# 0–1

In the following game we will see how a queen sacrifice was used to bring the opponent's king out of the 'cage'.

Example 24

Tigran Petrosian



The ‘iron’ Tigran Petrosian didn’t only know how to defend. He produced some spectacular attacking games as well!

18.♖e4!?

18.♙xf6+!! would have won the game even quicker.

18...♔xf6 19.♗e5+ ♔g5 20.♗g7!+–

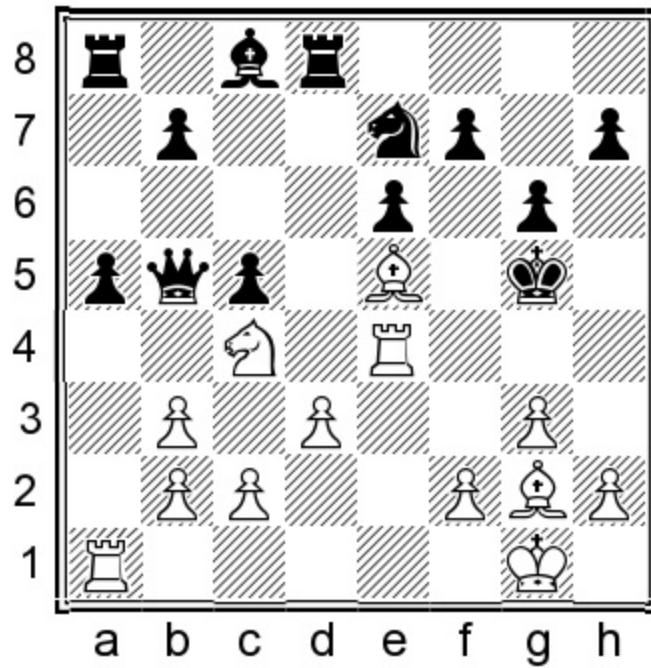
The key move of the variation — the bishop takes away the important h6-square and Black’s king can no longer escape the mating attack.

20...♞g8 21.f4+ ♔g4 22.♘e5+ ♔h5 23.♗f3#

18.♖e4!? ♞d8 19.♙xf6+!

Petrosian finds the same idea as was mentioned before, but a move later.

19...♔xf6 20.♗e5+ ♔g5



21. ♕g7!+-

Black resigned as he cannot prevent mate.

1-0

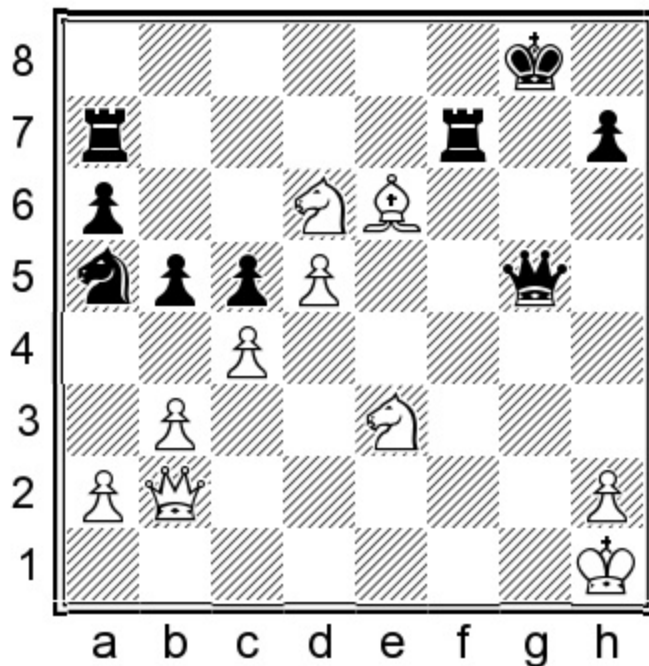
QUEEN SACRIFICE TO GAIN MATERIAL

The purpose of a queen sacrifice can also be as simple as winning material. In the next instructive example, we can see how a great World Champion sacrificed his queen:

Example 25

Tigran Petrosian

Boris Vasilievich Spassky



Another game of the great World Champion. This time Petrosian sacrifices his queen in order to win material at the end of the variation.

29. ♖xf7+ ♜xf7 30. ♚h8+!

Black resigned as he will lose a piece.

Wrong would be 30. ♘xf7 ♚xe3! as Black then has good chances for a draw;

30. ♚h8+ ♜xh8 31. ♘xf7+ ♜g7 32. ♘xg5+-

1-0

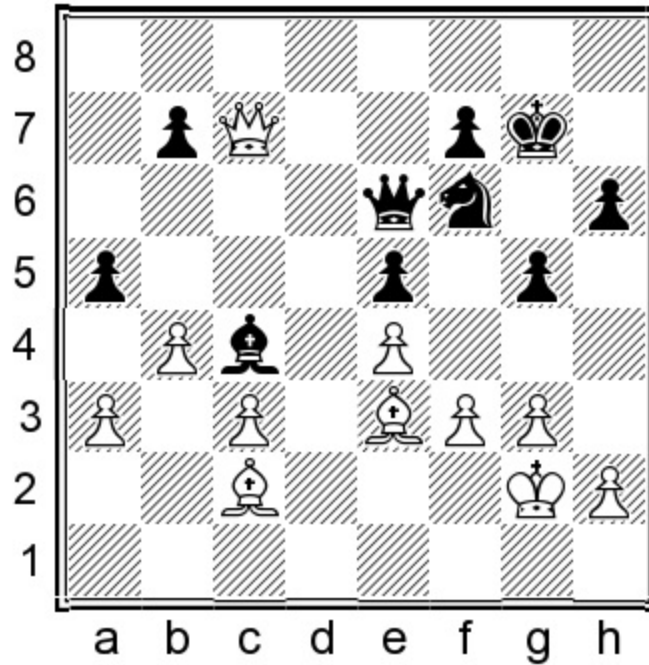
SACRIFICING THE QUEEN FOR A DRAW

As we already pointed out in the chapter “Defensive Tactics”, we are also able to use the queen sacrifice as a defensive element in order to save the game.

Show in Text Mode

WARM UP — EXERCISES

Exercise 1



1...? -+

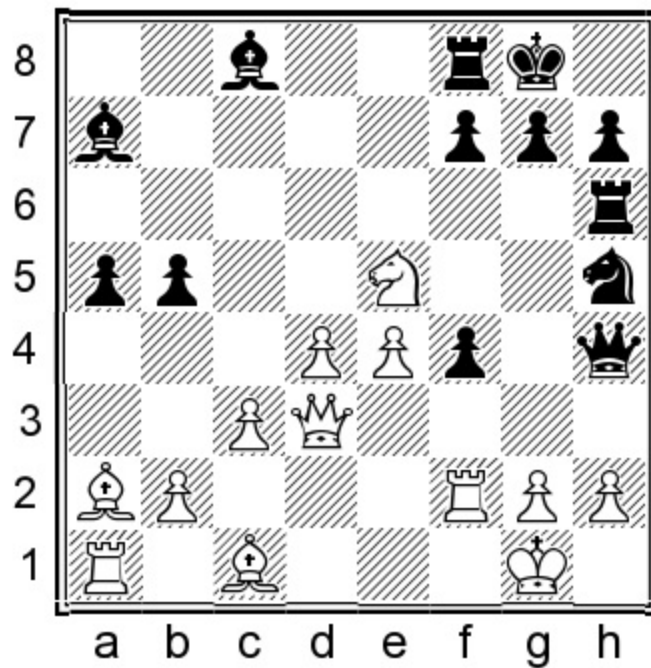
Show/Hide Solution

36...♚h3+! 37.♔xh3 [37.♔f2 ♚f1#; 37.♔g1 ♚f1#; 37.♔h1 ♚f1+ 38.♙g1 ♚xf3#]

37...♙f1#

[0-1 (2) Andersson,U-Hartston,W Hastings 1972]

Exercise 2



1...? -+

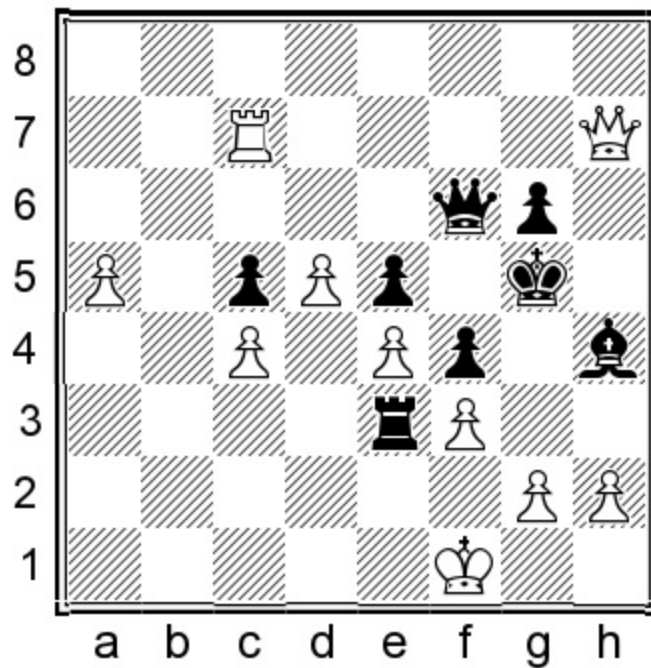
Show/Hide Solution

20... ♖xh2+!! [20... ♗g3?? 21. ♗f3+-]

20... ♖xh2+!! 21. ♔xh2 ♗g3+ 22. ♔g1 ♜h1#

[Shimanov,A-Kamsky,G Tromso 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 3



1.? +-

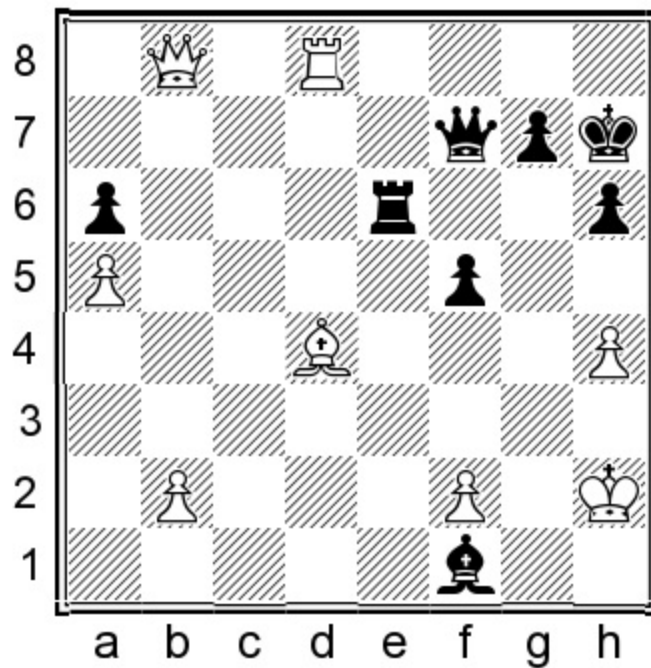
Show/Hide Solution

40. ♖xh4+!! [40.g4?? fxg3-+]

40. ♖xh4+!! ♔xh4 41. ♜h7+ ♔g5 42. h4#

[Plaskett,J-Velimirovic,D Banja Luka 1985 MCD, 0-1]

Exercise 4



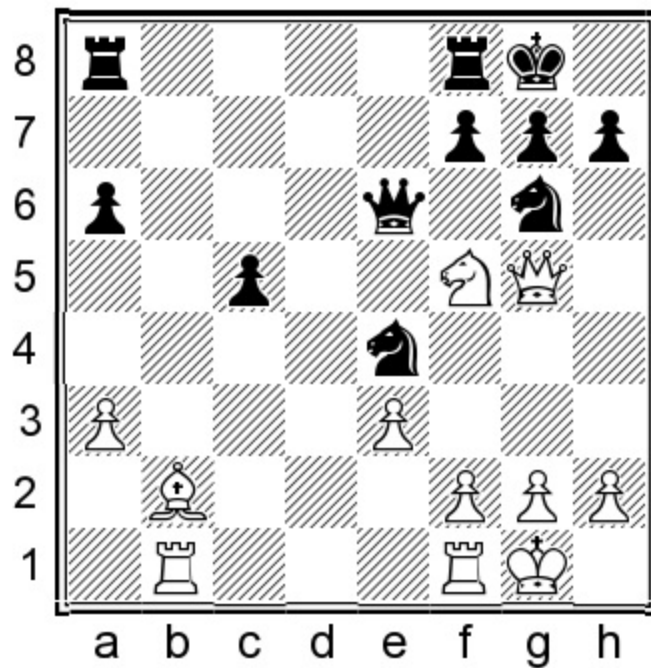
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35. ♖h8+ ♔g6 36. ♕g3+ ♔h5 37. ♕g5#

[Geller,E-Tukmakov,V Moscow 1983, 1-0]

Exercise 5



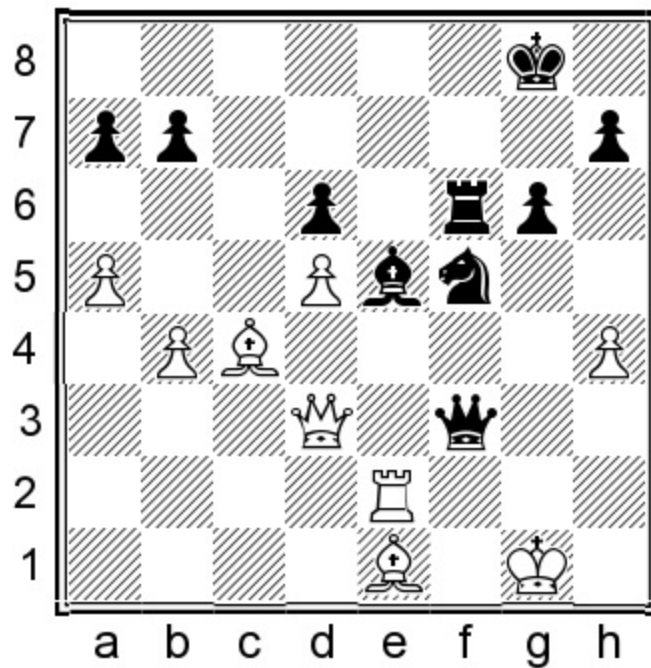
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

23. ♔h6!! gxh6 24. ♘xh6#

[Rabinovich,I-Goglidze,V Leningrad/Moscow 1939, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1...? -+

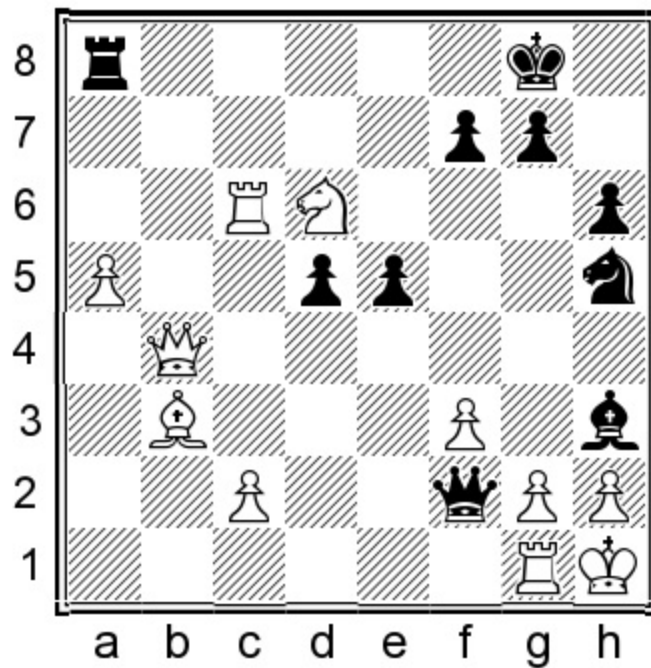
Show/Hide Solution

34...♞f1+!! [34...♙d4+! 35.♗h2 ♘e3 36.♙g3 ♘f1+ 37.♗h3 ♘xg3-+]

34...♞f1+!! 35.♗xf1 ♘e3+ 36.♗g1 ♞f1#

[Langeweg,C-Casa,A Lugano 1968, 0-1]

Exercise 7



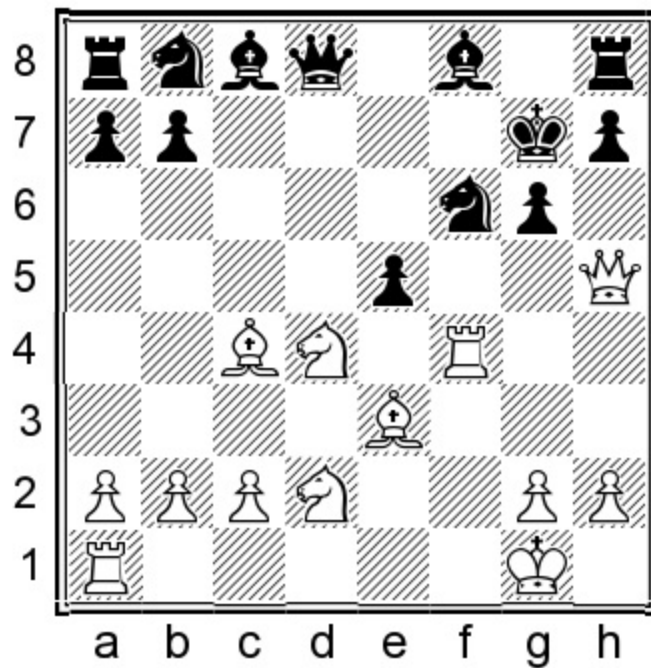
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

44...♙xg2+! 45.♖xg2 ♚f1+ 46.♖g1 ♘g3+! 47.hxg3 ♚h3#

[Training position, 0-1]

Exercise 8



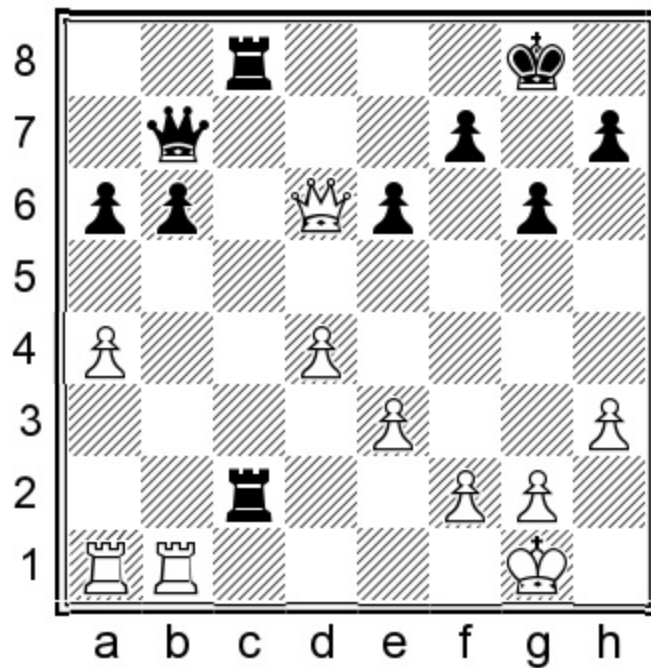
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

14. ♖h6+!! ♔xh6 15. ♚h4+ ♔g7 16. ♘h6#

[Keres,P-Verbac Berlin 1939, 1-0]

Exercise 9



1...? -+

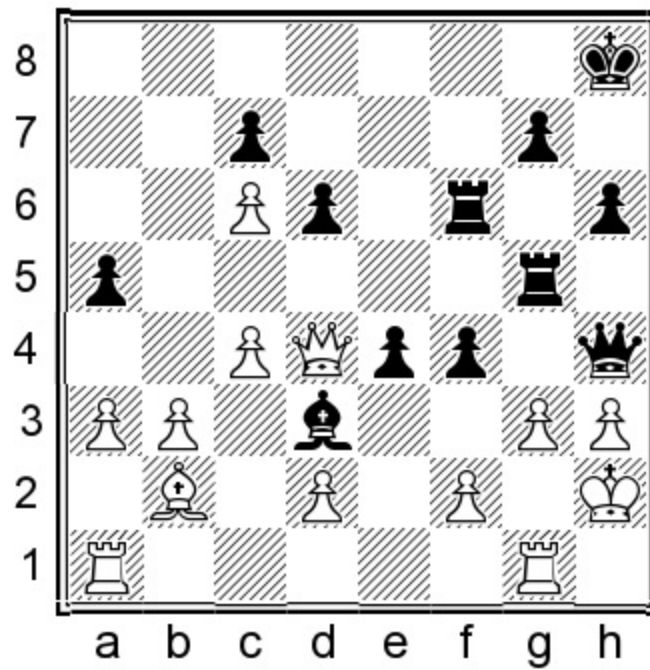
Show/Hide Solution

22...♖xf2! 23.♔g3 [23.♕xf2 ♖c2+ 24.♕e1 ♔xg2-+]

23...♖e2-+

[Alatorsev, V-Capablanca, J Moscow 1935, 0-1]

Exercise 10



1...? -+

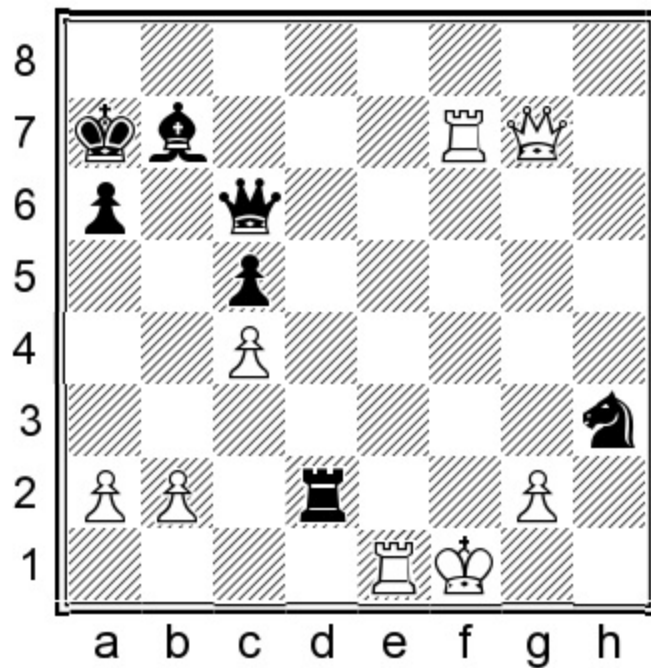
Show/Hide Solution

1...♚xh3+! 2.♘xh3 ♜h5+ 3.♘g4 [3.♘g2 f3#]

3...♙e2+ 4.f3 ♙xf3#

[Polajzer,D-Kos,T Celje 2002, 0-1]

Exercise 11



1...? -+

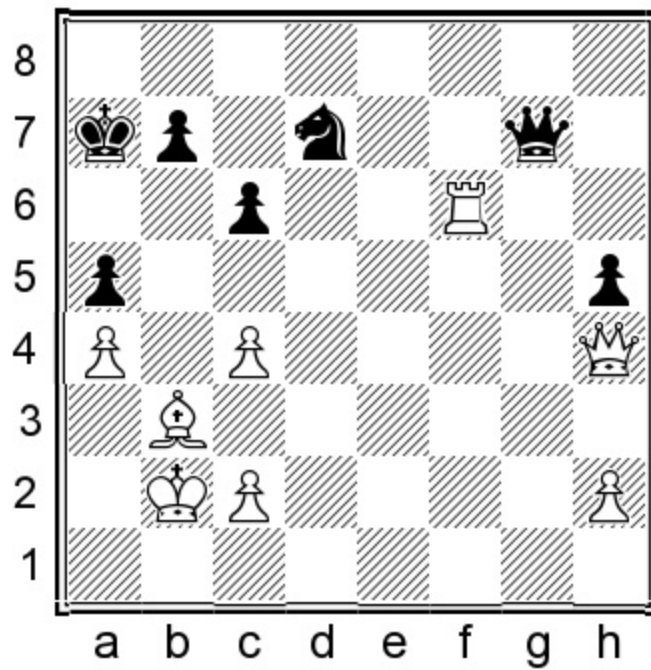
Show/Hide Solution

1...♙d7!! 2.♖xd7 [2.♙g6 ♗xg2+ 3.♙xg2 ♜xf7+ 4.♙f3 ♜xf3#]

2...♜f2#

[Murey-Szackes Moscov 1963, 0-1]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

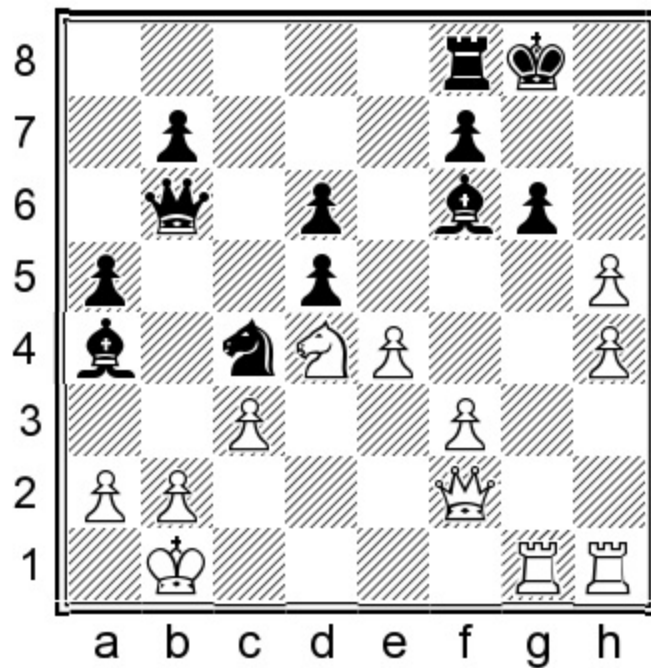
Show/Hide Solution

35. ♔d4+! c5! [35...b6 36. ♖d6+-]

36. ♖a6+!!+-

[Erwich,M-Rommel,T Hoogeveen 1999, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1...? -+

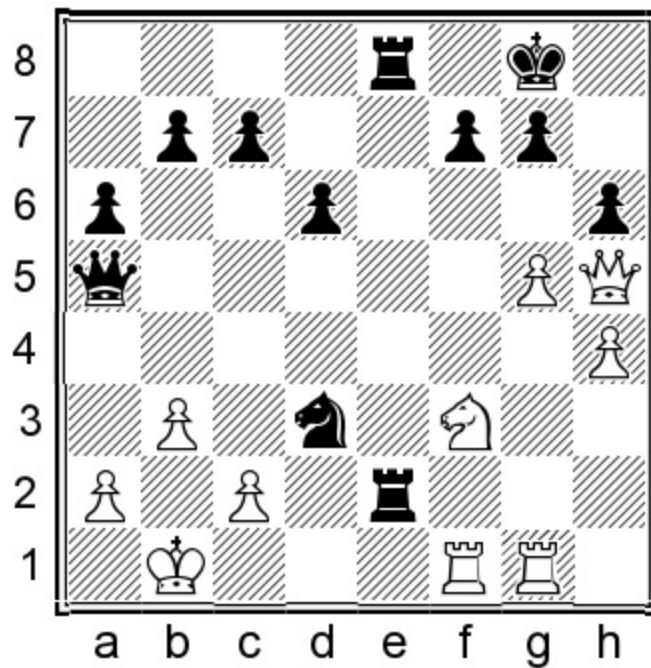
Show/Hide Solution

22...♔c2+! 23.♚xc2 [23.♖xc2 ♜xb2+ 24.♗d1 ♚xf2-+]

23...♘a3+-+

[Rau,J-Raud,R Deizisau 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

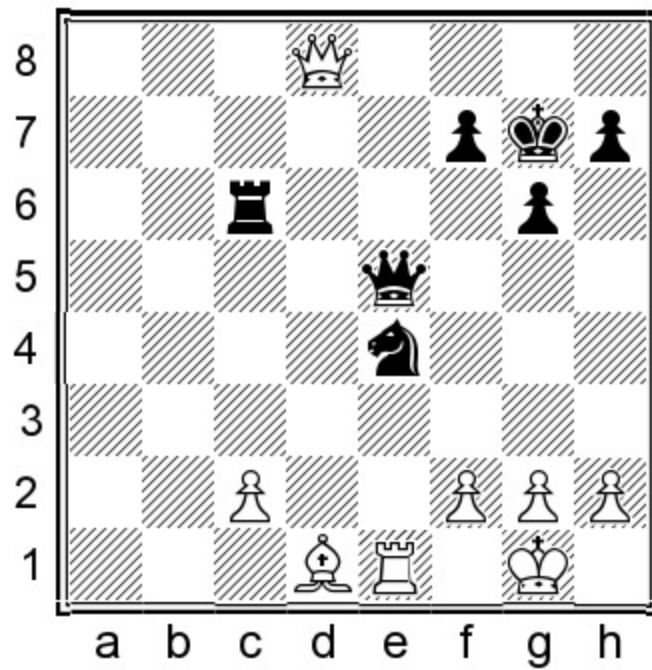
1. ♖e5! ♗xe5

[1... ♜2xe5 2. ♘xf7+ ♔h8 (2... ♔h7 3. g6+ ♔h8 4. ♘f8+ ♜xf8 5. ♜xf8#) 3. ♘f8+ ♜xf8 4. ♜xf8+ ♔h7 5. g6#; 1... ♘xe5 2. ♘xf7+ ♔h8 3. ♘f8+ ♜xf8 4. ♜xf8+ ♔h7 5. g6#]

2. ♘xe2+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 15



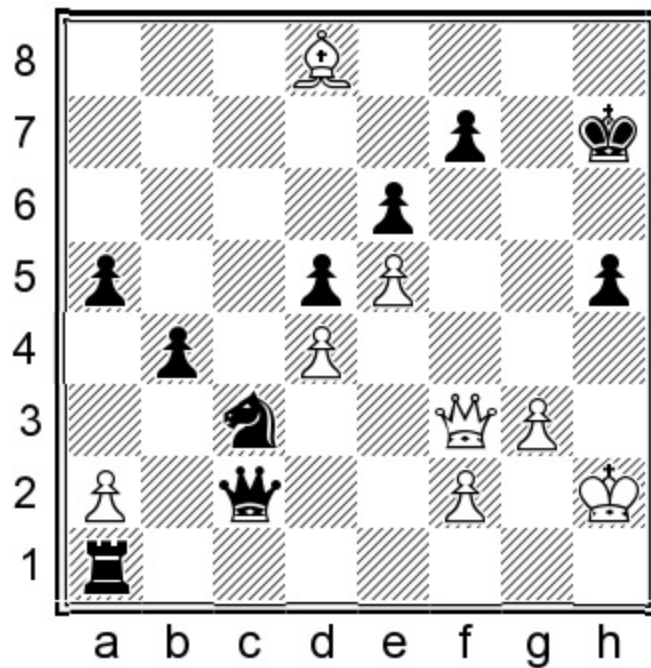
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖d6! 2.♔h4 ♜c3!-+

[Sokolov,I-Nisipeanu,L Lublin 1997, 0-1]

Exercise 16



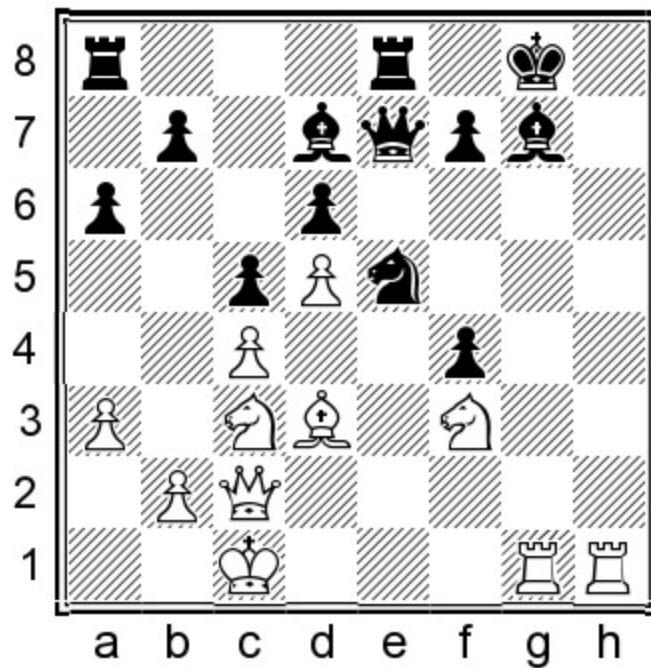
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

52. ♖xf7+ ♔h6 53. ♕g5+! ♔xg5 54. ♗f6+ ♔g4 55. ♗f4#

[Yildiz,B-Zhao Xue Ulaanbaatar 2010, 0-1]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

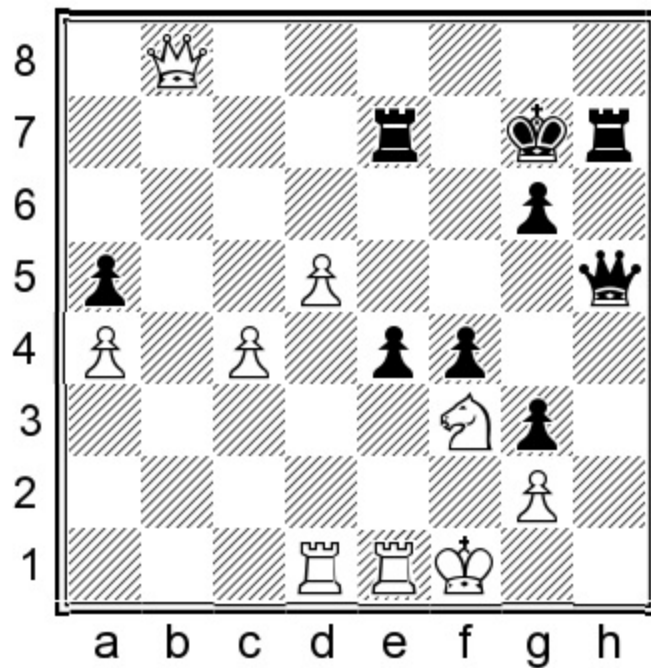
Show/Hide Solution

24.♖h8+!! [24.♖h7 ♘g4 25.♗d1!!+- (25.♙f5 ♚e3+ 26.♜b1 ♚xg1+)]

24.♖h8+!! ♜xh8 25.♚h2+ ♜g8 26.♚h7+ ♜f8 27.♚xg7#

[Maiwald,J-Markowski,T Dresden 2008, 1/2]

Exercise 18



1...? -+

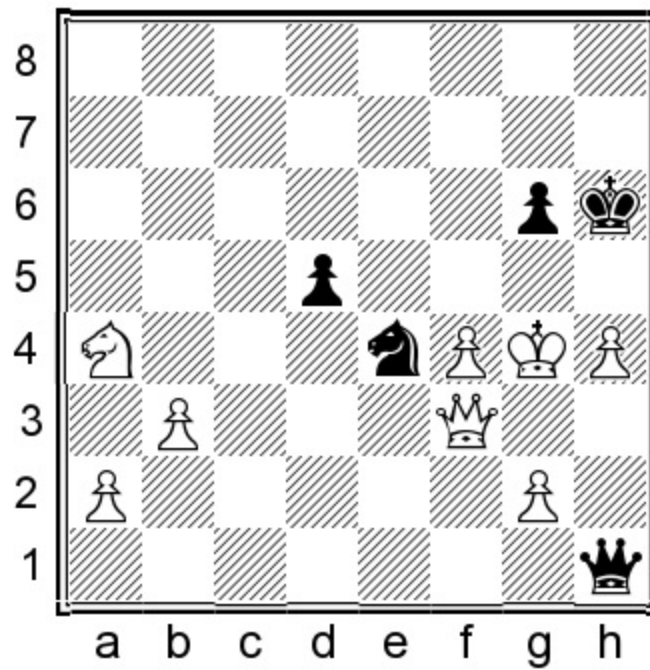
Show/Hide Solution

46...♚h1+ 47.♘g1 ♚xg2+!! [47...♜h2? 48.♚b2+ (48.♞d2⇝) 48...♙g8 49.d6+-]

48.♙xg2 ♜h2+ 49.♙f1 ♜f2#

[De Heer,M-Gurevich,M Vlissingen 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 19



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

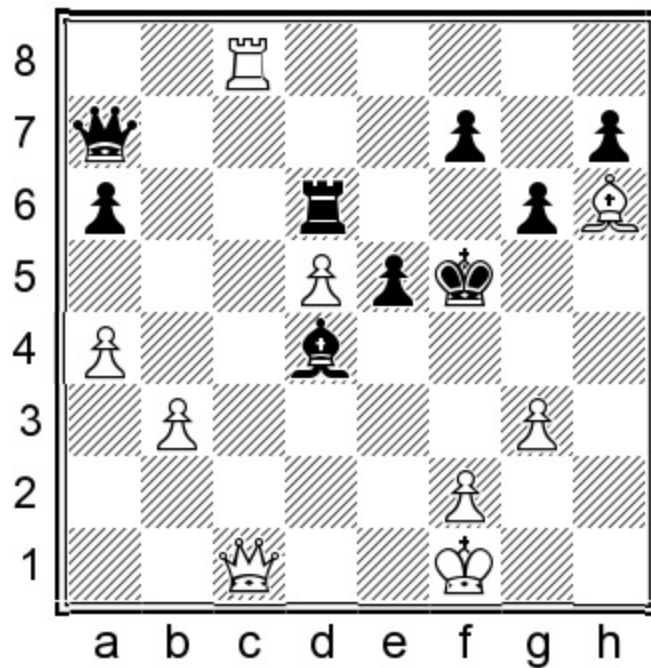
51...♔h2! [51...♘f6+?]

51...♔h2! 52.♔e3 [52.♘c3 ♘f6#]

52...♔xg2+-+

[Alburt,L-Giorgadze,T Soviet Union 1971, 1/2]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

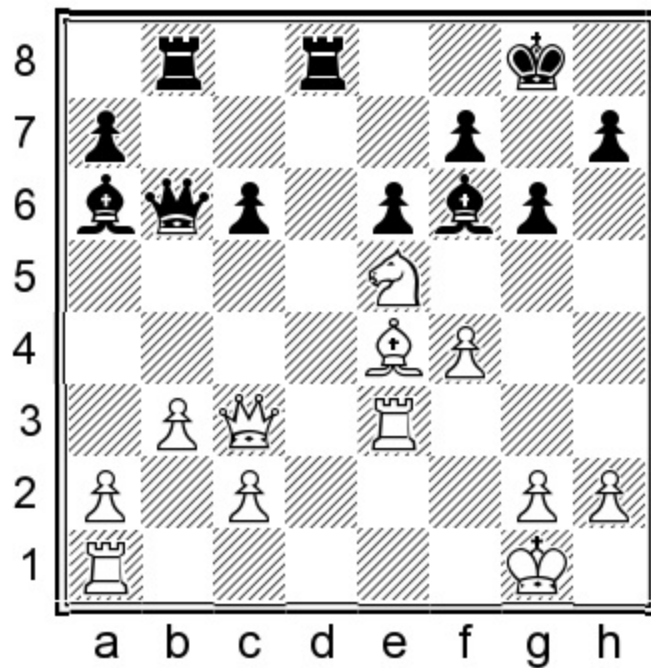
33.g4+! [33.f3! ♖xd5 34.♖c6+-]

33.g4+! ♔xg4 [33...♔e4 34.♔e2 ♔xd5 35.♚c4+ ♔e4 36.f3#]

34.♚g5+ ♔f3 35.♚g2#

[Kojima,S-Movsesian,S Tromso 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 21



1...? -+

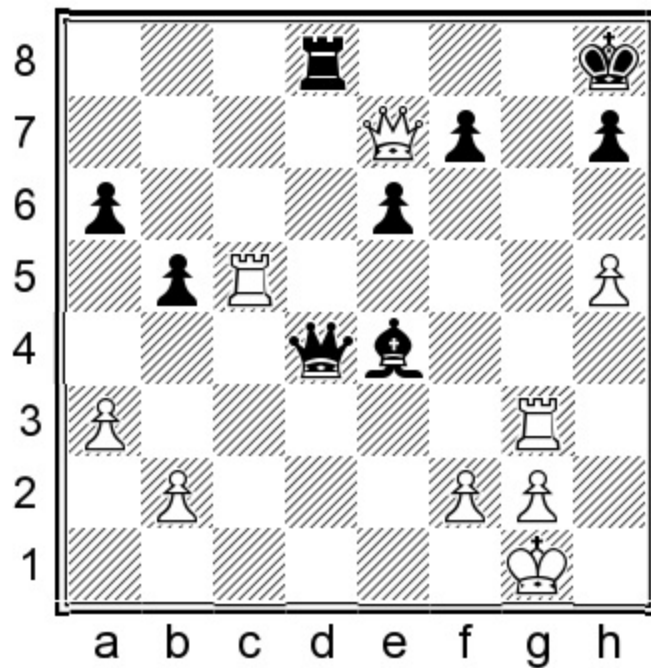
Show/Hide Solution

1...♔d3! 2.cxd3 [2.♕e1 ♔xe4-+]

2...♕xe3+-+

[Kaminski,O-Osnos,V USSR 1968, 0-1]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

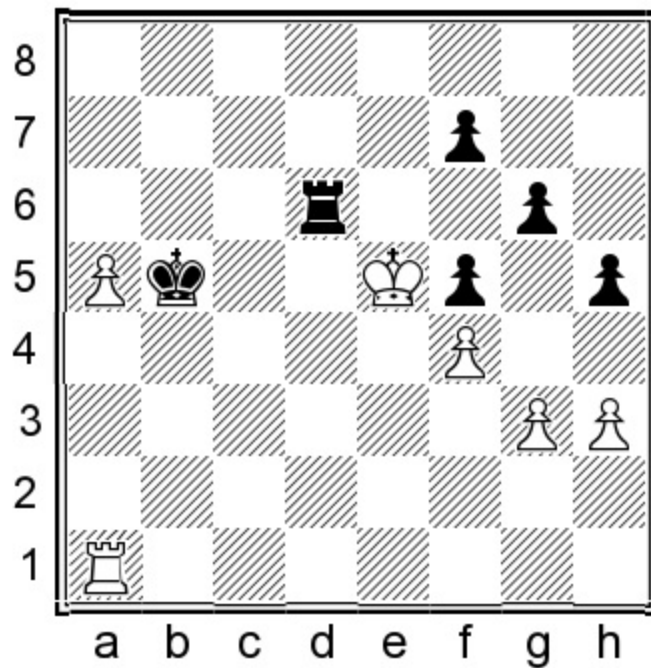
43.♖d5!! [43.♖e5+-]

43.♖d5!! ♔xd5 [43...♖xd5 44.♚f8#; 43...♙xd5 44.♚xd8#]

44.♚f6#

[Eliskases,E-Hoelzl Innsbruck 1929, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1...? -+

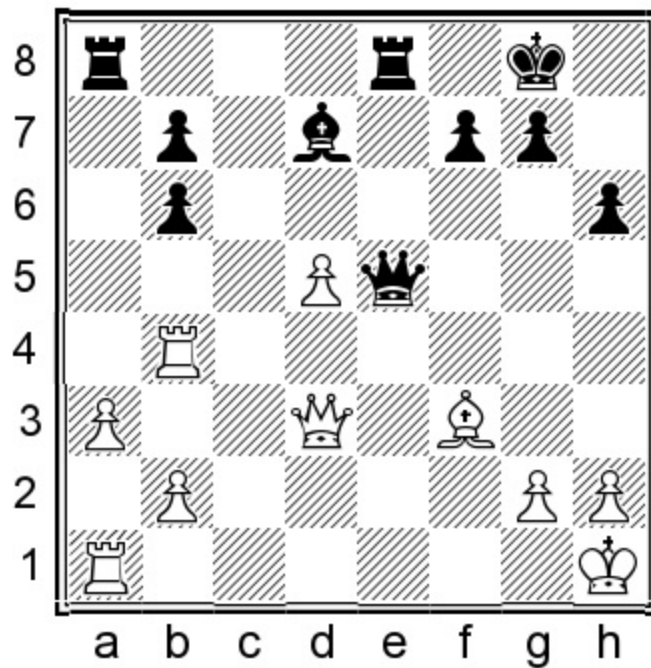
Show/Hide Solution

57...♔c6! [57...♖e6+?? 58.♕d5 ♕a6=]

57...♔c6! 58.♖c1+ ♕d7! 59.g4 f6#

[Meins,G-Reschke,S Germany 1997, 1/2]

Exercise 24



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

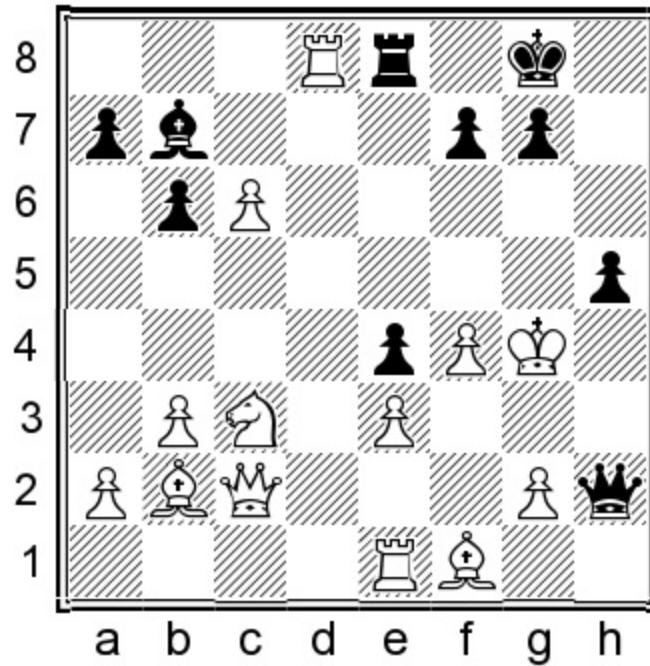
24...♖xa3!! 25.bxa3 [25.♚xa3 ♚e1+ 26.♞xe1 ♞xe1#; 25.♚d1 ♞xa1 26.♚xa1 ♚e1+ 27.♚xe1 ♞xe1#]

25...♚xa1+ 26.♞b1 ♞e1+ 27.♞xe1 ♚xe1+ 28.♚f1 ♚xf1#

[Mikenas,V-Bronstein,D Tallinn 1965, 0-1]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 25



1.? +-

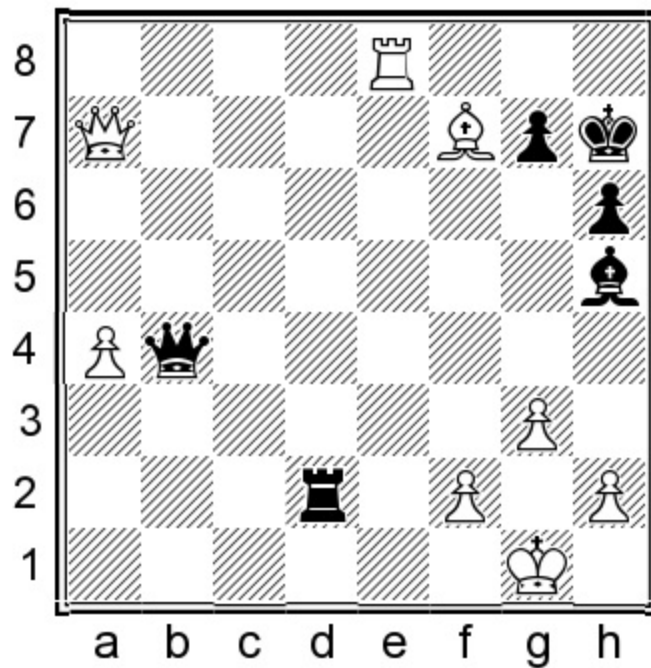
Show/Hide Solution

23. ♖f5 [23. ♖g5?? ♔g3+ 24. ♖xh5 g6+ 25. ♖h6 ♔h4#]

23. ♖f5 g6+ 24. ♖g5 ♔g3+ 25. ♖h6+-

[Pelletier, Y-Gelfand, B Zurich 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 26



1...? -+

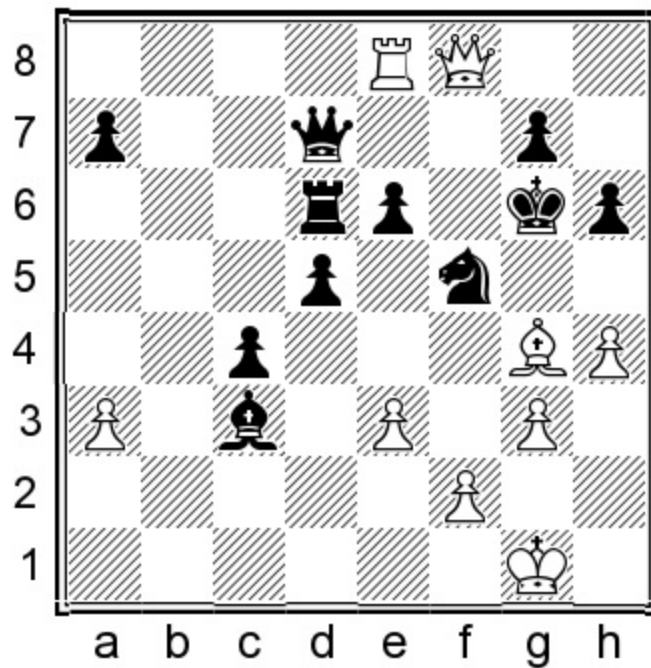
Show/Hide Solution

29...♖b1+ 30.♗g2 ♜h1+!! 31.♗xh1 [31.♗h3 ♜f1+ 32.♗h4 g5+ 33.♗xh5 ♜h3#]

31...♙f3+ 32.♗g1 ♞d1+ 33.♞e1 ♞xe1#

[Sieglen,J-Gawehns,K Bonn 1994, 1-0]

Exercise 27



1.? +-

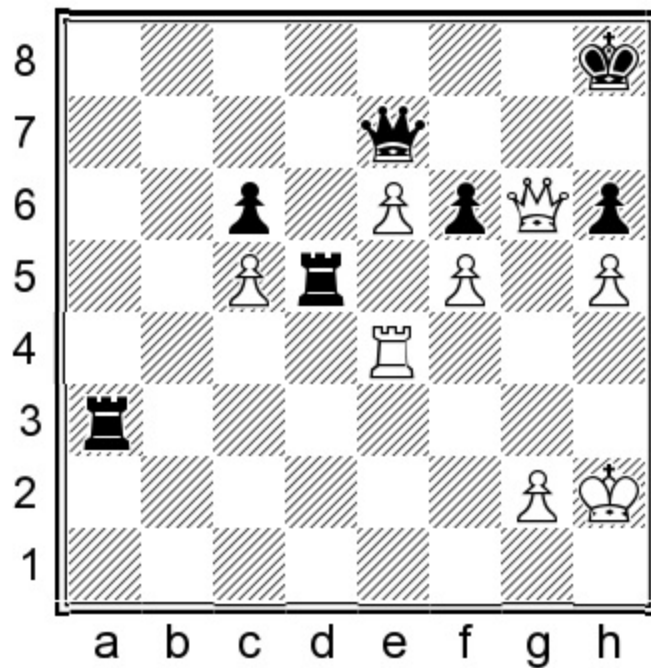
Show/Hide Solution

35.h5+! [35.f4? h5! 36.♖h8 ♘h6-+]

35.h5+! ♔g5 36.♙e2 ♘xg3 37.♖f4#

[Vaganian,R-Petrosian,A Yerevan 1980, 0-1]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

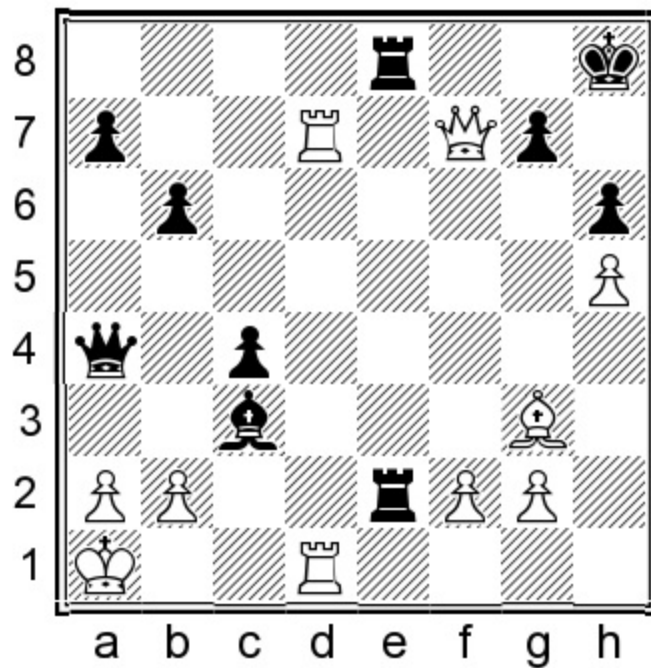
Show/Hide Solution

39. ♖xh6+! [39. ♜g4?? ♜f8?? (39... ♜c7+ 40.g3 ♜d2+ 41. ♔h3 ♜h2+ 42. ♔xh2 ♜a2+ 43. ♔h3 ♜h2+ 44. ♔xh2 ♜xg3+ 45. ♜xg3) 40.e7 ♜b8+ 41.g3]

39. ♖xh6+! ♜h7 40.e7 ♜xh6 41.e8=♜+ ♔h7 42. ♜e7+ ♜g7 43. ♜g6+ ♔h8 44. ♜xg7#

[Sax,G-Smejkal,J Vrbas 1977, 1-0]

Exercise 29



1.? +-

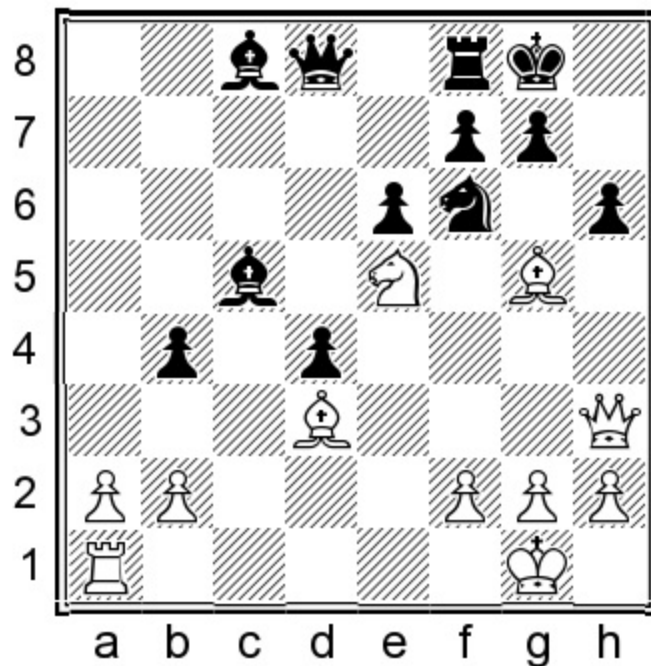
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖e5!! ♜g8 [1... ♙xe5 2. ♚xe8+ ♔h7 3. ♚g6+ ♔h8 4. ♜d8+ ♚e8 5. ♜xe8#; 1... ♜2xe5 2. ♚xg7#; 1... ♙xb2+ 2. ♙xb2+-]

2. ♙xc3+-

[Miles,A-Gonzalez,L Las Palmas 1980, 1-0]

Exercise 30



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖g4! [20. ♙xh6 gxh6 21. ♚xh6+-]

20. ♖g4! ♙e7 [20...hxg5 21. ♖xf6+ ♚xf6 22. ♚h7#]

21. ♙xf6! [21. ♖xh6+! gxh6 22. ♙xf6 ♙xf6 23. ♚xh6 ♚e8 24. ♙h7+! ♖h8 25. ♙g6+ ♖g8 26. ♚h7+ ♖f8 27. ♚xf7#]

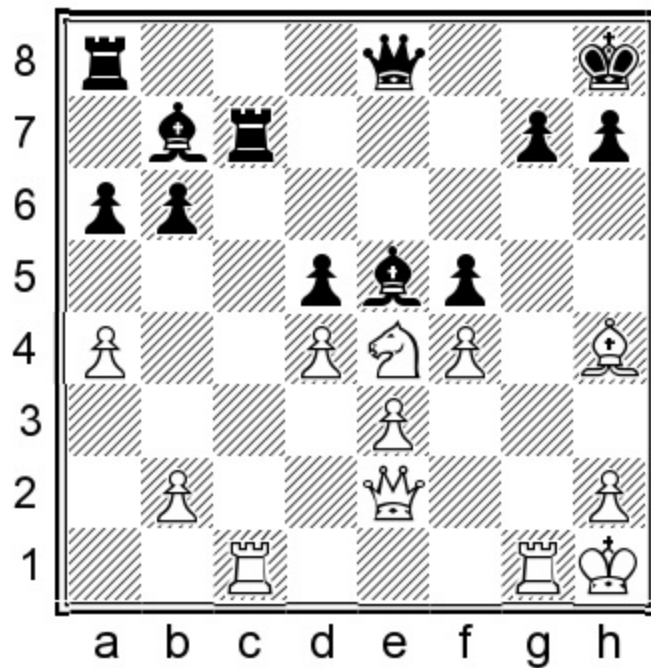
21...gxh6 [21...♙xf6 22. ♖xh6+-]

22. ♖xh6+ ♖g7 23. ♚g4+ ♖h8 24. ♚h5 ♖g7 25. ♖xf7+- ♚h8 [25...♚xf7 26. ♚h7+ ♖f8 27. ♚h8#]

26. ♚g6+

[Capablanca,J-Levenfish,G Moscow 1935, 1-0]

Exercise 31



1.? +-

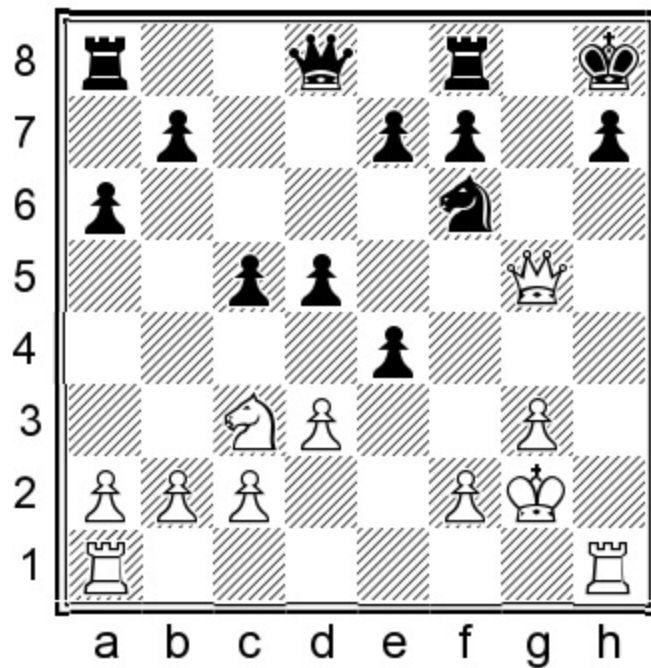
Show/Hide Solution

23. ♘f6!! ♕xf6 [23...gxf6 24. ♖xc7 ♘xc7 25. ♘xf6#]

24. ♖xc7 ♘xh4 25. ♖gxg7 ♔e4+ 26. ♔g1!+-

[Bareev,E-Lautier,J Enghien les Bains 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

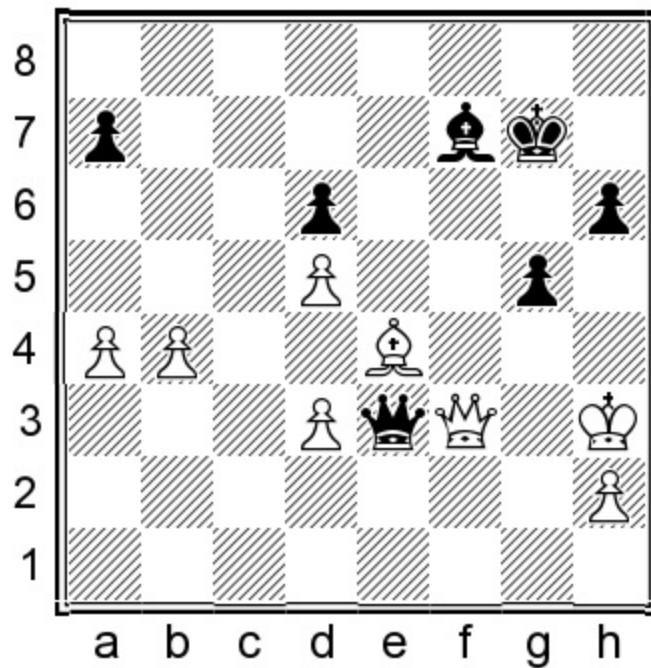
18. ♖xd5! ♚xd5 [18... ♜g8 19. ♗xf6 ♜xg5 (19... exf6 20. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 21. ♖h1#) 20. ♖xh7#]

19. ♖xh7+ ♗xh7 [19... ♔xh7 20. ♖h1+ ♗h5 21. ♖xh5#]

20. ♚xd5+-

[Capablanca, J-Rather, J New York 1936, 1-0]

Exercise 33



1...? -+

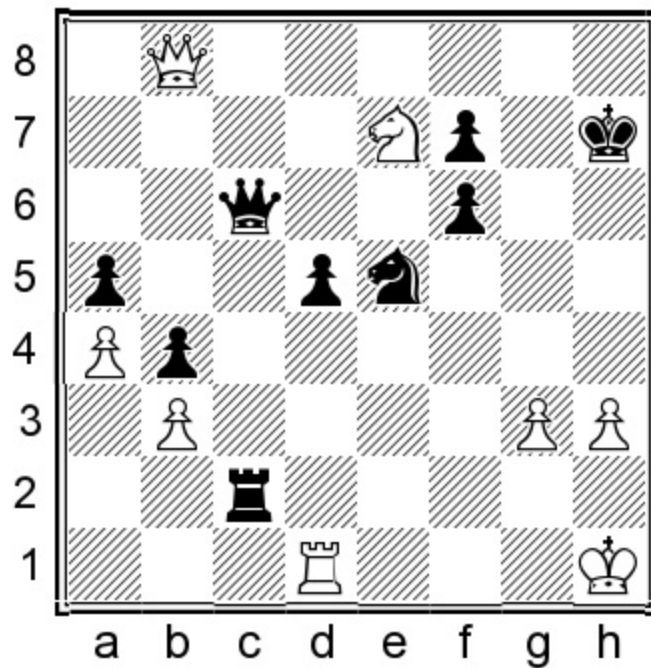
Show/Hide Solution

43...g4+ 44.♙xg4 ♖h5+! 45.♙xh5 [45.♙h4 ♖xf3-+; 45.♙g3 ♖xf3-+]

45...♚g5#

[Larsen,B-Spassky,B Linares 1981, 0-1]

Exercise 34



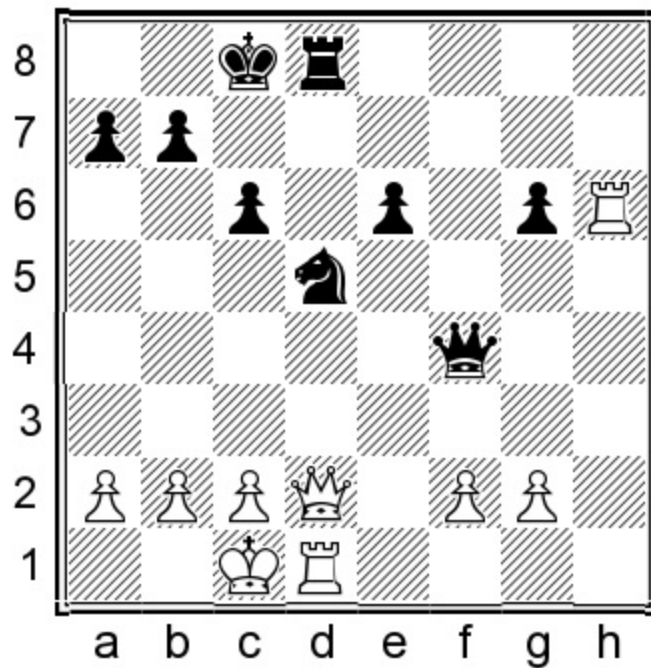
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

40...♖h2+! 41.♔xh2 ♜c2+ 42.♔g1 ♜xd1+ 43.♔f2 ♜f3+ 44.♔e1 ♜xg3+ 45.♔d1 ♜xb3+-+

[Bruzon Batista,L-Drabke,L Saint Vincent 2004, 0-1]

Exercise 35



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

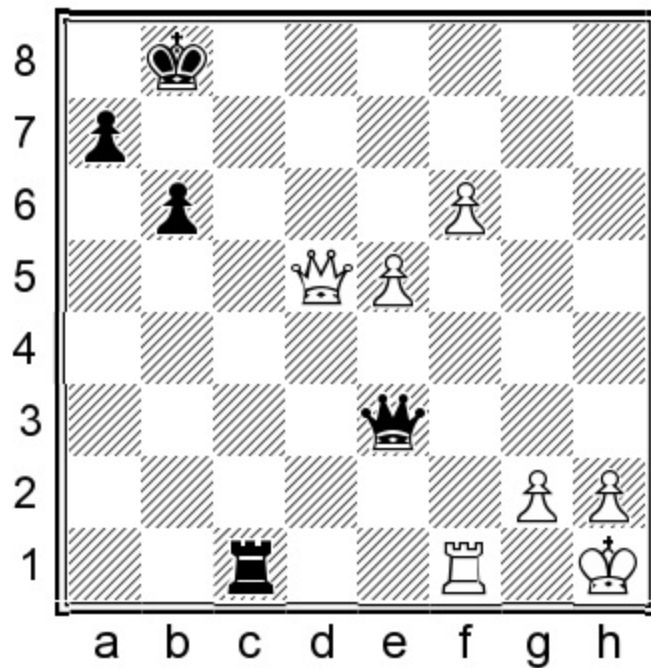
1...♘c3!! 2.♖h8 [2.♚xf4 ♜xd1#; 2.bxc3 ♜xd2 3.♖h8+ (3.♜xd2 ♚xh6-+) 3...♜d8+-+]

2...♘e2+! [2...♚xd2+ 3.♜xd2 ♘xa2+ 4.♙b1 ♜xh8 5.♙xa2-]

3.♙b1 ♚xd2! 4.♜xd2 ♜xh8-+

[Training position, 0-1]

Exercise 36



1.? +-

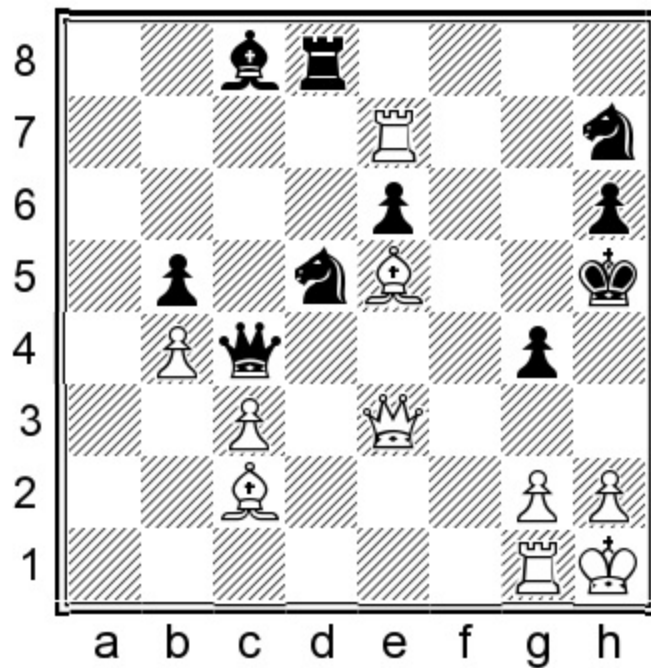
Show/Hide Solution

42. ♖f3!! [42. ♖b5 ♕e1=]

42. ♖f3!! ♕xf3 43. gxf3 ♖xf1+ 44. ♔g2+-

[Zuidema,C-Bonne,M Zurich 1962, 1/2]

Exercise 37



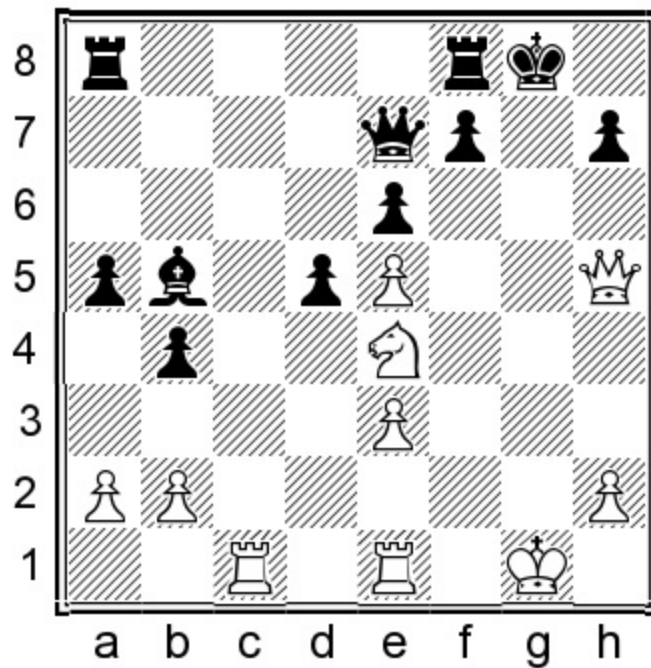
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

43. ♖xh6+! ♔xh6 44. ♖xh7+ ♔g5 45. h4+! gxh3 46. gxh3+

[Golubka,P-Bernadskiy,V Zhytomyr 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 38



1...? -+

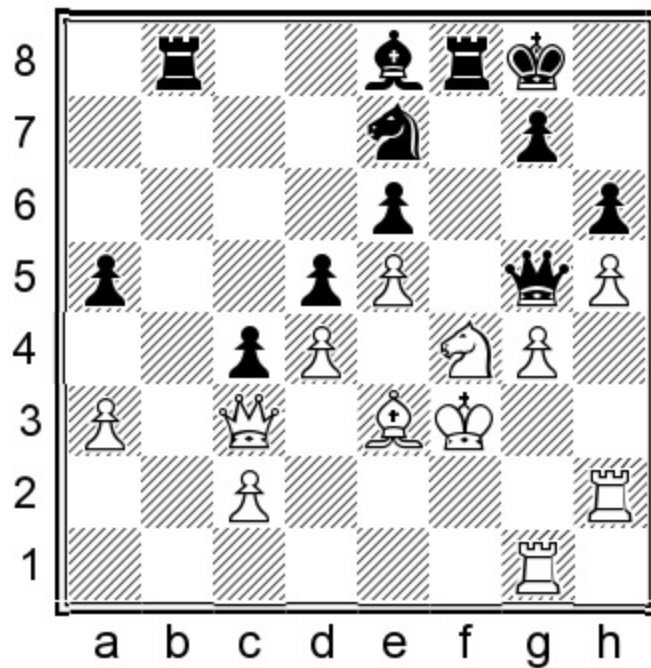
Show/Hide Solution

1...dxe4 2.♖c7! ♕d8! [2...♗xc7? 3.♗g5+ ♔h8 4.♗f6+ ♔g8 5.♗g5+=]

3.♗d1 ♕e2!!-+ [Petersen-Petrosian Kopenhagen 1960, 0-1]

[3...♕d3 4.♗d7]

Exercise 39



1...? -+

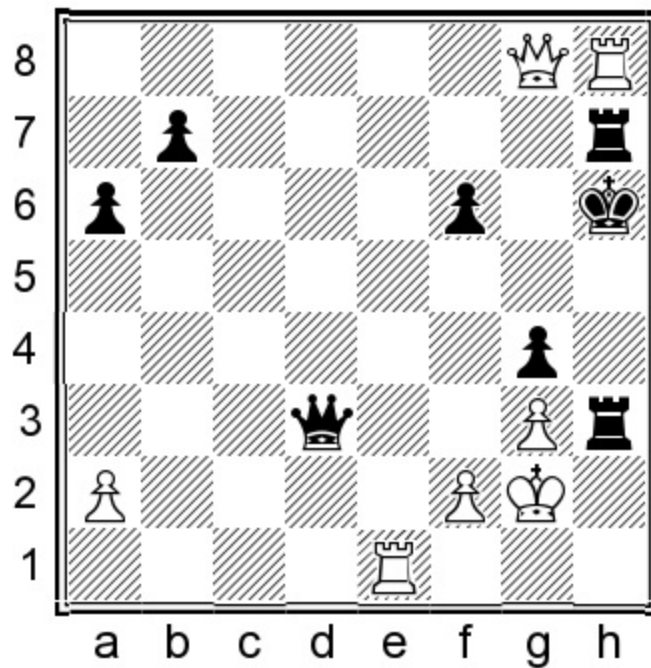
Show/Hide Solution

30...♖g6! 31.♔e2 [31.hxg6 ♜xg6 32.♖h5 ♖xf4+ 33.♔xf4 ♜xf4+-+]

31...♖xf4 32.hxg6 ♖e4-+

[David,A-Enders,P Germany 2000, 0-1]

Exercise 40



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

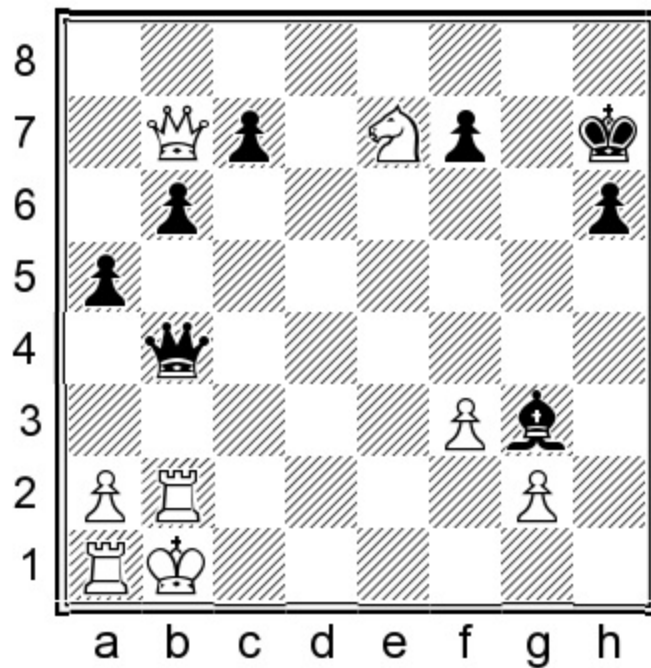
65. ♖f8+! [65. ♖e7?? ♜f3+ 66. ♔f1 ♖h1#]

65. ♖f8+! ♔g6 [65... ♔g5 66. ♖g8+ ♜g6 67. ♖xg6+ ♔xg6+-]

66. ♖g8+ ♔h5 67. ♖e5+!! fxe5 68. ♜e8+ ♔h6 69. ♜e6+ ♔h5 70. ♜xg4+ ♔h6 71. ♜g5#

[Bodek,M-Brown,M Saint Louis 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 41

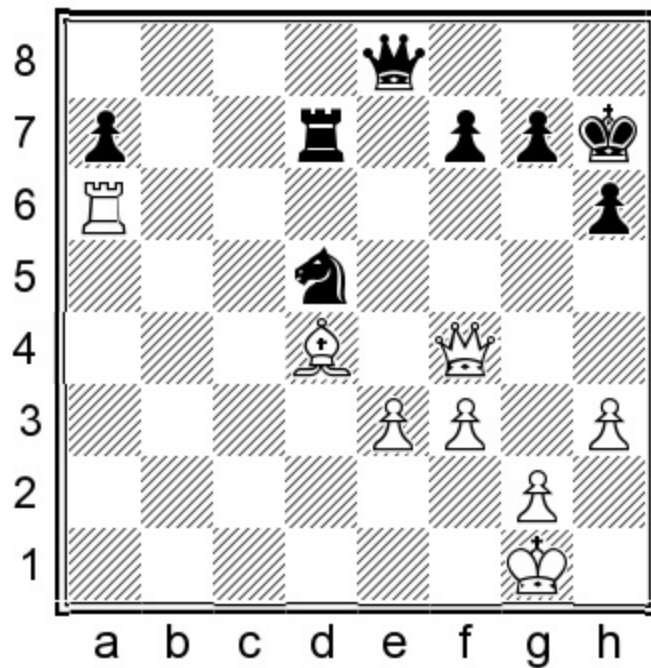


1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

39...♖e1+! 40.♔c2 ♜e2+ 41.♔c3 ♙e5+! 42.♔b3 ♞d3+ 43.♔a4 ♞c4+! 44.♔a3 ♙d6+ 45.♞b4 ♞xb4#
 [Polugaevsky,L-Shamkovich,L Leningrad 1960, 1/2]

Exercise 42



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

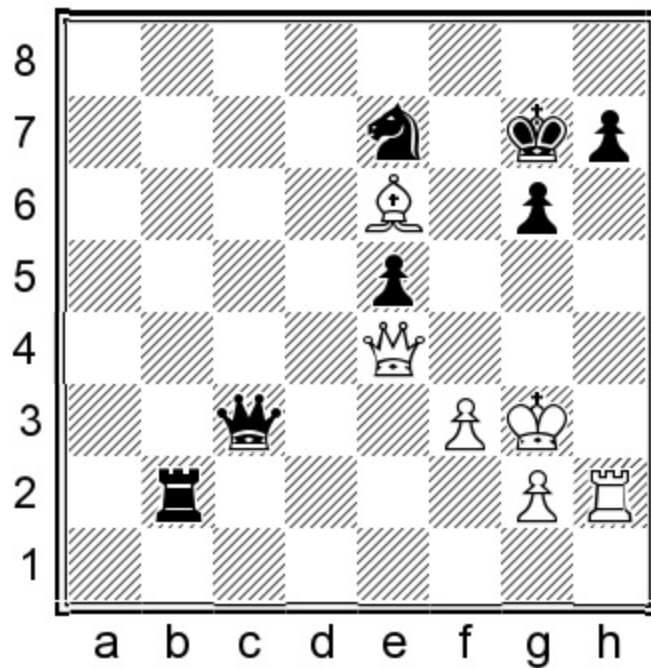
30. ♖xh6+!! [30. ♕g4? g6 31. ♕h4? (31. ♕e4 ♖xe4 32. fxe4=) 31... ♗xe3 32. ♕f6 ♗f5⇝]

30. ♖xh6+!! gxf6 31. ♕f5+ ♔g8 32. ♕g4+ ♔f8 33. ♕g7+ ♔e7 34. ♕e5+ ♔f8 [34... ♔d8 35. ♕b8+ ♔e7 36. ♕c5+ ♔f6 37. ♕xe8]

35. ♕c5+ ♖e7 36. ♕h8#

[Furman,S-Kholmov,R Leningrad 1963, 1/2]

Exercise 43



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

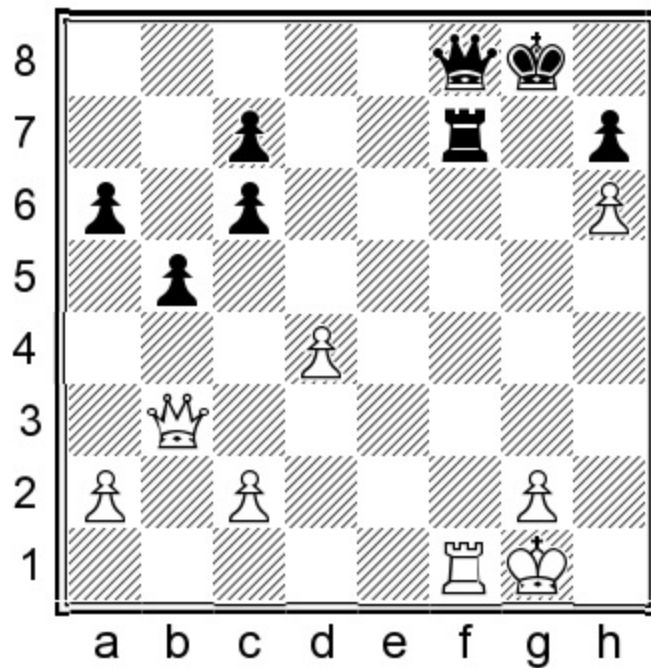
38.♖xh7+!! [38.♚h4? ♚e1+ 39.♔h3 ♚xh4+ 40.♔xh4+]

38.♖xh7+!! ♔xh7 39.♚h4+ ♔g7 40.♚xe7+ ♔h6 [40...♔h8 41.♚f8+ ♔h7 42.♚g8+ ♔h6 43.♚h8+ ♔g5 44.♚h4#]

41.♚f8+ ♔g5 42.♚d8+ ♔h6 43.♚h8+ ♔g5 44.♚h4#

[Polugaevsky,L-Gulko,B Tbilisi 1978, 1/2]

Exercise 44



1.? +-

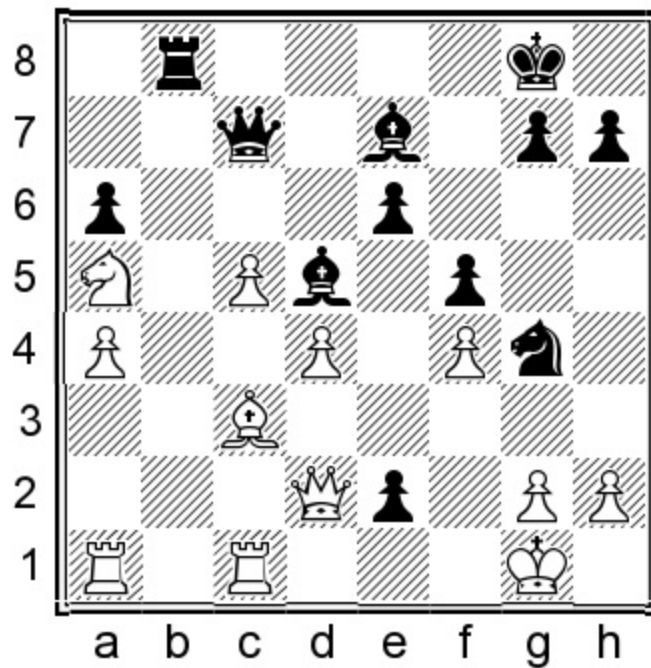
Show/Hide Solution

34. ♖g3+! [34. ♖e6? ♜e7 35. ♖c8+ ♜f8 36. ♖g4+ ♔h8 37. ♜xf8+ ♜xf8 38. ♖e6±]

34. ♖g3+! ♔h8 35. ♖e5+ ♔g8 36. ♖g5+ ♔h8 37. ♜xf7 ♜xf7 38. ♖d8+ ♜g8 39. ♖f6+ ♜g7 40. ♖xg7#

[Damjanovic,M-Lutikov,A Sarajevo 1969, 1/2]

Exercise 45



1...? -+

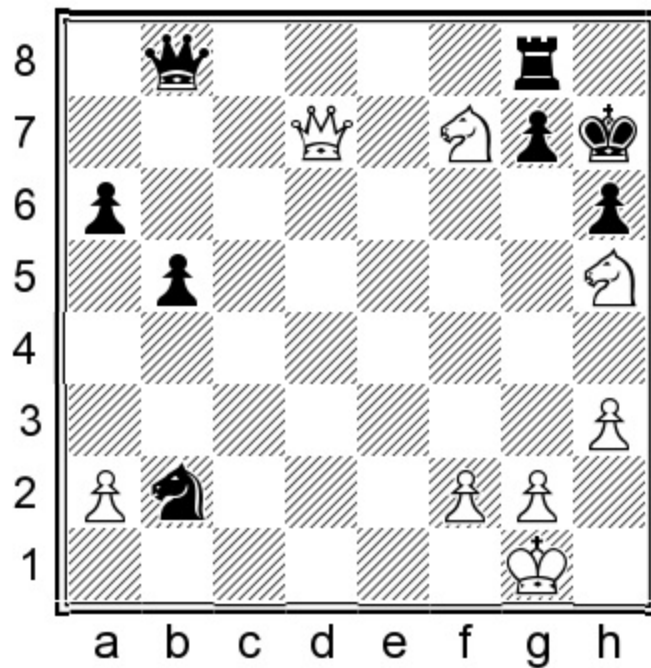
Show/Hide Solution

30...♔h4! [30...g5!? 31.♙xe2↔]

30...♔h4! 31.g3 ♔xg3!! 32.hxg3 ♙f7 33.♙xe2 ♙h5-+

[Djuric,S-Mikhalchishin,A Vrnjacka Banja 1978, 1-0]

Exercise 46



1.? +-

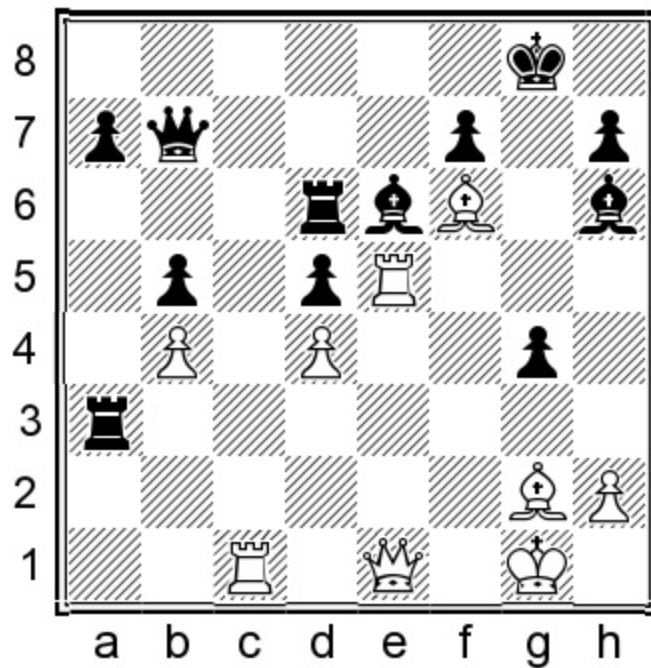
Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖f5+! [31. h4? ♜c8 32. ♗f6+ ♔g6 33. ♗xg8 ♜xd7 34. ♗e5+ ♔h7 35. ♗xd7 ♔xg8=]

31. ♖f5+! g6 32. ♜d7 gxh5 33. ♗g5+ ♔g6 34. ♜e6+ ♔xg5 35. g3 h4 36. f4+ ♔h5 37. g4+ ♜xg4+ 38. ♜xg4#

[Tal, M-Antoshin, V Moscow URS-ch 1957, 1/2]

Exercise 47



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

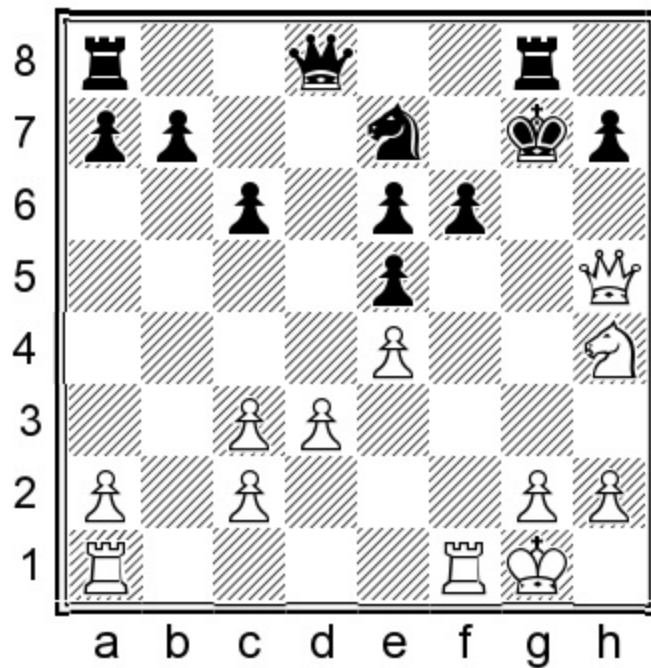
32. ♖h4! [32. ♖c5? ♔f4↔]

32. ♖h4! ♔xc1 33. ♖xg4+ ♔f8 34. ♖g7+ ♔e8 35. ♖xe6+! ♖xe6 [35... fxe6 36. ♖xb7+-]

36. ♖g8+ ♔d7 37. ♖d8+ ♔c6 38. ♔xd5#

[Beliavsky,A-Naiditsch,A Wijk aan Zee 2006, 0-1]

Exercise 48



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17. ♖xf6! ♔xf6 18. ♖f1+ ♘f5 [18... ♔g7 19. ♖f7+ ♔h8 20. ♗xh7#]

19. ♘xf5 [19. exf5+-]

19... exf5 20. ♖xf5+ ♔e7 21. ♗f7+ ♔d6 22. ♖f6+ ♔c5 23. ♗xb7! ♗b6 [23... ♗e8 24. ♗b4#]

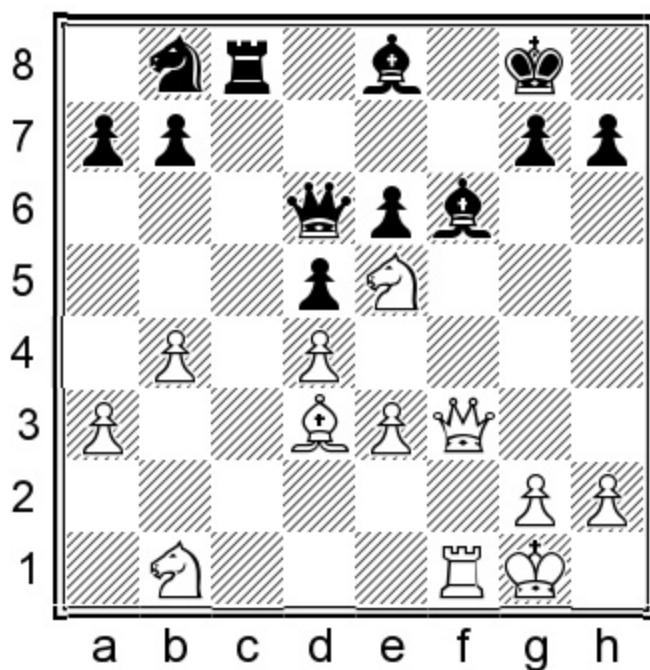
24. ♖xc6+! ♗xc6 25. ♗b4#

[Capablanca, J-Steiner, H Los Angeles 1933, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV 3

Exercise 1



1.? +-

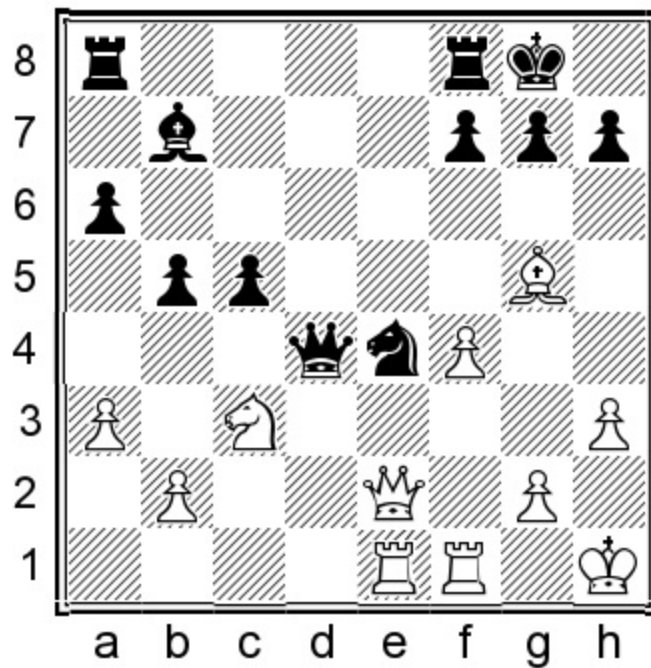
Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖h3! h6 22. ♜xf6! gxf6 23. ♚g3+! ♔h8 [23... ♔f8 24. ♘g6+-]

24. ♘f7+-

[Gvetadze,S-Javakhishvili,L Tbilisi 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 2



1.? +-

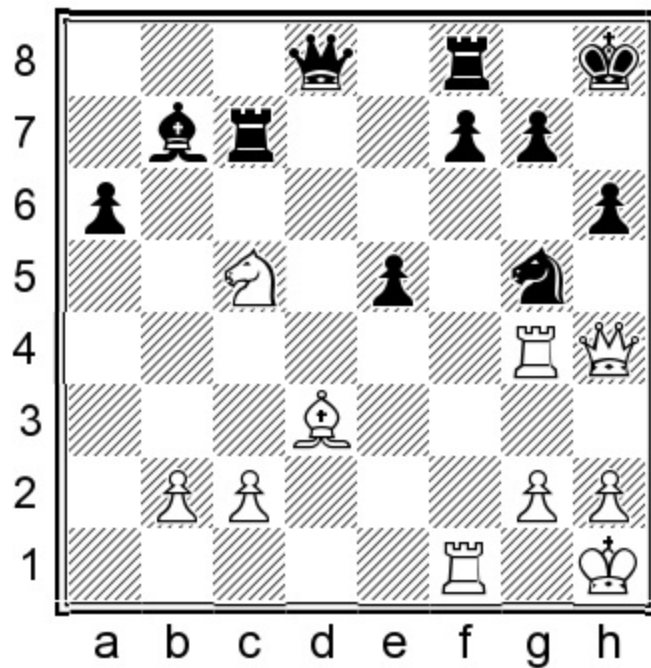
Show/Hide Solution

24. ♖xe4 ♜fe8 25. ♗e7! ♛d5? [25... ♜xe7 26. ♖f6+ gxf6 27. ♛xe7+-]

26. ♖f6+ gxf6 27. ♛g4++-

[Naumkin,I-Pescatore,L Montesilvano 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 3



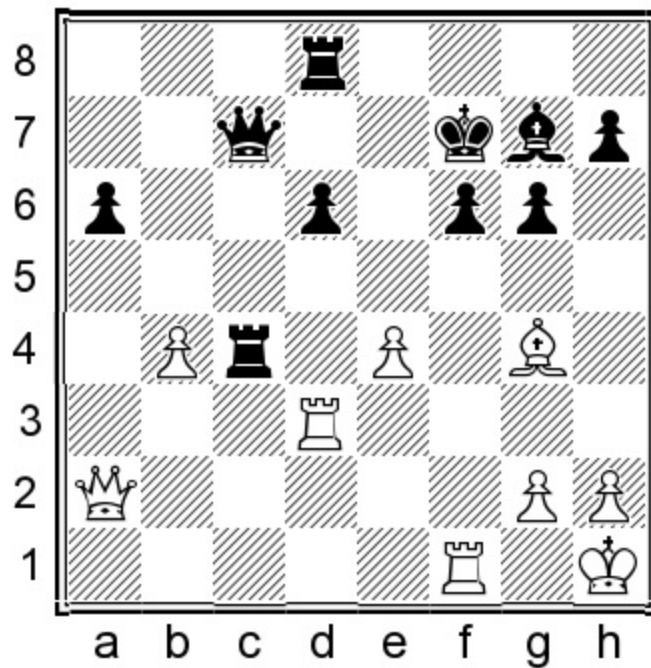
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖xb7 ♜xb7 31. ♗xg5! ♜xg5 32. ♕e4+-

[Danin,A-Simantsev,M Prague 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

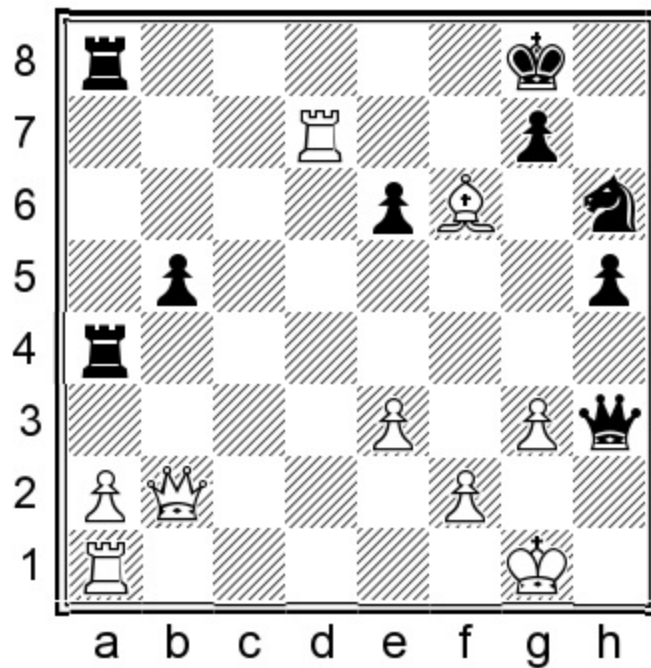
28.♙e6+!! [28.♖d4? d5=]

28.♙e6+!! ♔xe6 29.♖d4 ♕e7 [29...♖c8 30.♖c1+-; 29...d5 30.exd5+-]

30.♖xc4+-

[Beliavsky,A-Cebalo,M Slovenija 1998, 1-0]

Exercise 5



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

29...gxf6 [29...g4 30.xg7+ f8 31.e7+ e8 32.xb5#]

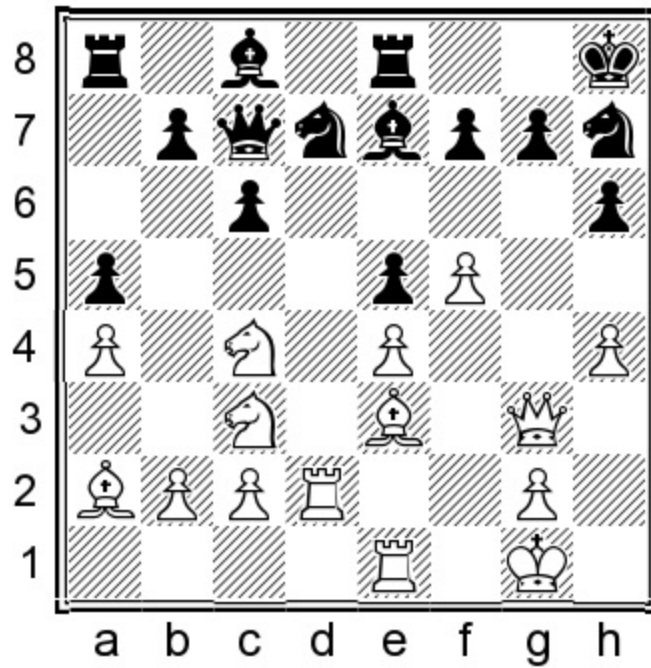
29...gxf6 30.xxf6 h2+!! 31.f1 [31.fh2 g4+]

31...h1+ 32.e2 xa2+ 33.d3 [33.xa2 xa2+ 34.d3 b1+ 35.d4 b2+--+]

33...8a3+ 34.d4 xa1+

[Murshed,N-Short,N Al Ain 2012, 0-1]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

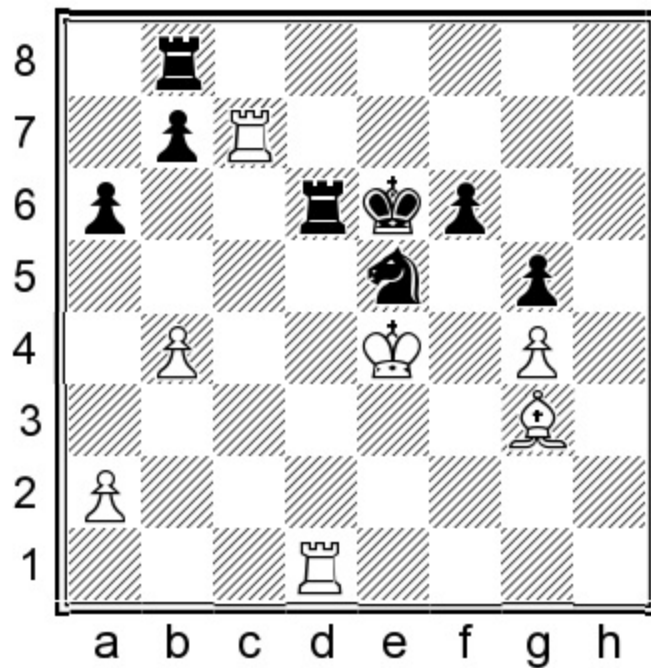
25. ♖xd7! ♚xd7

[25... ♙xd7 26. ♜xe5 ♙d6 (26... ♙f8 27. ♜xf7+ ♔g8 28. ♚xc7+-) 27. ♜xf7+ ♔g8 28. ♜xd6+-]

26. ♖d1 ♚c7 27. ♜xe5 ♙d6 28. ♖xd6 ♚xd6 29. ♜xf7+-

[Vovk, Y-Elbilia, J France 2010, 1-0]

Exercise 7



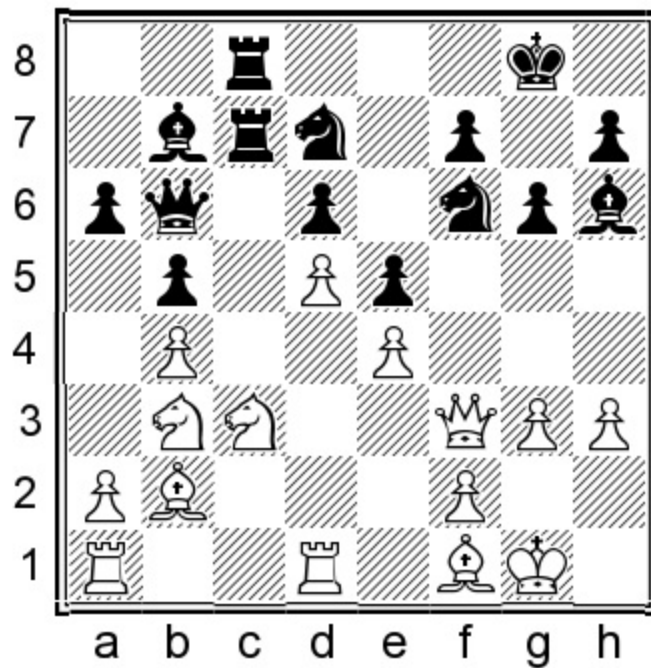
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35.♖xd6+ ♔xd6 36.♖f7!! ♔e6 37.♖xf6+! ♕xf6 38.♗xe5+ ♔e6 39.♗xb8+-

[Romanov,E-Martynov,P Stockholm 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 8



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

20...♖xc3! 21.♙xc3 ♖xc3 22.♚xc3 ♜xe4!

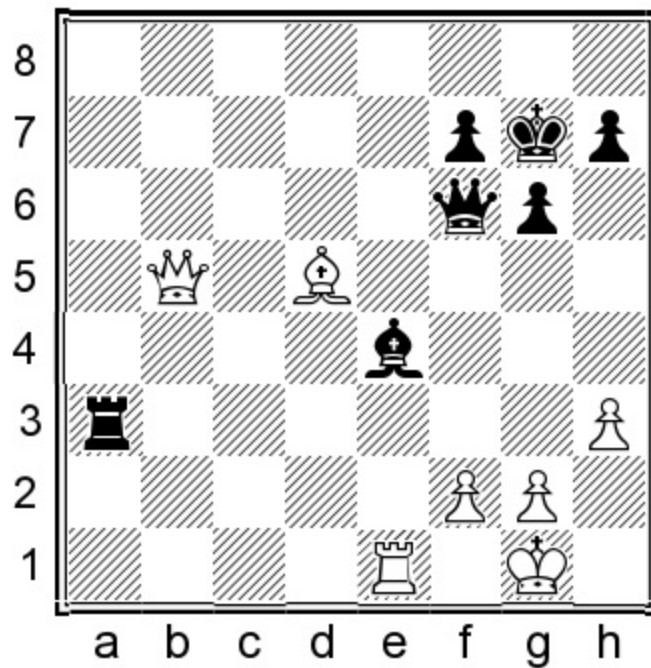
[22...♚xf2+?! 23.♙xf2 ♜xe4+ 24.♙g1 ♜xc3 25.♞d3 ♜a4 26.♜a5↔]

23.♚c2 ♜xf2! 24.♙h2 [24.♞db1 ♜xh3+ 25.♙h2 ♜f2-+; 24.♚xf2 ♙e3-+]

24...♜xd1 25.♞xd1 ♜f6±

[Moroni,L-Onischuk,V Minsk 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 9



1...? -+

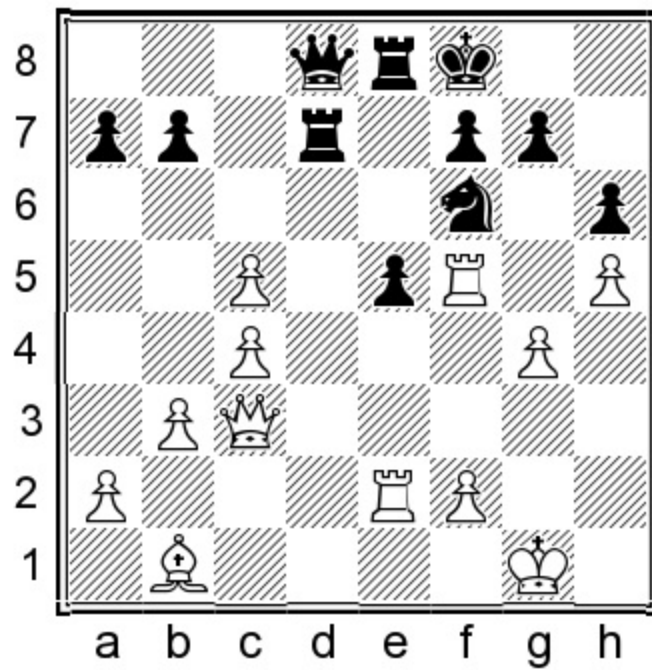
Show/Hide Solution

31...♖a1! 32.♜f1 [32.♜xa1 ♜xa1+ 33.♔h2 ♜e5+-+]

32...♜xf1+ 33.♔xf1 ♜d4!-+

[Kumaran,B-Brunello,S Chennai 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 10



1...? -+

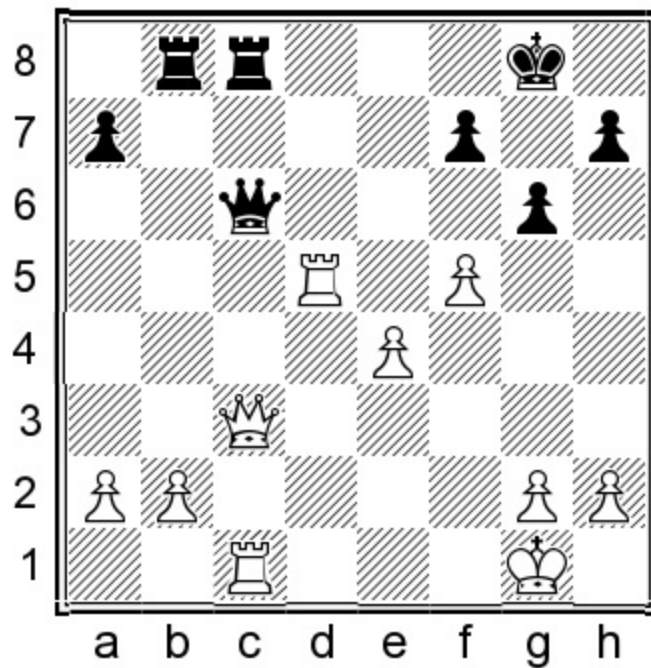
Show/Hide Solution

28...♞d1+ 29.♞e1 ♚d4! 30.♚b4 [30.♚xd4 ♞xe1+ 31.♜g2 exd4-+]

30...a5 31.♚xa5 ♞xb1! 32.♞xb1 ♚xg4+ 33.♜f1 ♚xf5-+

[Tikkanen,H-Lyrberg,P Sweden 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 11



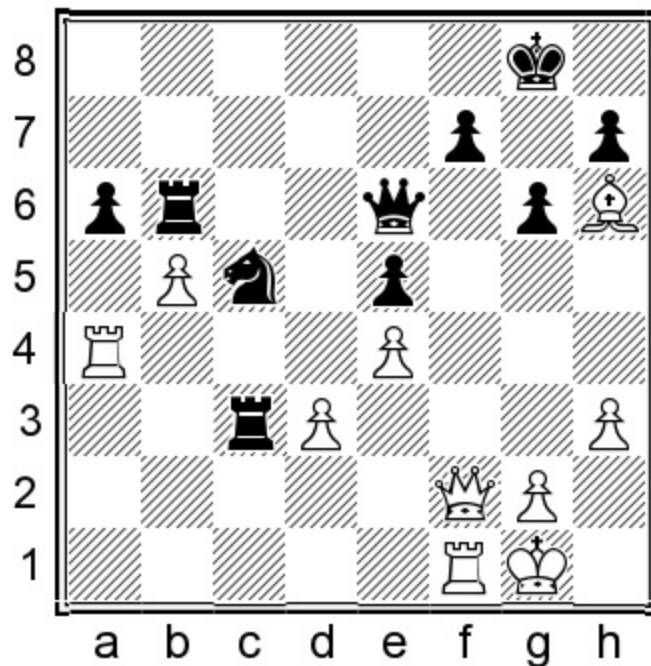
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

27...♙b6+! 28.♞c5 ♜xc5 29.♞xc5 ♞c8 30.♞xb6 ♞xc1+ 31.♚f2 axb6-+

[Donner,J-Huebner,R Buesum 1968, 0-1]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

36.♖a3!! [36.♖d4! ♖xd3 37.♖xd3 ♘xd3 38.♙c2 ♘b4 39.♙c7+-]

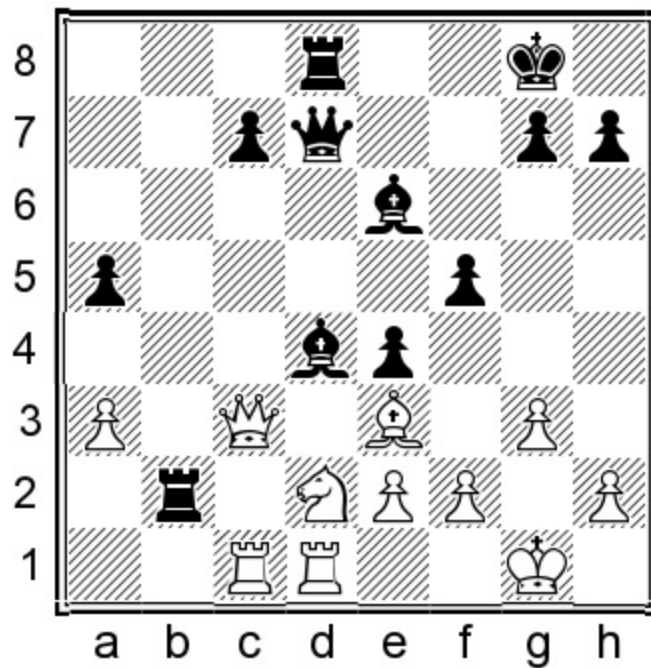
36.♖a3!! ♘xd3

[36...♖xa3 37.♙xc5 ♙d6 (37...♖xd3 38.♙f8#) 38.♙c8+-; 36...♘b3 37.d4! (37.♖xa6+-) 37...exd4 38.♖xb3 ♖xb3 39.♙xd4+-]

37.♙h4!+-

[Bologan,V-Smirnov,P Moscow 2003, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

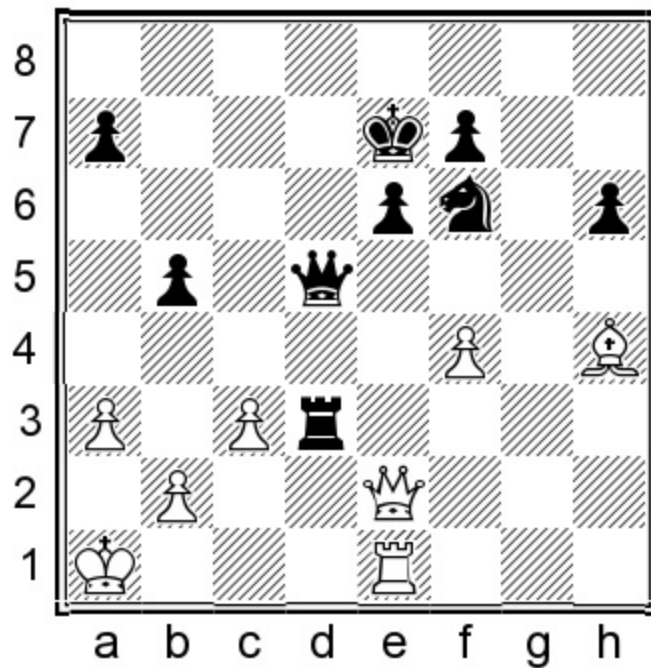
Show/Hide Solution

21. ♔xd4 ♚xd4 22. ♘f1!! ♛xc3 [22... ♛xd1 23. ♖xd1 ♜xd1 24. ♛xb2+-]

23. ♜xd8+ ♔f7 24. ♜xc3+-

[Kulon,K-Balinski,D Krakow 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 14



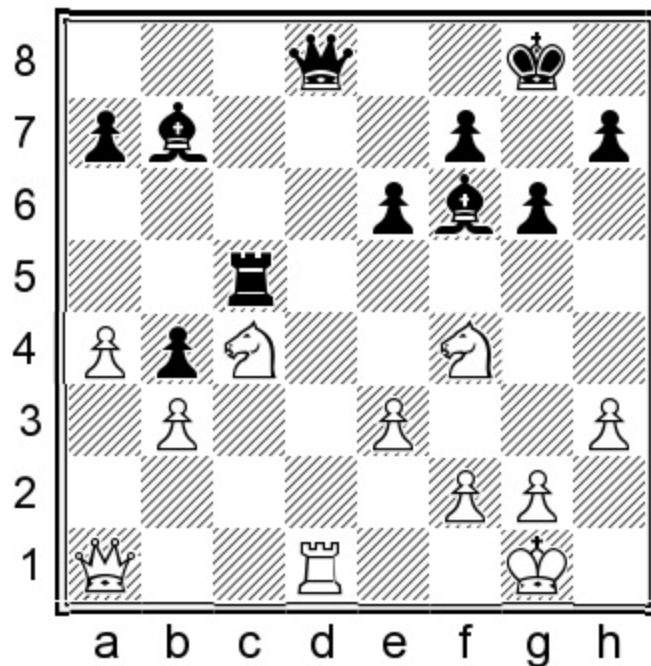
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

26. ♔e5! ♖d1+ 27. ♖xd1 ♔xd1+ 28. ♕a2 ♔d5+ 29. ♔xd5 exd5 30. f5!+-

[Paravyan,D-Erigaisi,A Moscow 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1...? -+

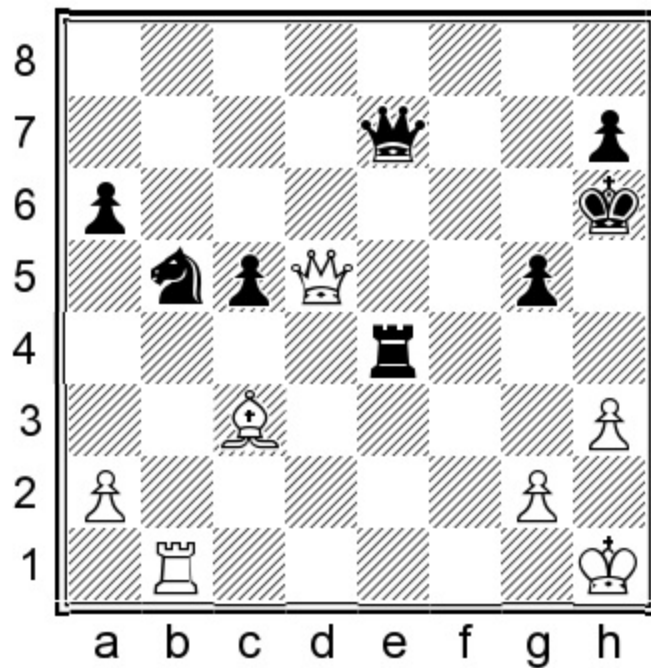
Show/Hide Solution

26...♞d5! 27.♞xd5 exd5 28.♜e5? [28.♜b2 d4 29.♞d1 g5 30.♜h5 dxe3 31.♜xf6+ (31.♞xd8+ ♔xd8 32.fxe3 ♔d5-+)] 31...♞xf6 32.fxe3 ♔xg2! 33.♜xg2 ♞xb2+-+]

28...♞d6 29.♜fd3 ♔a6! 30.♞e1 ♔xe5 31.♜xe5 ♞xe5-+

[Capablanca,J-Spielmann,R Bad Kissingen 1928, 0-1]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

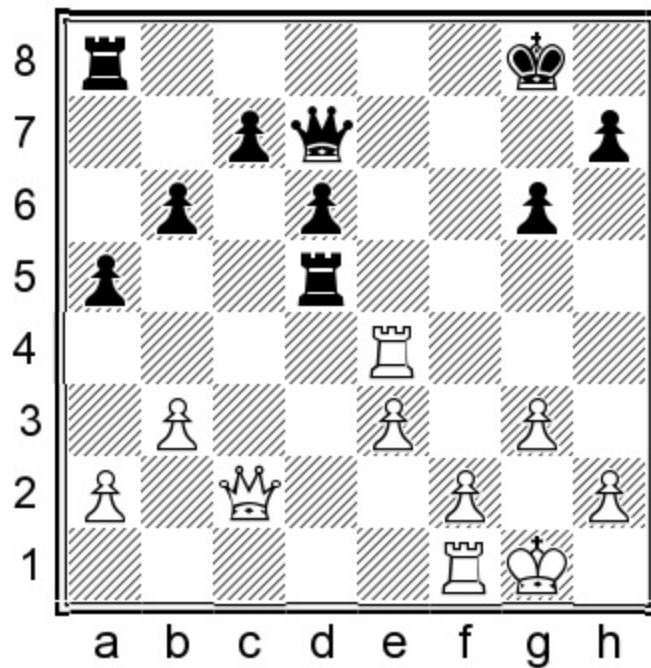
Show/Hide Solution

31.♔f6! ♚xf6 [31...♖e1+ 32.♖xe1 ♚xe1+ 33.♕h2 ♚e3 34.♔e5+-]

32.♚xe4 ♜c3 33.♚f3! ♚xf3 34.♖b6+! ♔h5 35.gxf3+-

[Kovalev,V-Kramnik,V Dortmund 2018, 1/2]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

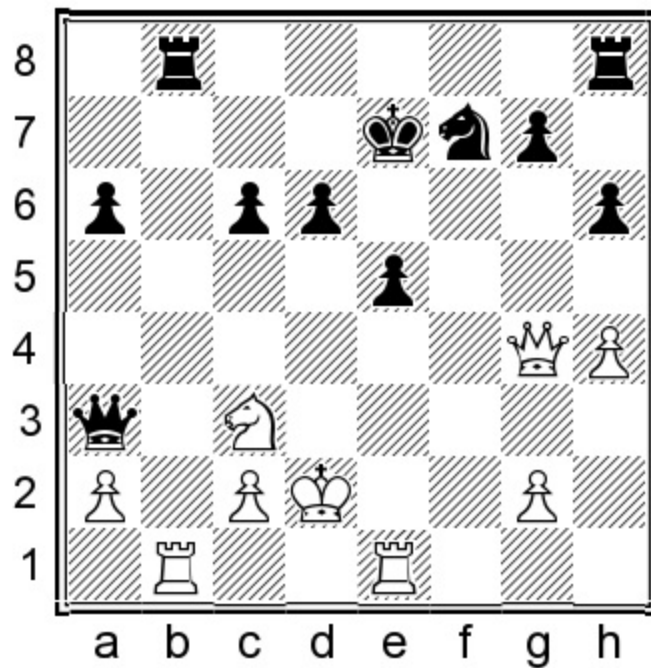
Show/Hide Solution

27. ♖c4 c6 [27... ♗f7 28. ♙e7 b5 29. ♗c6+-]

28. ♙e7! ♗xe7 29. ♗xc6 ♙d2 30. ♗xa8+ ♔g7 31. ♗c6+-

[Barcza,G-Lilienthal,A Budapest 1949, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

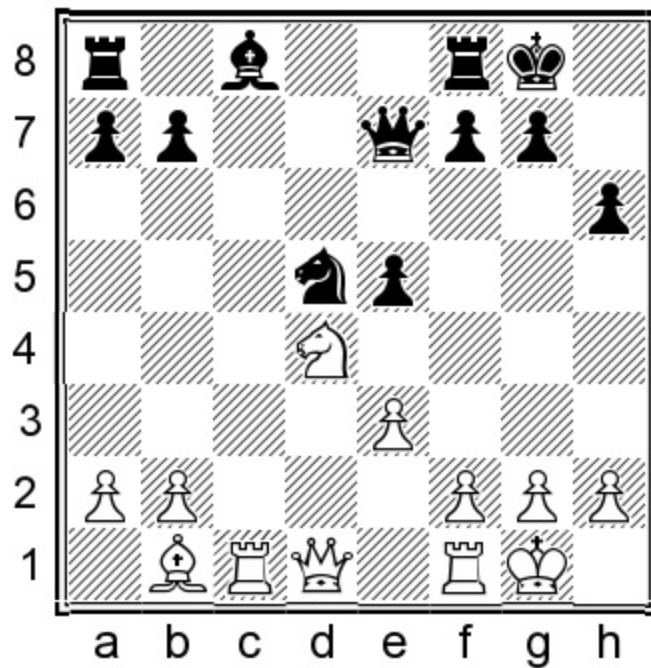
24.♖f1! ♜hf8

[24...♚c5 25.♞xf7+! ♔xf7 26.♞d7+ ♔g6 27.h5+ ♔h7 (27...♔xh5 28.♞f5+ g5 29.♞h1#) 28.♞f5+ ♔g8 29.♞xb8#]

25.♞xb8 ♞xb8 26.♞f3+-

[Vasiukov,E-Zurakhov,V Moscow 1960, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1.? +-

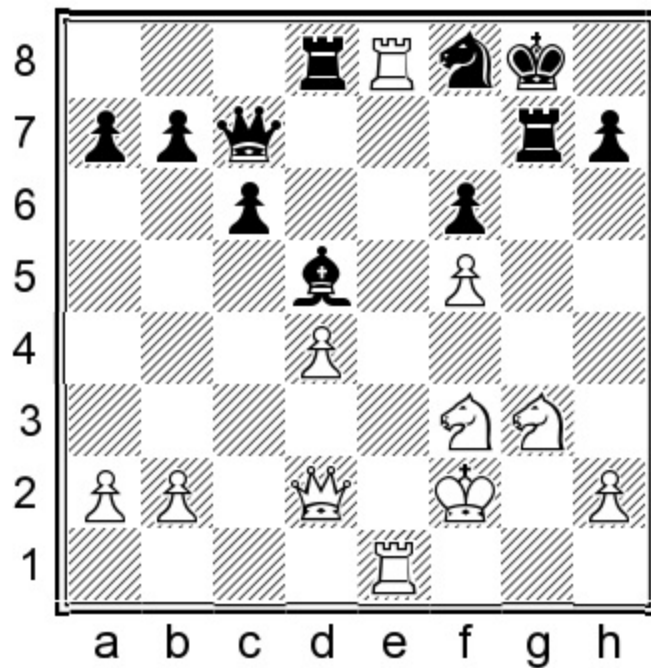
Show/Hide Solution

17.♖xc8! [17.♘f5? ♗xf5 18.♗xf5 ♖fd8=]

17.♖xc8! ♖axc8 18.♘f5 ♔e6 19.♗xd5! ♗xd5 20.♘e7+ ♔h8 21.♘xd5+-

[Kupchik,A-Capablanca,J New York 1916, 1/2]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

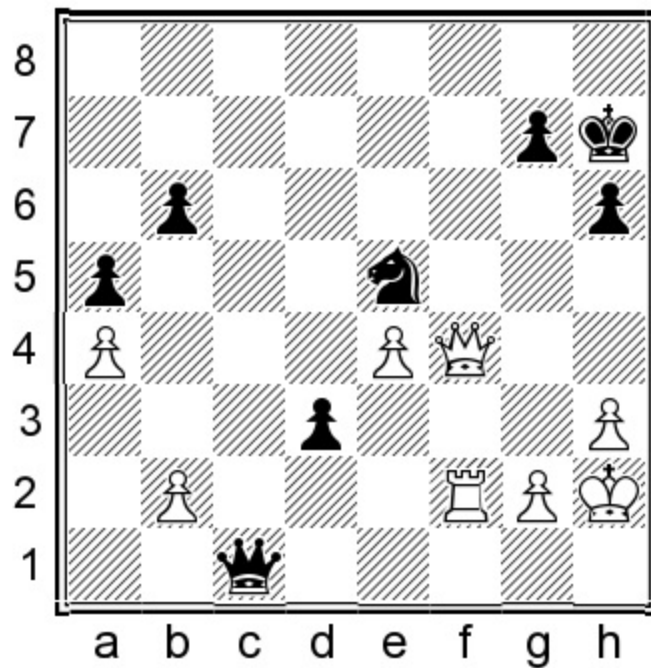
29. ♖h5! ♜xe8

[29...♜f7 30. ♖xf6+! ♜xf6 31. ♚g5+ ♚g7 (31...♔f7 32. ♜xd8 ♚xd8 33. ♖e5+ ♔e8 34. ♖xc6+-) 32. ♚xg7+ ♔xg7 33. ♜xd8+-]

30. ♖xf6+ ♔f7 31. ♖xe8+-

[Jussupow,A-Spassky,B Montpellier 1985, 1-0]

Exercise 21



1...? -+

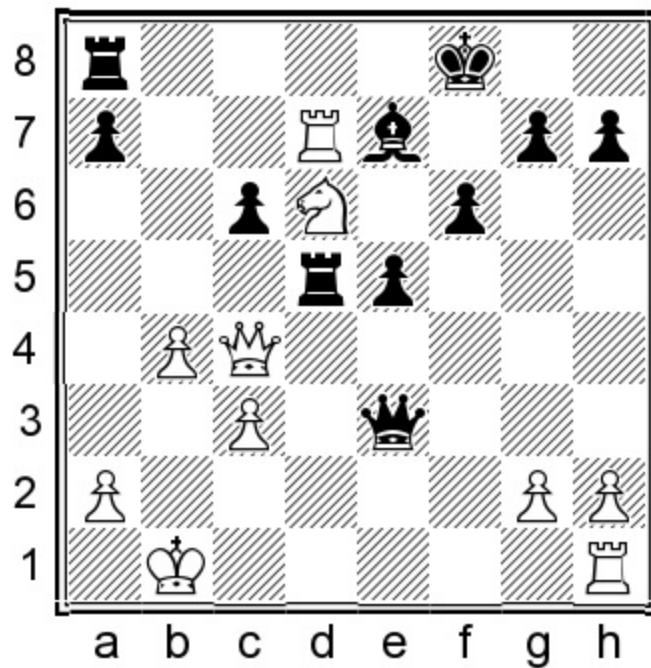
Show/Hide Solution

42... ♔xf4+! 43. ♖xf4 d2 44. ♖f1 ♘c4! 45. ♖d1 [45.b3 ♘e3-+]

45... ♘e3 46. ♖xd2 ♘f1+ 47. ♔g1 ♘xd2-+

[Edouard,R-Ernst,S Wijk aan Zee 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25.♖xe7! ♜d8! [25...♙xe7 26.♘f5+-]

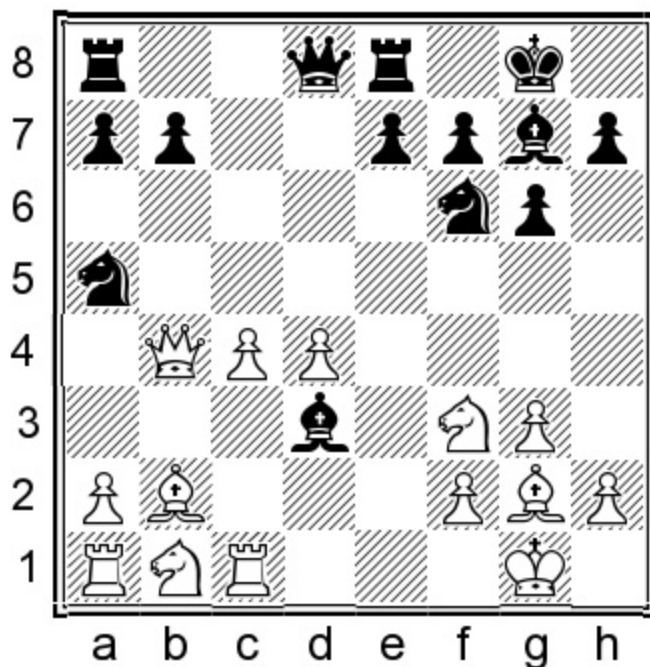
26.♖f7+! ♙g8 27.♖xg7+! ♙h8 [27...♙xg7 28.♘f5+-]

28.♖g3!+-

[Jones,G-Dobrov,V Wijk aan Zee 2017, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 23



1...? -+

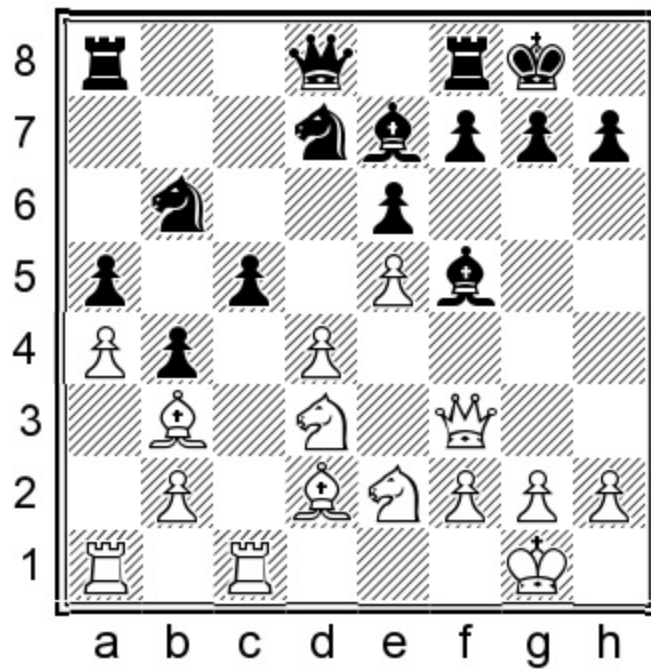
Show/Hide Solution

14...♙xc4! 15.♘bd2 [15.♖xc4 ♘d5! 16.♚a4 b5! 17.♚xb5 ♖b8 18.♚c5 ♘xc4 19.♚xc4 ♖xb2-+]

15...♙d5-+

[Speelman,J-Firouzja,A Astana 2019, 0-1]

Exercise 24



1...? -+

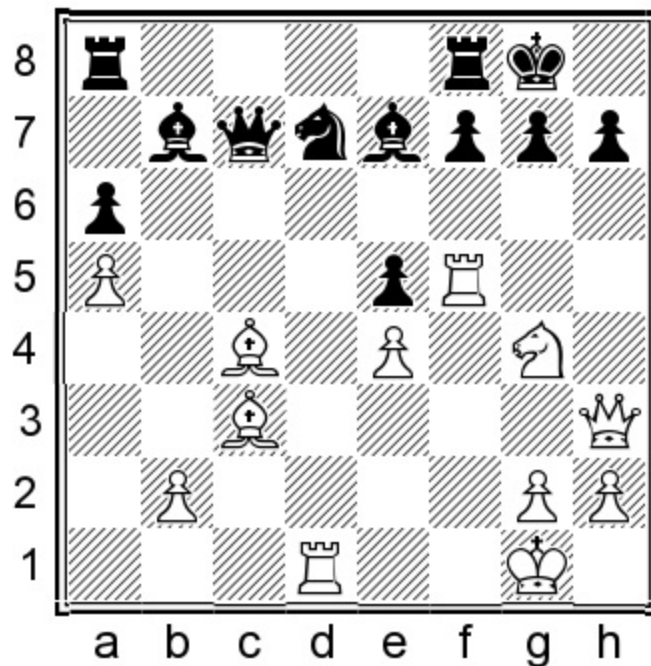
Show/Hide Solution

16...c4 17.♖xc4 [17.♙xc4 ♘xc4 18.♖xc4 ♙xd3 19.♚xd3 ♘xe5-+]

17...♙xd3 18.♚xd3 ♘xe5-+

[Karpman,V-Kogan,A Israel 2009, 0-1]

Exercise 25



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

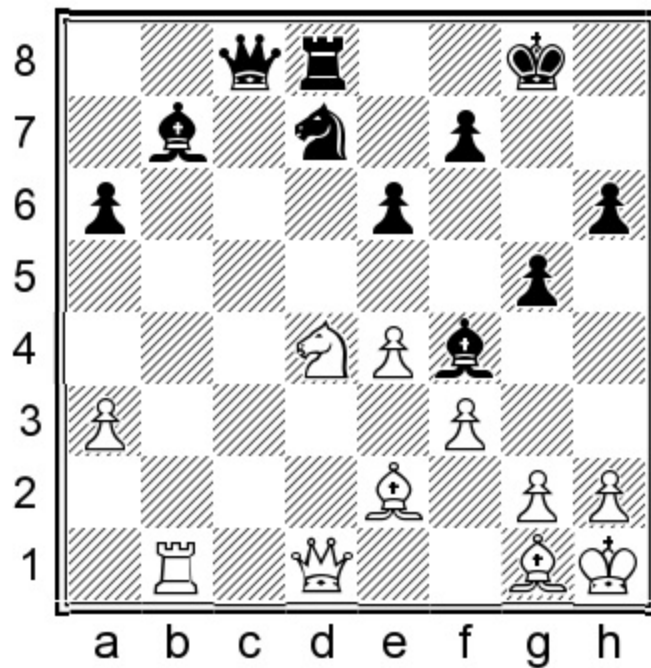
26. ♖xf7+! [26. ♘h6+! gxh6 27. ♖xd7! ♚xd7 28. ♖xf7! ♚xh3 29. ♖xe7+ ♖f7 (29... ♔h8 30. ♖xe5+ ♖f6 31. ♖xf6#) 30. gxh3+-]

26. ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 27. ♖xf7 ♔xf7 28. ♖xd7! ♚c5+ [28... ♚xd7 29. ♘xe5+-]

29. ♔h1+-

[Sokolov,A-Markowski,T Germany 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 26



1.?±

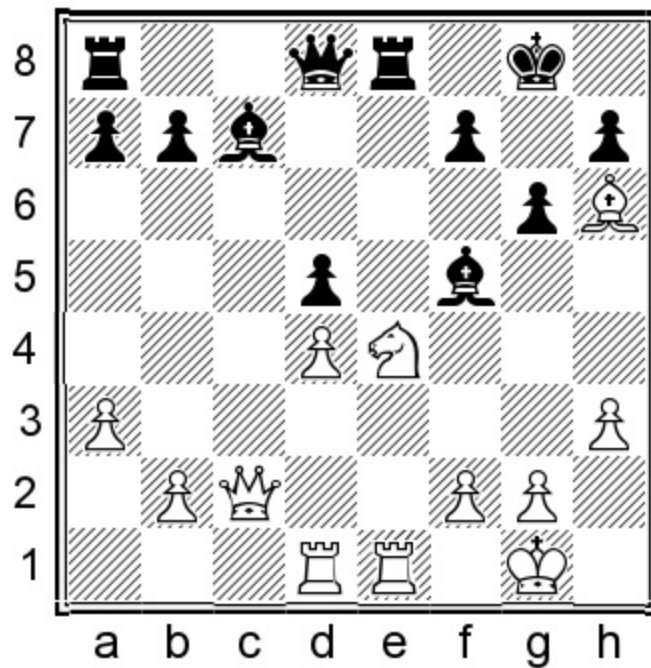
Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖xe6! [30. ♜b3? ♗c5 31. ♜c4 ♜d7 32. ♗b3 ♗xb3 33. ♜xb3=]

30. ♖xe6! fxe6 31. ♜b3! ♗e5 32. ♜xb7 ♜xb7 33. ♜xb7 ♜d2 34. ♙xa6 ♜d1 35. ♜b3±

[Sakelsek, T-Spraggett, K Andorra 2005, 1/2]

Exercise 27



1.?±

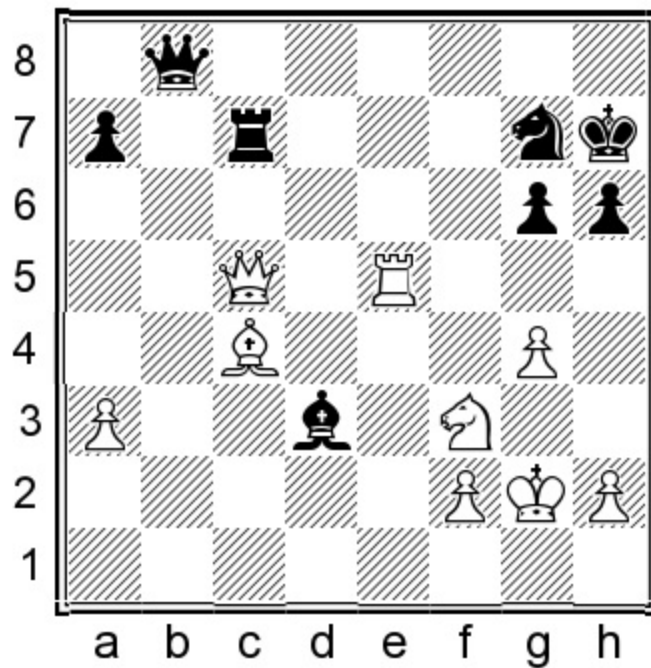
Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖xc7! ♕xe4! [22... ♖xc7? 23. ♗f6+ ♖h8 24. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 25. ♕g7+! ♖xg7 26. ♗xe8+ ♖f8 27. ♗xc7+–]

23. ♖xb7± [Ligterink,G-Pachman,L Amsterdam 1994, 1–0]

[23. ♖f4±]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

34.♔g8+! [34.♖b5 ♖c8]

34.♔g8+! ♔xg8 [34...♔h8 35.♖d4±; 34...♖xg8 35.♖xc7+-]

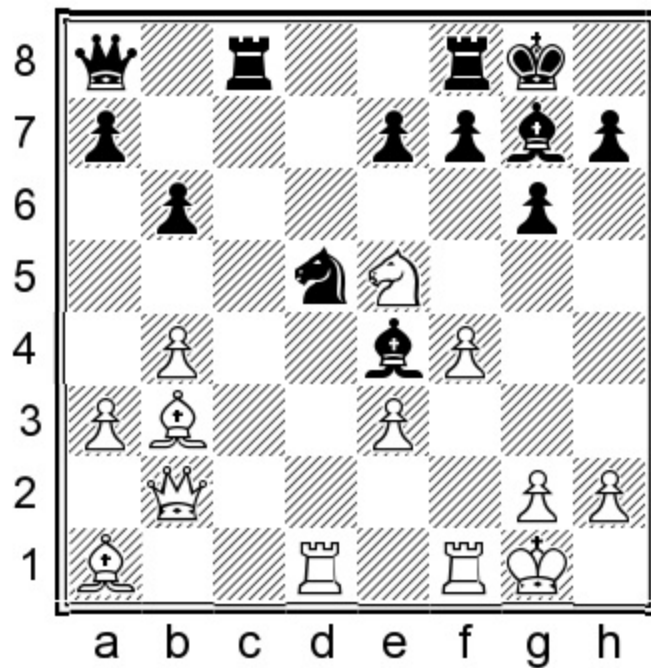
35.♖d5+ ♔h7?

[35...♖f7! 36.♖e7 ♖f4 37.♖xf7+! (37.♖xf7? ♖xg4+ 38.♔h1 ♔e4!!=) 37...♖xf7 38.♖xf7 ♔xf7 39.♔e5+-]

36.♖xd3±

[Bisguier,A-Tal,M Tallinn 1971, 1/2]

Exercise 29

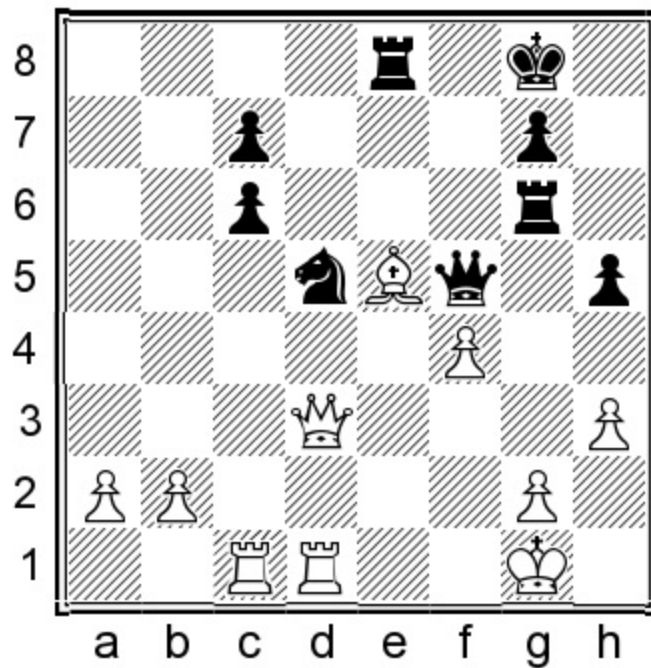


1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

28. ♕xd5! ♕xd5 29. ♖xd5! ♜xd5 30. ♘xg6!! ♕xb2 31. ♘xe7+ ♔g7 32. ♕xb2+ f6 33. ♘xd5+-
 [Idani,P-Tate,A Pardubice 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 30



1...? -+

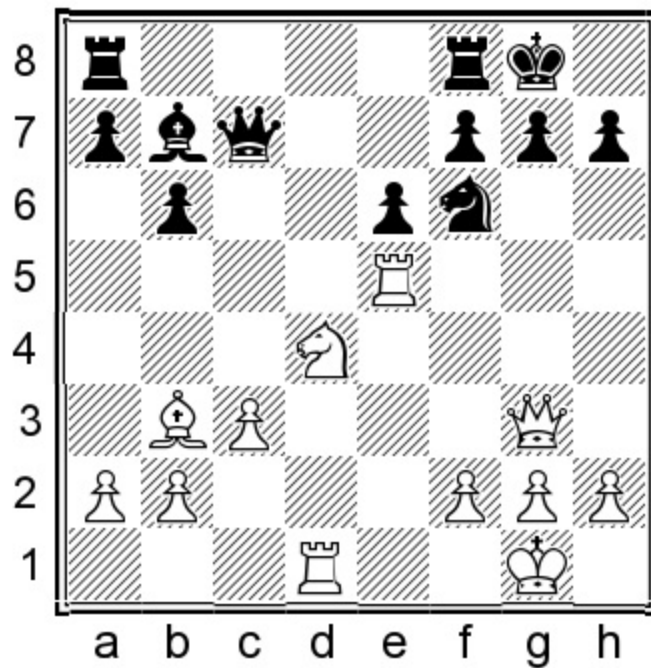
Show/Hide Solution

31...♖xe5! 32.fxe5 ♜xg2+! 33.♔h1 [33.♔xg2 ♘f4+ 34.♔h2 ♘xd3-+]

33...♞f2-+

[Sakelsek,T-Abdelnabbi,I Al Ain 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 31



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

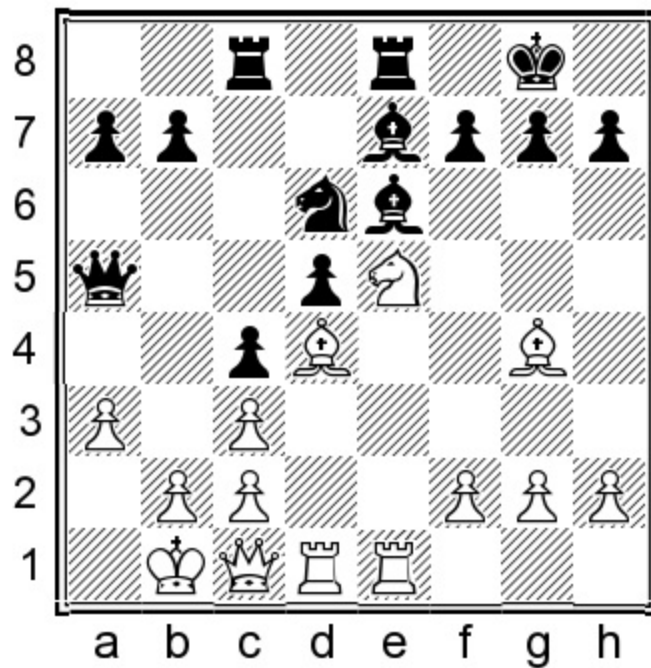
19. ♖xe6! fxe6 20. ♖xe6 ♔xg3

[20... ♘d5 21. ♕xc7 ♘xc7 22. ♖c6++-]

21. ♖xf6+ ♔h8 22. ♖xf8+ ♖xf8 23. hxg3+-

[Westerinen,H-Olsen,H Gentofte 1999, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

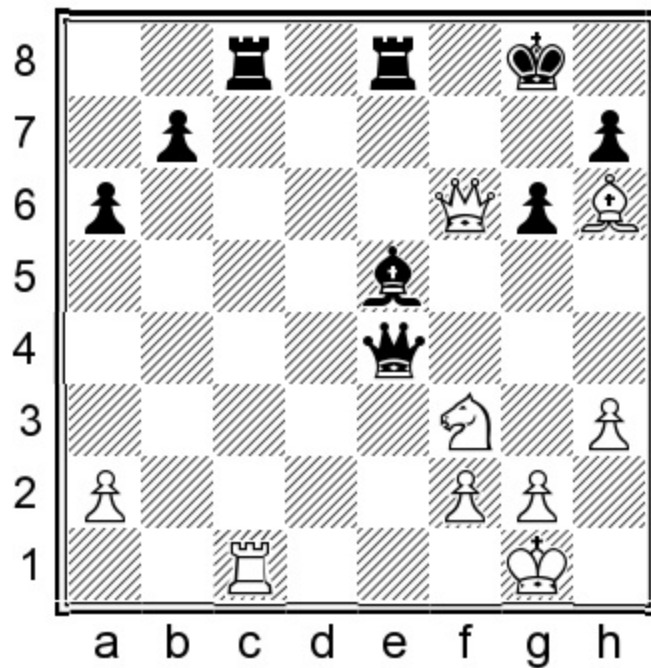
19. ♖xf7! ♕xg4 [19... ♕xf7 20. ♖xe7! ♖xe7 21. ♔g5+-]

20. ♖xd6 ♕xd6 [20... ♕xd1 21. ♖xc8+-]

21. ♔g5+-

[Caruana,F-Duda,J GCT Rapid Paris 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 33



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

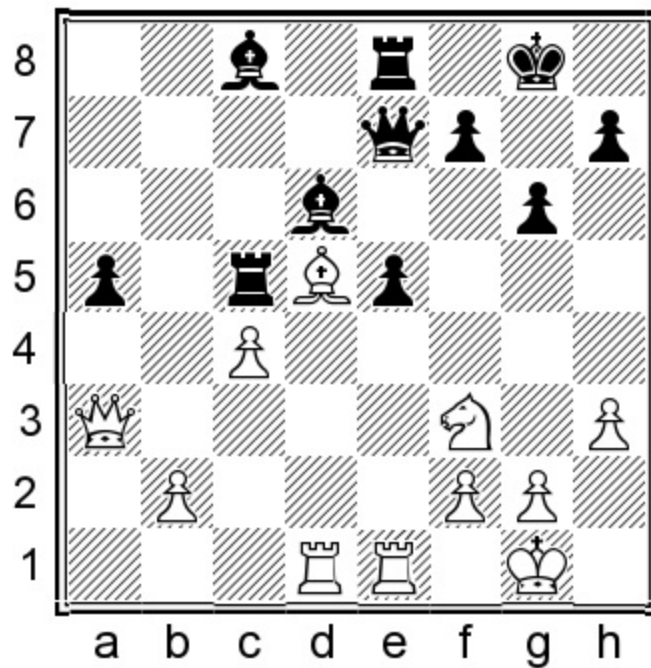
1. ♖e6+! ♜xe6 [1... ♔h8 2. ♖xc8!]

2. ♜xc8+ ♔f7 [2... ♜e8 3. ♜xe8+ ♔f7 4. ♘g5+ ♔xe8 5. ♘xe4+-]

3. ♘g5+-

[Gonzalez,I-Pulido,A La Habana 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 34



1.? +-

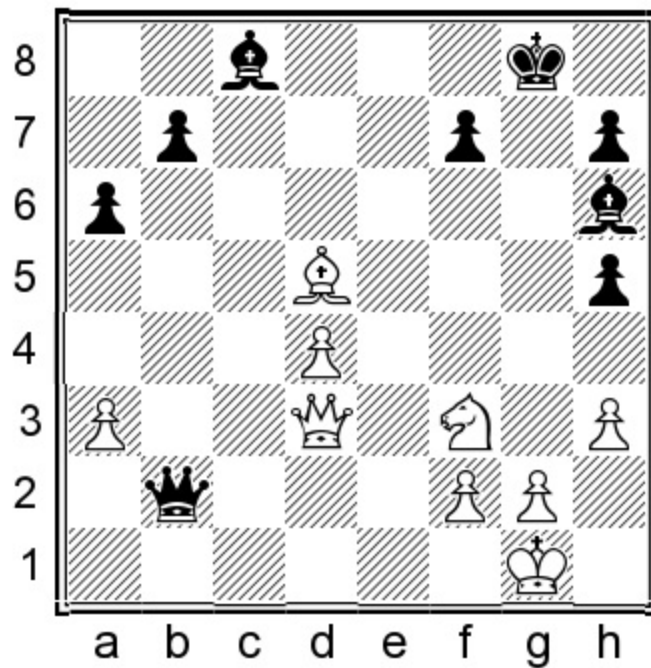
Show/Hide Solution

25. ♔xf7+! ♚xf7 [25... ♖xf7 26. ♖xd6 ♚xd6 27. ♗g5+ ♖g8 28. ♗e4+-]

26. ♖xd6 ♚xc4 27. ♗d2! ♚b4 28. ♚xb4 axb4 29. ♗e4+-

[Jones,G-McShane,L London 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 35



1.? +-

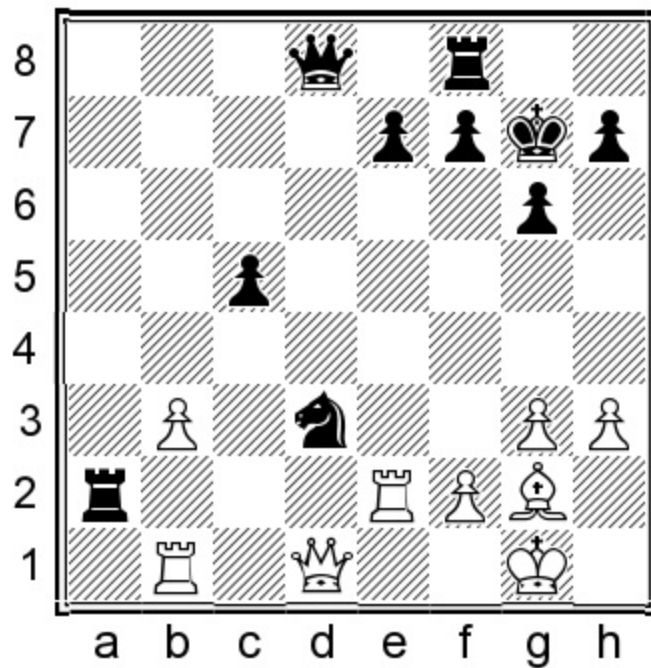
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf7+! ♔xf7 2. ♚xh7+ ♕g7 3. ♚xh5+ ♔f8 [3... ♔e7 4. ♚c5+ ♔d8 (4... ♔d7 5. ♚f5+ ♔c7 6. ♚f7+-) 5. ♚g5+-]

4. ♚c5+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 36



1...? -+

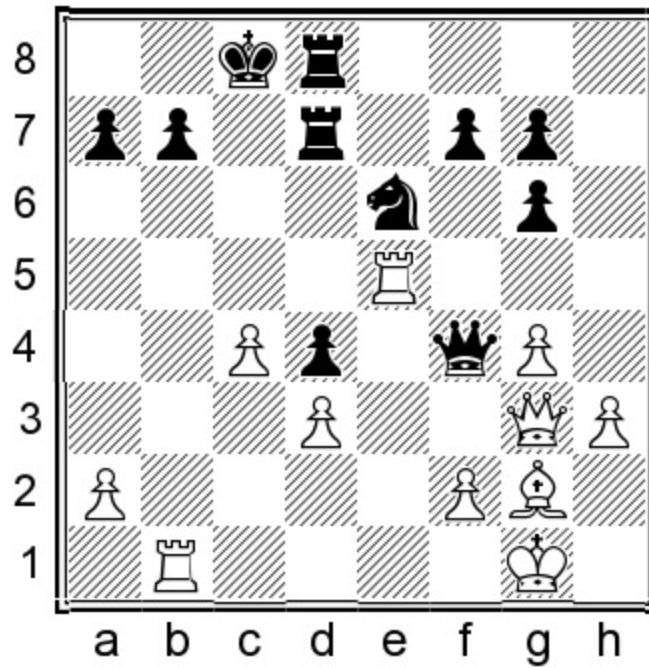
Show/Hide Solution

22...♖c1!! 23.♔xc1 [23.♖e1 ♜e2+! 24.♔h2 ♜d2-+; 23.♖xc1 ♔xd1+ 24.♖xd1 ♖xe2-+]

23...♖xe2-+

[Batsiashvili,N-Zhukova,N Chakvi 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 37



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

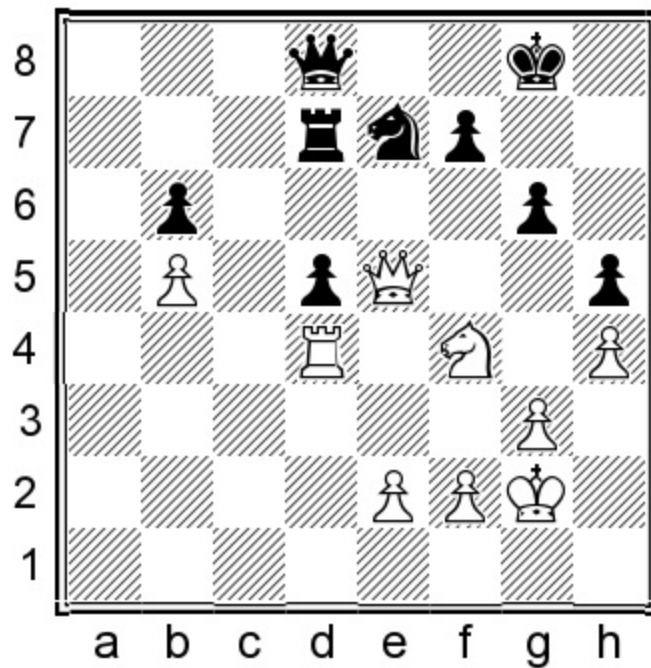
26. ♖c5+! ♔b8 [26... ♘xc5 27. ♙xf4+-]

27. ♙xb7! ♚xg3+ [27... ♜xb7 28. ♜xb7+ ♔xb7 29. ♙g2+ ♔b8 30. ♜b5+ ♔c7 31. ♙b7+ ♔d6 32. ♜d5#]

28. ♙g2+!+-

[Tartakower,S-Winter,W Hastings White Rock Pavilion 1935, 1-0]

Exercise 38



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

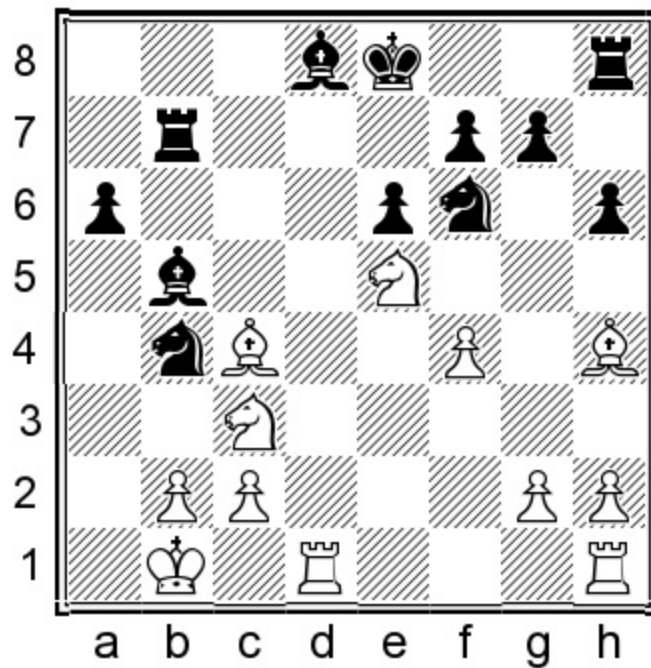
35.e4! dxe4 [35...♙c7 36.♙xc7 ♖xc7 37.♘xd5 ♘xd5 38.♗xd5 ♖c4 39.♗d6 ♖xe4 40.♗xb6+-]

36.♘e6!! fxe6 [36...♖xd4 37.♙g7#]

37.♙xe6+ ♔f8 38.♗xd7+-

[Varnusz,E-Domotor,J Hungary 1974, 1-0]

Exercise 39

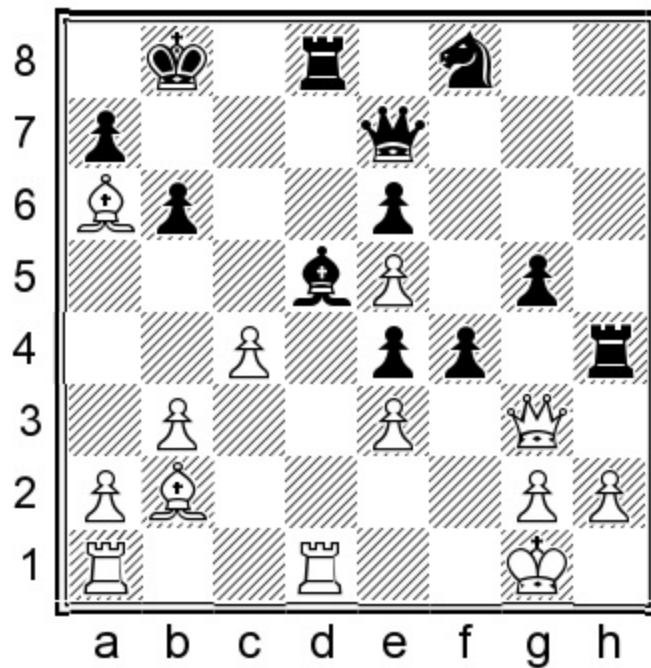


1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖xb5 axb5 20. ♗xb5+! ♜xb5 21. ♝xd8+! ♔xd8 22. ♖xf7+ ♕e7 23. ♖xh8+-
 [Shankland,S-Maghsoodloo,P Biel 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 40



1.? +-

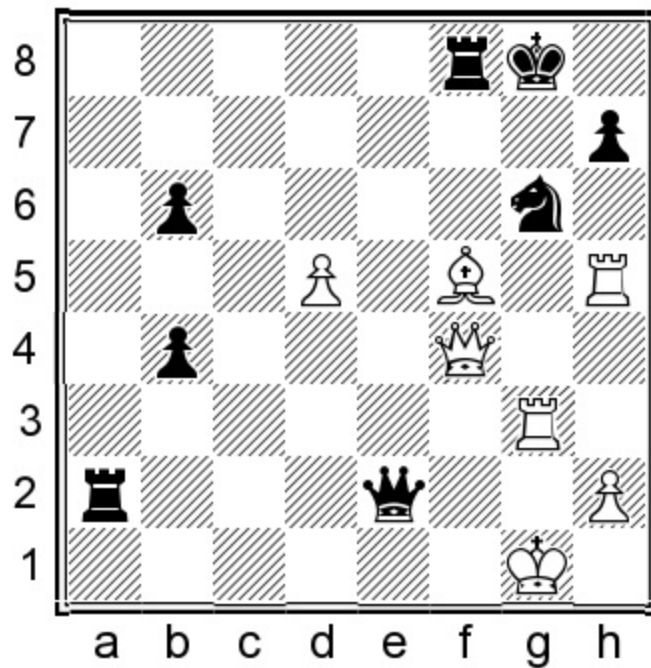
Show/Hide Solution

1.♔a3 fxg3 [1...♚xa3 2.♚xg5+-; 1...♚g7 2.exf4 ♖xf4 3.cxd5+-; 1...♚h7 2.♚xg5 ♜e8 3.cxd5 ♜xh2 4.♚xf4+-]

2.♔xe7 gxh2+ 3.♔h1+-

[Bagirov,V-Eskola,R Berlin 1991, 1-0]

Exercise 41



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

32. ♖xg6+! [32. ♘e6+ ♜xe6 33. ♛xf8+! ♔xf8 34. dxe6+-]

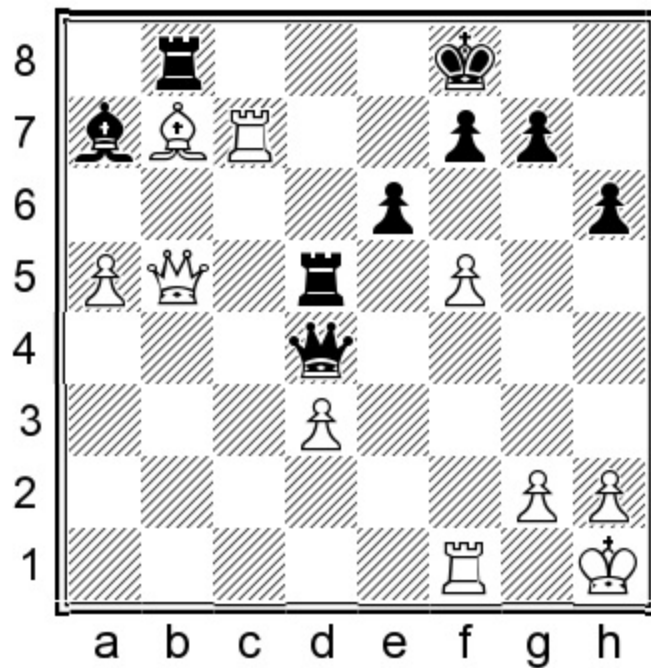
32. ♖xg6+! hxg6 33. ♖h8+!! ♔g7 [33... ♔xh8 34. ♛h6+ ♔g8 35. ♛xg6+ ♔h8 36. ♛h7#]

34. ♛h6+ ♔f6 35. ♖xf8+ ♔e7 36. ♛g7++-

[Matlakov, M-Khismatullin, D Russian league 2012, 1-0]

[36. d6+ ♔xd6 37. ♛f4++-]

Exercise 42



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

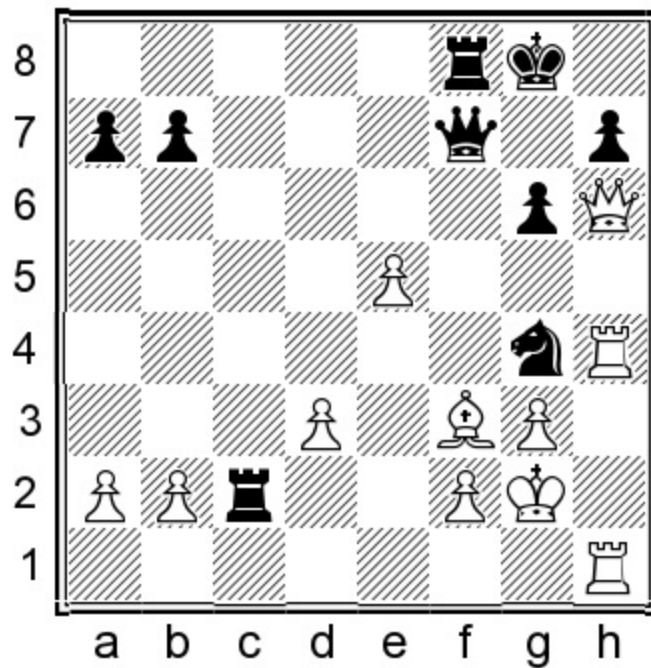
33. ♖xf7+! ♔xf7 [33... ♔g8 34. ♕c6!+-]

34. fxe6+ ♔xe6 [34... ♔e7 35. ♕xd5+-]

35. ♕xd5+ ♖xd5 36. ♖e1+ ♔d6 37. ♕a6++-

[Bacallao Alonso, Y-Gonzalez Garcia, J Catalanian league 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 43



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

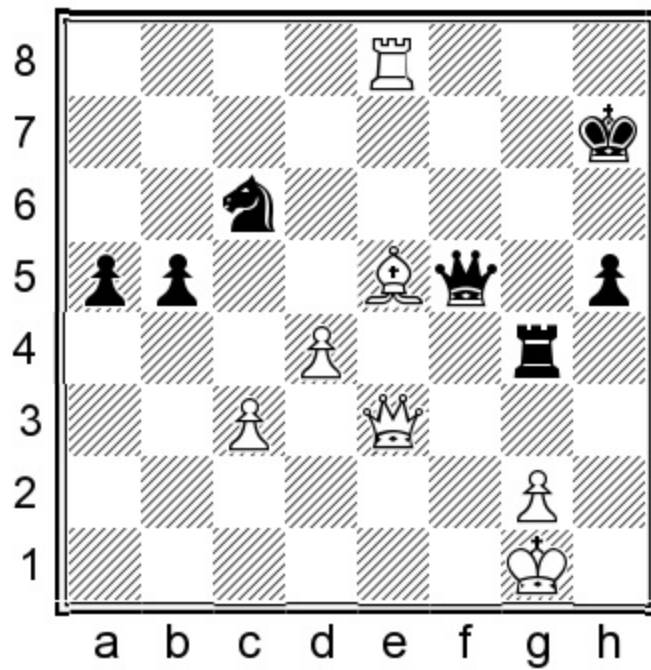
29. ♖xh7+!! ♜xh7 30. ♘d5+! ♜f7 [30... ♜f7 31. ♜h8+ ♔g7 32. ♜1h7#]

31. ♘xf7+! ♔xf7 [31... ♜xf7 32. ♜h8+ ♔g7 33. ♜1h7#]

32. ♜xh7++-

[Movsesian,S-Swiercz,D Czech league 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 44



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

41...♙b1+ 42.♔h2 [42.♔f2 ♚c2+-+]

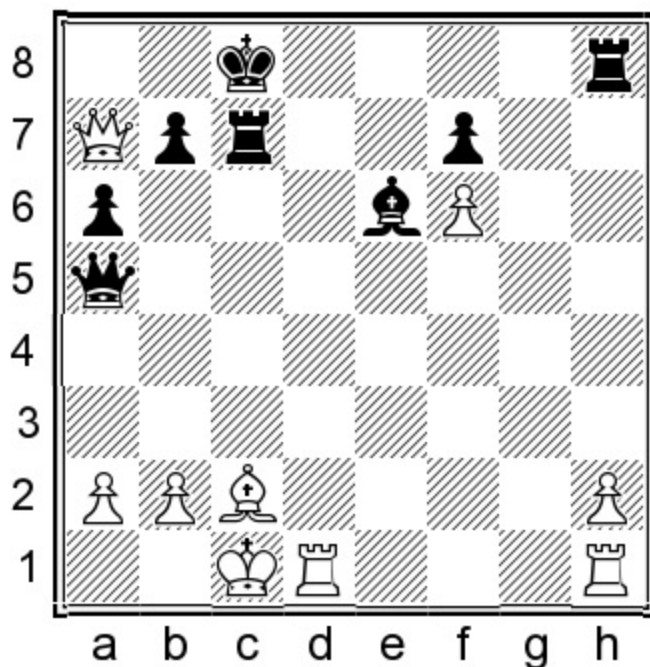
42...♜h4+! 43.♔g3 ♚g6+! 44.♔xh4 [44.♔f2 ♚xe8-+]

44...♚g4#

[Shimanov,A-Dubov,D Ekaterinburg 2013, 0-1]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 45



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

25...♖xc2+! 26.♔xc2 ♕f5+! 27.♞d3 [27.♔c1 ♖c7+! 28.♔d2 ♖c2+ 29.♔e3 ♞h3+ 30.♔f4 ♖e4+ 31.♔g5 ♖g4#; 27.♔b3 ♞h3+--+]]

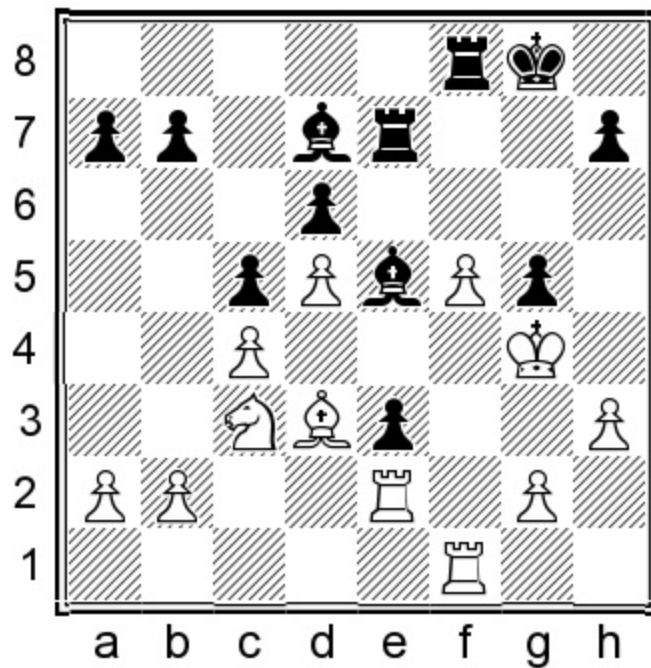
27...♕xd3+ 28.♔xd3 ♖d5+ 29.♔c2 ♖c6+ [29...♖xh1?? 30.♖a8+ ♔c7 31.♖xh8=]

30.♔b1 [30.♔b3 ♞h3+--+; 30.♔d2 ♞d8+--+]]

30...♗xh1+--+

[Boruchovsky,A-Navara,D European Club Cup 2012, 0-1]

Exercise 46



1...? -+

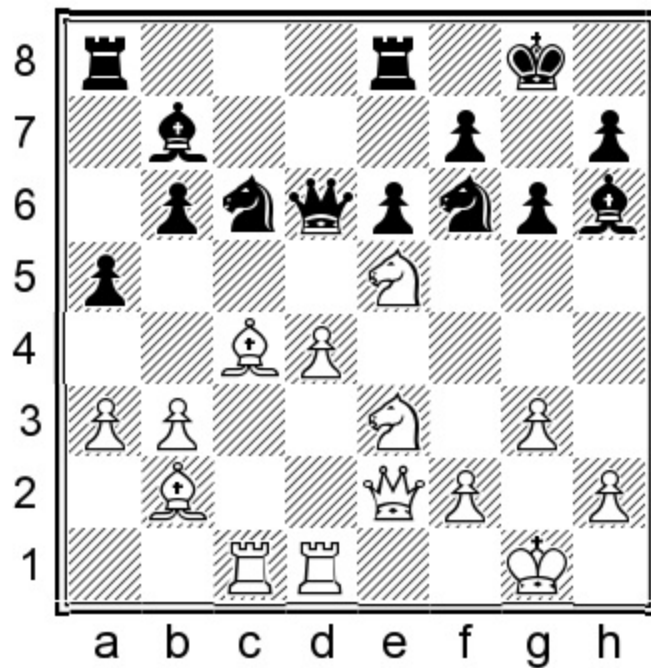
Show/Hide Solution

25...h5+! **26.♔xg5** [26.♔f3 ♕xf5-+; 26.♔xh5 ♖h7+ 27.♔g4 ♖h4+ 28.♔f3 ♖f4+ 29.♔xe3 ♖xf1-+]

26...♖g7+ 27.♔h4 ♕f6+ 28.♔xh5 ♕e8+ 29.♔h6 ♖h7#

[Agdestein,S-Svidler,P Norway blitz 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 47



1.? +-

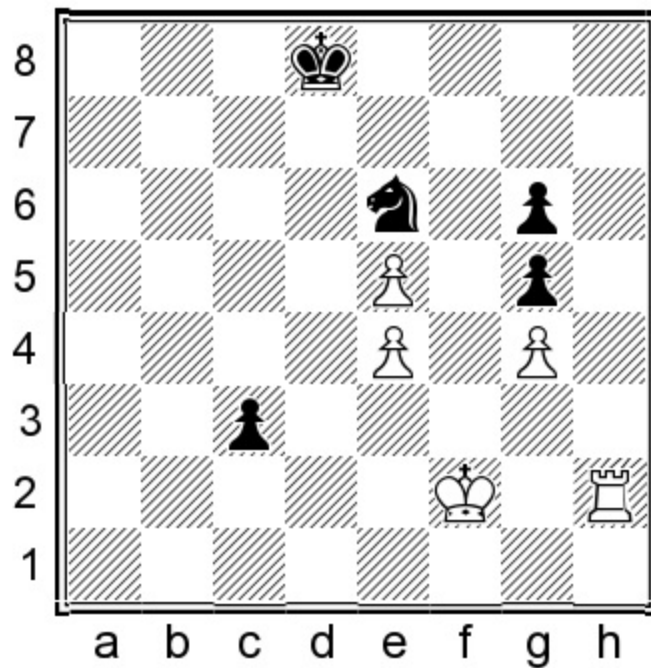
Show/Hide Solution

20.♙b5! ♜ac8 21.♙xc6! [21.♚f3! ♞xe5 22.dxe5 ♙xf3 23.exd6 ♙xd1 24.♜xd1+-]

21...♙xc6 22.♜xc6! ♜xc6 23.♚f3+-

[Dronavalli,H-Khotenashvili,B Wo-men's FIDE Grand Prix 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 48



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

59...c2! 60.♖h8+

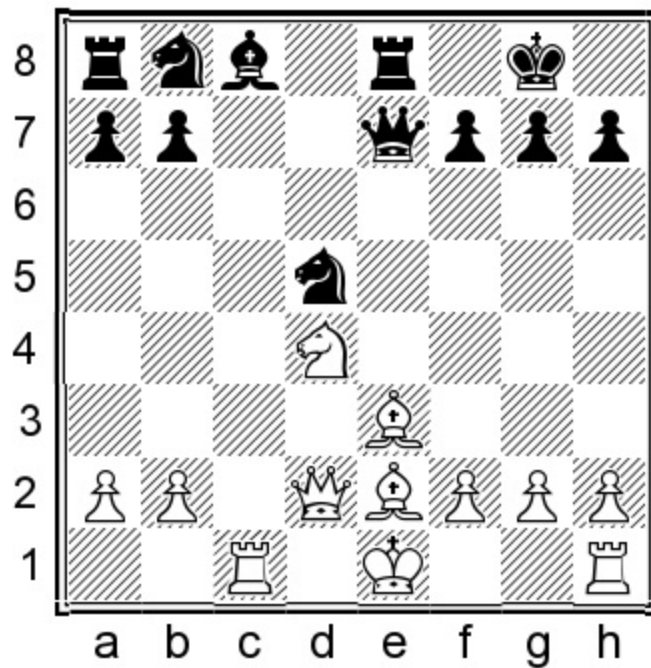
[60.♖h1 ♜c5! 61.♔e3 (61.♖c1 ♜d3+-+) 61...♜b3-+]

60...♔d7 61.♖h7+ ♔c6 62.♖h1! [62.♖h8 c1=♚ 63.♖c8+ ♜c7-+]

62...♜c5 63.e6 ♜d3+-+

[Aleksandrov,A-Naiditsch,A Turin 2006, 0-1]

Exercise 49



1.? +-

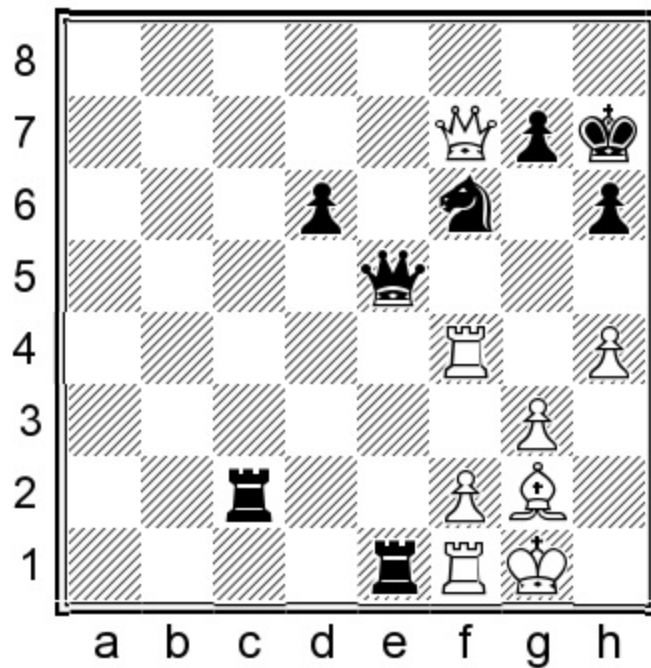
Show/Hide Solution

15.♖xc8! [15.♙g5? f6 16.♙h4 ♘c6↗]

15.♖xc8! ♖xc8 16.♘f5 ♚e6 17.♚xd5 ♚xd5 18.♘e7+-

[Mar,K-Ahmatovic,M Maribor 2004, 1-0]

Exercise 50



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

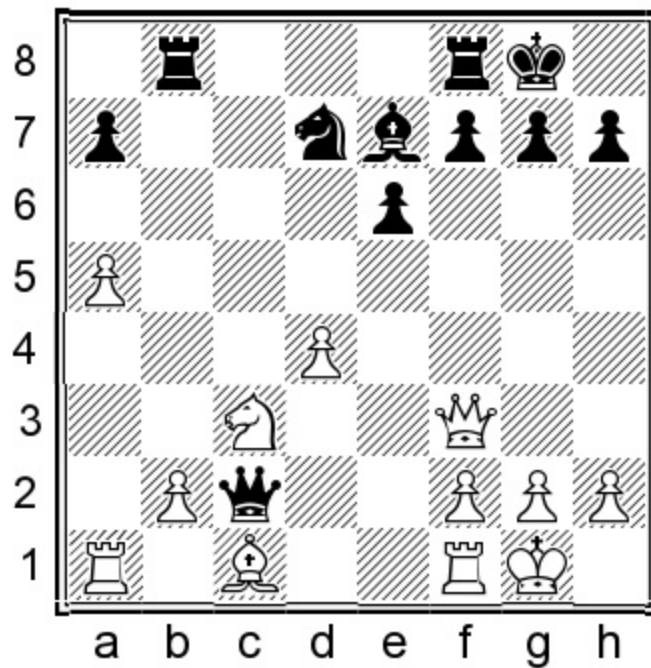
38.♖xf6! ♖xf1+ [38...♖cc1 39.♔g6+ ♔g8 40.♖e6!+- (40.♖xd6)]

39.♗xf1 ♖c1 [39...♔xf6 40.♔xf6 gxf6 41.♗d3+-]

40.♔g6+ ♔g8 41.♖e6+-

[Lautier,J-Hertneck,G Tilburg 1992, 1-0]

Exercise 51



1.? +-

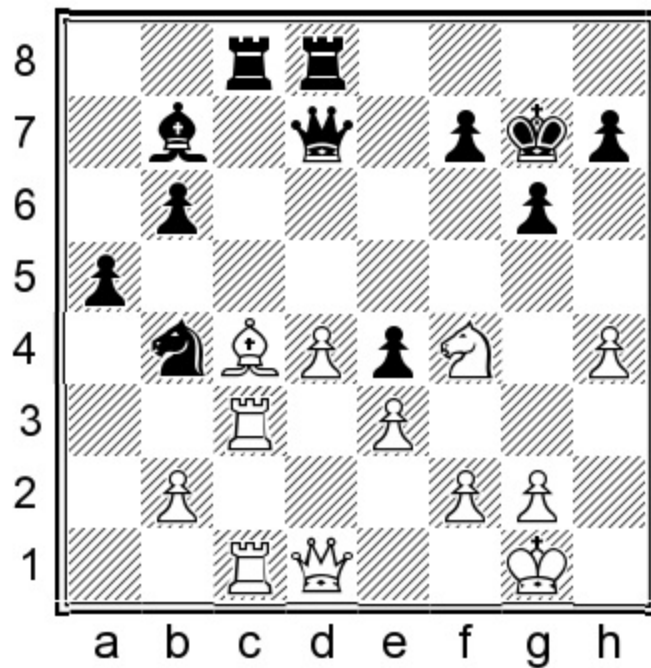
Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖c6! ♜fd8 [19... ♘f6 20. ♘d5 ♚xc6 (20... ♜fc8 21. ♘xe7+ ♔f8 22. ♚d6+-) 21. ♘xe7+ ♔h8 22. ♘xc6+-]

20. ♘d5 ♚b3 21. ♘xe7+-

[Damjanovic,M-Schmid,L Lone Pine 1975, 1-0]

Exercise 52



1.? +-

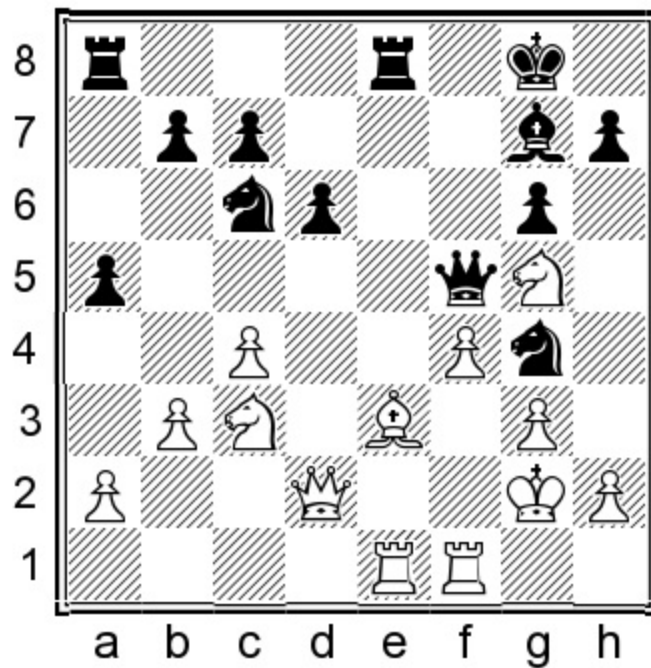
Show/Hide Solution

23.♙e6! ♜xc3 [23...fxe6 24.♞c7! ♜xc7 25.♞xc7 ♜xc7 26.♘xe6++-]

24.♙xd7 ♜xc1 25.♜xc1 ♜xd7 26.♜c4+-

[Bischoff,K-Meijers,V Schachbundesliga 2010, 1-0]

Exercise 53



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

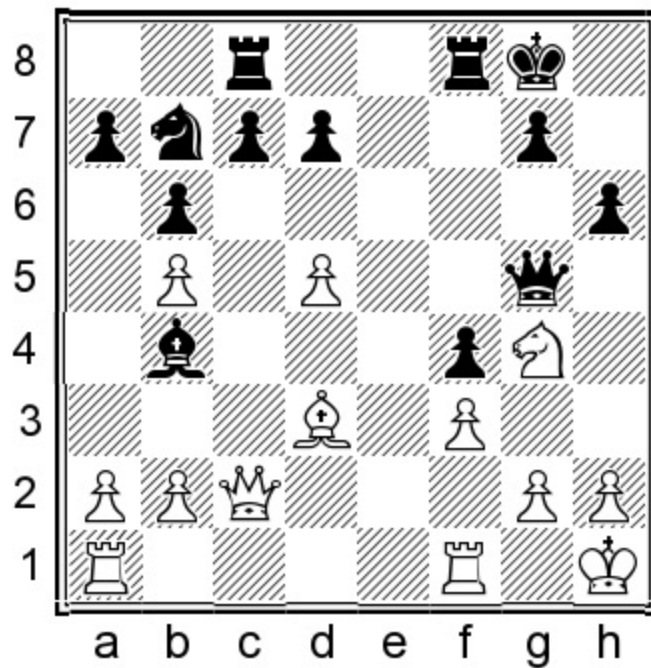
20...♖xe3! [20...♙xc3! 21.♚xc3 ♖xe3 22.♖xe3 ♚c2+! 23.♙h3 (23.♚xc2 ♜xe3+ 24.♙f3 ♜xc2-+)
23...♚xc2+ 24.♙xg4 ♚h5#]

20...♖xe3! 21.♖xe3 ♚c2! 22.♖e2 [22.♚xc2 ♜xe3+ 23.♙f2 ♜xc2-+]

22...♚xd2 23.♖xd2 ♜e3+-+

[Jirka,J-Tkachiev,V Ohrid 2009, 0-1]

Exercise 54



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22.d6! ♔xd6 [22...cxd6 23.♖b3+-; 22...♘a5 23.dxc7±]

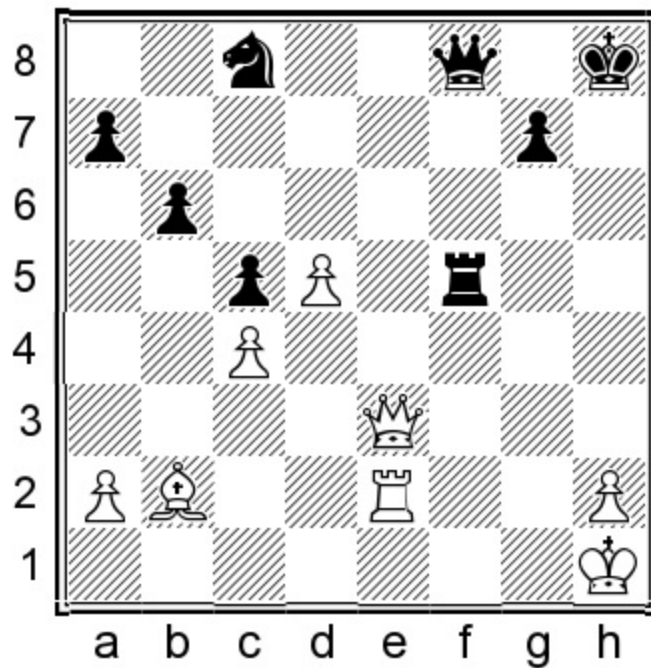
23.♖c4+ ♜f7 [23...♔h8 24.♖e4+-]

24.♖e4 ♘c5 [24...g6 25.♖xb7+-]

25.♖h7+ ♔f8 **26.♞ae1+-**

[Mikhalchishin,A-Ivanov,A Frunze 1979, 1-0]

Exercise 55



1.? +-

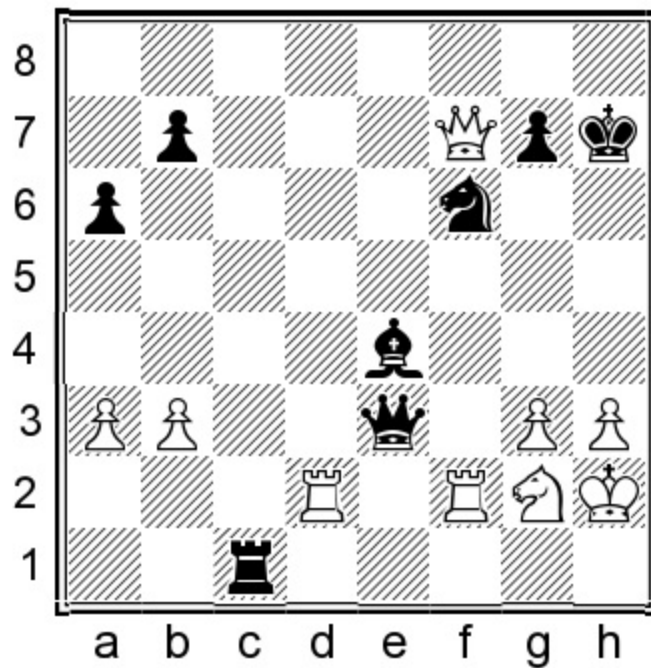
Show/Hide Solution

42. ♔xg7+! ♚xg7 [42... ♖xg7 43. ♖g2+ ♜h7 44. ♚h3+ ♚h6 45. ♚xf5+-]

43. ♚h3+ ♚h7 44. ♖e8+ ♜g7 45. ♚g3+ ♜f7 46. ♖xc8+-

[Savon, V-Stohl, I Tmava 1989, 1-0]

Exercise 56



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

37...♙xg2! 38.♖xg2 [38.♔xg2 ♜e4+ 39.♞f3 ♜e1-+]

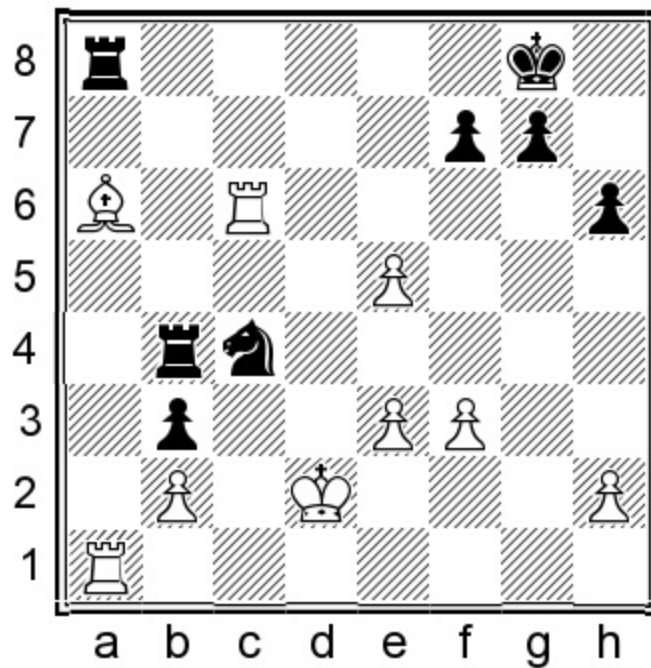
38...♜e1 39.g4 ♜e5+!

[39...♜h1+ 40.♔g3 ♞c3+ 41.♔f4 ♜e1 42.♞de2 ♜c1+ 43.♞d2 ♜xa3-+]

40.♞g3 ♜f4! -+

[Kogan,B-Benjamin,J USA (ch) 1981, 0-1]

Exercise 57



1.? +-

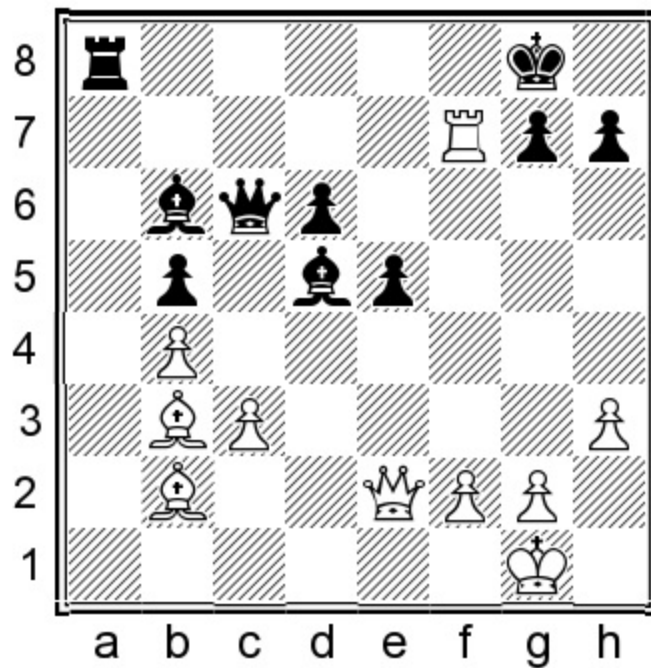
Show/Hide Solution

27.♔c3! ♘xe5 28.♖c5! ♜b6 29.♙d3! ♜xa1 [29...♞e8 30.♞xe5+-; 29...♘d3 30.♞xa8+ ♔h7 31.♔xd3+-]

30.♞c8#

[Capablanca,J-Rossolimo,N Paris 1938, 1-0]

Exercise 58



1.? +-

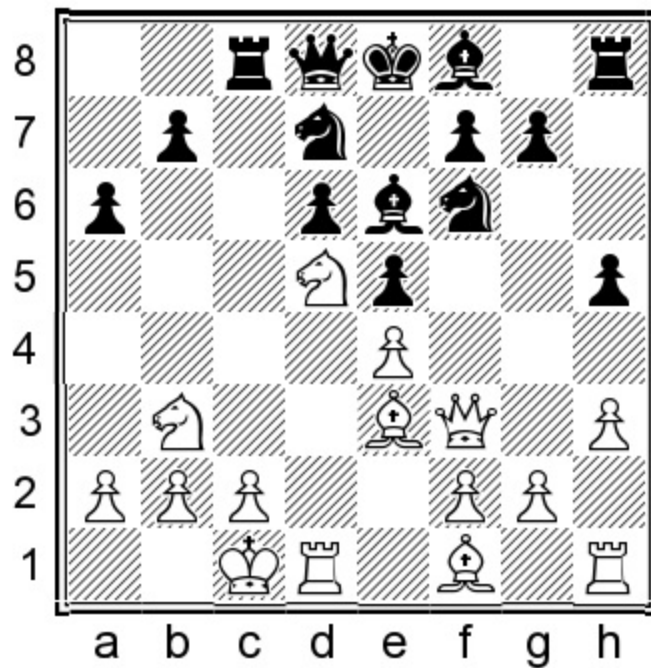
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖c7!! ♜xc7 [1... ♙xc7 2. ♚f3 ♙xb3 (2... ♗h8 3. ♙xd5+-) 3. ♚xc6 ♜c8 (3... ♜a7 4. ♚e8#) 4. ♚d7+-]

2. ♙xd5+ ♗h8 3. ♙xa8+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 59



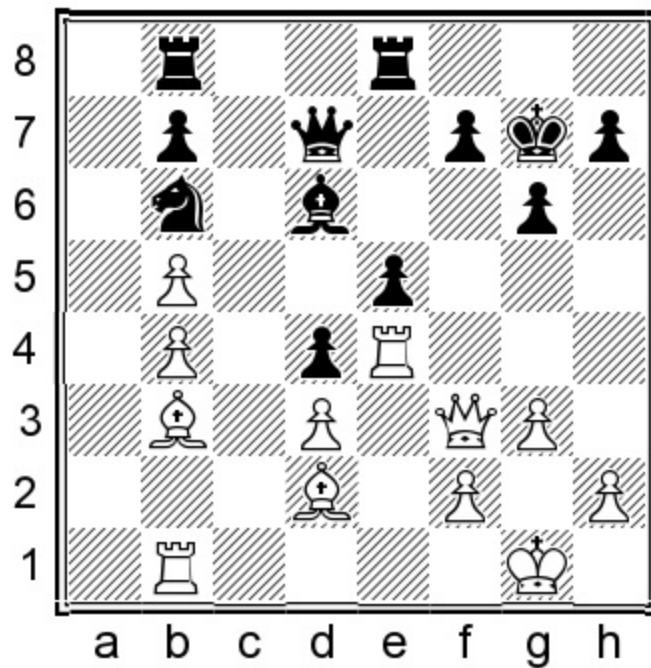
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

11...♖xd5! 12.exd5 ♕g4! 13.hxg4 hxg4-+

[Ferrec,N-Zufic,M Zadar 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 60



1.? +-

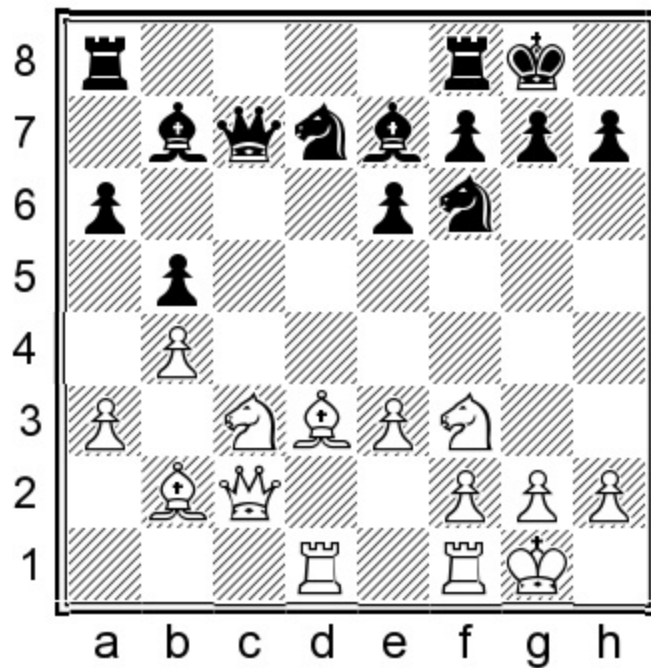
Show/Hide Solution

28. ♖h6+! ♔g8 [28... ♖xh6 29. ♕f6+-]

29. ♕f6 ♖f8 30. ♖xf8 ♜xf8 31. ♕xb6+-

[Vorontsov,P-Kambrath,Y Kenner 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 61

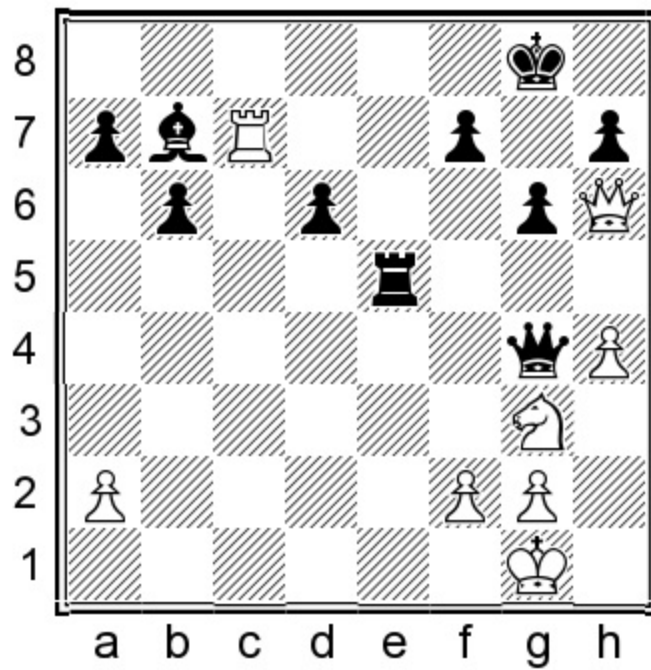


1.?±

Show/Hide Solution

15. ♖d5! ♜xd5 16. ♙xh7+ ♚h8 17. ♜xc7 ♜xc7 18. ♝xd7 ♙xf3 19. gxf3 ♚xh7 20. ♝xc7±
 [Sakaev, K-Izoria, Z Moscow 2003, 1-0]

Exercise 62



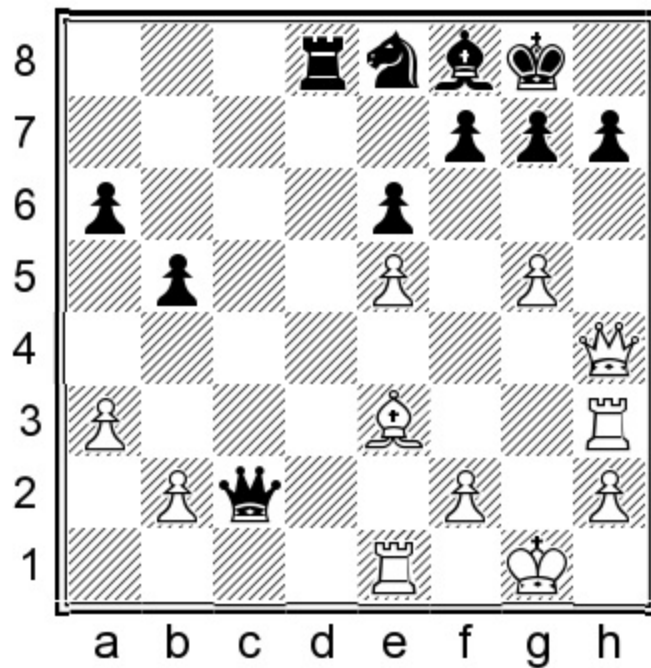
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

27...♖e1+ 28.♔h2 ♜h1+!! 29.♔xh1 ♛h3+ 30.♔g1 ♛xg2#

[Maedler,J-Uhlmann,W Aschersleben 1963, 0-1]

Exercise 63



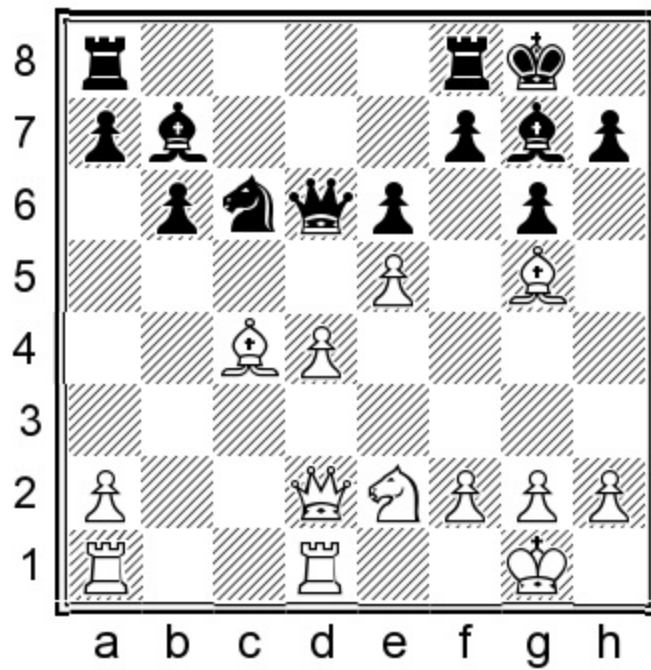
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30.g6! ♖xg6+ 31.♖g3 ♖d3 32.♙g5!+-

[Polugaevsky,L-Antoshin,V URS-ch23 Final 1956, 1-0]

Exercise 64



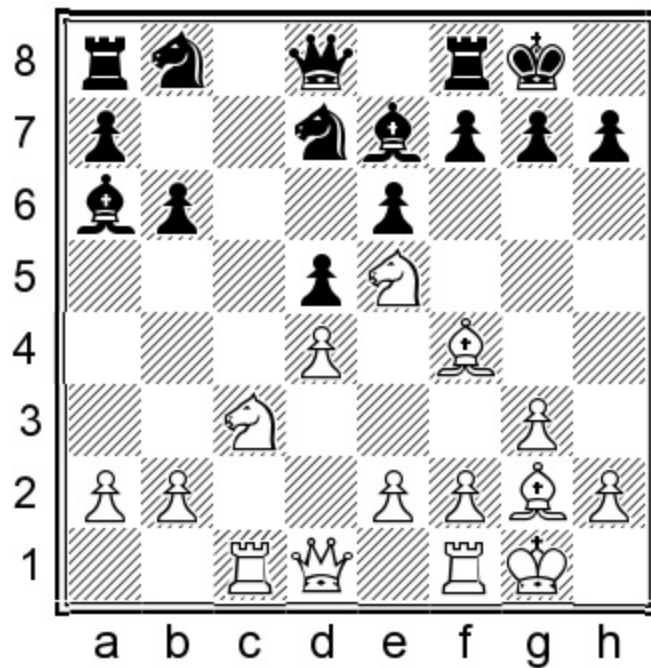
1...?♣

Show/Hide Solution

15...♞xe5! 16.dxe5 ♞c6 17.f3 ♞xc4♣

[Koneru,H-Lahno,K Jermuk 2012, 0-1]

Exercise 65



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

13. ♖xf7!

[13. ♖xd5! exd5 14. ♖xf7!+- (14. ♕xd5? ♖xe5 15. ♕xa8 ♖g6⇌)]

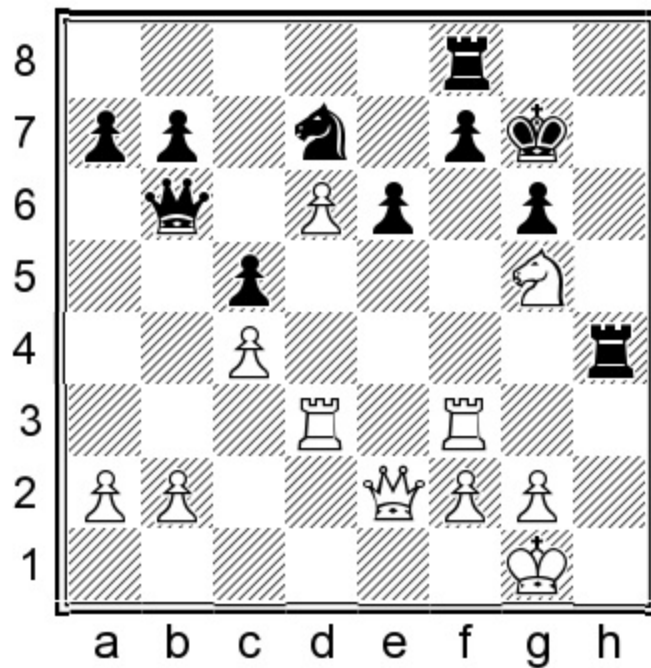
13. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 14. ♖xd5! exd5 15. ♕xd5 ♖f6

[15... ♖c6 16. ♕xf7+ ♔xf7 17. ♜xc6+-]

16. ♕xa8+-

[Razuvaev, Y-Markowski, T Geneve 1995, 1-0]

Exercise 66



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

29. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 30. ♚xe6 ♜f6

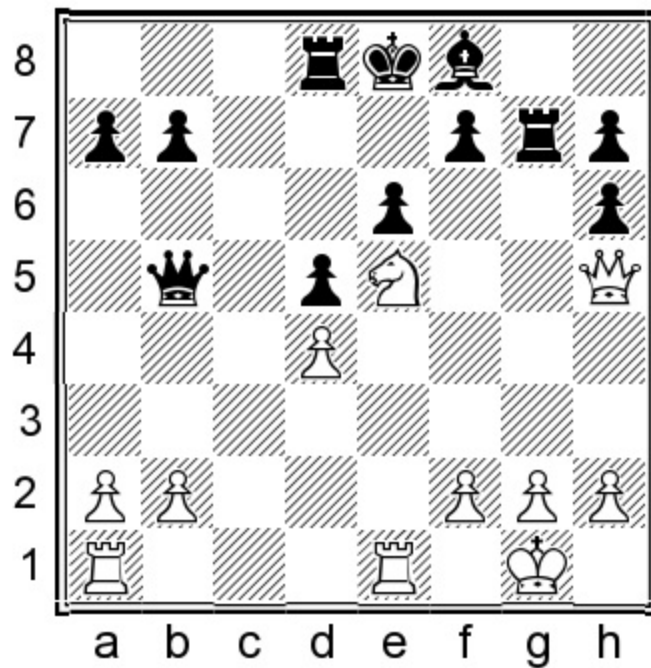
[30... ♜xf3 31. ♜xf3 ♚d8 32. ♜f7++-]

31. ♜xf6 ♜xf6 32. ♚e7+ ♜f7 [32... ♔g8 33. ♚xf6+-]

33. ♚xh4+-

[Anand, V-Ubilava, E Villarrobledo 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 67



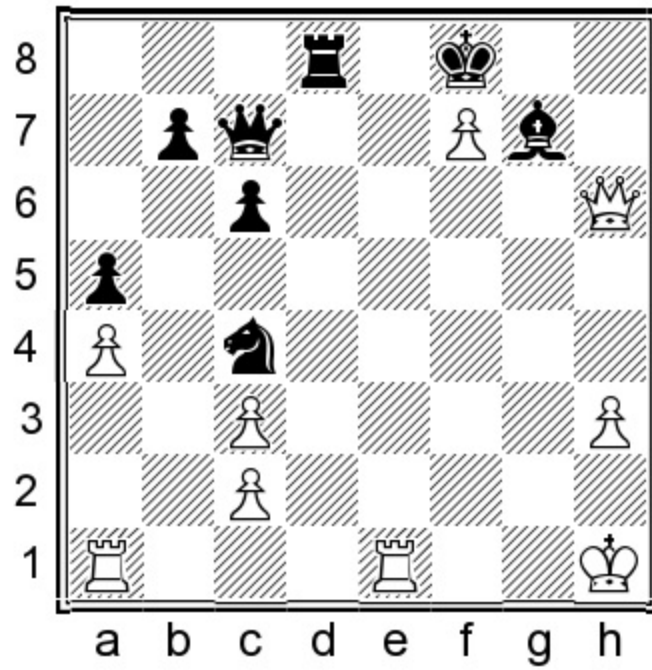
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

16. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 17. ♜xe6+ ♙e7 18. ♜xe7+! ♜xe7 19. ♜e1+ ♜f8 20. ♚xh6+ ♜g8 [20... ♜g7 21. ♚f6+-] 21. ♚g5+-

[Grishuk,A-Bareev,E Panormo 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 68



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

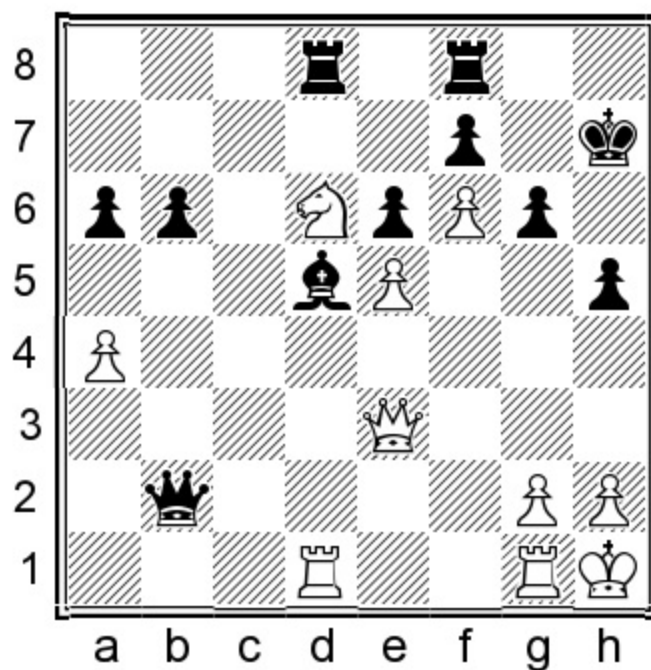
26. ♖e8+! ♜xe8 27. ♚xg7+! ♔xg7 28. fxe8=♘+-

[Popov,S-Buljovic,I Sombor 1966, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

MATING CONSTRUCTION 3

Exercise 1



1.? +-

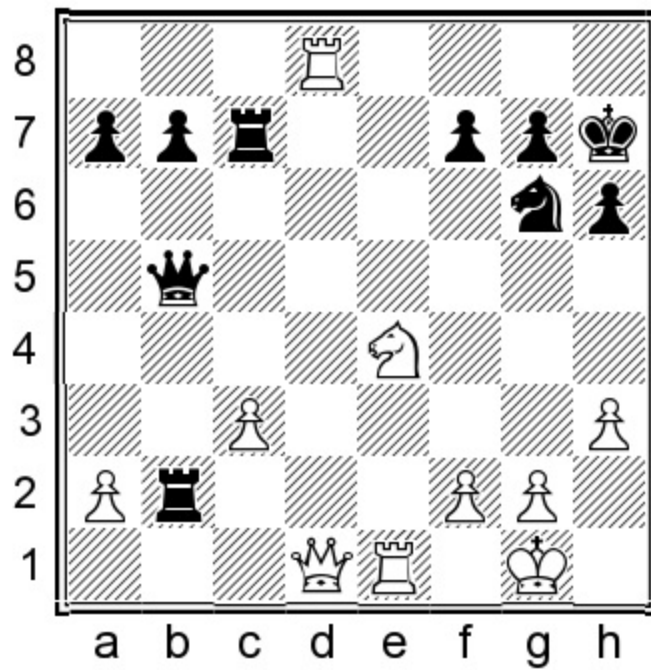
Show/Hide Solution

26. ♖xd5! exd5 27. ♘f5! gxf5 28. ♕g5!+- ♜g8 [28... ♕e2 29. ♕g7#]

29. ♕xh5#

[Apicella,M-Hauchard,A France 1990, 1-0]

Exercise 2



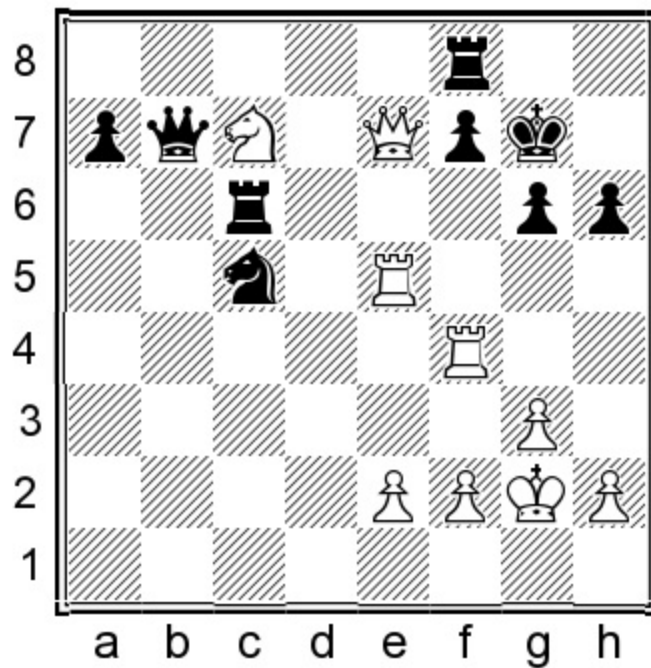
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

32.♖d5! ♚c6 33.♘g5+! hxg5 34.♚h5+ ♔g8 35.♖d8+ ♜f8 36.♗xf8+ ♔xf8 37.♚h8#

[Gara,A-Romanov,E Oslo 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 3



1.? +-

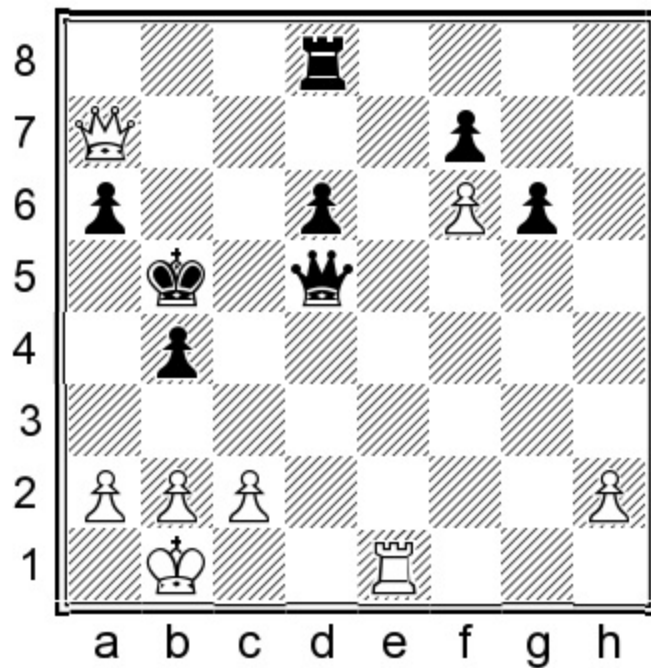
Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖e8+! ♔g8 [30... ♜xe8 31. ♜xf7+ ♔g8 32. ♚xe8#]

31. ♖f6+ ♔g7 32. ♚xf8+! ♔xf8 33. ♜e8+ ♔g7 34. ♜g8#

[Byrne,D-Seidman,H Long Beach 1955, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

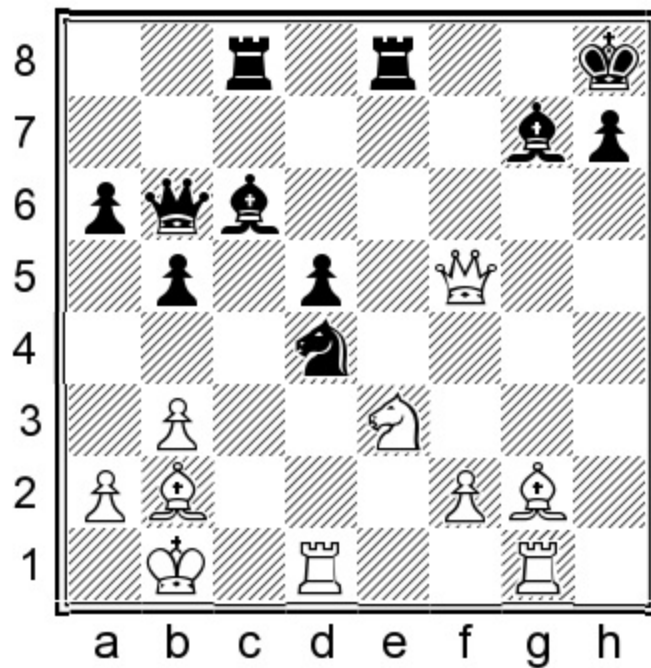
Show/Hide Solution

30.a4+! bxa3 [30...♔xa4 31.♖xa6+ ♕a5 32.b3+ ♔a3 33.♖xa5#; 30...♔c6 31.♖xa6+ ♔c7 32.♖e7+-]

31.♖e3! a2+ 32.♔a1 ♕d1+ 33.♔xa2 ♕xc2 34.♖b3+ ♔a5 35.♖b6+ ♔a4 36.♖a3#

[Atako,C-Dennis,N Hastings 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 5



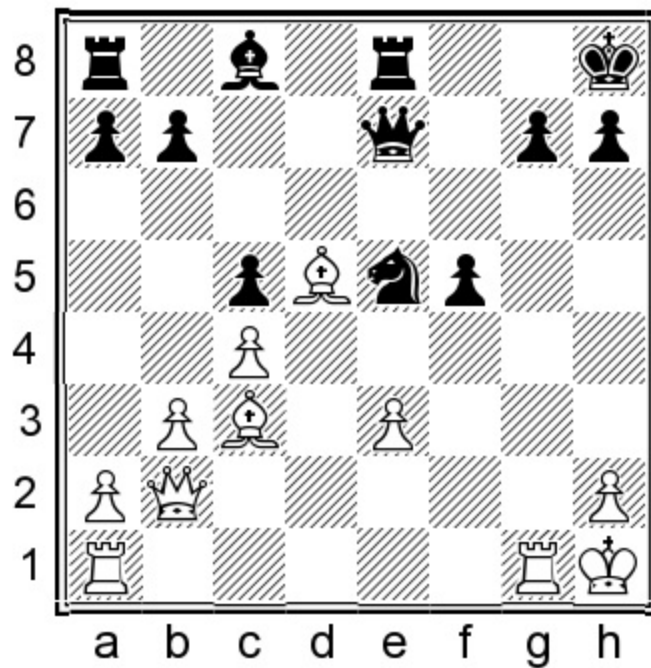
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖xd4! ♗xd4 32. ♕f6+! ♗xf6 33. ♗xf6+ ♔g8 34. ♗xd5+ ♔f8 35. ♖g8#

[Korchnoi, V-Shaked, T Cannes 1998, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

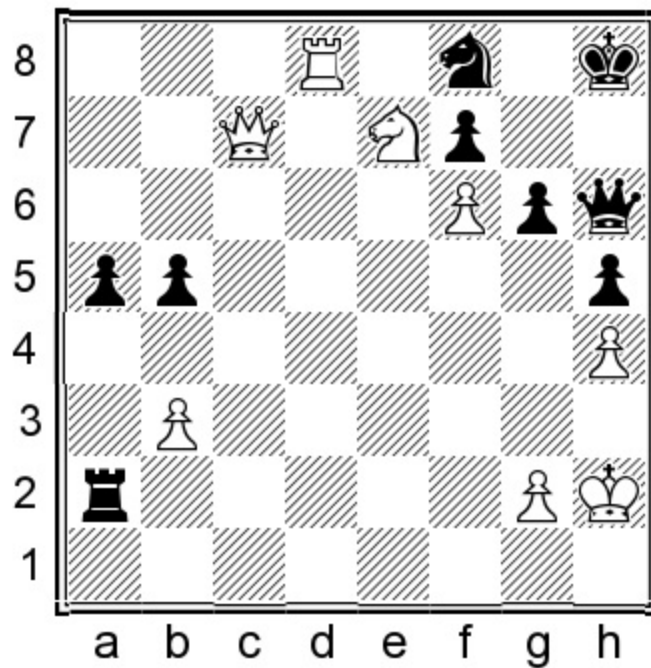
Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖xg7! ♔xg7 [21... ♗xg7 22. ♖g1 ♗f6 23. ♘xe5 ♗xe5 24. ♗xe5+ ♖xe5 25. ♖g8#]

22. ♖g1+ ♔h6 23. ♘xe5 ♗xe5 24. ♗f2+-

[Fedoseev, V-Popov, I Sochi 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 7



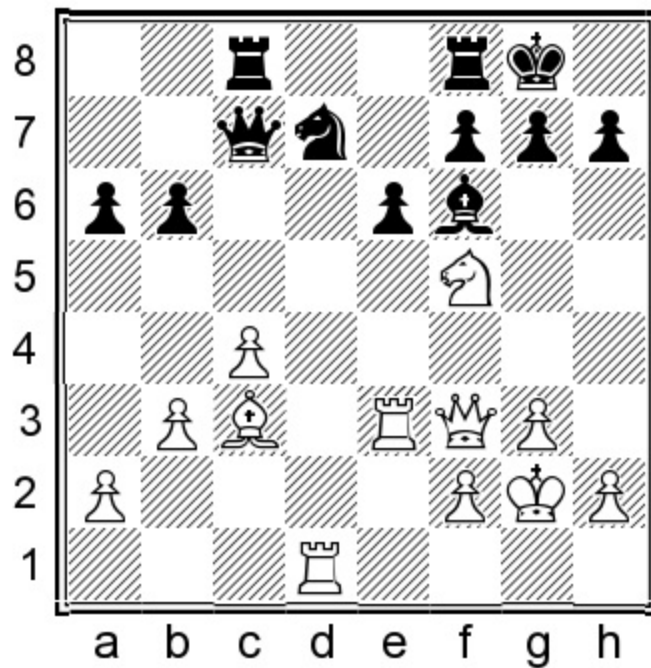
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

45. ♔c1!! ♚xc1 46. ♖xf8+ ♔h7 47. ♖xf7+ ♔h8 48. ♘xg6+ ♔g8 49. ♖g7#

[Gopal,G-Howell,D Caleta 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 8



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

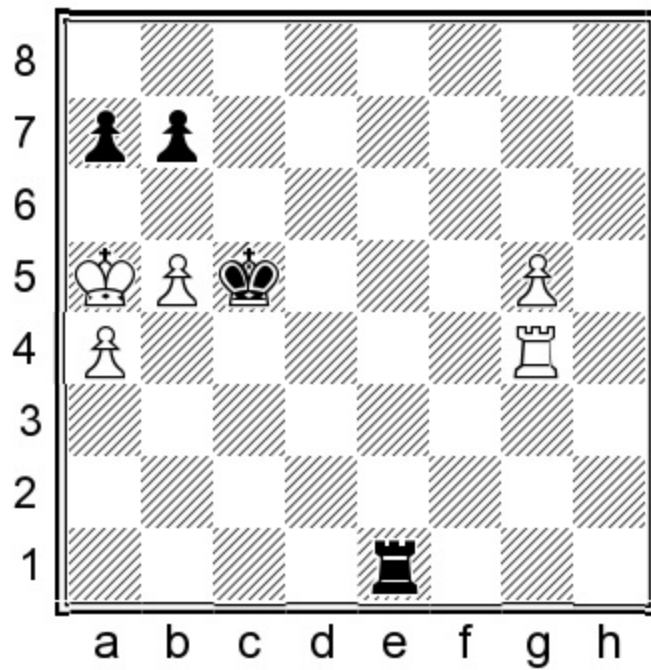
21. ♖xd7! ♚xd7 22. ♜h6+ ♔h8 [22...gxf6 23. ♙xf6! (23. ♚xf6? e5 24. ♙xe5 (24. ♚xe5 f6) 24...♚c6+ ♘) 23...♚c6 24. ♖e4 h5 25. ♜h3!+-]

23. ♚xf6! e5 [23...gxf6 24. ♙xf6#]

24. ♙xe5+-

[Kalinitshew,S-Kaspi,A Muenster 1991, 1-0]

Exercise 9



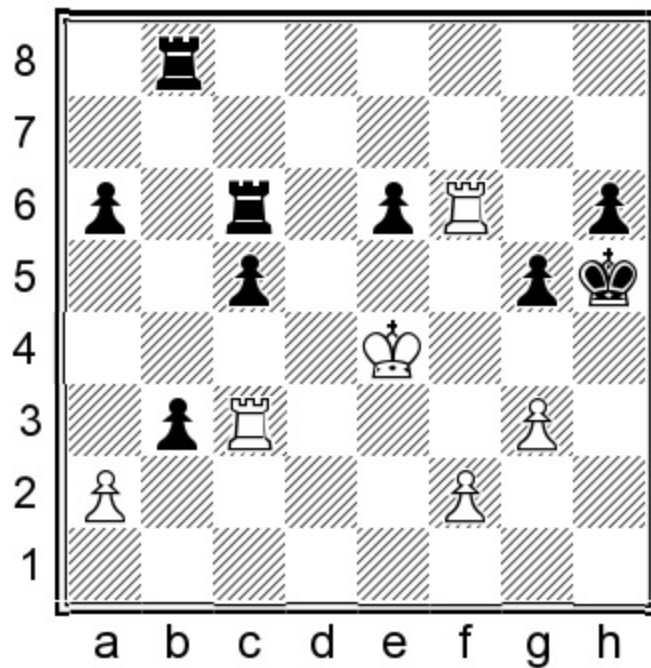
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖e6! 2.g6 ♜a6+ 3.bxa6 b6#

[Razga-May Berlin 1947, 0-1]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

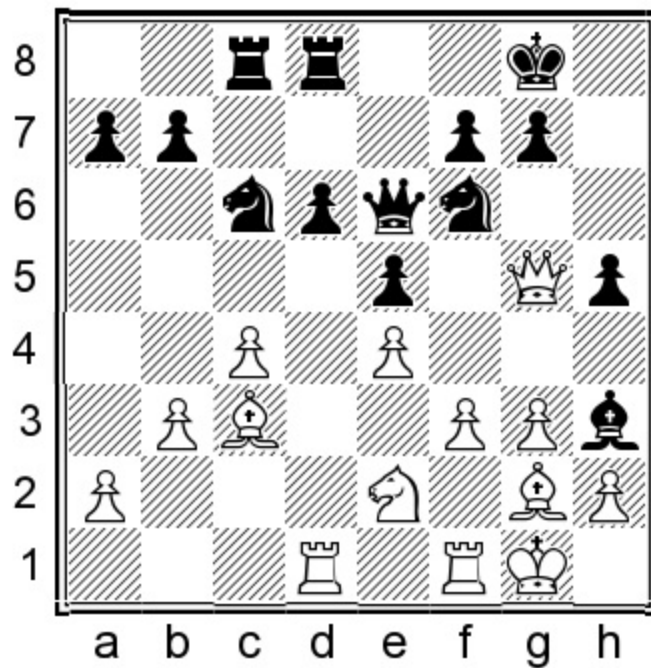
36.g4+! ♔xg4 **37.♖g3+** [37.♖xh6 ♖b4+ 38.♕e5 ♖f4 39.♖g3#]

37...♕h5 **38.♖h3+** ♕g4 **39.♖fxh6** ♖b4+ **40.♕e5** bxa2 [40...♖f4 41.♖g3#]

41.f3#

[Beliavsky,A-Adams,M Haifa 1989, 1-0]

Exercise 11



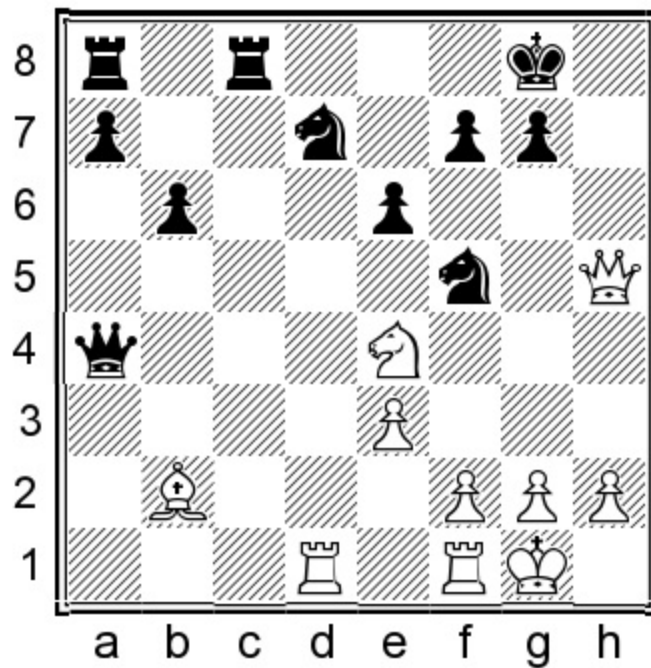
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♘f4! exf4 21. ♙xh3 ♚xh3 22. ♙xf6 g6 23. ♚h6+-

[Furman,S-Nezhmetdinov,R Leningrad 1953, 1-0]

Exercise 12



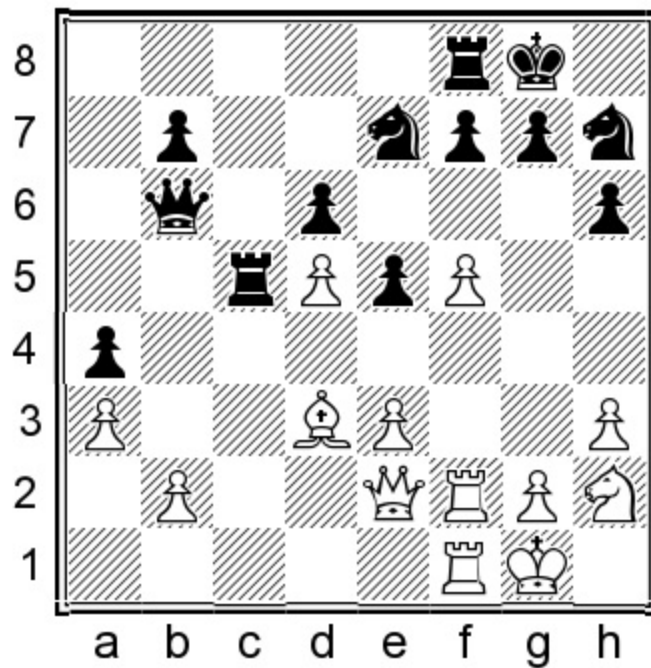
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖xd7! ♚xd7 23. ♘f6+! gxf6 24. ♙xf6 ♘g7 25. ♚h6+-

[Matthiesen,M-Ovsejevitch,S Aarhus 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

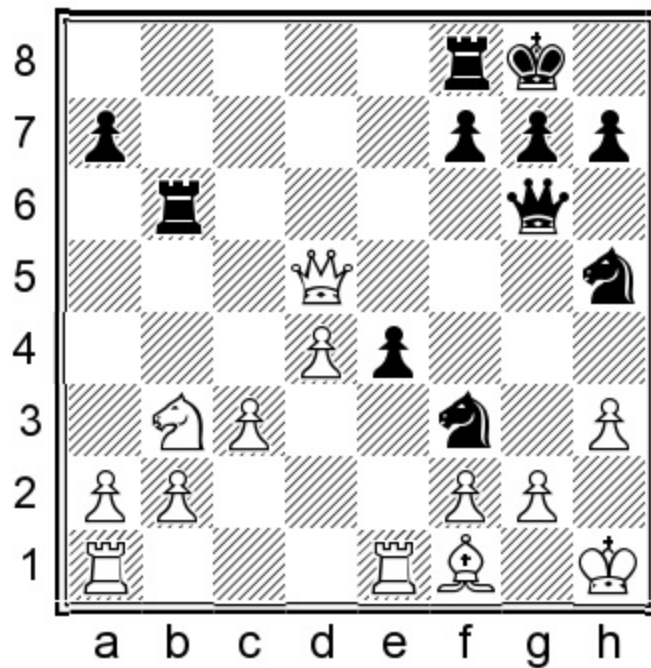
Show/Hide Solution

26.f6! ♖xf6 **27.♞xf6!** e4 [27...gxf6 28.♞g4+ ♔h8 29.♞h4+-]

28.♙xe4 gxf6 29.♞g4+ ♔h8 30.♞f4+-

[Mohr,G-Nikolov,S Portoroz open 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

24...♞g3+!

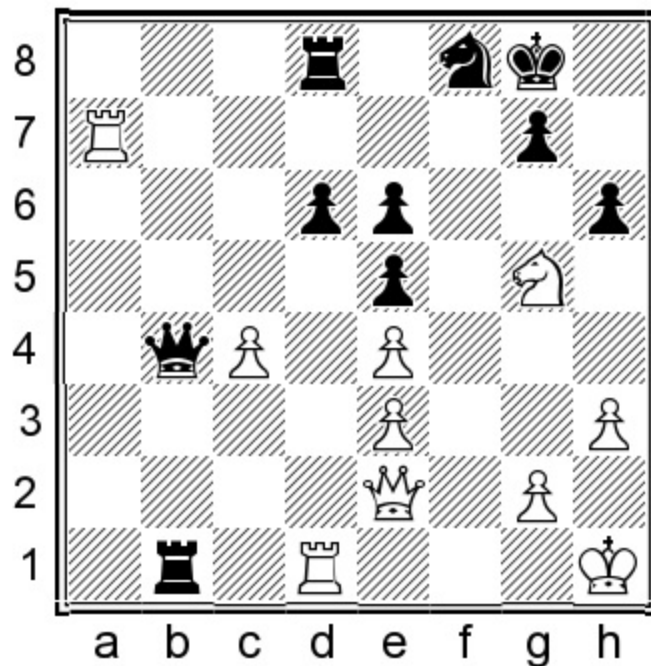
[24...♚g3? 25.fxg3 (25.gxf3 ♚xf3+ 26.♙g2 ♚xg2+ 27.♜xg2 ♞f4+ 28.♜h2 ♞xd5 29.♞xe4+-) 25...♞xg3#]

24...♞g3+! 25.fxg3 ♚xg3 26.♚e5 [26.gxf3 ♞g6-+]

26...♞xe5 27.dxe5 ♚xe5--+

[Aronian,L-Caruana,F Saint Louis 2018, 0-1]

Exercise 15



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖f3! [31. ♖f2! ♜xd1+ 32. ♔h2+-]

31. ♖f3! ♜xd1+ 32. ♔h2! ♘d7

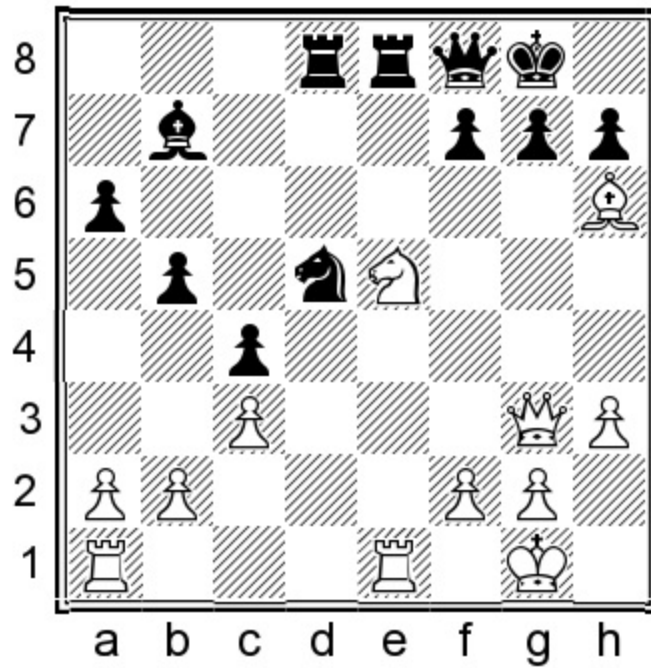
[32... ♜d7 33. ♜xd7 ♘xd7 34. ♖f7+ ♔h8 35. ♖e8+ ♘f8 36. ♖xf8#]

33. ♖f7+ ♔h8 34. ♜xd7 ♜g8 [34... ♜xd7 35. ♖f8#]

35. ♖xg8+ ♔xg8 36. ♜d8#

[Smirin,I-Jones,G Wijk aan Zee 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 16



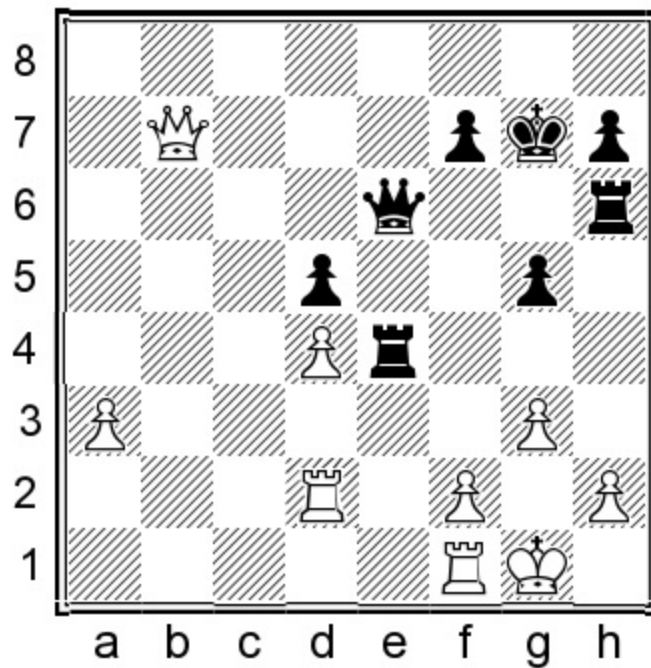
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖d7! ♜xe1+ 23. ♜xe1 ♜xd7 24. ♚xg7+! ♚xg7 25. ♜e8+ ♚f8 26. ♜xf8#

[Hansen,E-Raghavi,N Hoogeveen 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 17



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

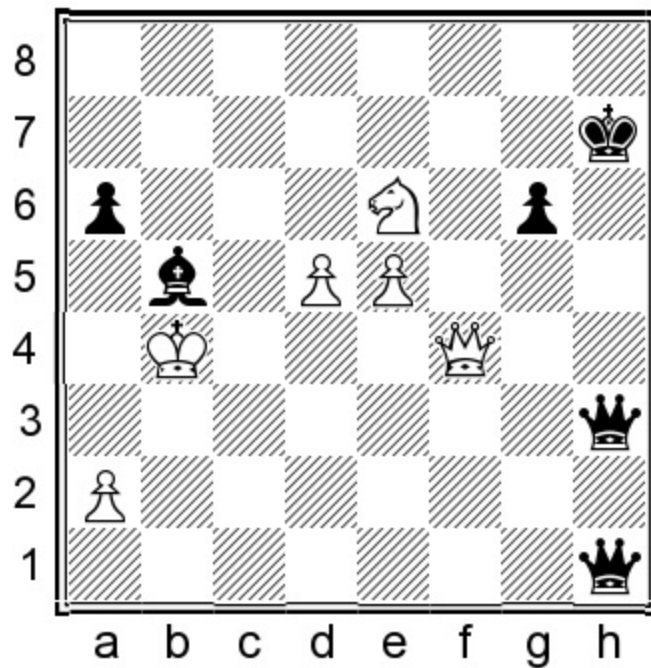
31...♖eh4! [31...♖e1? 32.♙b5 ♗h3 33.f3↔]

31...♖eh4! 32.gxh4 [32.f3 ♗e3+ 33.♔h1 ♗xd2 34.gxh4 ♗e2! 35.♖g1 ♗xf3+ 36.♖g2 ♖e6-+]

32...♗g4+ 33.♔h1 ♗f3+ 34.♔g1 gxh4-+

[Botvinnik,M-Tal,M Moscow 1960, 1/2]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

50. ♖g5+! [50. ♖f7+ ♔h6 51. ♖g7+ ♔h5 52. ♖h7+ ♔g4 53. ♖xg6+ ♔f3 54. ♖g5+ ♔e3=]

50. ♖g5+! ♔g7 [50... ♔h6 51. ♖xh3+-]

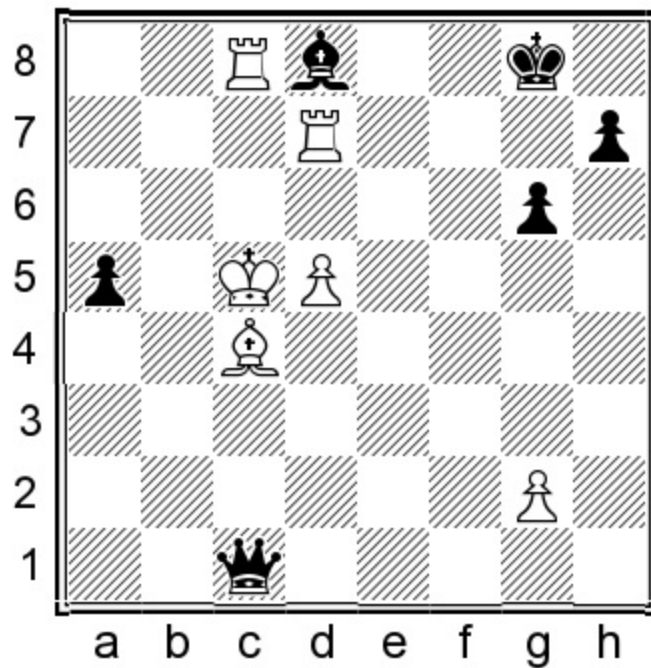
51. ♖f6+! [51. ♖f7+? ♔h6 52. ♖xh3 ♖xh3]

51... ♔h6 52. ♖f7+ ♔h5 [52... ♔h7 53. ♖h8#]

53. ♖g5#

[Van Wely,L-Fridman,D Remco Heite Invitational 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

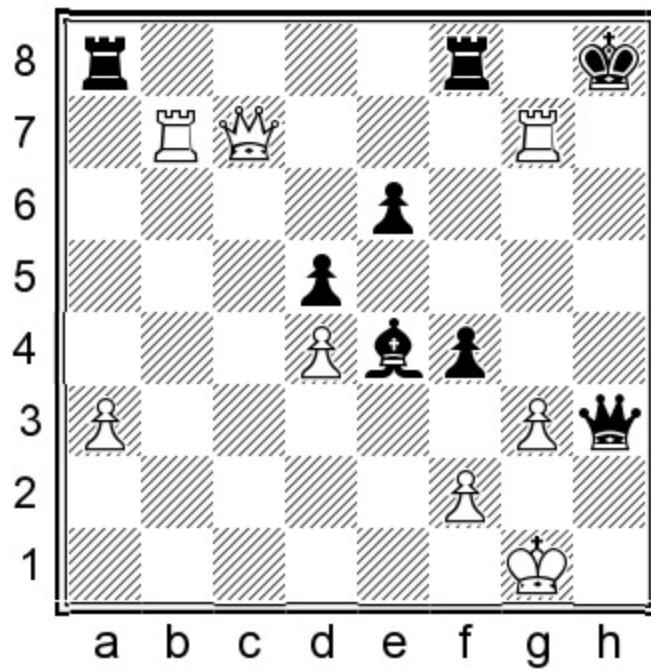
50...♙e3+! 51.♔d6 ♜f4+! 52.♔c5 [52.♔c6 ♜xc4+ 53.♔b7 ♜b5+-+]

52...♜f2+! 53.♔d6 [53.♔b5 ♜b6+ 54.♔a4 ♜b4#; 53.♔c6 ♜b6#]

53...♜f6+ 54.♔c5 ♜b6#

[Romanov,E-Gabuzyan,H Minsk Open 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

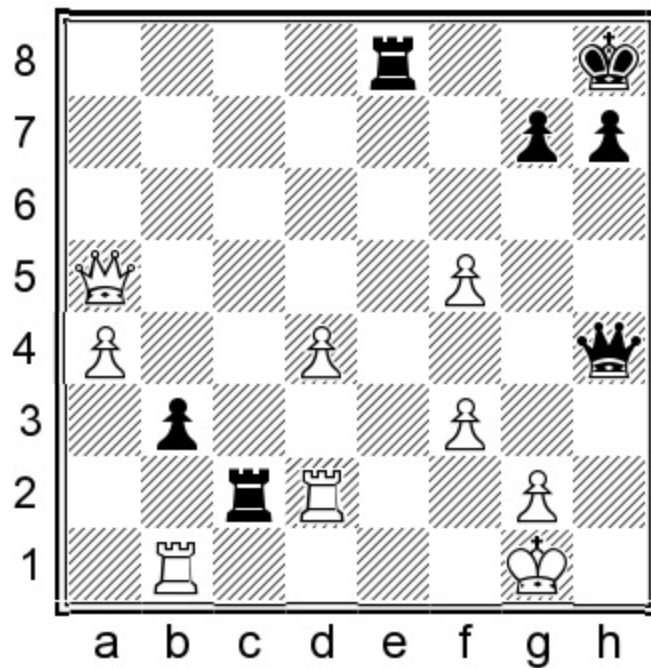
Show/Hide Solution

36. ♖g8+! ♜xg8 [36... ♔xg8 37. ♕g7#]

37. ♕e5+ ♜g7 38. ♕xg7#

[Navara,D-Michiels,B Wijk aan Zee B 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 21



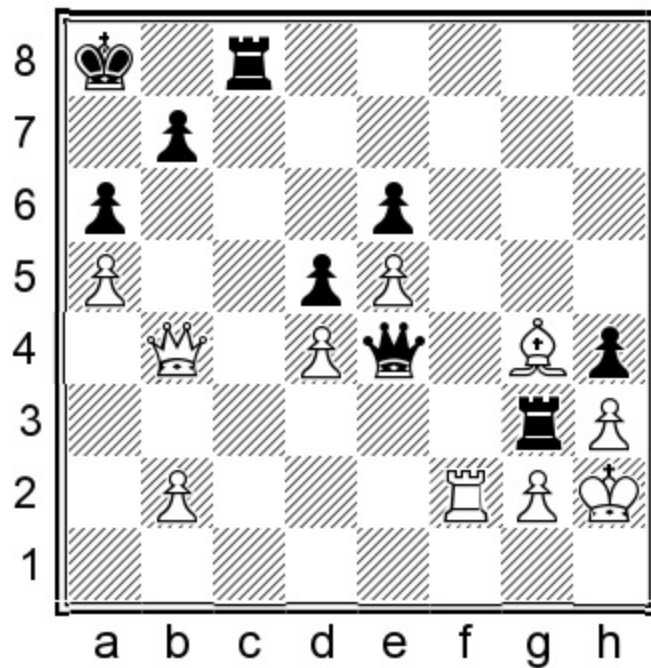
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

39...♖e1+! 40.♗xe1 ♕xe1+ 41.♔h2 ♕h4+ 42.♔g1 ♖c1+-+ 43.♗d1 ♖xd1+ 44.♕e1 ♖xe1#

[Tran Tuan Minh-Gundavaa,B Aeroflot Open 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 22



1...? -+

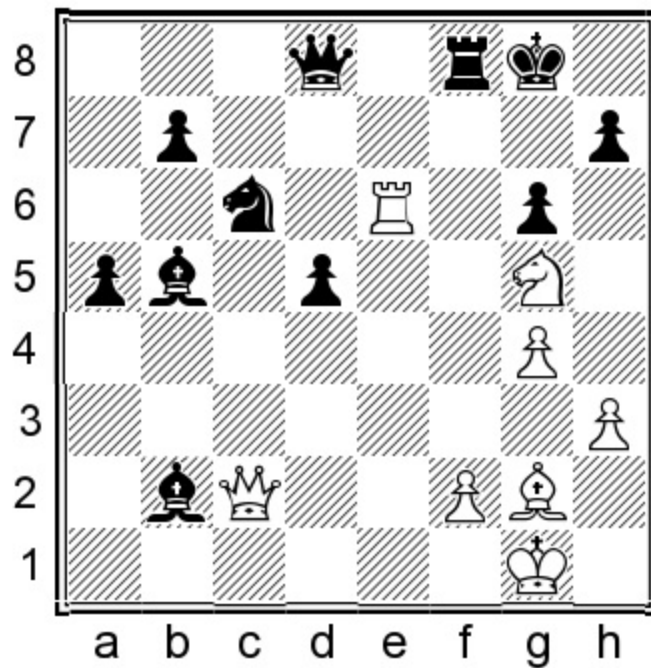
Show/Hide Solution

36...♖xg2+! 37.♖xg2 ♜f4+ 38.♔h1 ♖c1+ 39.♙d1 [39.♖g1 ♜e4+ 40.♔h2 ♖c2+-+ 41.♖g2 ♜xg2#]

39...♖xd1+ 40.♖g1 ♜f3+ 41.♔h2 ♜f2+ 42.♖g2 ♜f4+ 43.♖g3 ♜xg3#

[Karjakin,S-Kamsky,G SportAccord blindfold 2012, 0-1]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

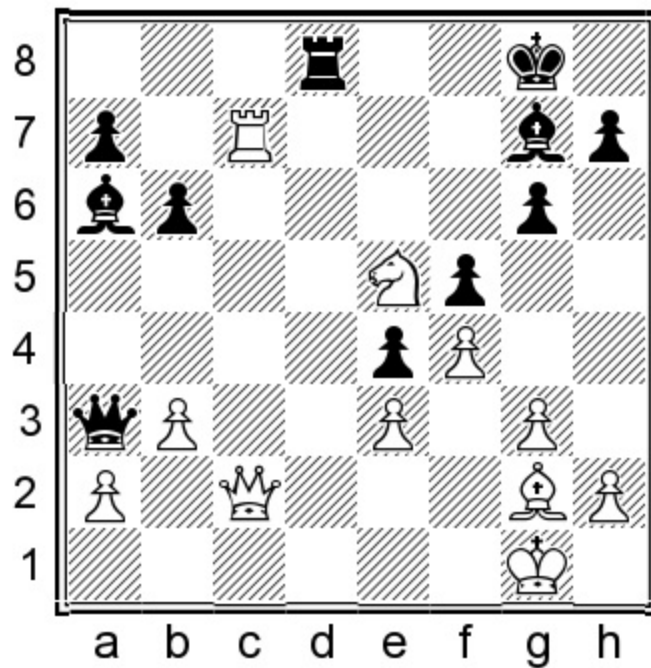
39.♖xg6+! ♔g7 [39...hxg6 40.♗xg6+ ♔g7 41.♗h7#]

40.♖xg7+! ♔xg7 41.♗xh7+ ♔f6 42.♗f5+! ♔g7 [42...♔e7 43.♗e6#]

43.♗e6+! ♔g8 44.♗g6+ ♔h8 45.♗g7#

[Fedorchuk,S-Socko,M European Rapid Championship 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

23. ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 24. ♜c7+ ♔h6 [24... ♔g8 25. ♜xd8+-]

25. ♘f7+! [25. ♜xd8?? ♜c1+ 26. ♔f2 ♜c2+=]

25... ♔h5 [25... ♔g7 26. ♘g5+-]

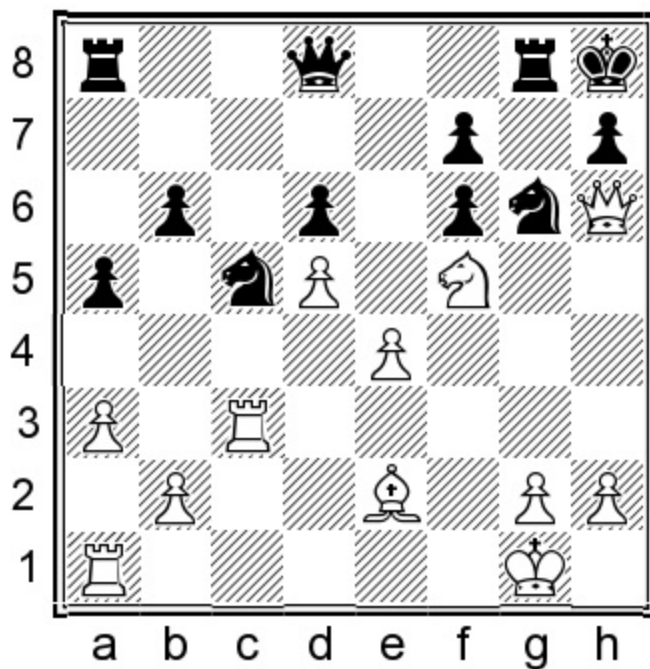
26. g4+! ♔xg4 [26... fxg4 27. ♜e5+ ♔h4 28. ♜g5#]

27. ♘e5+ ♔h5 28. ♜xh7#

[Iturrizaga,E-Dragnev,V Gibraltar Open 2015, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 25



1.? +-

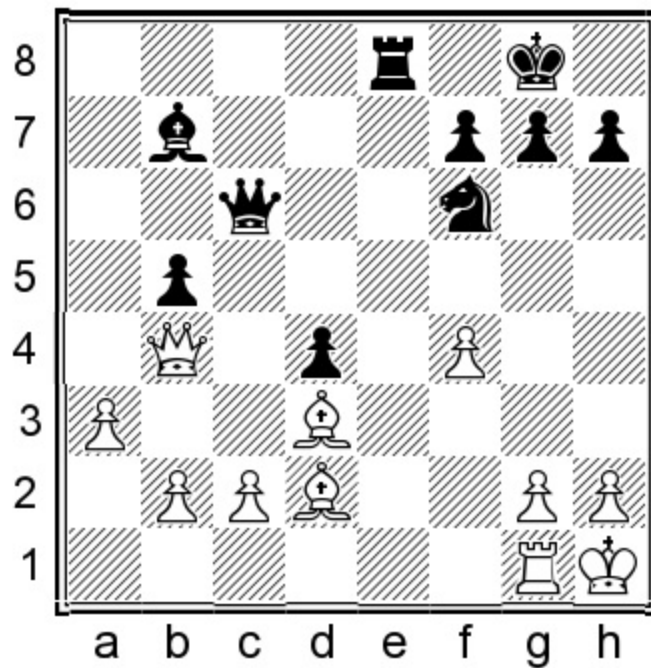
Show/Hide Solution

25. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 26. ♖h3+ ♘h4 27. ♖xh4+ ♔g6 28. ♖h6+ ♔g5 29. ♖f1!+-

[Radziejewicz,I-Yakovich,Y Stockholm 1999, 1-0]

[29.h4+ ♔f4 30.g3+ ♔e5--]

Exercise 26



1...? -+

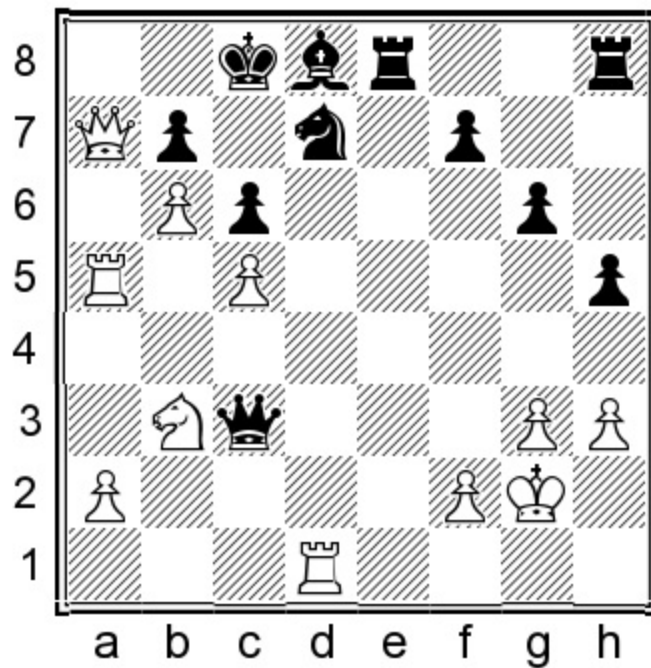
Show/Hide Solution

20...♖g4! 21.♙e1 [21.h3 ♜h6-+]

21...♜h6 22.♙g3 ♜xh2+ 23.♙xh2 ♖f2#

[Lillo Castay, V-Coll Ortega, J TCh-CAT 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 27



1.? +-

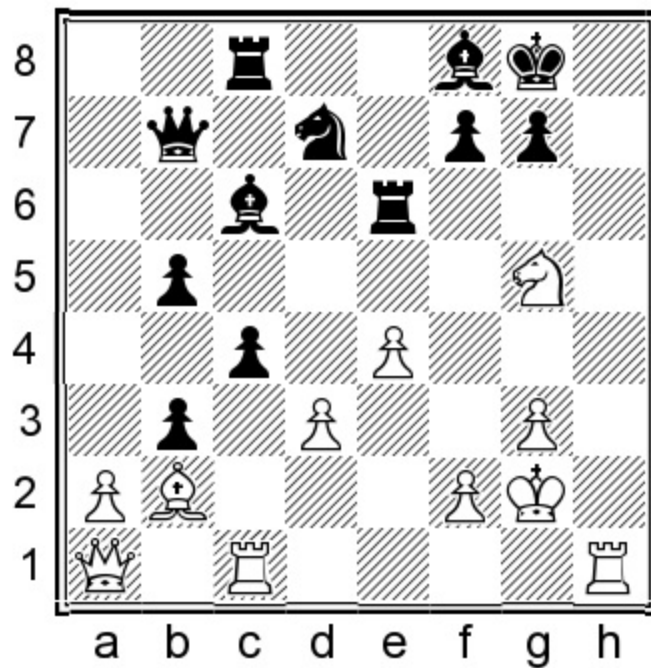
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖a8+! ♜b8 2. ♝xd8+! ♝xd8 [2... ♔xd8 3. ♚xb8+ ♕d7 4. ♚d6+ ♕c8 5. ♝a8#]

3. ♚xb7+! ♕xb7 4. ♝a7+ ♕c8 5. ♝c7#

[Mumelter-NN Vienna 1896, 1-0]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

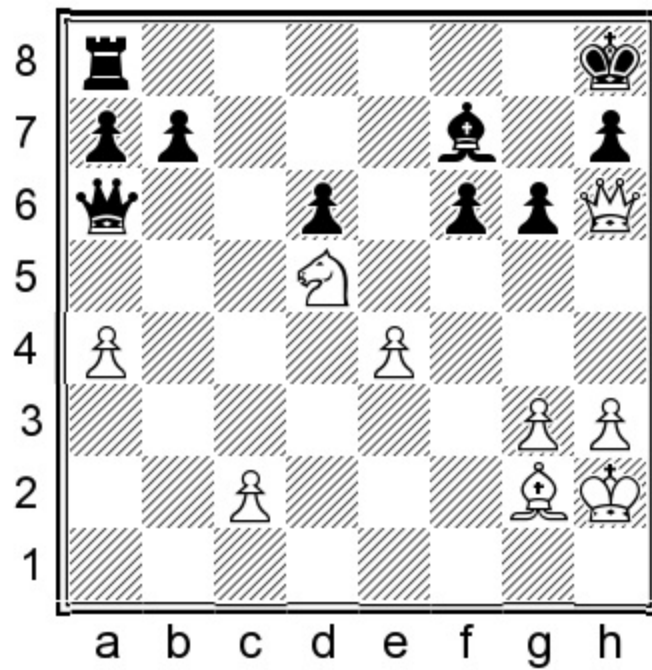
Show/Hide Solution

27.♖h8+! ♔xh8 28.♖h1+ ♔g8 29.♖h8+! ♔xh8 30.♚h1+ ♜h6 [30...♔g8 31.♚h7#]

31.♚xh6+ ♔g8 32.♚h7#

[Fier,A-Aloma Vidal,R Batumi 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 29



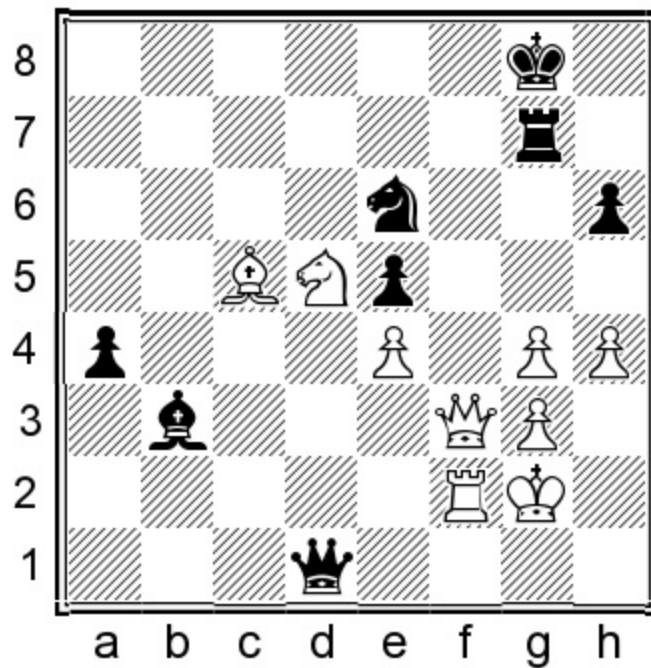
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf6 ♗g8 2. ♘h5!! gxh5 3. ♕f6#

[Hellbauer-Heinicke Hamburg 1933, 1-0]

Exercise 30



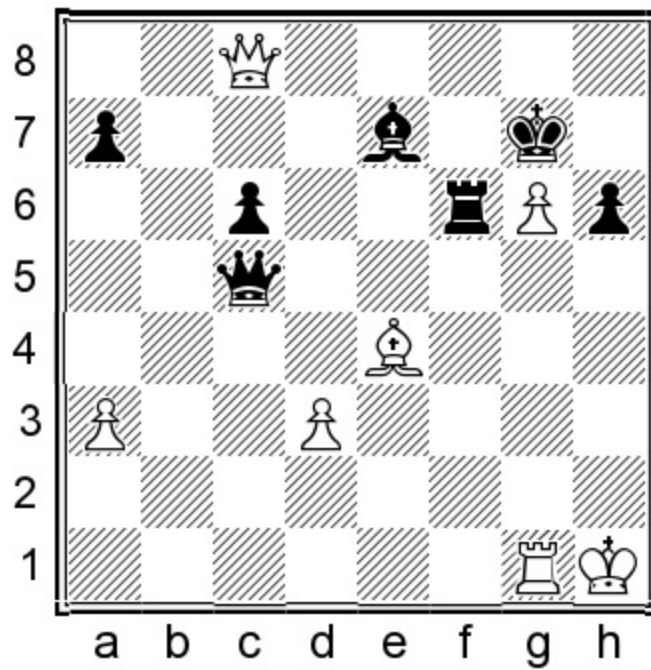
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

54. ♖f8+! ♜xf8 55. ♝xf8+ ♔h7 56. ♜f6+ ♔g6 57. h5+ ♔g5 58. ♕e3#

[Glek,I-Smirnov,P Moscow 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 31



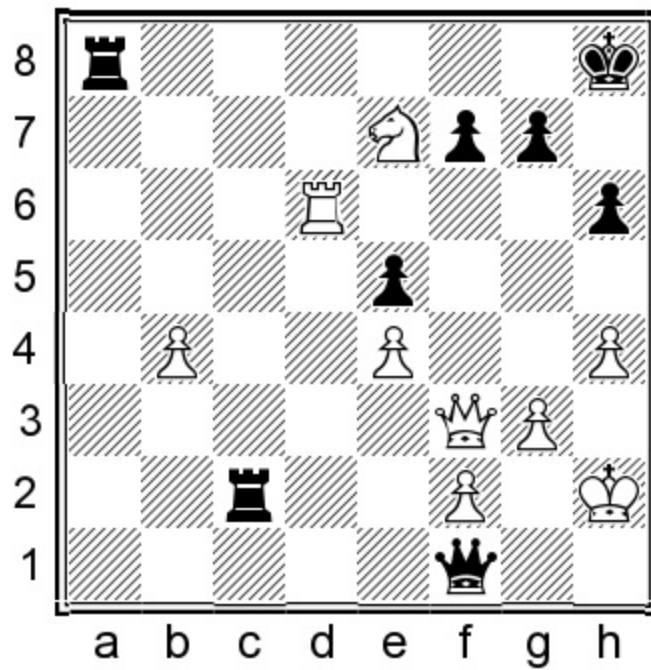
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖h8+!! ♔xh8 2. g7+ ♕g8 3. ♗h7+! ♕xh7 4. g8=♚#

[Tennenbaum-Piotrowski Lvov 1932, 1-0]

Exercise 32



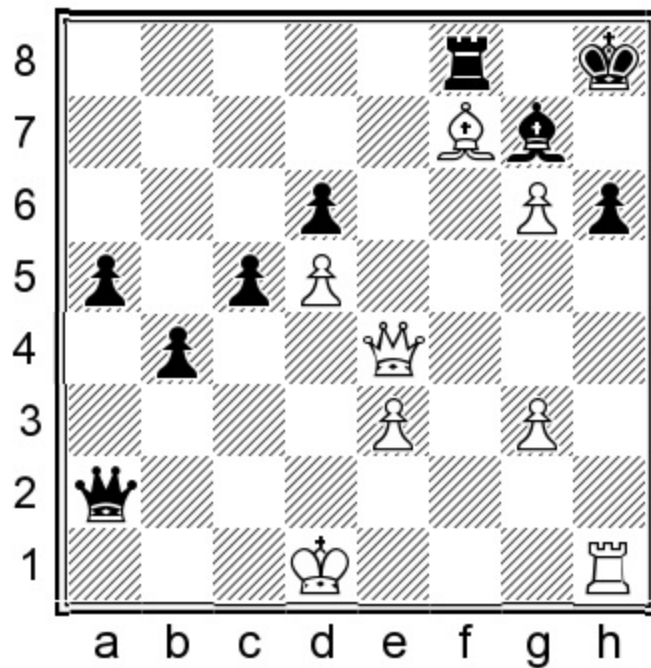
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

39. ♖xh6+! gxh6 40. ♚f6+ ♔h7 41. ♚xf7+ ♔h8 42. ♘g6#

[Lagno,K-Karavade,E Astana 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 33



1.? +-

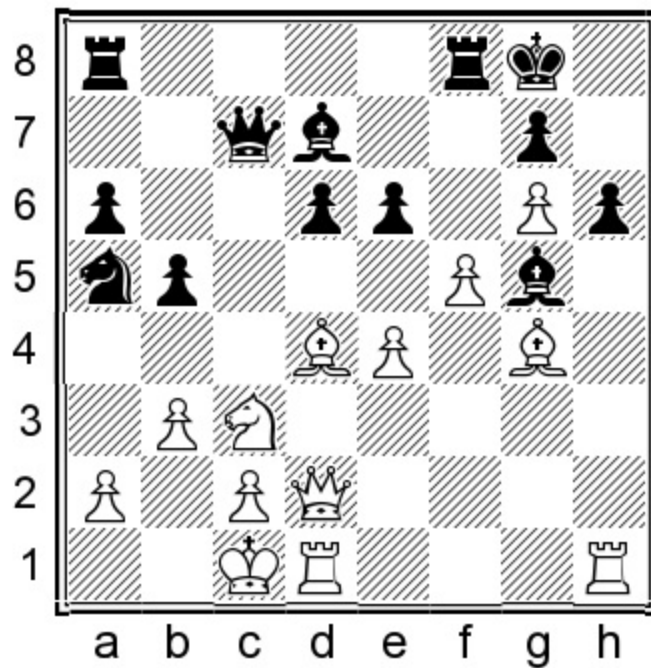
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xh6+ ♕xh6 2. g7+ ♔xg7 [2... ♕xg7 3. ♖h4+ ♕h6 4. ♖xh6#]

3. ♖g6+ ♔h8 4. ♖xh6#

[Rotshtein,E-Katalymov,B Kyiv 1952, 1-0]

Exercise 34



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

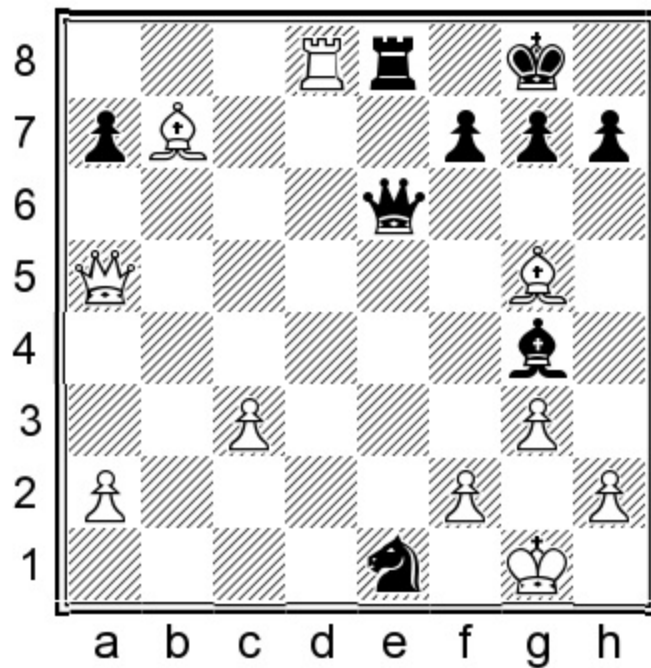
1.♙xg5!! hxg5 2.♖h7! ♜f7 [2...♞xf5 3.♞dh1 ♔f8 4.exf5 ♘c6 5.f6+-]

3.♞dh1 [3.♞h8+ ♔xh8 4.gxf7+-]

3...♔f8 4.f6! ♞xf6 5.♙xf6 gxf6 6.♞h8+ ♔g7 7.♞1h7+ ♔xg6 8.♙h5#

[Shutzman,J-Sharma,A Philadelphia 1994, 1-0]

Exercise 35



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

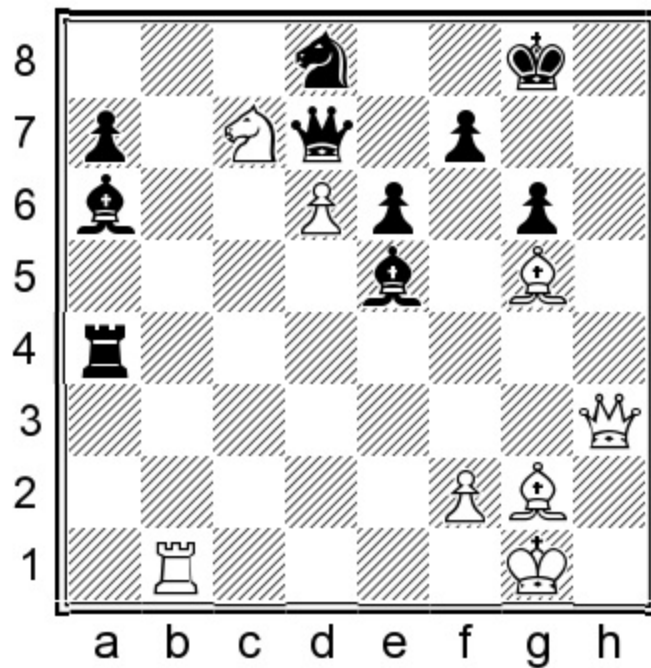
28...♖f3+! 29.♗xf3 [29.♔g2 ♗h3+ 30.♔xf3 ♕g4#]

29...♕e1+ 30.♔g2 ♗xf3+ 31.♔h3 [31.♔xf3 ♕e4#]

31...♕e6+-+

[Stefanova,A-Melia,S European Woman Championship 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 36



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖d5! ♜a5 [30... ♛c6 31. ♗f6+ ♘xf6 32. ♙xf6+-]

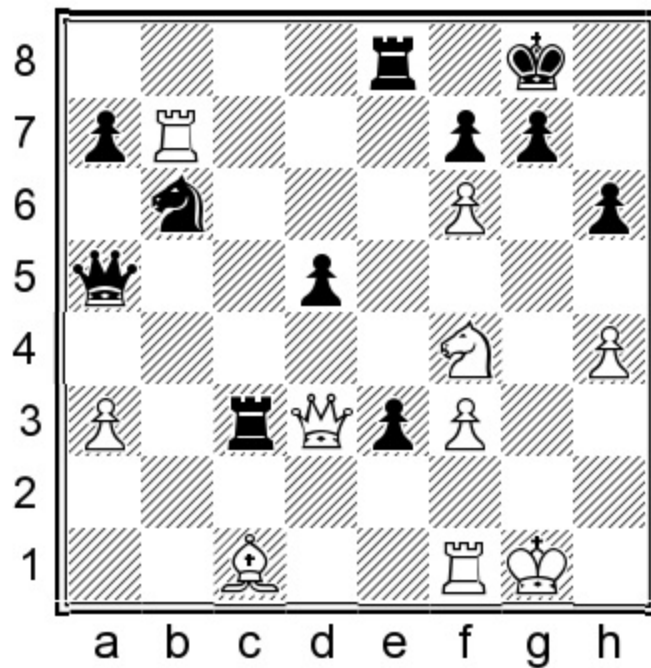
31. ♙f6!

[31. ♗f6+ ♘xf6 32. ♙xf6 ♜h5±; 31. ♗e7+ ♜f8 32. ♛h7+-]

31... ♙xf6 32. ♗xf6+ ♜g7 33. ♗xd7+-

[Bisby,D-Movsesian,S Reykjavik Open 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 37



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

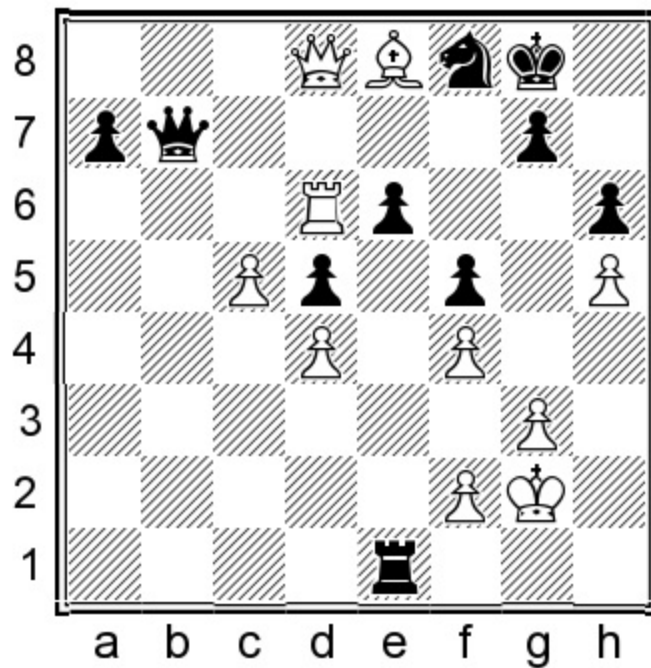
20. ♔g6!!

[20. ♖xf7! ♜xd3 (20... ♔xf7 21. ♔g6+ ♔g8 22. ♔xg7#) 21. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 22. ♘g6#]

20. ♔g6!! fxg6 21. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 22. ♘xg6#

[Bronstein,D-Geller,E URS-ch Moscow 1961, 1-0]

Exercise 38



1.? +-

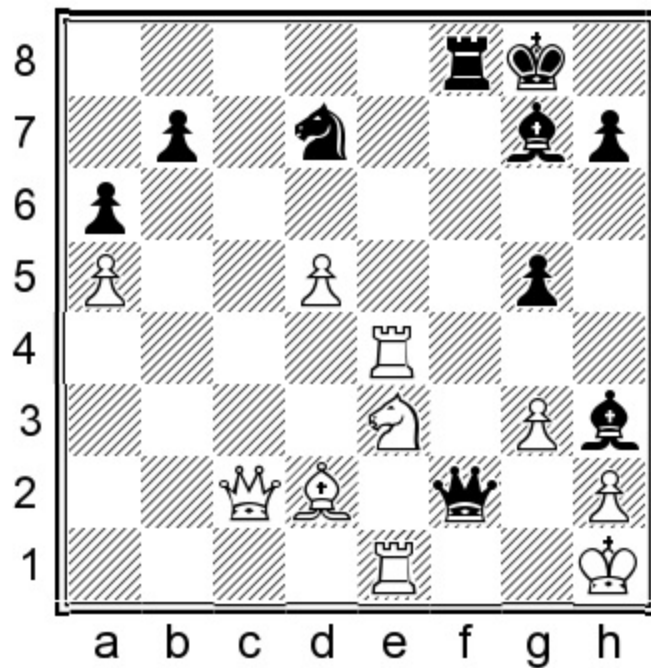
Show/Hide Solution

1.♞d7!! ♜xd7 [1...♞b1 2.♞xg7+! ♔h8 3.♞h7+! ♔g8 4.♞h8+!! ♔xh8 5.♞f6++-]

2.♙xd7+ ♔h7 3.♙e8! g5 4.hxg6+ ♔g7 5.c6+-

[Mikhalchishin,A-Jeric,S Slovenija 2000, 1-0]

Exercise 39



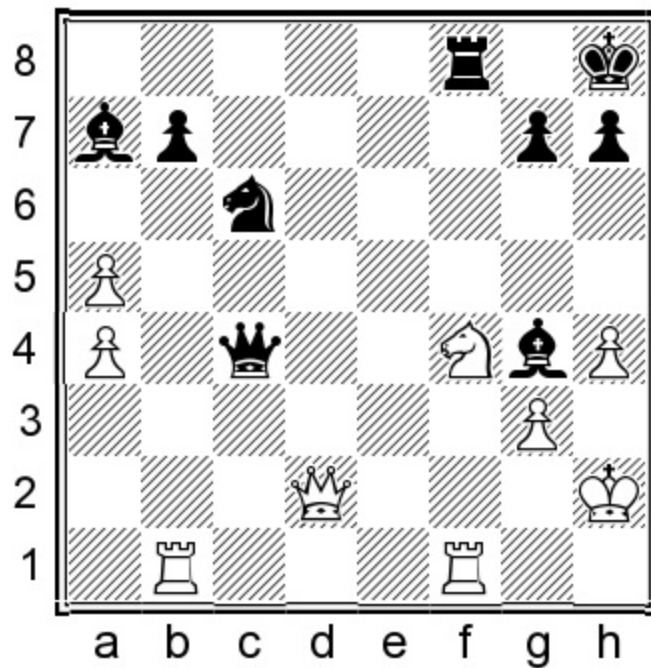
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

29...♔g2+! 30.♘xg2 ♚f1+ 31.♙xf1 ♜xf1#

[Andrews, T-Tate, E USA 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 40



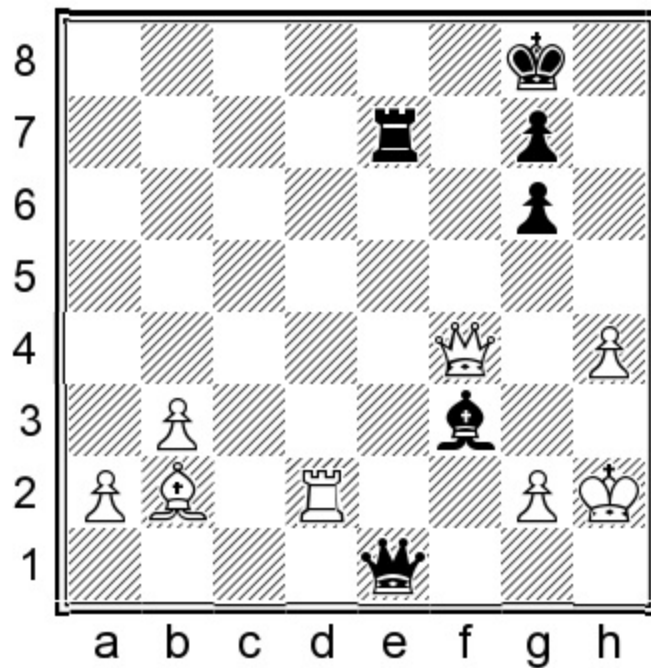
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖g6+! hxg6 31. ♖xf8+ ♔h7 32. ♕h6+!! gxh6 33. ♖xb7+-

[Popov,N-Novopashin,A Beltsy 1979, 1-0]

Exercise 41



1.? +-

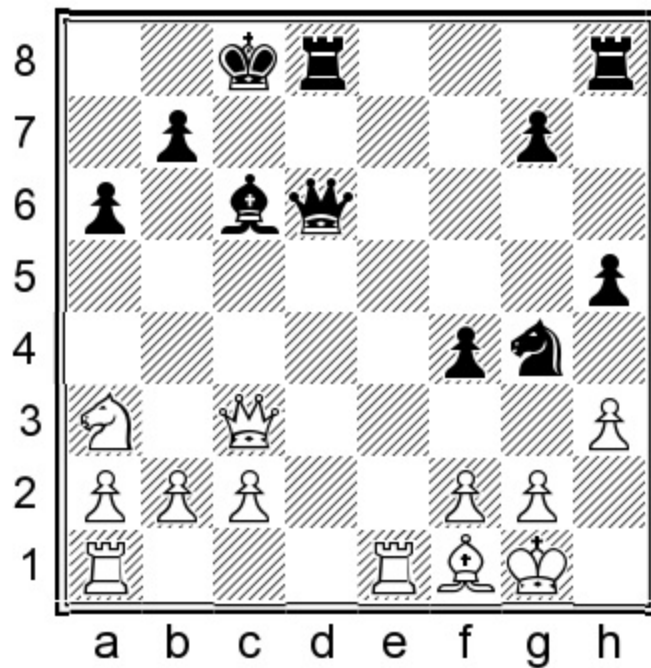
Show/Hide Solution

36.♖d8+ ♔h7 [36...♖e8 37.♗d4 ♕e7 38.♖xe8++-]

37.♗h6+!! ♔xh6 38.♖h8#

[Jonsson-Arnason,A Iceland 1980, 1-0]

Exercise 42



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

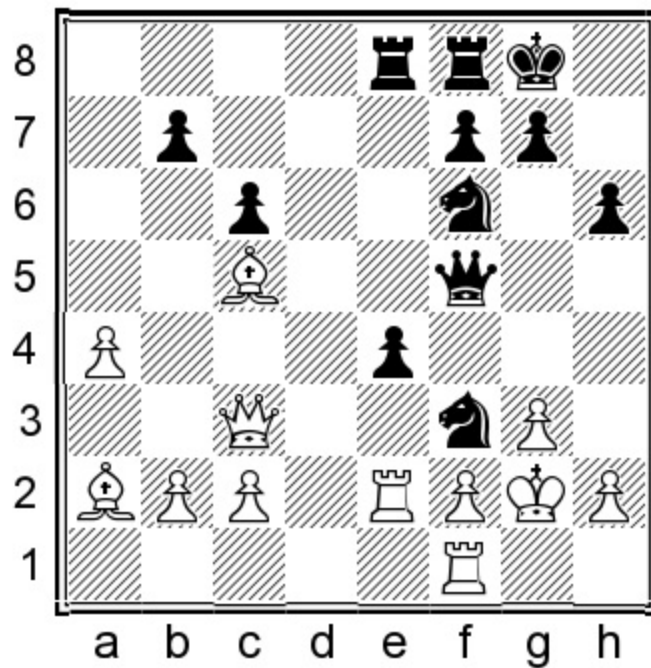
20...f3! 21.hxg4 hxg4 22.♖e5 ♜xe5

[22...♜h6 23.♖e6+ ♔b8 24.♖xh6 ♜xh6-+]

23.♜xe5 ♜h6 24.gxf3 ♙xf3 25.♙g2 ♜dh8-+

[Soto,M-Niemann,H Wycc 2019, 0-1]

Exercise 43



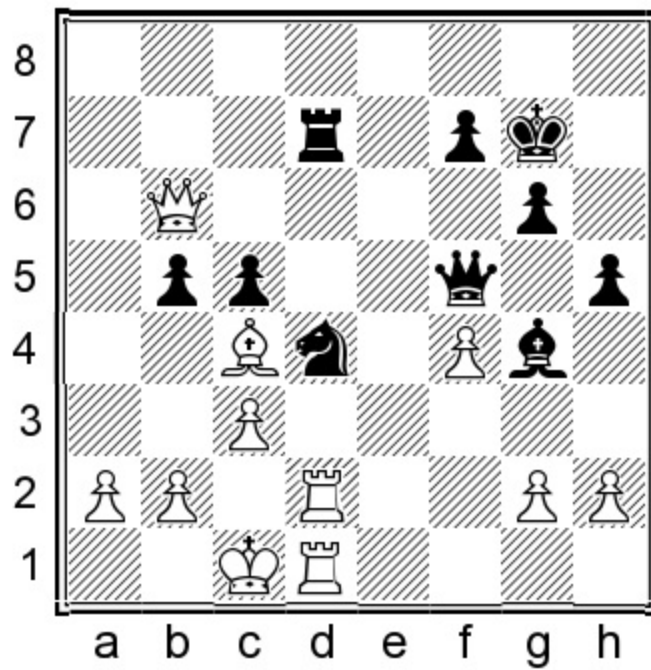
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

23...♖e5! 24.♙xf8 ♜h3+!! 25.♔xh3 ♜h5+ 26.♔g2 ♜xh2#

[Bok,B-Rapport,R Riga Tech Open A 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 44



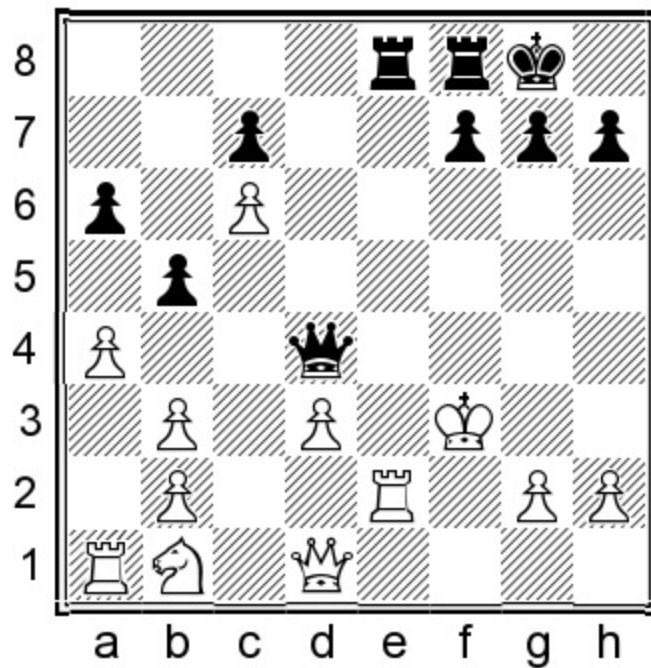
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔c2+!! 2.♖xc2 ♘b3+ 3.axb3 ♖xd1#

[Driksna-Straurtinsh Corr 1968, 0-1]

Exercise 45



1...? -+

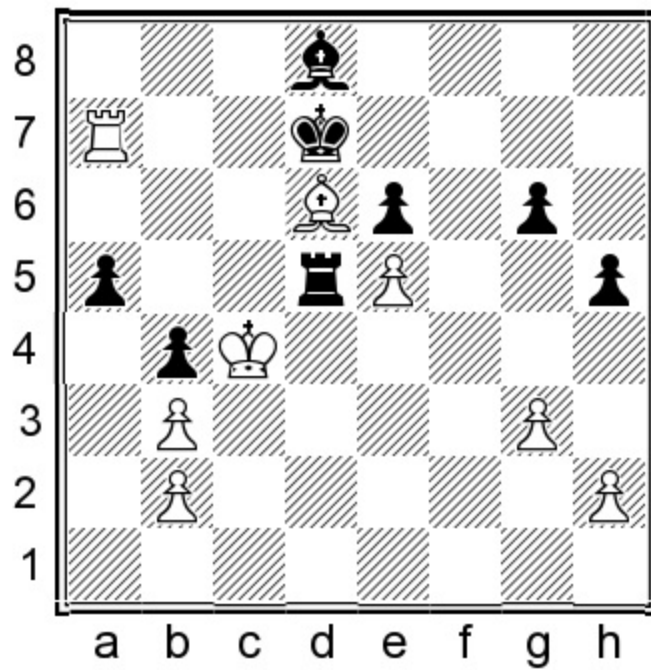
Show/Hide Solution

19...♖f6+! 20.♔g3 g5!! 21.♞f2 ♞d6+ 22.♔h3 ♞h6+ 23.♔g4 ♞h4+-+

[Bjerre,J-Dubov,D Batumi 2019, 0-1]

[23...f5+! 24.♞xf5 (24.♔f3 ♞h5+ 25.♔g3 ♞h4+ 26.♔f3 ♞f4#) 24...♞h4+ 25.♔f3 ♞xf5#]

Exercise 46



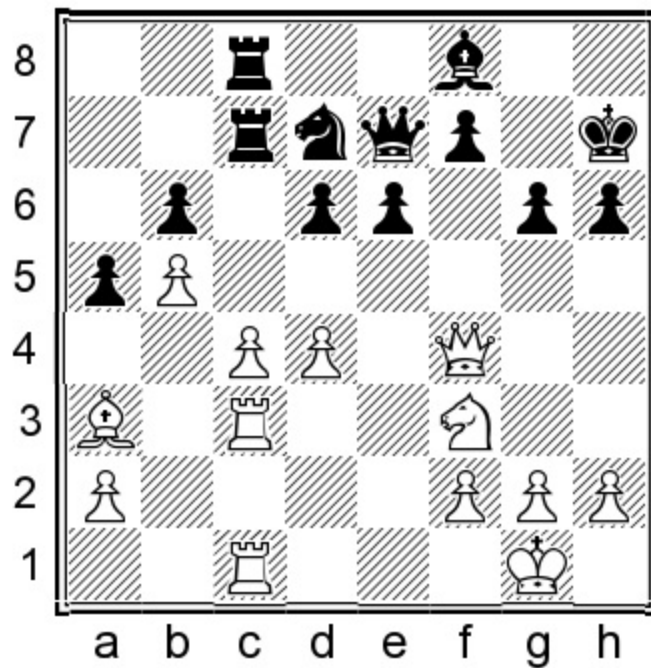
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

41...♙c6! 42.♖a8 ♗b6 43.♖c8+ ♜b7 44.♖e8 ♜a6!-+

[Mikhalchishin,A-Mandl,R Dortmund 1993, 0-1]

Exercise 47



1.? +-

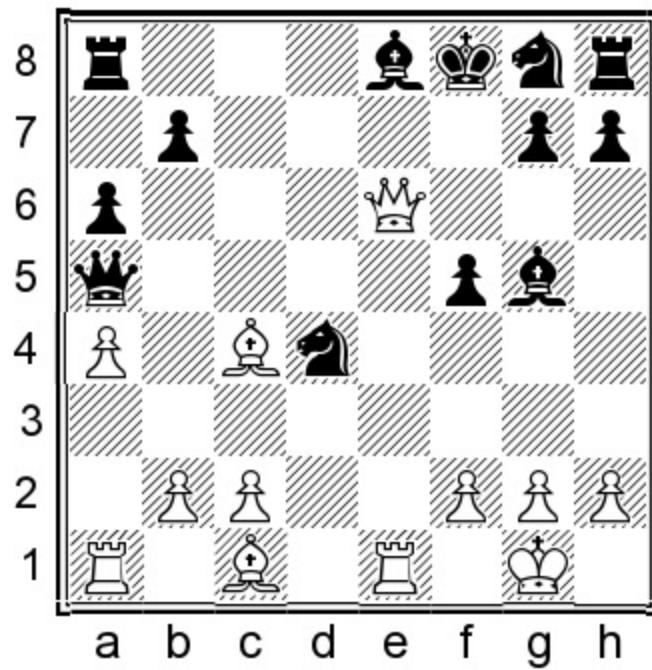
Show/Hide Solution

24. ♔xd6! ♚xd6 25. ♘g5+! hxg5 [25... ♖g8 26. ♚xf7+ ♔h8 27. ♚h7#; 25... ♔h8 26. ♘xf7+ ♔g7 27. ♘xd6+-]

26. ♚xf7+ ♔g7 27. ♚h3#

[Yudovich, M-Yurkov, V Moscow 1965, 1-0]

Exercise 48



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

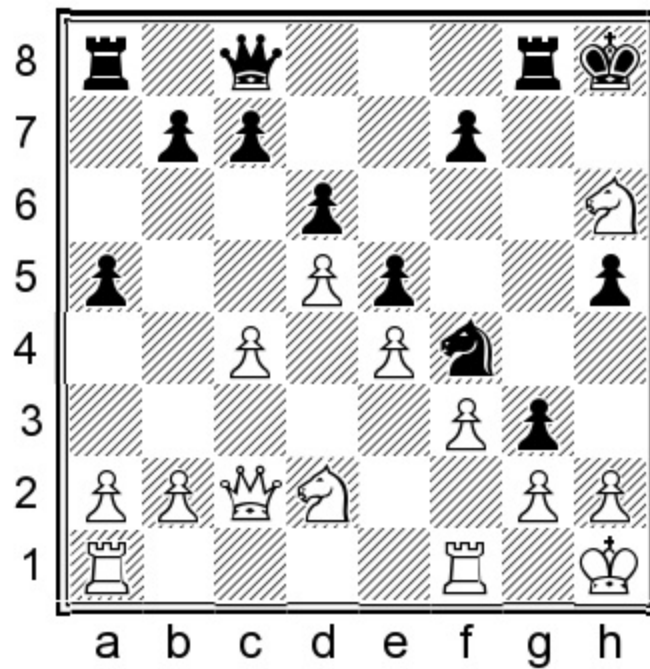
18. ♖d6+ ♔e7 19. ♜xe7! ♞xe7 20. ♚f6+!! gxf6 21. ♘h6#

[Ofstad,P-Uhlmann,W Halle/Saale 1963, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS 3

Exercise 1



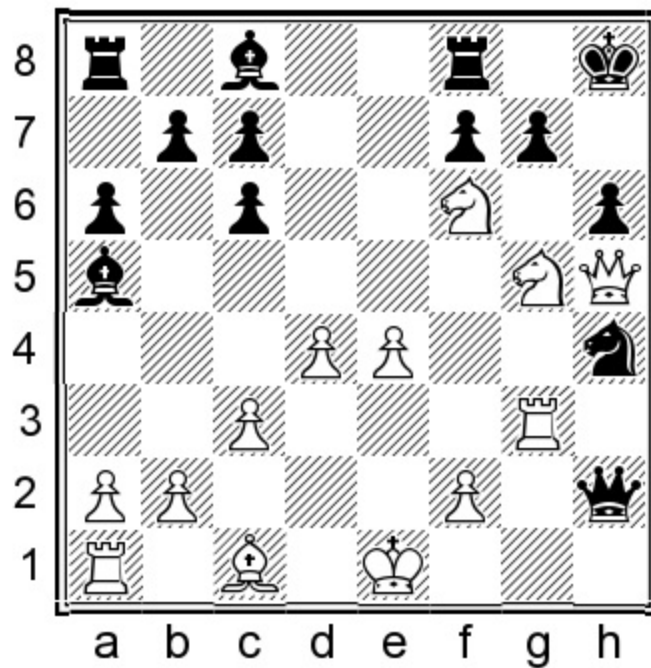
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

23...♔h3! 24.gxh3 g2+ 25.♕g1 ♖xh3#

[Training position, 0-1]

Exercise 2



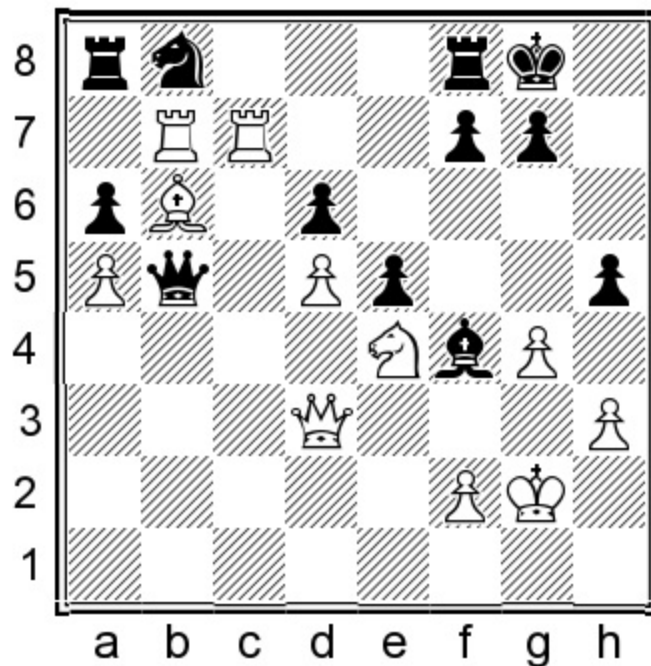
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖xh6+! gxh6 20. ♘xf7+ ♜xf7 21. ♜g8#

[Bogoljubow,E-Mueller,H Triberg 1934, 1-0]

Exercise 3



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

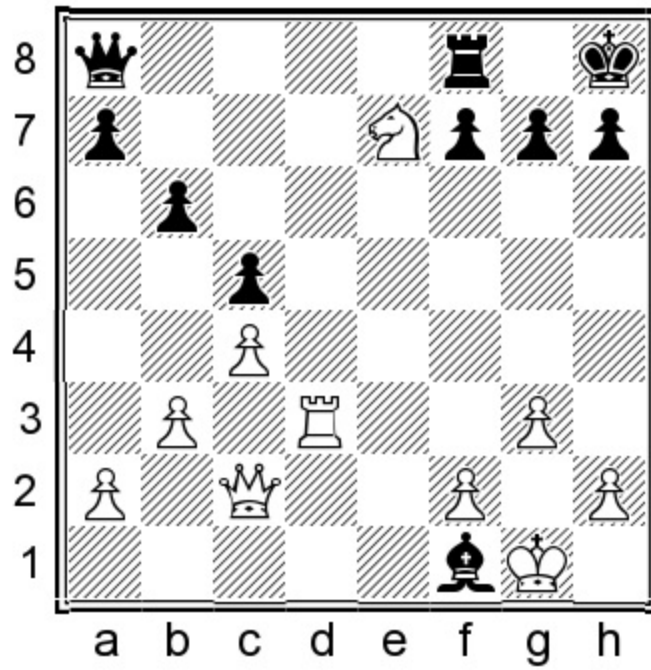
30. ♖f6+! gxf6 31. ♜g6+! ♔h8 [31...fxg6 32. ♜g7+ ♔h8 33. ♜h7+ ♔g8 34. ♜bg7#]

32. ♜xh5+ ♔g8 33. ♜g6+ ♔h8 34. ♜xf6+ ♔g8 35. ♜g6+ ♔h8 36. ♜xf7 ♜xd5+ 37. f3! [37. ♔f1 ♜d1+ 38. ♔g2 ♜d5+]

37... ♜d2+ 38. ♜f2+-

[Bok,B-Gajewski,G Fagernes 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

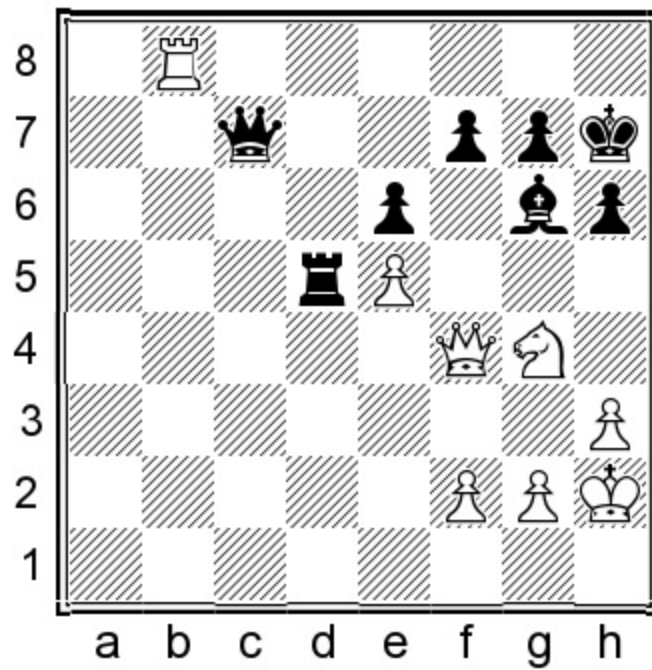
Show/Hide Solution

25.♞d5!! g6 [25...♙h3 26.♜xh7+! ♔xh7 27.♞h5#]

26.♔xf1+-

[Lengyel,L-Sliwa,B Polanica Zdroj 1966, 1-0]

Exercise 5



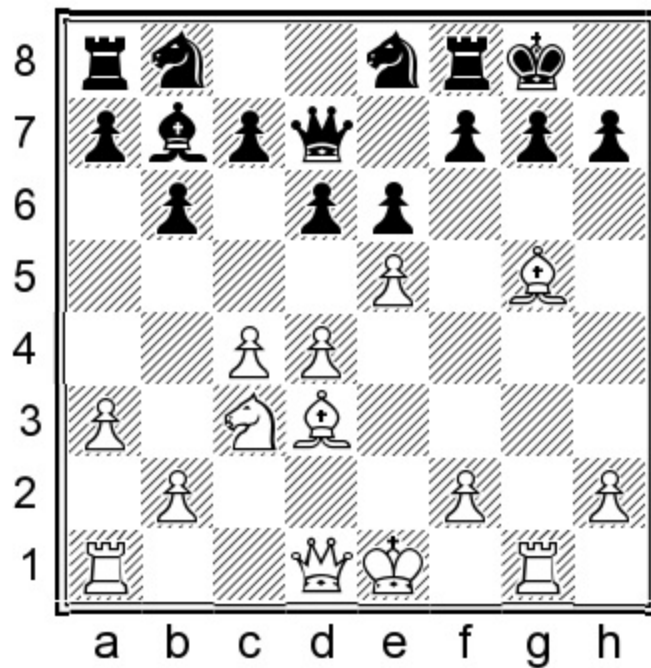
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

33. ♖xh6+!! g7xh6 34. ♘f6+ ♔g7 35. ♖g8#

[Kovalenko,I-Sakaev,K St Petersburg 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 6



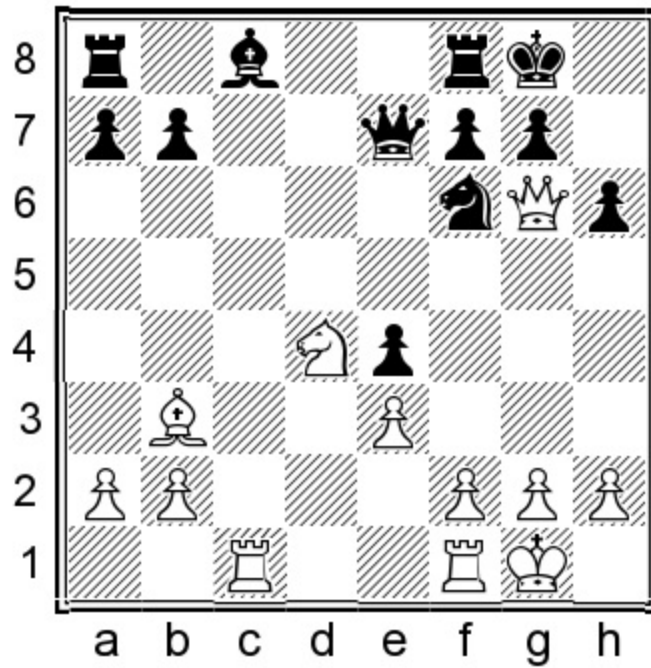
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

13. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 14. ♚h5+ ♔g8 15. ♘f6+-

[Aczel,G-Kincs,I Balatonboglar 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 7



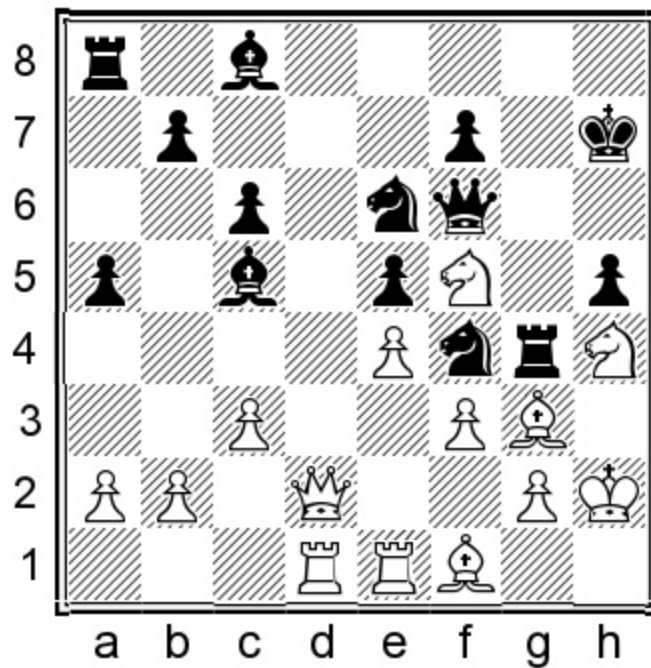
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖xc8! ♜xc8 21. ♘f5 ♚f8 22. ♘xh6+ ♜h8 23. ♘xf7+ ♜g8 24. ♘e5+ ♜h8 25. ♚g5 ♚c5 26. ♚h4+ ♘h7 27. ♘g6#

[Mikenas, V-Schmitt, L Brno 1931, 1-0]

Exercise 8

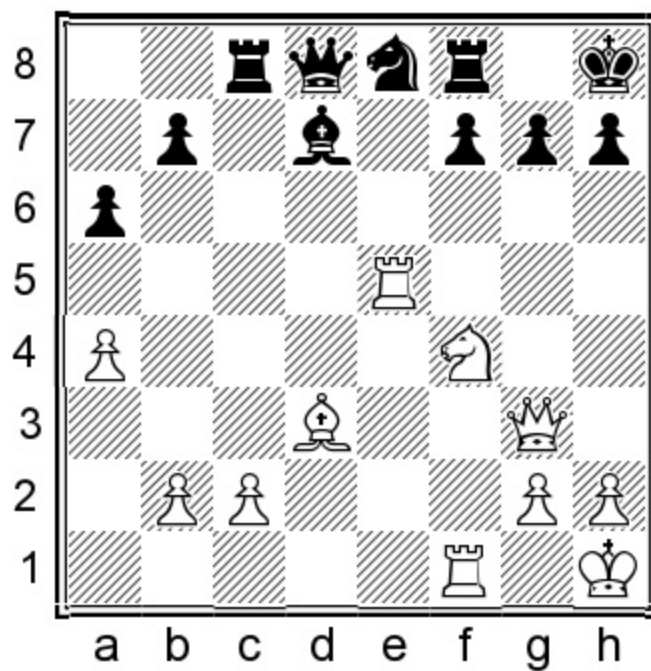


1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

28...♖xg3! 29.♔xg3 ♕g1!-+ [Palac,M-Inarkiev,E 15th ch-EUR Indiv 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 9



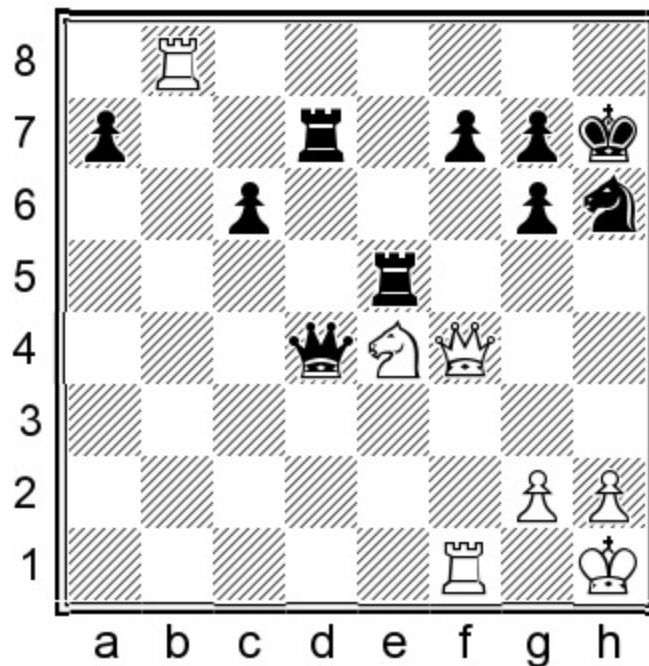
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25.♙xh7! ♔xh7 26.♖h5+ ♔g8 27.♘g6!! fxg6 28.♗b3+-

[Macieja,B-Grover,S Dallas 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 10



1...?+-

Show/Hide Solution

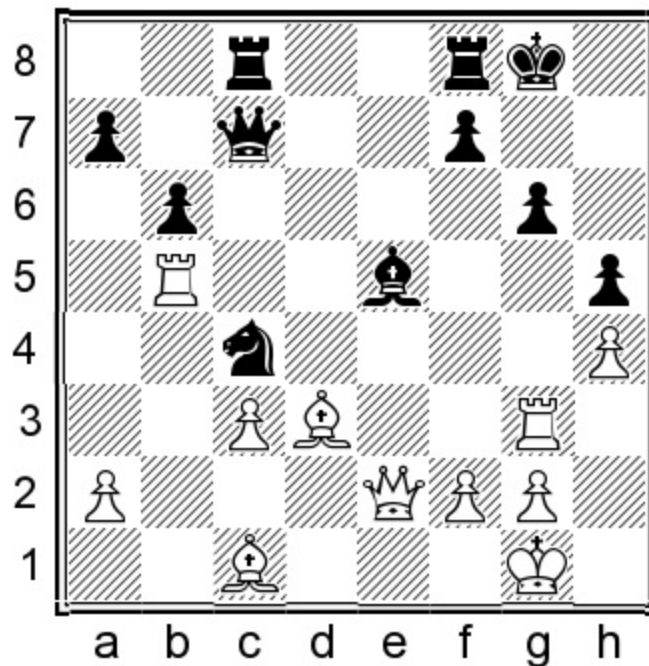
30.♗xh6+!! gxh6

[30...♔xh6 31.♖h8#]

31.♘f6+ ♔g7 32.♖g8#

[Mekhitarian,K-Umetsubo,C Joao Pessoa 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 11



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25.♔xg6! ♕xg3 [25...fxg6 26.♖xg6+ ♔f7 (26...♕g7 27.♚e6+ ♜f7 28.♖xh5 ♚c6 29.♖xg7+ ♔xg7 30.♕h6+ ♔g8 31.♚g4+-) 27.♚xh5+-]

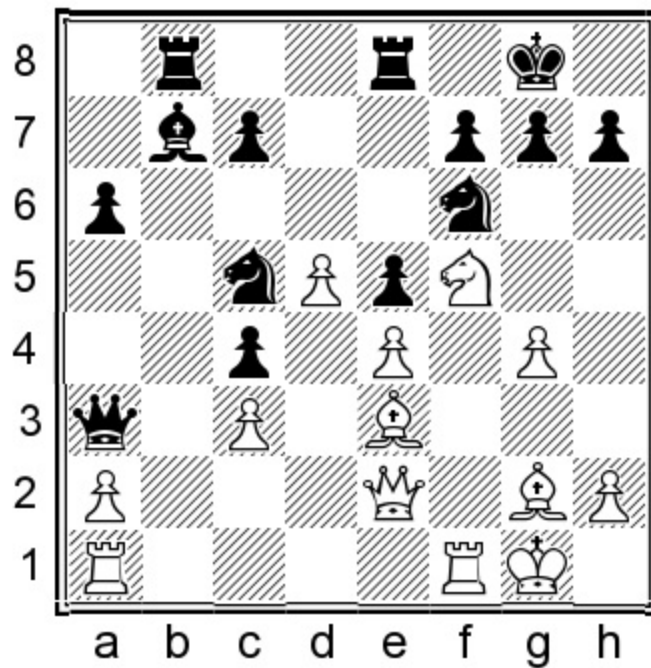
26.♕h7+! ♔h8 [26...♔xh7 27.♚xh5+ ♔g7 28.♚h6+ ♔g8 29.♖g5#]

27.♚xh5 ♕f4 28.♕xf4 [28.♖g5+-]

28...♚xf4 29.♖g5+-

[Miezis,N-Krassowizkij,J Schwaebisch Gmuend 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

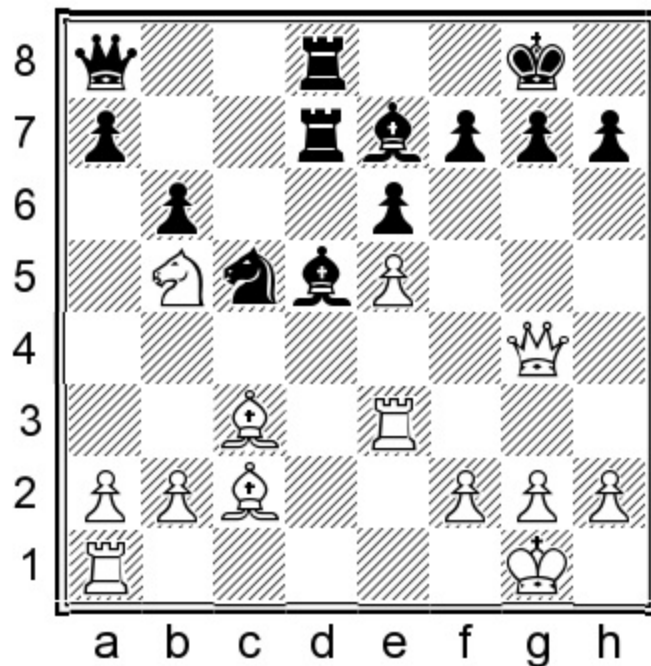
Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖xg7! ♔xg7 21. ♖xf6! ♔xf6 22. ♕f2+ ♔g7 23. ♘h6+! ♔g8 [23... ♔xh6 24. ♕f6#]

24. ♕f6+-

[Rambaldi,F-Delchev,A Bad Wiessee 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

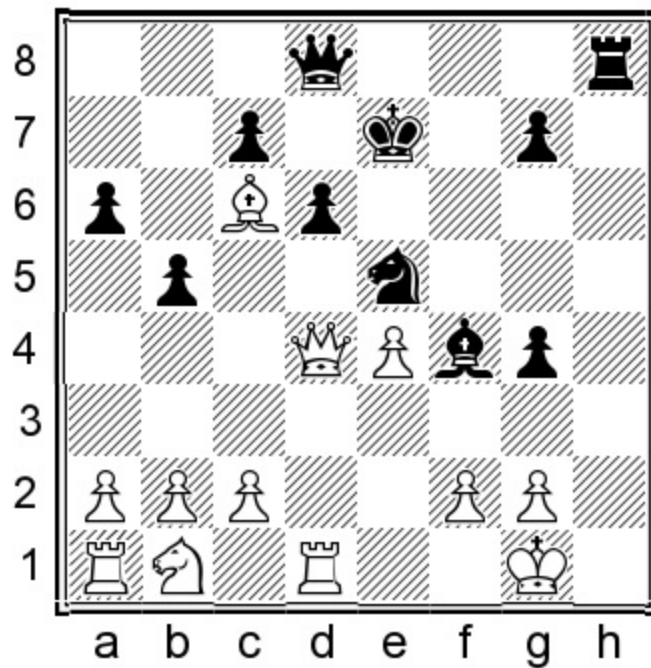
Show/Hide Solution

21.♙xh7+! ♖xh7 22.♚h5+ ♔g8 23.♞h3 f5 24.exf6 ♙f8 [24...♙xf6 25.♙xf6 gxf6 26.♚h8+ ♖f7 27.♞h7+ ♔g6 28.♞h6+ ♖f5 29.♚xf6+ ♖e4 30.♚f3+ ♖e5 31.♞h5#]

25.f7+! ♞xf7 26.♚h7#

[Zelbel,P-Fontaine,Q TCh-BEL 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1...? -+

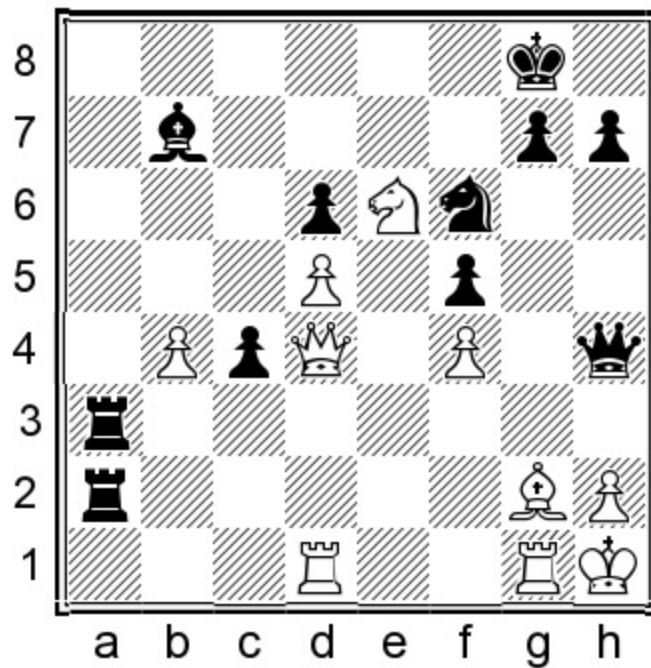
Show/Hide Solution

18...♖h1+! 19.♔xh1 ♚h8+ 20.♔g1 ♜f3+!! 21.♔f1 [21.gxf3 gxf3-+]

21...♞xd4 22.♖xd4 ♙e5-+

[Beliavsky,N-Rapoport,I Corr 1977, 0-1]

Exercise 15



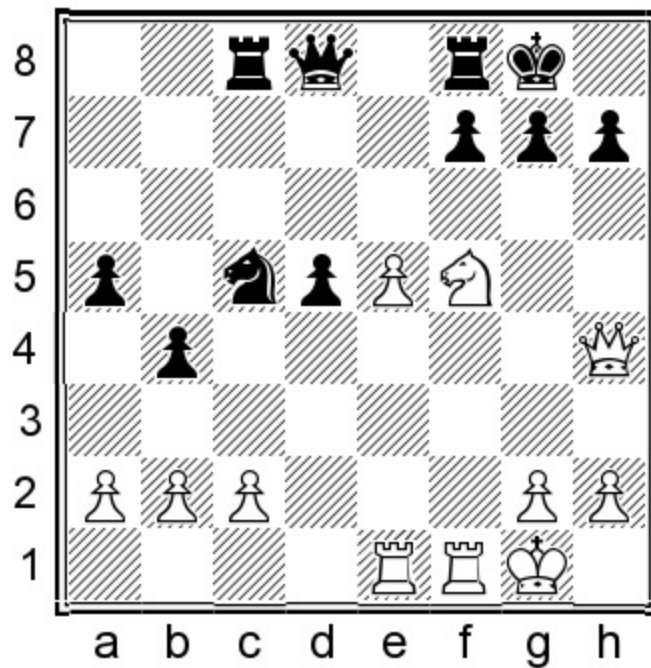
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

31...♙xh2+!! 32.♔xh2 ♖g4+ 33.♔h1 ♜h3+!! 34.♙xh3 ♜h2#

[Inkirov, V-Bajovic, M Plovdiv 1982, 0-1]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖e7+ ♔h8 23. ♜f4! h6 [23... ♗e6 24. ♚xh7+ ♔xh7 25. ♞h4#]

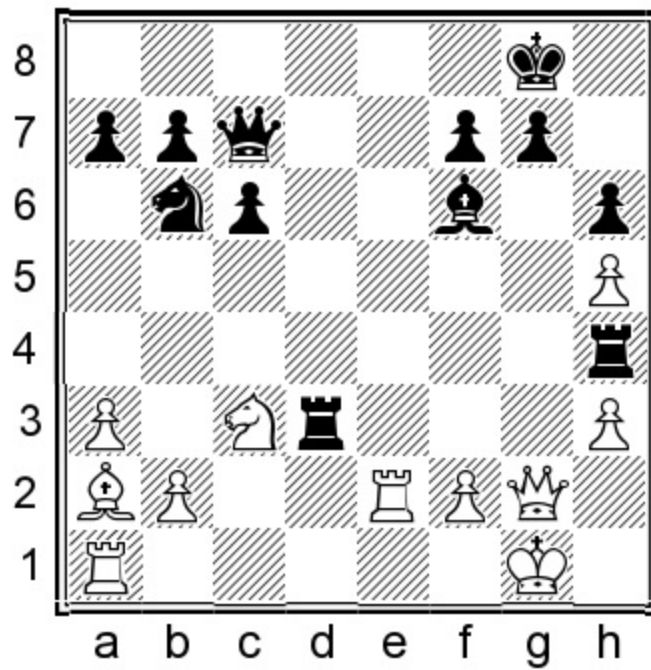
24. ♞f6! [24.e6!+-]

24... ♔h7 [24... ♚xe7 25. ♞xh6+ gxh6 26. ♚xe7+-]

25. ♗f5 ♗e6 26. ♞xh6+ gxh6 27. ♚xh6+ ♔g8 28. ♞e3+-

[Sevian,S-Shetty,A Chicago 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 17



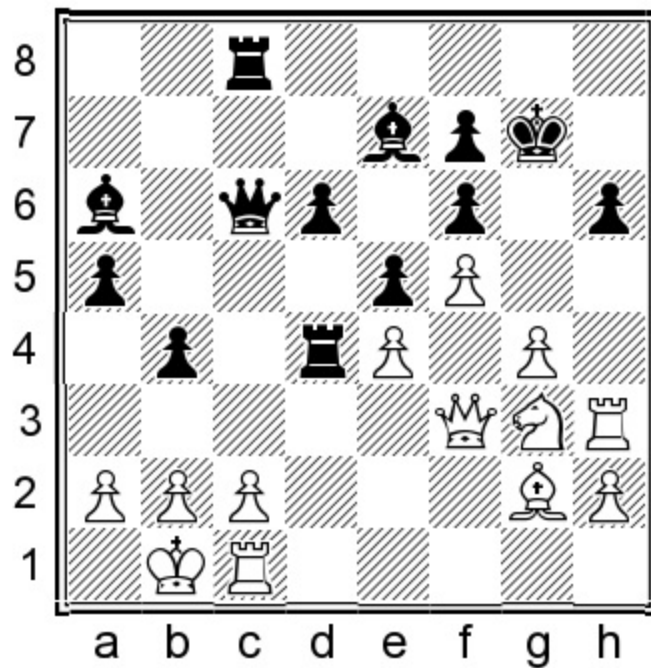
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

26.♖e8+ ♔h7 27.♚g6+! fxg6 28.♗g8+ ♔h8 29.♗f7+ ♔h7 30.hxg6#

[Krupenski,J-Gelfand,B Tallinn 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

32...♔d3! [32...♖d2?? 33.♗e3 ♗xc2+ 34.♖xc2 ♖d1+ 35.♗c1!+- (35.♖c1?? ♔d3+)]

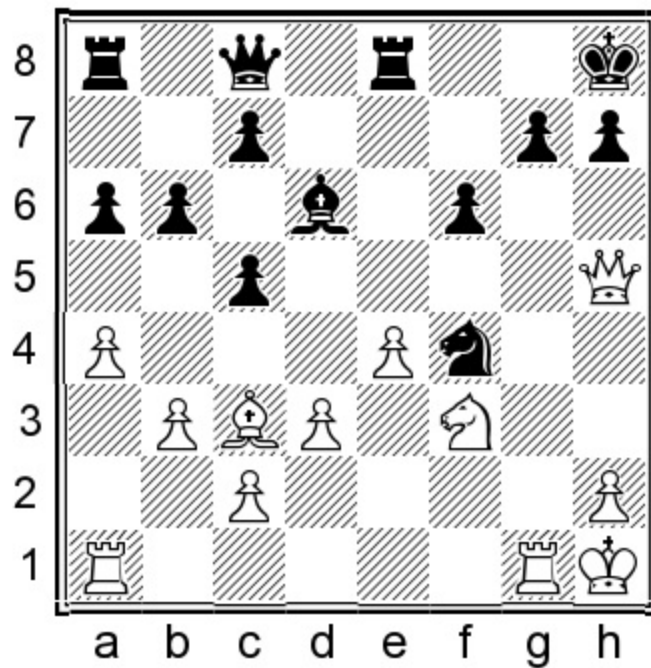
32...♔d3! 33.♕a1 [33.♗xd3 ♖xd3 34.♘h5+ ♕h7 35.♖xd3 ♗c5-+]

33...♗xc2! 34.♖xc2 ♔xc2 35.b3 ♖d1+ 36.♗xd1 [36.♕b2 ♖b1#]

36...♔xd1-+

[Volokitin,A-Kozul,Z Bled 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

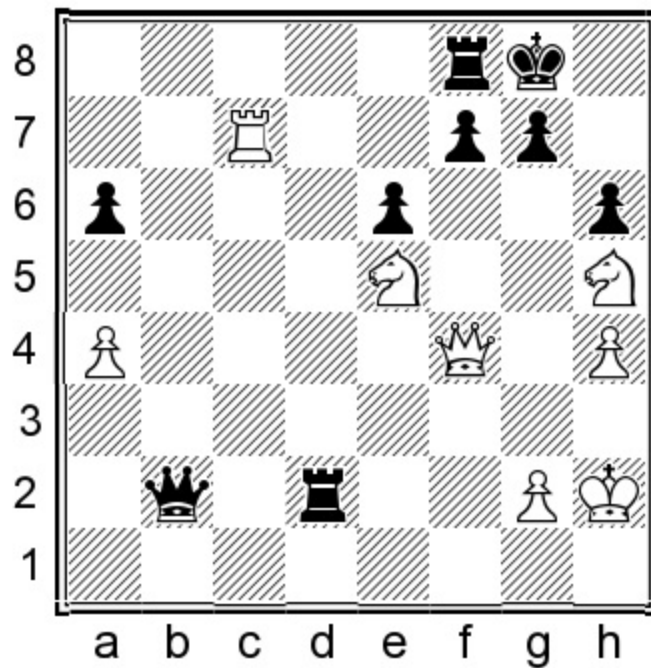
26. ♖h6!! ♜e6 [26...gxh6 27. ♘xf6#]

27. ♘xf6 [27. ♖xg7 ♜xg7 28. ♜g5+-]

27... ♘f8 28. ♖xg7 ♘xg7 29. ♜g5 ♜g8 30. ♖xh7+ ♜f8 31. ♜xe6+ ♖xe6 32. ♖xg7+-

[Dominguez Perez,L-Adhiban,B Monzón 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35. ♖f6+! gxf6 [35... ♔h8 36. ♖g6+! fxg6 37. ♗xh6+! gxh6 38. ♖h7#]

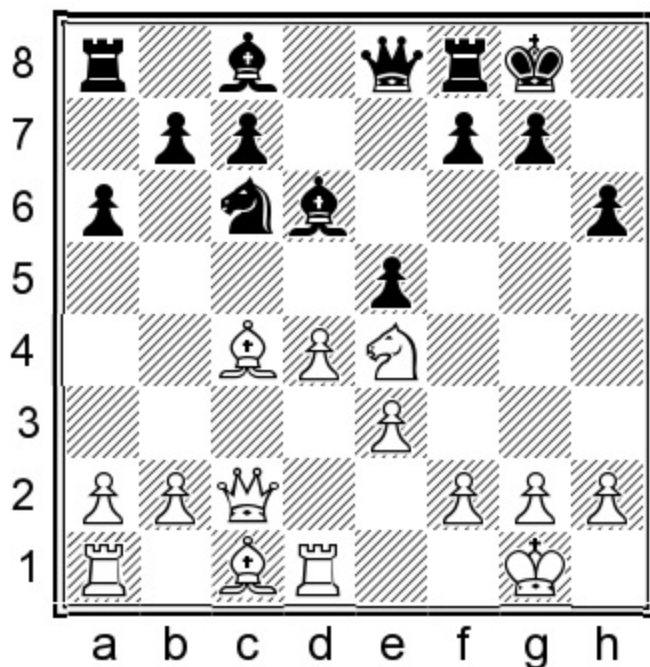
36. ♗g3+ ♔h7 [36... ♔h8 37. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 38. ♖c8+ ♔h7 39. ♗g8#]

37. ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 38. ♗g6+ ♔h8 39. ♖xf7#

[Ivanchuk, V-Wojtaszek, R Olympiad 2012, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 21



1.? +-

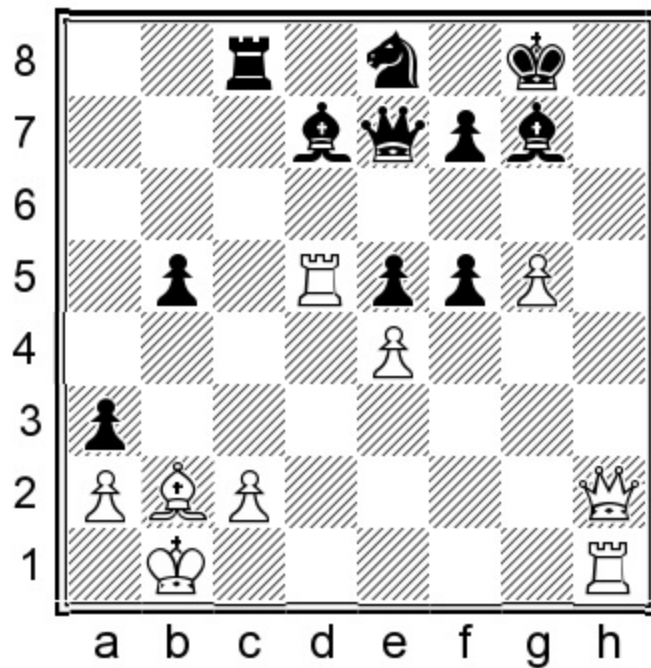
Show/Hide Solution

14. ♖f6+! gxf6 15. ♔g6+ ♕h8 16. ♖xh6+ ♕g8 17. ♖g6+ [17. ♖xf6?? ♕h7 (17...e4!)=]

17... ♕h8 18. ♖xf6+ ♕h7 19. e4! exd4 20. ♖h4+ ♕g8 21. ♖d3 ♖e7 22. ♔g5+-

[Vaissier,A-Knezevic,M Trnava 1983, 1-0]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

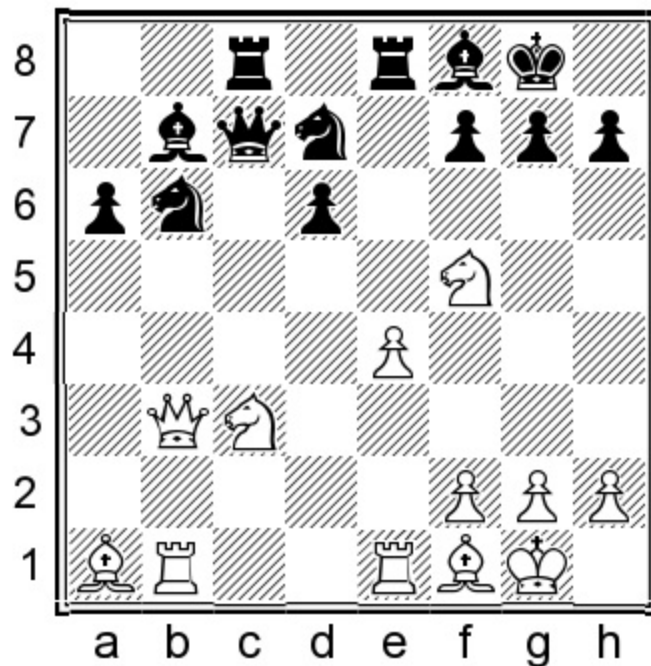
28. ♖xe5! ♙e6 [28... ♙xe5 29. ♗h8+ ♙xh8 30. ♖xh8#]

29. ♗h7+ ♜f8 30. ♗xg7+! ♜xg7 [30... ♞xg7 31. ♖h8#]

31. ♖xe6+ axb2 32. ♖xe7+-

[Kupreichik, V-Gufeld, E Kirovabad 1973, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖a4! [22. ♖b5! axb5 23. ♖h6+ ♔h8 24. ♖xf7+ ♔g8 25. ♖h6+ ♔h8 26. ♖g8#]

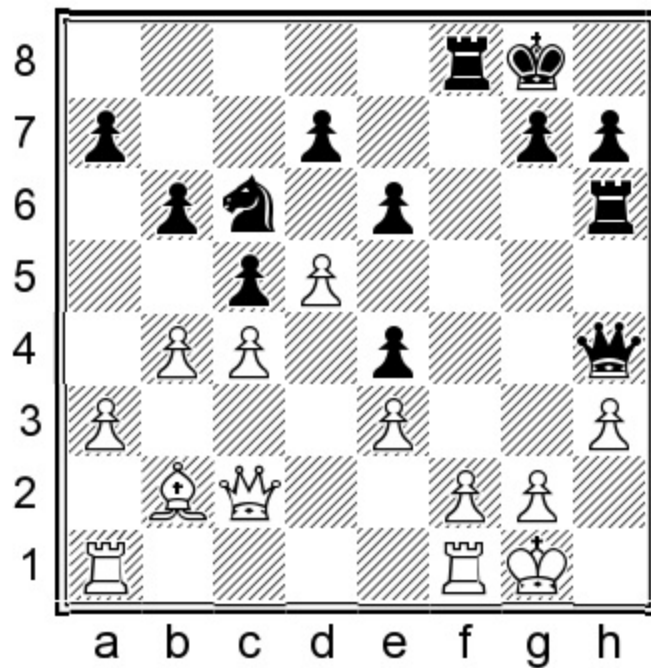
22. ♖a4! ♙xe4 [22... ♖e6 23. ♖xb6 ♖xb6 24. ♖xb6 ♖xb6 25. ♖xb6+-]

23. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 24. ♖h6+- ♔h8 [24... gxf6 25. ♖g3+ ♙g7 26. ♖xg7#]

25. ♖xf7+ ♔g8 26. ♖h6+ ♔h8 27. ♖g8#

[Marin, M-Naumann, F Budapest 1990, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

18...♖f3!! 19.dxc6

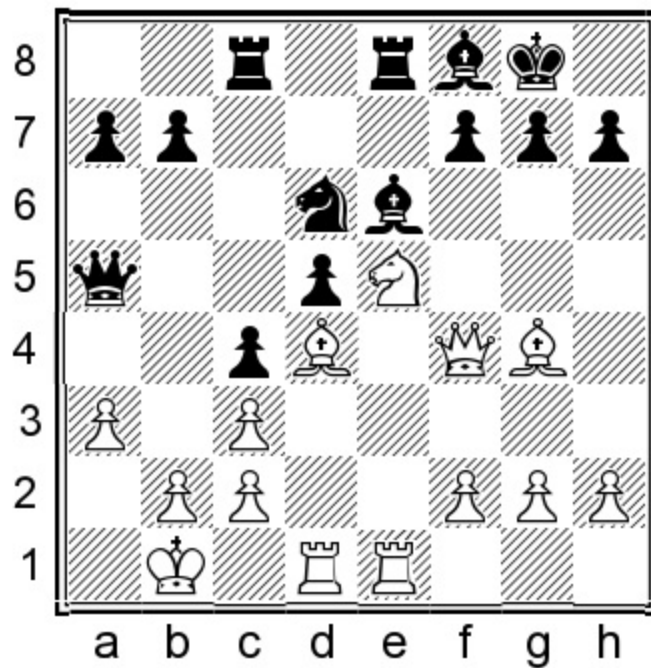
[19.gxf3 ♕xh3-+; 19.♖fd1 ♜g6! 20.♔f1 ♜xg2! 21.♔xg2 ♕xh3+ 22.♔g1 ♜f5-+]

19...♜xh3 20.gxh3 ♕g5+ [20...♕xh3-+]

21.♔h2 ♕g4!-+

[Handler,L-Stefansson,H Reykjavik Open 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 25



1.? +-

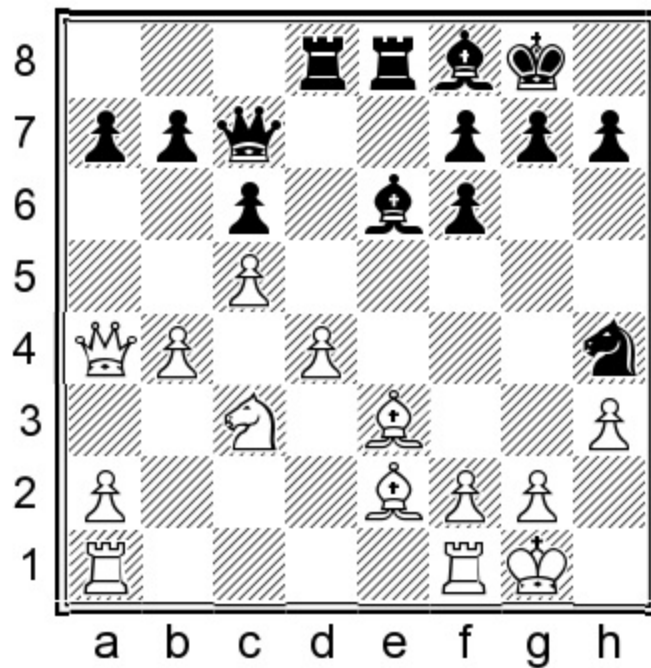
Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖xe6 ♜xe6 [20...fxe6 21. ♘d7 ♚c7 22. ♘xf8 ♜xf8 23. ♚g4+-]

21. ♘xf7! ♜xe1 22. ♘h6+! gxh6 23. ♚g4+ ♔f7 24. ♜xe1+-

[Caruana,F-Duda,J GCT Rapid Paris 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 26



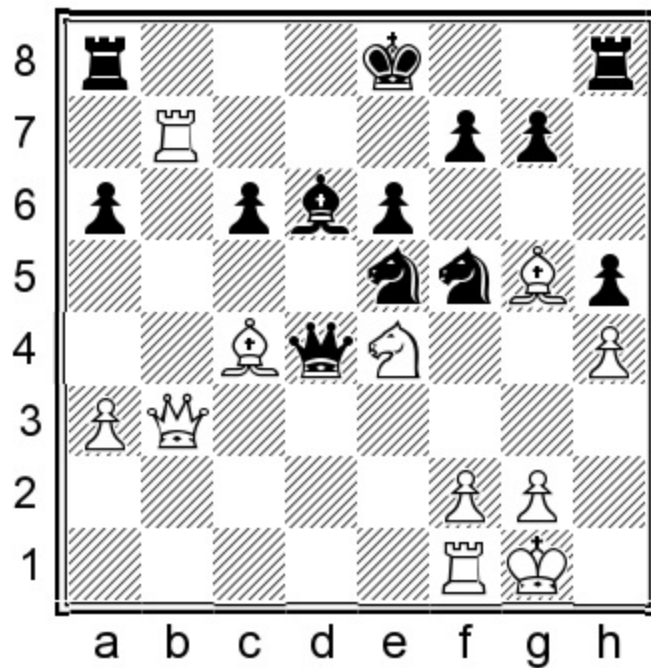
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

17...♙xh3! 18.gxh3 ♜xe3! 19.fxe3 ♚g3+ 20.♔h1 ♚g2#

[Ernst,T-Berg,K Malmo 1988, 0-1]

Exercise 27



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

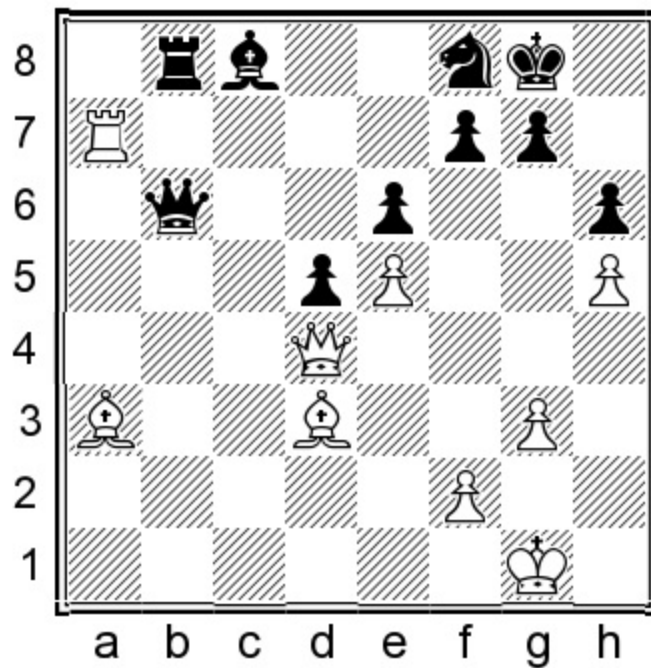
18.♖d1! [18.♙xe6! ♜xe4 19.♙xf7+ ♔f8 20.♙g6 ♜d5 21.♜xd5 cxd5 22.♙xf5+-]

18.♖d1! ♜xe4 19.♜b8+!! ♜xb8 20.♜xb8+ ♙xb8 [20...♔d7 21.♜b7+ ♔e8 22.♜c8#]

21.♖d8#

[Movsesian,S-Saltaev,M Muelheim 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

34. ♖xf7! ♔xf7 [34... ♛xd4 35. ♖xf8#]

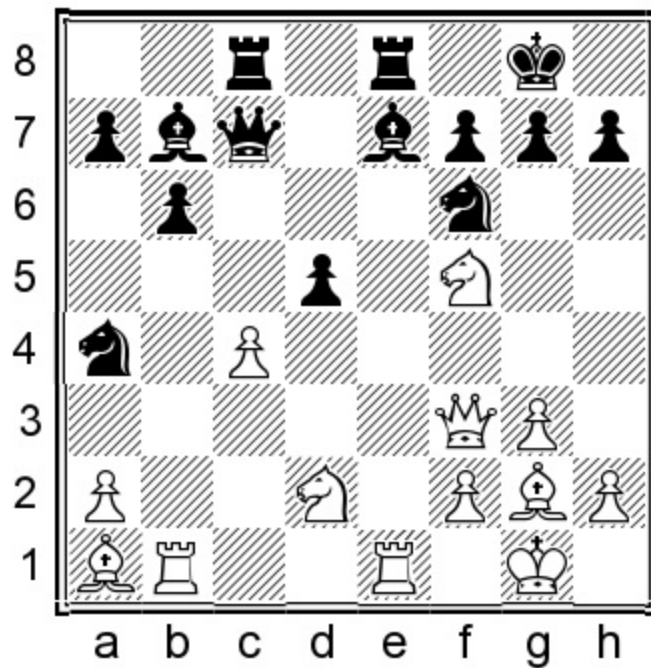
35. ♛f4+ ♔e8 36. ♛xf8+ [36. ♘b5+-]

36... ♔d7 37. ♘b5! ♛xb5 [37... ♔c7 38. ♛e7+ ♘d7 39. ♛xd7#]

38. ♛d6+ ♔e8 39. ♛e7#

[Naiditsch,A-Khenkin,I Dortmund 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 29



1.? +-

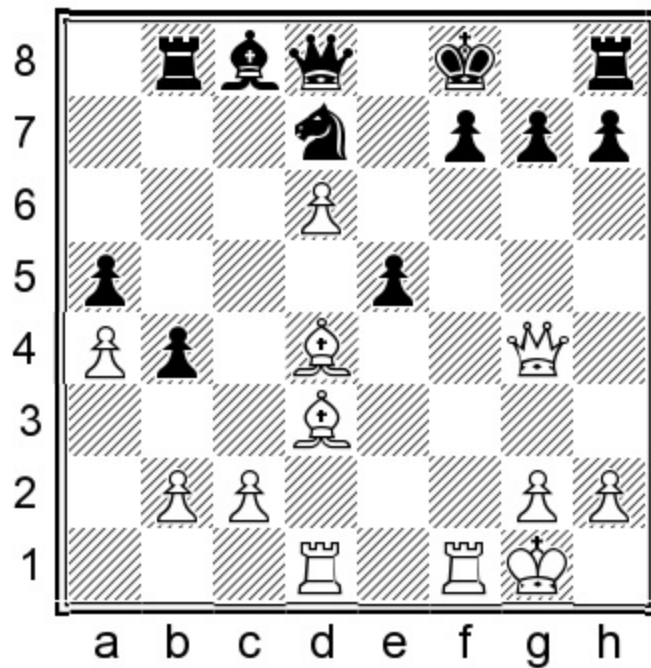
Show/Hide Solution

23. ♖xe7! ♖xe7 24. ♘xf6 gxf6 25. ♚g4+ ♔f8 26. ♚g7+ ♔e8 27. ♘h3! ♖d8 [27... ♖e6 28. ♚g8+ ♔d7 29. ♚xf7++-]

28. ♘d6+ ♚xd6 29. ♚g8#

[Stoltz,G-Keller Herrmann,E Dortmund 1951, 1-0]

Exercise 30



1.? +-

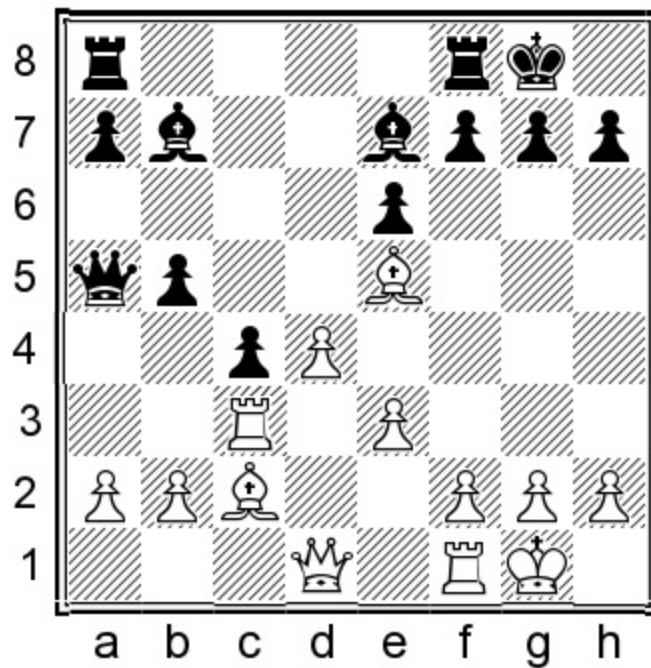
Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖xf7+! ♔xf7 23. ♘c4+ ♔f8 24. ♕e6 ♖e8 [24... ♗f6 25. ♖f1+-]

25. ♖f1+ ♘f6 26. ♖xf6+ gxf6 27. ♗xf6+ ♗f7 28. ♗xf7#

[Brookfield, T-Vonhoff, N 41st Guernsey Chess Festival 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 31



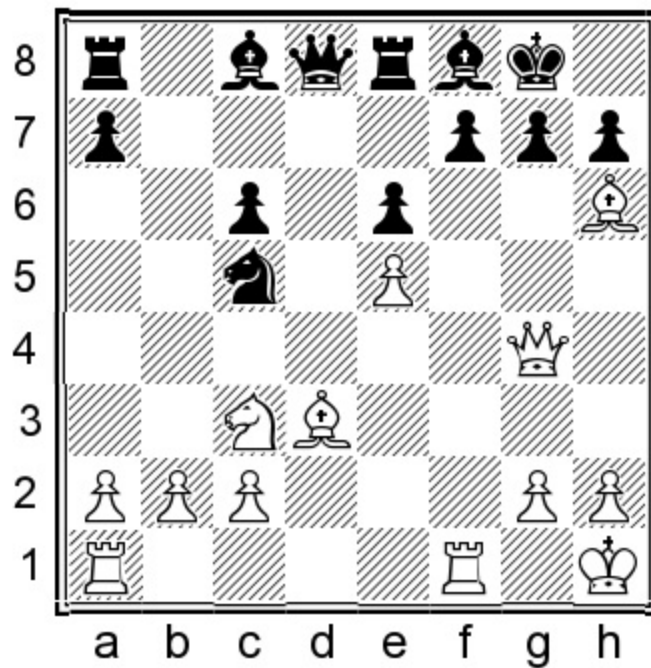
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17.♙xh7+! ♔xh7 18.♚h5+! [18.♙xg7?? ♖g8-+ (18...♔xg7?? 19.♚g4+ ♔h6 20.e4+-)]

18...♔g8 19.♙xg7 ♔xg7 20.♚g4+ ♔h6 21.e4! ♚xc3 22.bxc3+- [Robatsch,K-Casagrande,H Gamlitz 1993, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? +-

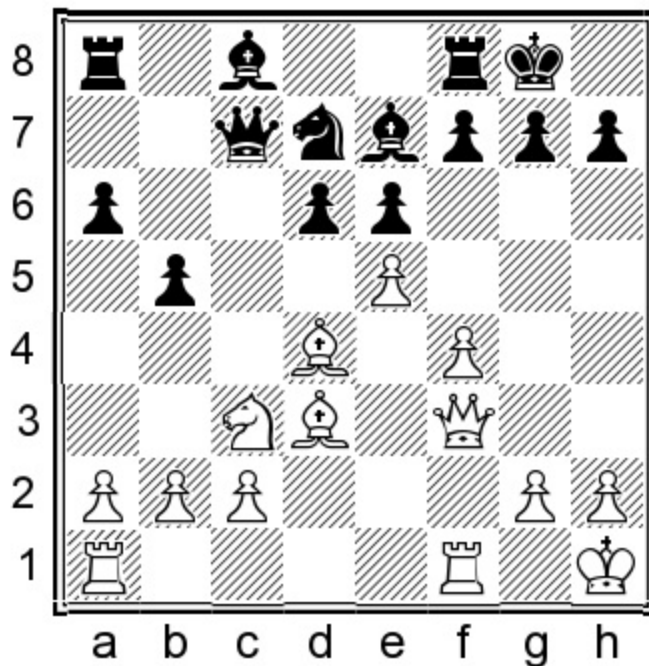
Show/Hide Solution

1.♙xh7+!! [1.♖xf7! ♔xf7 2.♖f1+ ♔e7 (2...♔g8 3.♖xf8+ ♖xf8 4.♗xg7#) 3.♙g5+-]

1.♙xh7+!! ♔xh7 2.♙xg7! ♙xg7 3.♖xf7 ♖g8 4.♗h5#

[Khawsky-Klimov St.Petersburg 1994, 1-0]

Exercise 33



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♔xh7+! [1.♚xa8? ♕b7 2.♘xb5 (2.♚a7 ♖a8 3.exd6 ♔xd6 4.♚xb7 ♚xb7 5.♔e4 ♚c8 6.♔xa8 ♚xa8 7.♖ad1±) 2...♚c6 3.♚xb7 ♚xb7 4.♘xd6±]

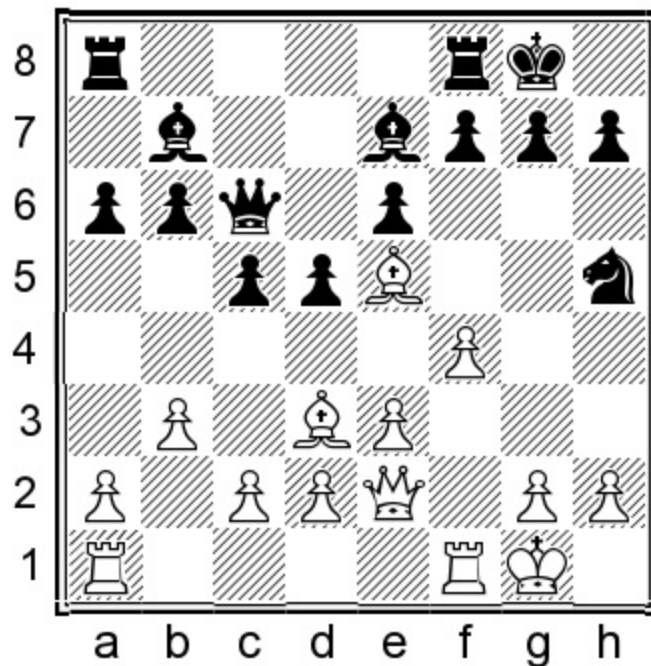
1.♔xh7+! ♔xh7 2.♚h5+ ♔g8 3.exd6 ♚xd6 [3...♔xd6 4.♔xg7! ♔xg7 5.♚g5+ ♔h8 6.♖f3+-]

4.♔xg7! ♔xg7 5.♚g4+! [5.♖f3? e5 6.♖g3+ ♚g6 7.♖xg6+ fxg6±]

5...♔h8 [5...♔h7 6.♖f3 e5 7.♖h3+ ♚h6 8.♖xh6+ ♔xh6 9.♖e1+-]

6.♖f3 ♘f6 7.♖h3+ ♘h7 8.♚h5+- [Fiori,H-Cuevas,A Buenos Aires 2003, 1-0]

Exercise 34



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

15. ♖xh7+! [15. ♗xh5 f5=]

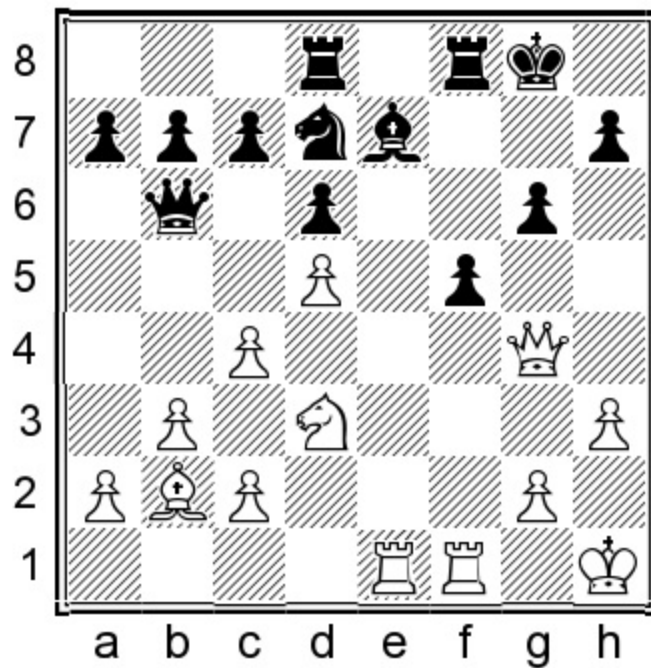
15. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 16. ♗xh5+ ♔g8 17. ♖xg7! ♔xg7 [17...f6 18. ♖h6! (18. ♗g6?! ♗e8 19. ♗h6 ♔f7↔)
18...♗e8 19. ♗g4+ ♔h7 20. ♗g7#; 17...f5 18. ♖e5 ♖f6 19. ♖f3 ♖f8 20. ♖g3+ ♖g7 21. ♖xf6+-]

18. ♗g4+! [18. ♖f3? ♖h8 19. ♖g3+ ♖g5 20. ♗xg5+ (20. ♖xg5+ ♔f6-+) 20...♔f8 21. ♗f6 ♖g8±]

18...♔h7 19. ♖f3 e5 20. ♖h3+ ♗h6 21. ♖xh6+ ♔xh6 22. ♗d7!+-

[Lasker,E-Bauer,J Amsterdam 1889, 1-0]

Exercise 35



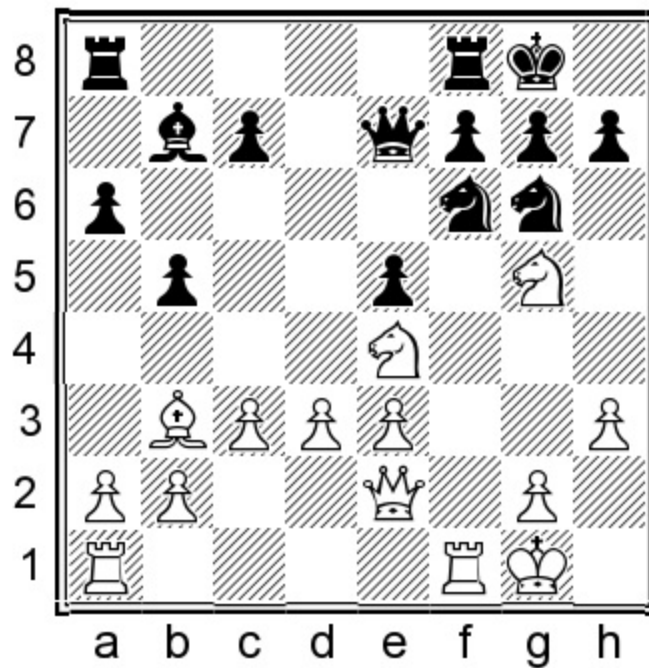
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20.♖xe7! fxg4 21.♖g7+ ♔h8 22.♖xd7+! ♔g8 23.♖g7+ ♔h8 24.♖xg6+ ♖f6 25.♗xf6#

[Thavandiran,S-Kristjansson,A Reykjavik 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 36



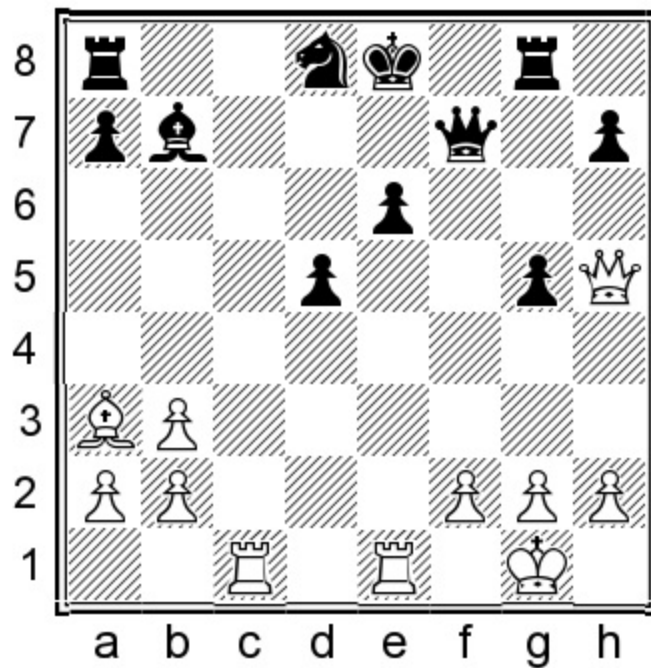
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17.♖xf6! gxf6 18.♚h5 fxg5 19.♘xg5 ♔g7 [19...♚xg5 20.♚xg5+-; 19...♖fd8 20.♚xh7+ ♔f8 21.♖f1+-]

20.♚xh7+ ♔f6 21.♖f1+ ♔xg5 22.g4! ♘f4 23.exf4+ exf4 24.♚h5+ ♔f6 25.♚h6+ ♔e5 26.♚xf4#
[Ozen,D-Van Dael,S Skopje 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 37



1.? +-

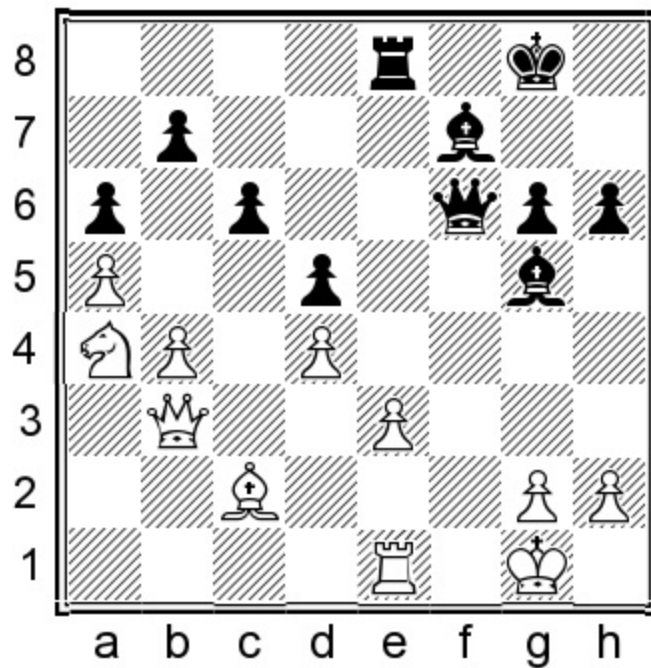
Show/Hide Solution

1.♖c7! ♜xh5 2.♗e7+ ♔f8 3.♗xb7+ ♔e8 4.♗e7+ ♔f8 5.♗xh7+ [5.♗xa7+? ♔e8 6.♗e7+ ♔f8 7.♗xh7+ ♗xa3-+]

5...♔e8 6.♗xh5+-

[Antunac,G-Huebner,R Dresden 1969, 1-0]

Exercise 38



1...? -+

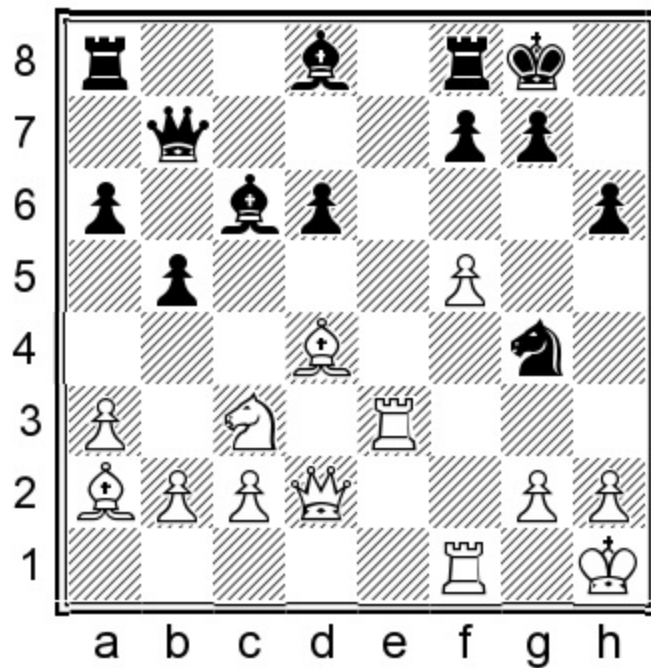
Show/Hide Solution

25...♙xe3+! 26.♞xe3 ♚xd4 27.♔f2 ♚d2+ 28.♔f3 ♞f8! [28...♞xe3+?! 29.♚xe3 ♚xc2 30.♘c5 ♚b2 (30...♚d1+ 31.♔f2) 31.♚f4⚡]

29.♔g3 d4 30.♞e6 ♚g5+ 31.♔h3 h5-+

[Kacheishvili,G-Van Wely,L Wheeling 2010, 0-1]

Exercise 39



1.? +-

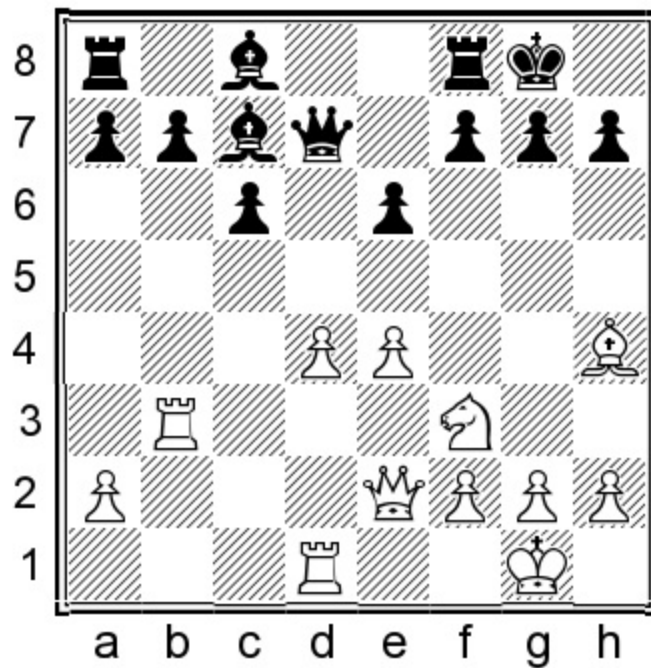
Show/Hide Solution

20.♖g3! ♕g5 [20...h5 21.f6! g6 22.♖xg4 hxg4 23.♚h6 ♕xg2+ 24.♔g1+-]

21.♖xg4! ♕xd2 22.♖xg7+ ♔h8 23.♖xf7+ ♔g8 24.♖g7+ ♔h8 25.♖xb7+ ♖f6 26.♕xf6#

[Osnos,V-Udovcic,M Leningrad 1967, 1-0]

Exercise 40



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖e5! ♜e8 [19... ♙xe5 20. dxe5 ♜c7 21. ♙f6!+-]

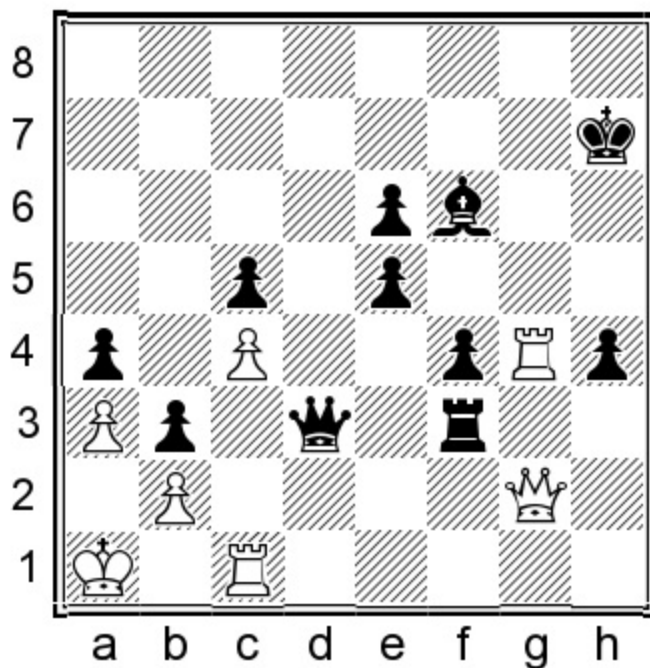
20. ♙f6!! ♙d8 [20... gxf6 21. ♜h5 ♙xe5 22. ♖h3+-]

21. ♙xg7 ♔xg7 22. ♖g3+ ♔h8 23. ♜h5+- [Grischuk,A-Vitiugov,N Riga FIDE Grand Prix 2019, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

DEFENSIVE TACTICS 3

Exercise 1



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

52.♖h1! [52.♖g1!]

52.♖h1! ♖g3

[52...h3 53.♖xh3+ ♖xh3 54.♖h4+! (54.♖g7+ ♕xg7 55.♖xg7+ ♔xg7=) 54...♖xh4 55.♖g7+ ♔xg7=]

53.♖b7+

[53.♖e4+! ♖xe4 54.♖hxh4+ ♕xh4 55.♖g7+ =]

53...♔h6 54.♖g7+! ♔h5 **55.♖hxh4+**

[55.♖xg3 fxg3 56.♖xh4+ ♔xh4 57.♖h7+! =]

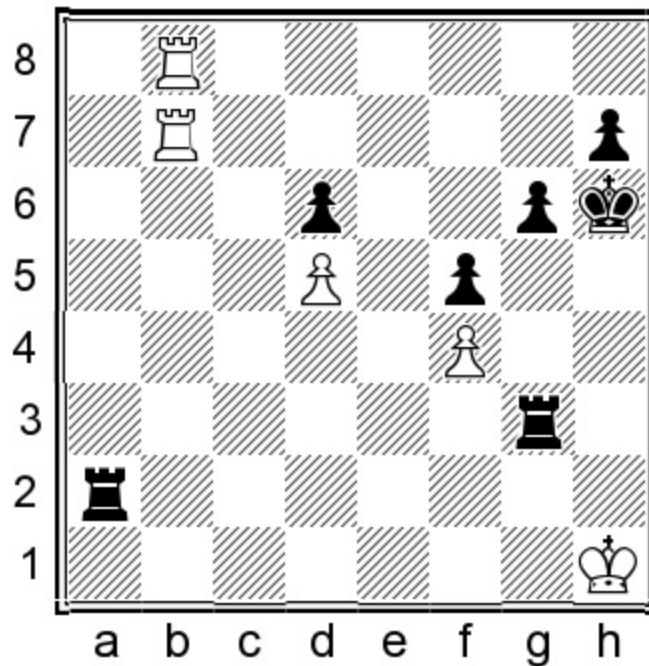
55...♕xh4 56.♖xh4+

[56.♖g5+ ♕xg5 57.♔xg5+ ♜xg5=]

56...♜xh4 57.♔g4+

[Offringa,J-Vereggem,L Amersfoort 2012, 1/2]

Exercise 2



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

1.♖xh7+!

[1.♖h8? ♜h5 2.♖bxh7+ ♜g4 3.♖h4+ ♜f3-+]

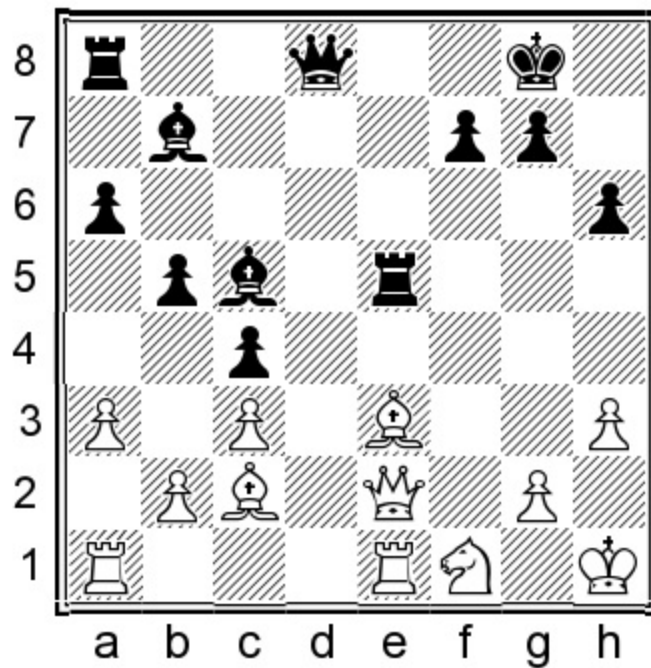
1.♖xh7+! ♜xh7 2.♖b7+!

[2.♖h8+? ♜g7 3.♖g8+ ♜f7 4.♖f8+ ♜e7 5.♖e8+ ♜d7 6.♖d8+ ♜c7 7.♖c8+ ♜b7 8.♖b8+ ♜a7 9.♖b7+ ♜a6 10.♖b6+ ♜a5 11.♖b5+ ♜a4 12.♖b4+ ♜a3 13.♖a4+ (13.♖b3+ ♖xb3-+) 13...♜b2 14.♖b4+ ♖b3-+]

2...♜g8 3.♖b8+ ♜f7 4.♖b7+ ♜e8 5.♖b8+ ♜d7 6.♖b7+ ♜c8 7.♖b8+ ♜c7 8.♖b7+ =

[Pavlovic,M-Mikhalchishin,A Jugoslavija 1991, 0-1]

Exercise 3



1...? =

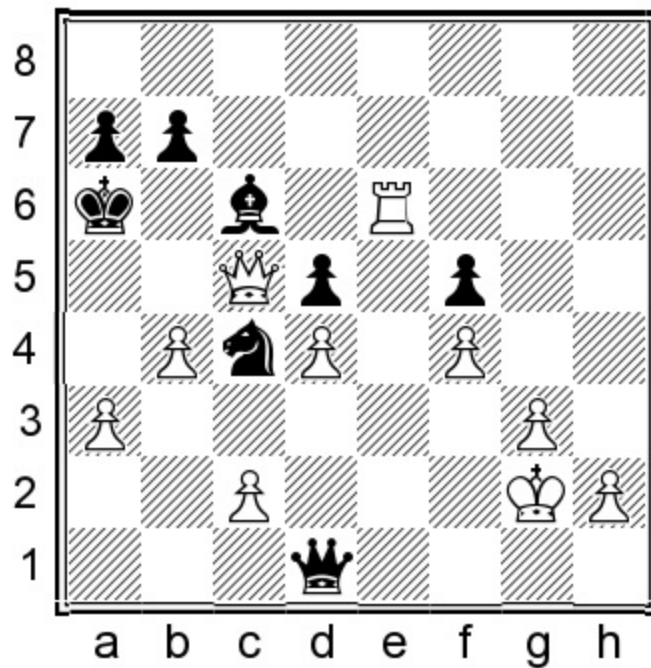
Show/Hide Solution

24... ♖xe3 25. ♗xe3 ♚h4! 26. ♙g4! ♚e7! 27. ♙xg7+! [27. ♙g3 ♜e8⚡]

27... ♗xg7 28. ♗f5+ ♜xf5 29. ♜xe7 ♜f2! 30. ♜xb7 ♜xc2 =

[Radjabov, T-Wojtaszek, R Dortmund 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 4



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

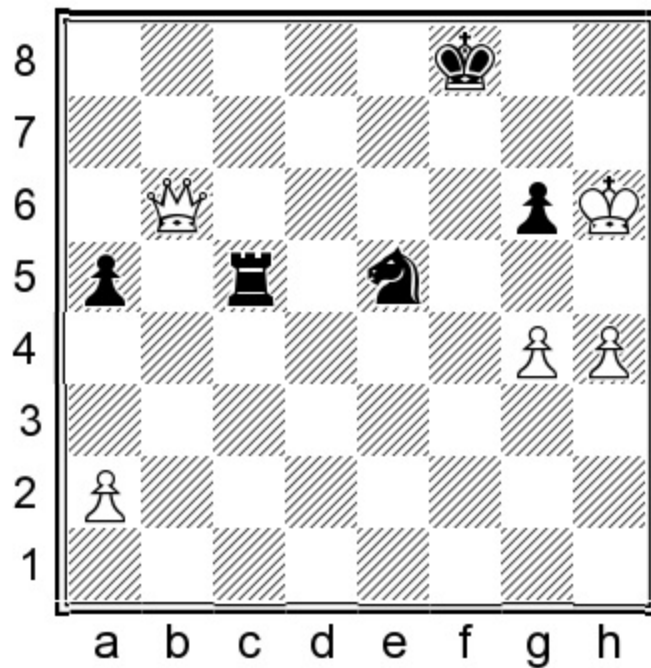
35...b6! [35...♙xc2+?? 36.♔h3+–]

35...b6! 36.♙xc6 ♖e3+ 37.♖xe3! [37.♔f2 ♖g4+ 38.♔g2 ♖e3+=]

37...♙f1+!! 38.♔xf1=

[Kortschnoj, V-Vaganian, R Skelleftea 1989, 1–0]

Exercise 5



1...? =

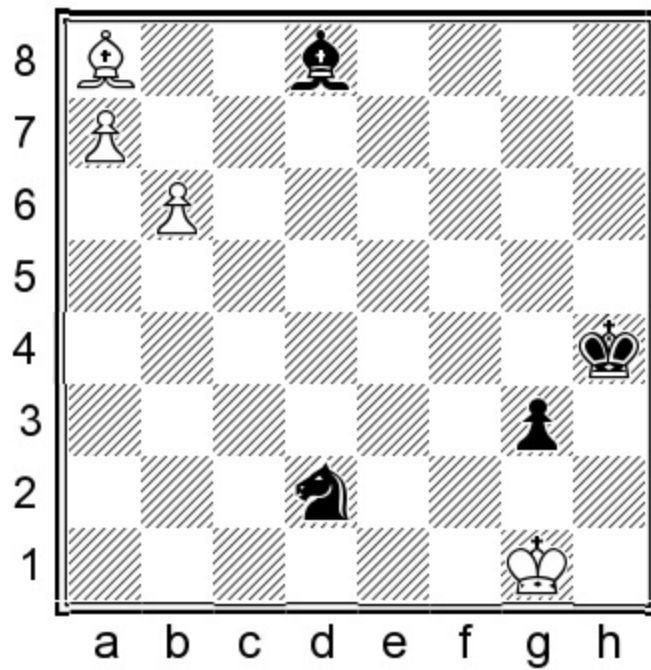
Show/Hide Solution

57... ♖xg4+! 58. ♗xg6 ♜c6+! 59. ♚xc6 ♘e5+ 60. ♗f6 ♘xc6 61. ♗e6 ♘b4 62. a4 ♘d3 63. ♗d5 ♘b2
 [63... ♘c1 64. ♗c5 ♗g7 65. ♗b5 ♘b3 66. ♗c4 ♘c1 67. ♗b5 =]

64. ♗c5 ♘xa4+ 65. ♗b5 ♘b6 66. ♗xa5 =

[Cheparinov, I-Ljubojevic, L Amsterdam 2007, 1/2]

Exercise 6



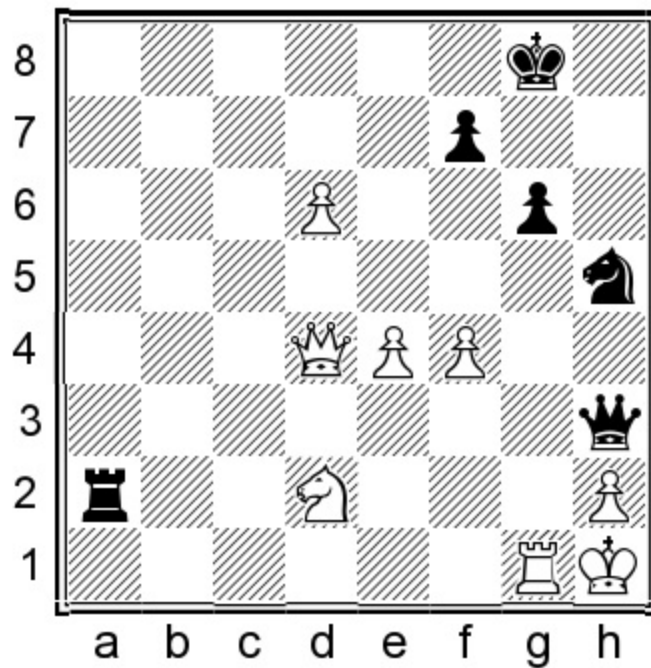
1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

1.♙h1!! ♜xb6+ 2.♚g2 ♜xa7=

[Gallishek, 1/2]

Exercise 7



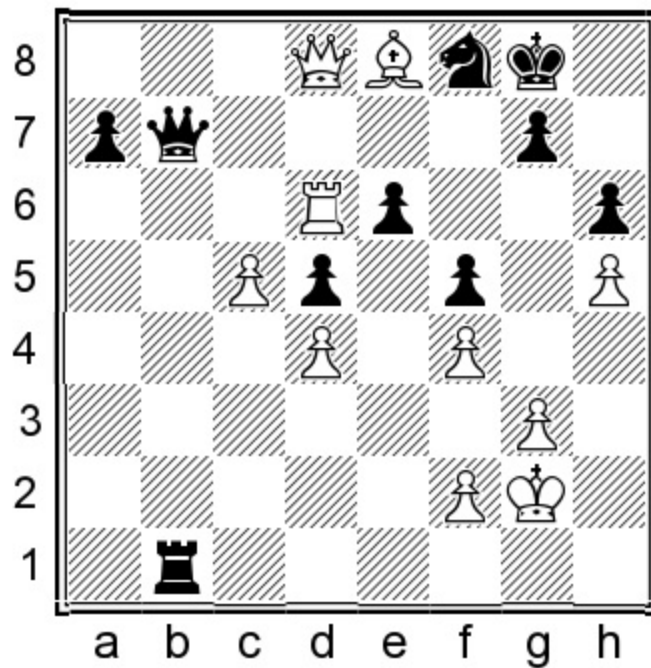
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

42... ♖xd2! 43. ♚xd2 ♚f3+ 44. ♚g2 ♘g3+! 45. hxg3 ♚h5+ 46. ♚h2 ♚f3+ 47. ♖g2 ♚d1+ 48. ♚g1 ♚h5+ 49. ♖h2 ♚f3+=

[Portisch, L-Kasparov, G Moscow 1981, 1/2]

Exercise 8



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

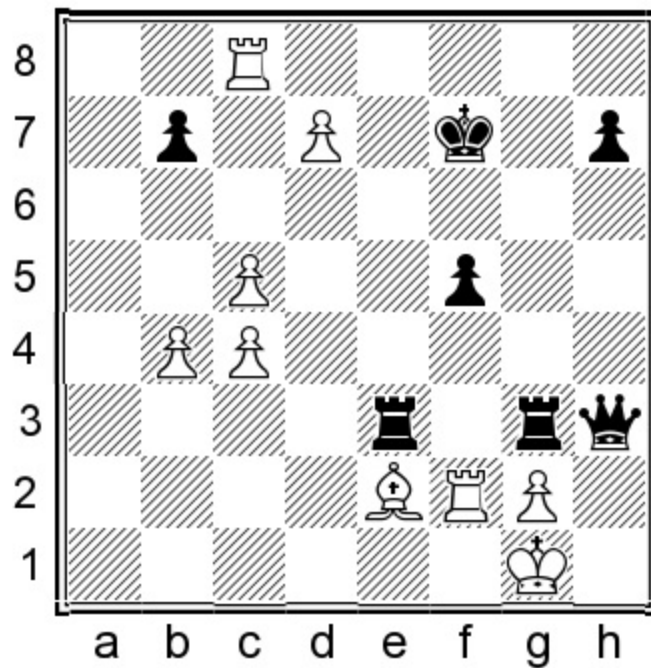
1...♖g1+!! [1...♖e1? 2.♞d7!! ♘xd7 (2...♚b1 3.♞xg7+! ♔h8 4.♞h7+! ♔g8 5.♞h8+!! ♔xh8 6.♚f6+-) 3.♙xd7+ ♔h7 4.♙e8 g5 5.hxg6+ ♔g7 6.c6]

1...♖g1+!! 2.♔xg1 ♚b1+ 3.♔h2 [3.♔g2 ♚e4+ 4.♔h2 ♚e2=]

3...♚f1 =

[Mikhalchishin,A-Jeric,S Slovenija 2000, 1-0]

Exercise 9



1...? =

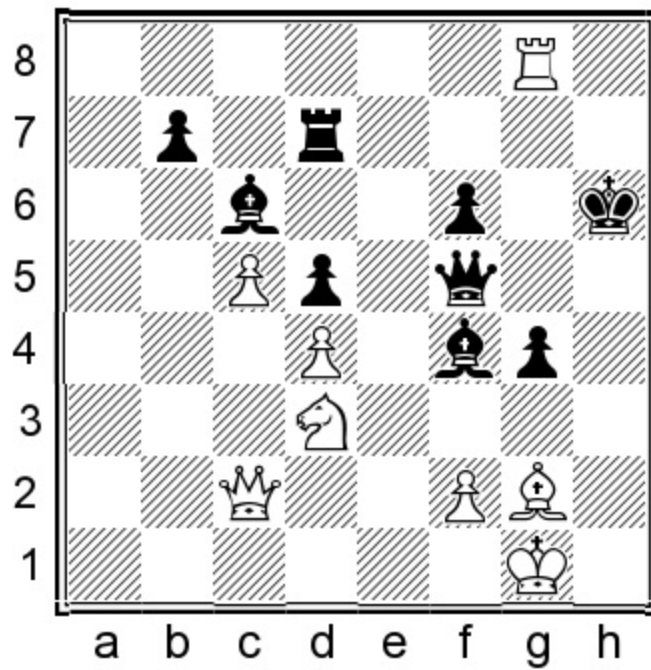
Show/Hide Solution

1...♖xe2 [1...♖xg2+!? 2.♖xg2 ♖g3 3.♖xg3 (3...d8=♗+? ♕e7 4.♖xg3 ♜xg3+ 5.♕f1 f4+) 3...♜xg3+ 4.♕f1 ♜f4+ (4...f4? 5.♗h5+ ♕e6 6.d8=♜+;-; 4...♜h3+=) 5.♕e1 ♜c1+=]

1...♖xe2 2.♖xe2 ♖xg2+! 3.♖xg2 ♜e3+ 4.♕h2 ♜h6+ 5.♕g1 ♜c1+=

[Vuckovic,B-Maric,D Jugoslavija 2001, 1/2]

Exercise 10



1.?=

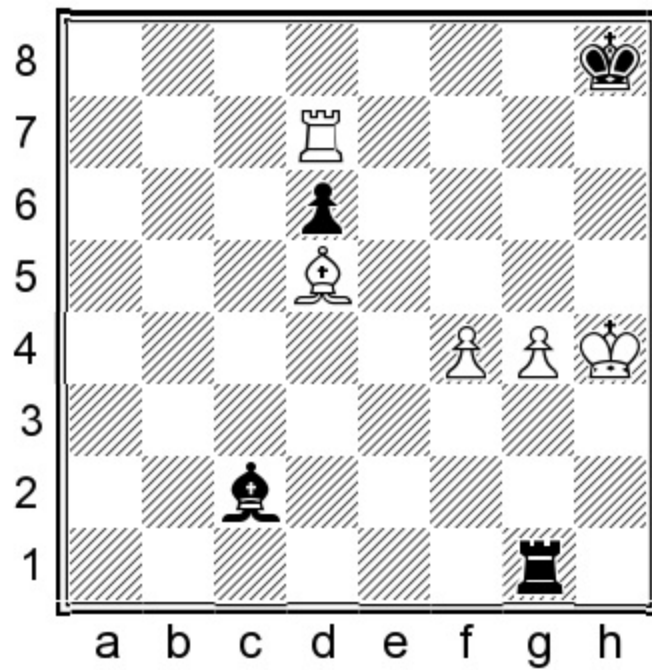
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖e5! ♜xc2 2. ♗xg4+ ♔h5 [2... ♖h7 3. ♗xf6+=]

3. ♗xf6+ ♔h6 4. ♗g4+=

[Tajmanow, M-Larsen, B Kopenhaga 1966, 1/2]

Exercise 11



1...? =

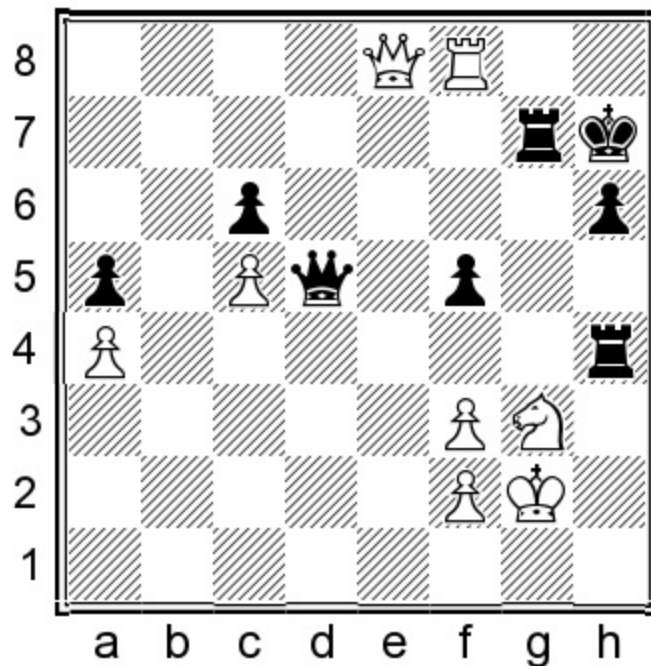
Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xg4+!! 2. ♔xg4 ♕f5+! 3. ♔xf5

[Pfrommer-Bareev Frankfurt 2007, 1/2]

[3. ♔g5 ♕xd7 =]

Exercise 12



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖xg3+! [1...♖d7? 2.♖h8+ ♔g7 3.♗f8+ ♔g6 4.♘xf5! ♖g4+ (4...♗xf5 5.♖g8+-) 5.♔h2+-]

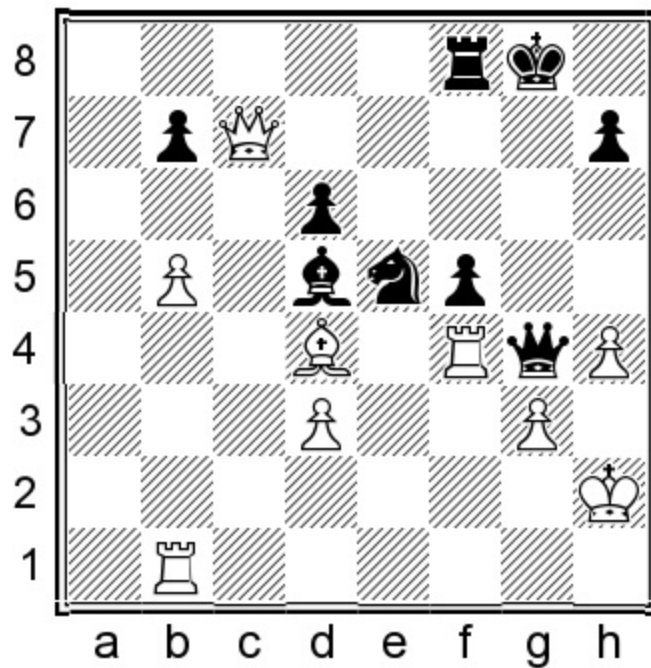
1...♖xg3+! 2.♔xg3

[2.fxg3?? ♗d2+ 3.♔g1 ♗h2+ 4.♔f1 ♗h1+ 5.♔e2 ♖h2+ 6.♔e3 (6.♔d3 ♗d1+ 7.♔c3 ♖c2+ 8.♔b3 ♗d3#) 6...♗c1+ 7.♔d4 ♗b2+ 8.♔c4 (8.♔d3 ♖d2+) 8...♖c2+ 9.♔d3 ♗c3#]

2...♖h3+! 3.♔xh3 ♗xf3+ 4.♔h2 ♗xf2+=

[Borges, Y-Espinosa, E Cardenas 2006, 1/2]

Exercise 13



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

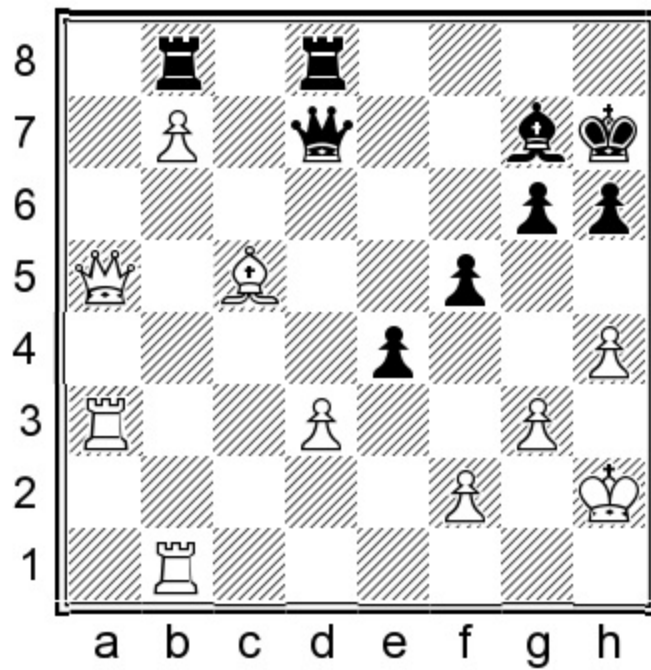
1... ♖e2+! 2. ♜f2 [2. ♙f2? ♜f3+ 3. ♜xf3 ♙xf3-+]

2... ♜f3+ 3. ♙h3 ♜g5+! 4. ♙h2 [4. hxg5?? ♙h5#]

4... ♜f3+=

[Csom, I-Rohl, J Budapest 1996, 1/2]

Exercise 14



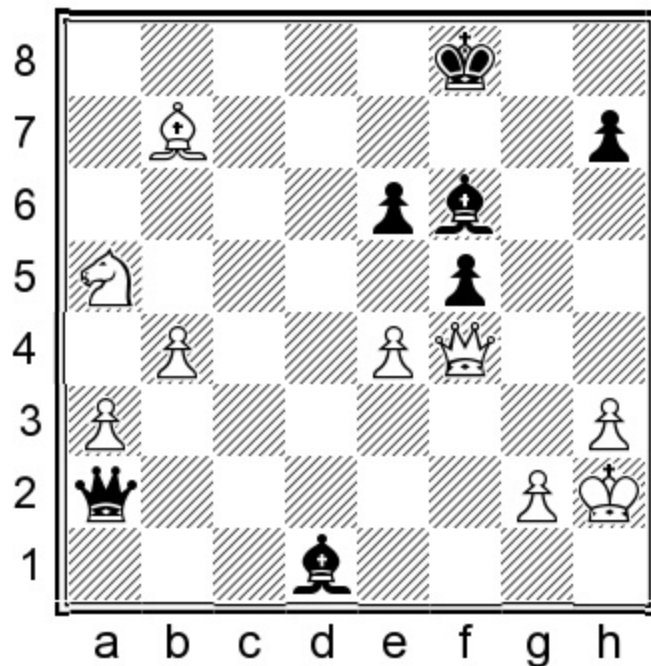
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...exd3! 2.♙a7 ♖xb7!! 3.♖xb7 d2!! 4.♖xd7 ♖xd7 =

[Kaminski, M-Stefansson, H Cappelle la Grande 1993, 1/2]

Exercise 15



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔f3!! 2.♚xf3! [2...♚b8+? ♔f7 3.♚c7+ ♔e7 4.♚g3 ♔d6!-+]

2...♔e5+ 3.♔g1 ♚b1+ 4.♔f2 ♚c2+ [4...♔d4+ 5.♔e2 (5.♔g3? ♚e1+ 6.♔f4 (6.♔h2 ♔g1+-+)

6...♚d2+! 7.♔g3 ♔e5+ 8.♔h4 ♚h6+-+)] 5...♚c2+ 6.♔f1! (6.♔e1? ♔c3+! 7.♔f1 ♚c1+ 8.♔e2 ♚d2+ 9.♔f1 ♚e1#) 6...♚c1+ 7.♔e2=]

5.♚e2 [5.♔f1 ♚c1+=]

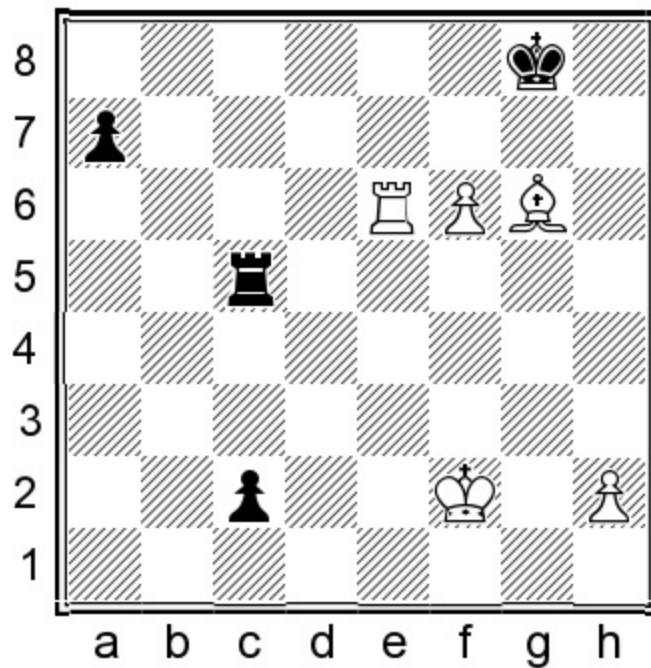
5...♔d4+ 6.♔f1 [6.♔f3? ♚c3+ 7.♔f4 ♔e5+ 8.♔g5 ♚g3+-+; 6.♔e1 ♚c1+ 7.♚d1 ♚e3+=]

6...♚b1+! [6...♚c1+ 7.♚e1 ♚f4+ 8.♔e2 ♚e3+ 9.♔d1 ♚d3+ 10.♚d2+-]

7.♚e1 ♚d3+=

[Andres,M-Lebrede,G La Habana 1993, 1/2]

Exercise 16



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

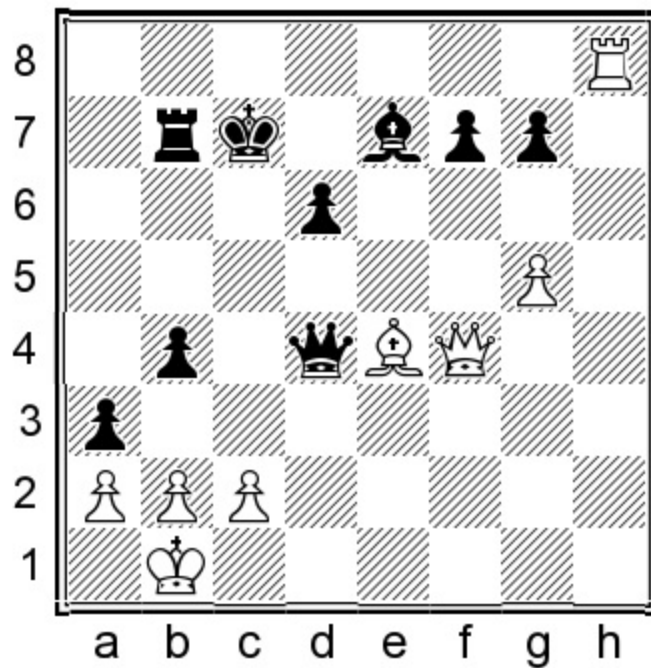
1...♖f5+!! [1...♖c8 2.♖e8+! ♖xe8 3.f7+ ♔g7 4.fxe8=♚ c1=♚ 5.♚f7+ ♔h6 6.♚h7+ ♔g5 7.h4+ ♔f6 (7...♔g4 8.♙f5+ ♔f4 9.♚h6++-) 8.♚f7+ ♔e5 9.♚e7+ ♔d5 10.♚g5+-]

1...♖f5+!! 2.♔e2 [2.♙xf5 c1=♚-+; 2.♔g3 ♖g5+]

2...♖xf6 3.♖e8+ ♖f8 4.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 5.♙xc2

[Dreev,A-Yudasin,L Manila 1990, 1/2]

Exercise 17



1.?=

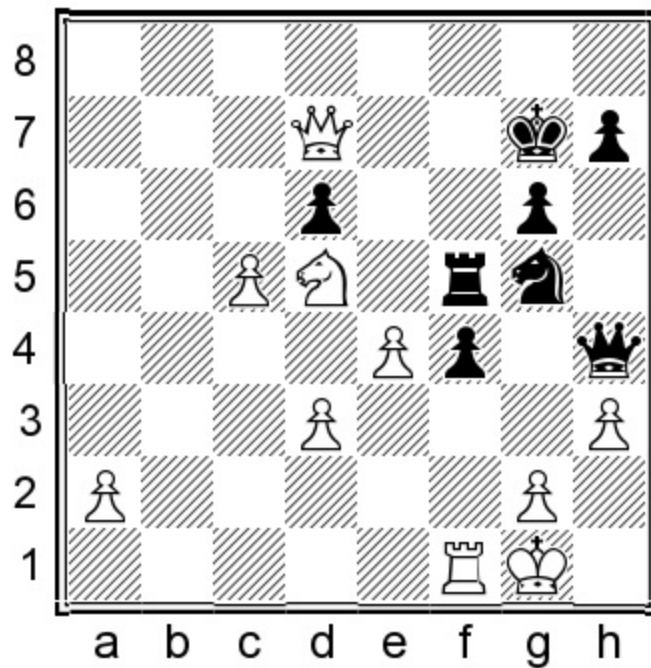
Show/Hide Solution

1.♞c8+! ♔b6□ [1...♕xc8 2.♙xb7+ ♔xb7 3.♞xd4+-]

2.♞c6+ ♔a7 [2...♕a5? 3.♞a6+!+-]

3.♞a6+! ♔b8 4.♞a8+! ♔c7 5.♞c8+!

Exercise 18



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔h6! [1...♖f7? 2.♕g4+-]

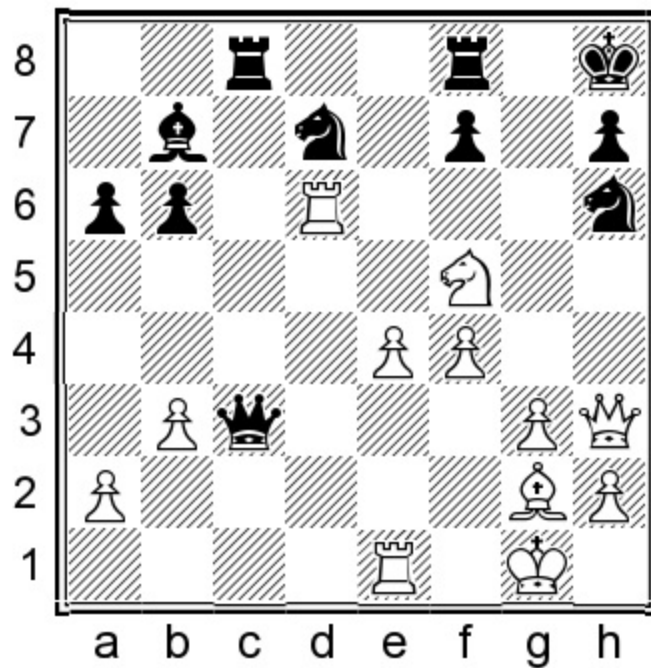
1...♔h6! 2.exf5 [2.♖f2? ♕g3; 2.♖xf4 ♖xf4 3.♘xf4 ♗xf4 4.♕xd6 ♕e3+ 5.♔h2 ♘f3+! =]

2...♘xh3+! 3.gxh3 [3.♔h2 ♘f2+ 4.♔g1 ♘h3+ =]

3...♕g3+ =

[Smirin, I-Ivanov, I USA 1990, 1/2]

Exercise 19



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xh6! [1. ♖xh6 ♜xe1+ 2. ♙f1 ♘f6 3. ♖xf6 ♜b4!-+]

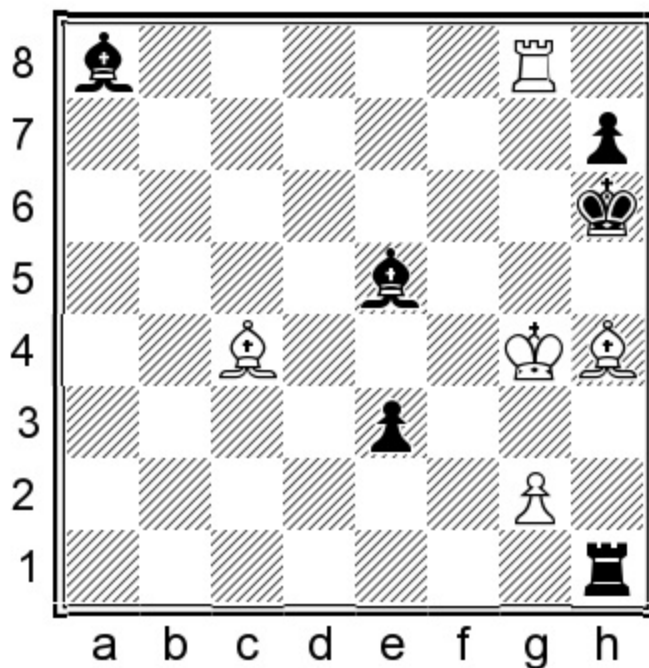
1. ♖xh6! ♜xe1+ 2. ♙f1 ♜c3! [2... ♖g8? 3. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 4. ♖h6#]

3. ♖xh7+! [3. e5 ♜c5+ 4. ♖d4 ♖g8♯]

3... ♔xh7 4. ♖h6+ ♔g8 5. ♙e7+ ♔g7 6. ♙f5+=

[Perez Garcia, H-Zecevic, M Pula 1986, 1/2]

Exercise 20



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xh4! 2. ♔xh4 ♘d5! 3. ♖g4 [3. ♘xd5 e2-+; 3. ♖c8 ♘f6+ 4. ♔g3 ♘e5+ =]

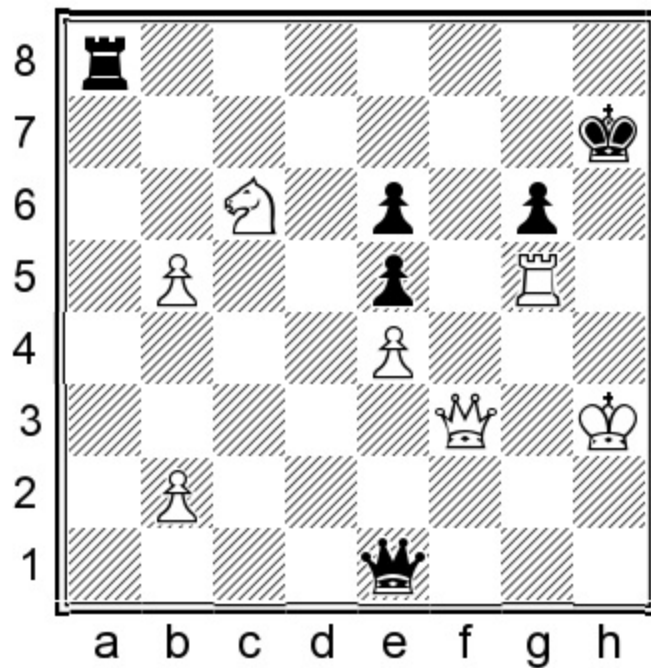
3... ♘f6+ 4. ♔g3 ♘e5+ 5. ♔h3 e2 6. ♖h4+

[6. ♘xe2 ♘e6 =]

6... ♔g5 7. ♘xe2 ♘xg2 +=

[Bator, R-Bareev, E Saltsjobaden 1987, 1/2]

Exercise 21



1...? =

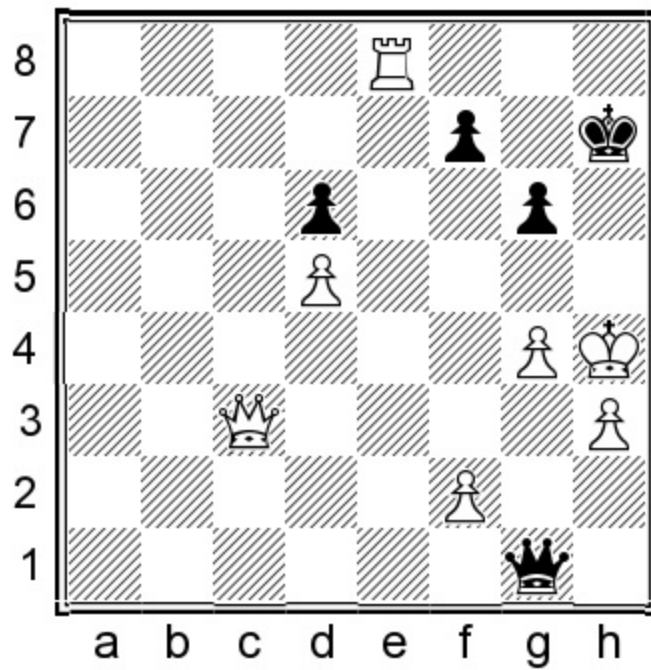
Show/Hide Solution

1...♖f8! 2.♙xf8! [2...♚g2? ♜e3+ 3.♔h4 (3...♚g3 ♜f3-+; 3...♔h2 ♜f2-+; 3...♞g3 ♜h6+ 4.♔g4 ♜h5#)
 3...♜f4+ 4.♞g4 g5+! 5.♔h5 ♜f6!-+]

2...♜h1+ 3.♔g3 ♜g2+ 4.♔h4 ♜h3+=

[Vera,R-Espig,L Baile Herculane 1984, 1/2]

Exercise 22



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

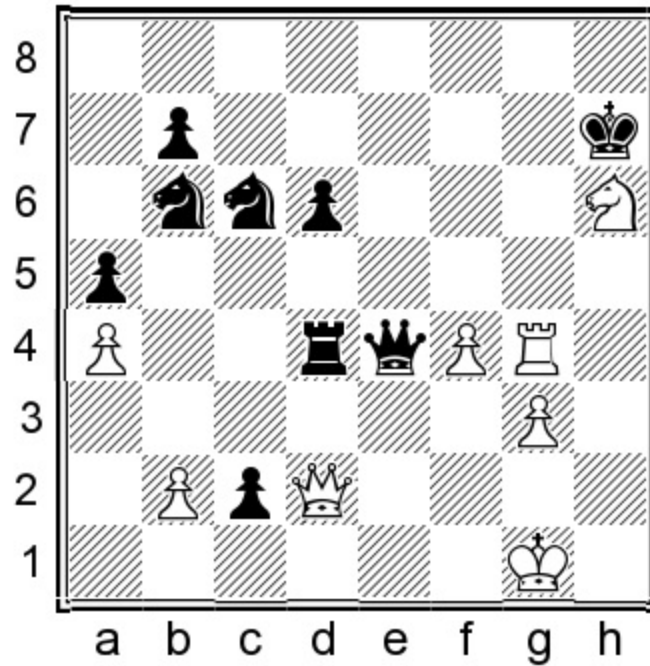
1... ♖xf2+ 2. ♔g5 [2. ♕g3? g5+-+]

2... f6+!! 3. ♕xf6 ♖h4+! 4. ♔xh4 g5+=

[Najdorf, M-Kurtic, I Mar del Plata 1984, 1/2]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 23



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

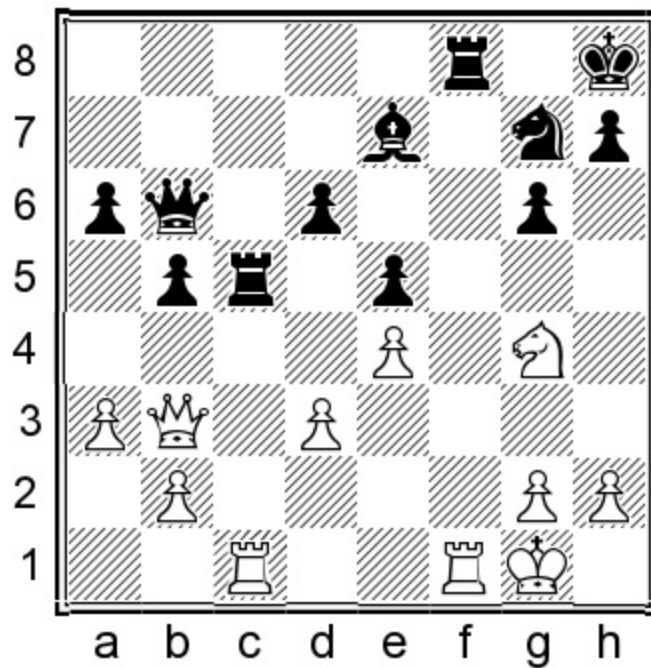
1. ♖g8! c1=♚+ [1... ♜xd2 2. ♗f6+ ♔h6 3. ♗g8+=]

2. ♚xc1 ♗d7 [2... ♚f5?? 3. ♚f1+-]

3. ♚f1! ♚e3+ 4. ♔h1 ♚e4+ 5. ♔g1=

[Rijnbergen,M-Van der Tak,A Nederland 1982, 1/2]

Exercise 24



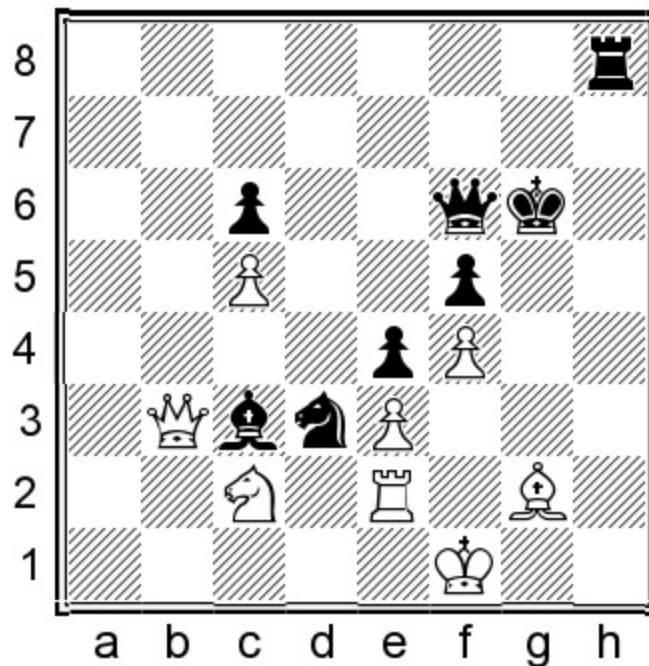
1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf8+ ♗xf8 2. ♜g8+! ♔xg8 3. ♘h6+ ♔h8 4. ♘f7+ ♔g8=

[Kratkovski,Z-Lapshis USSR 1982, 1/2]

Exercise 25



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♔xe4!! fx e4 [1... ♘c1?? 2. ♖g2+-]

2. ♖g2+ ♔h6 3. ♖h2+ ♔g7 4. ♚b7+

[4. ♖g2+ ♔f8 5. ♚b8+ ♔f7 6. ♚b7+ ♚e7 7. ♚b3+ ♚e6 8. ♚xc3=]

4... ♚f7 5. ♖g2+ ♔f8

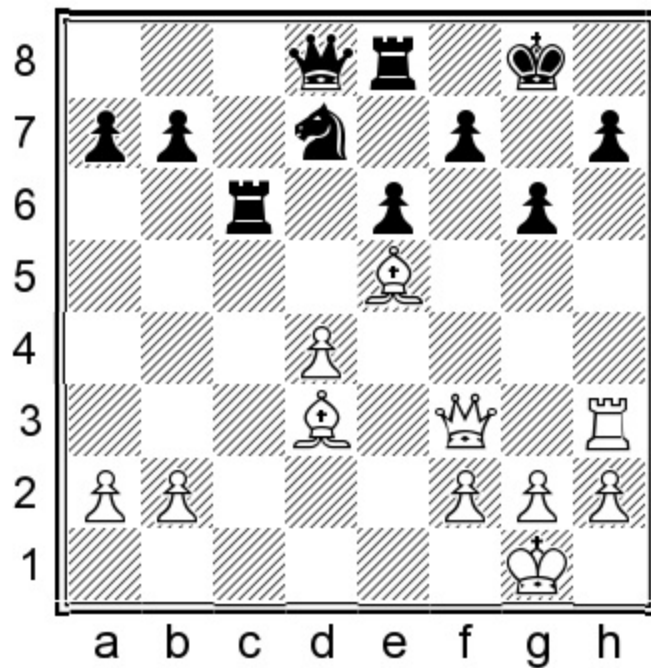
[5... ♔f6?! 6. ♚xc6+ ♔e7 7. ♚xe4+⇌]

6. ♚c8+ ♚e8 [6... ♔e7 7. ♚c7+ ♔f6? 8. ♚xc6+ ♚e6 9. ♖g6+-]

7. ♚f5+ ♚f7 8. ♚c8+=

[Karkanaque, I-Ciocaltea, V Luzern (ol) 1982, 1/2]

Exercise 26



1.? =

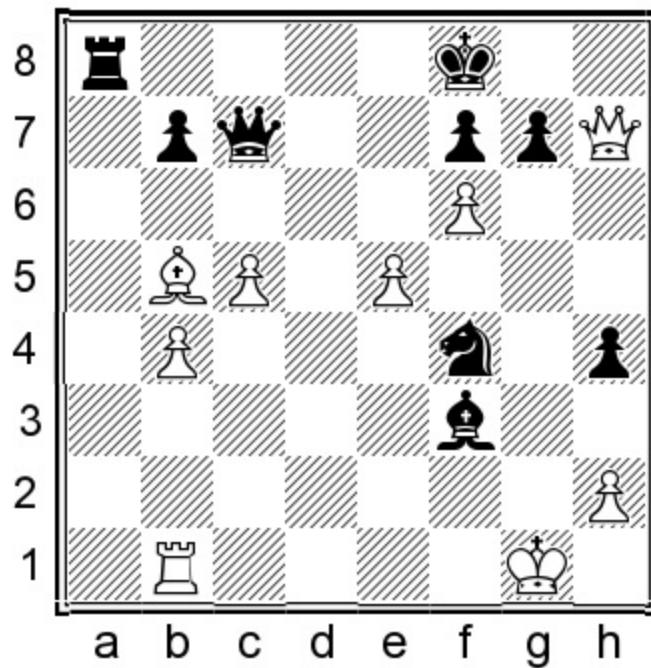
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf7+! [1. ♖xh7? ♘xe5 2. dxe5 ♖c1+ 3. ♗f1 ♔xh7 4. ♖xf7+ ♔h6-+]]

1. ♖xf7+! ♔xf7 2. ♖xh7+ ♔g8 3. ♖h8+ ♔f7 4. ♖h7+=

[Plachetka, J-Meduna, E Hradec Kralove 1981, 1/2]

Exercise 27



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖h3+ 2. ♔f1 ♙g2+! 3. ♔xg2 [3. ♔e1 ♚xe5+]

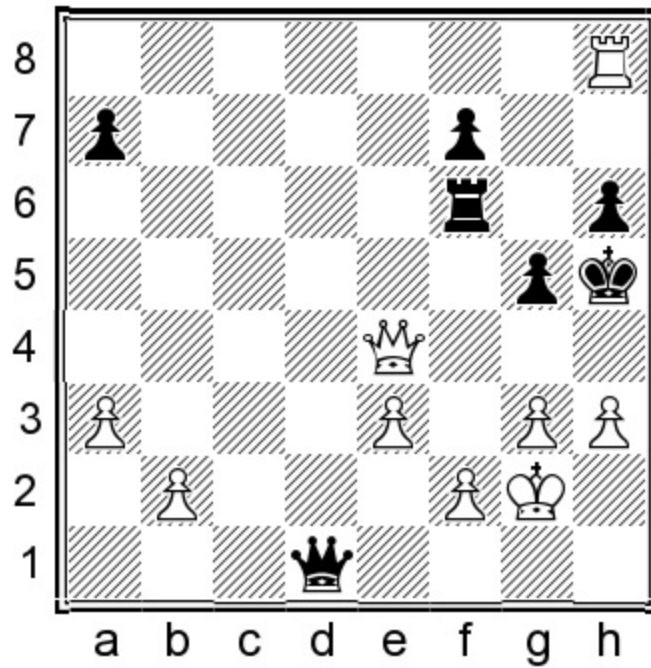
3... ♜a2+! 4. ♔h1 [4. ♔xh3 ♚c8+-+]

4... ♖f2+ 5. ♔g1 [5. ♔g2 ♖h3+! =]

5... ♖h3+

[Budovic, E-Kosikov, A USSR 1979, 1/2]

Exercise 28



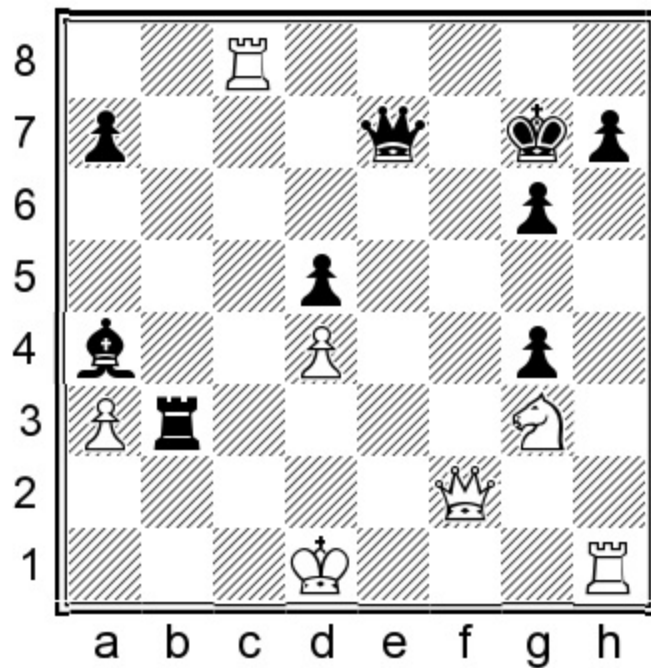
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xf2+! 2. ♔xf2 ♚d2+ 3. ♔f3 ♚d1+ 4. ♔g2 ♚d2+ 5. ♔g1 ♚c1+! [5... ♚d1+? 6. ♔h2 ♚d2+ 7. ♚g2+-]
 6. ♔h2 ♚xb2+ 7. ♚g2 ♚xh8=

[Stein, M-Lieb, H Muenchen 1979, 1/2]

Exercise 29



1.?=

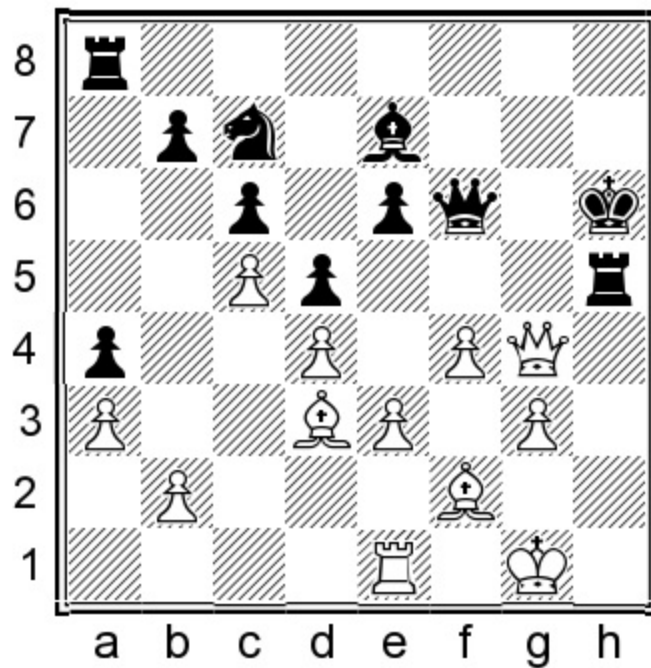
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖f5+! gxf5 2. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 3. ♗xf5+ ♔g7 [3... ♔h6?? 4. ♖h8+ ♔g7 5. ♖h7+ ♔g8 6. ♗g6+ ♔f8 7. ♖h8#]

4. ♗xg4+ ♔f6 5. ♗f4+ ♔g7 6. ♗g4+ ♔f6 7. ♗f4+

[Speelman, J-Ree, H Lone Pine 1978, 1/2]

Exercise 30



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

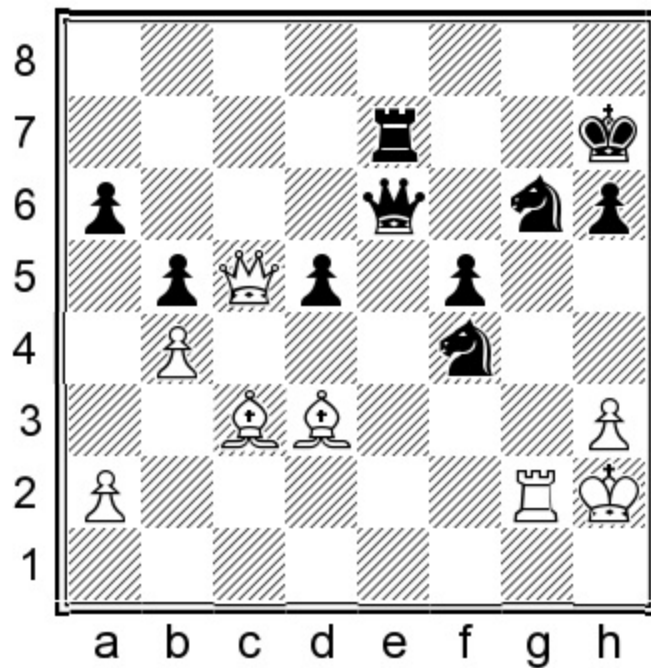
1. ♖xh5+!! ♔xh5 2. g4+ ♔xg4 [2... ♔h6 3. g5+±]

3. ♙e2+ ♔h3 [3... ♔f5 4. ♙d3+ ♔g4 5. ♙e2+=]

4. ♙f1+=

[Geller,E-Notaros,K Novi Sad 1978, 1/2]

Exercise 31



1.? =

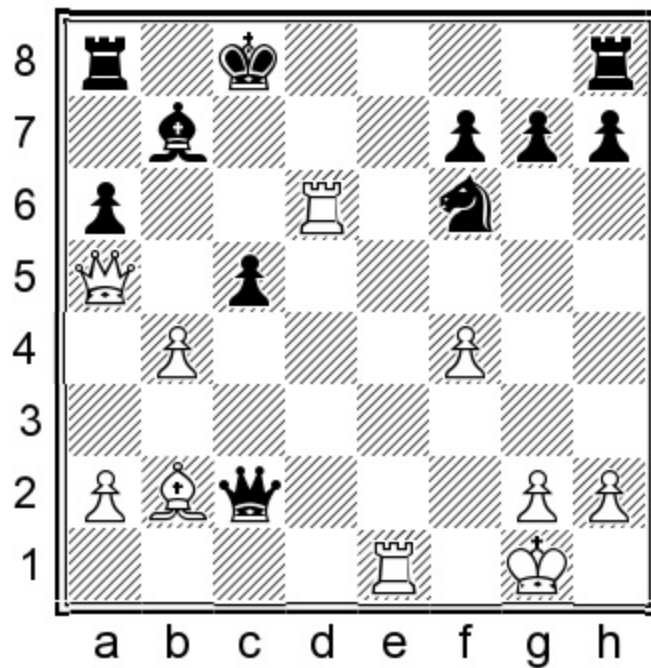
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf5! ♚xf5! [1... ♚e3?? 2. ♖d4+-]

2. ♚xe7+! ♜xe7 3. ♖g7+ ♔h8 4. ♖g1+ ♔h7 5. ♖g7+ ♔h8 6. ♖g1+=

[Littlewood, J-Perkins, A England (ch) 1975, 1/2]

Exercise 32



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

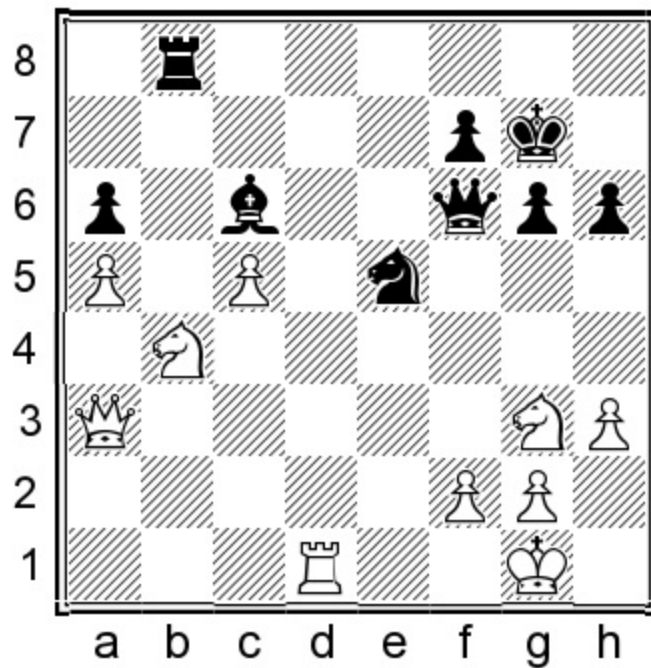
1. ♖d2! ♚xd2 2. ♜xc5+ ♔d8 [2... ♖b8?? 3. ♙e5+-]

3. ♜e7+ ♔c8 4. ♜c5+! =

[Pinter, J-Marjanovic, S Groningen 1974, 1/2]

[4. ♖c1+? ♜xc1+! 5. ♙xc1 ♖e8+-]

Exercise 33



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

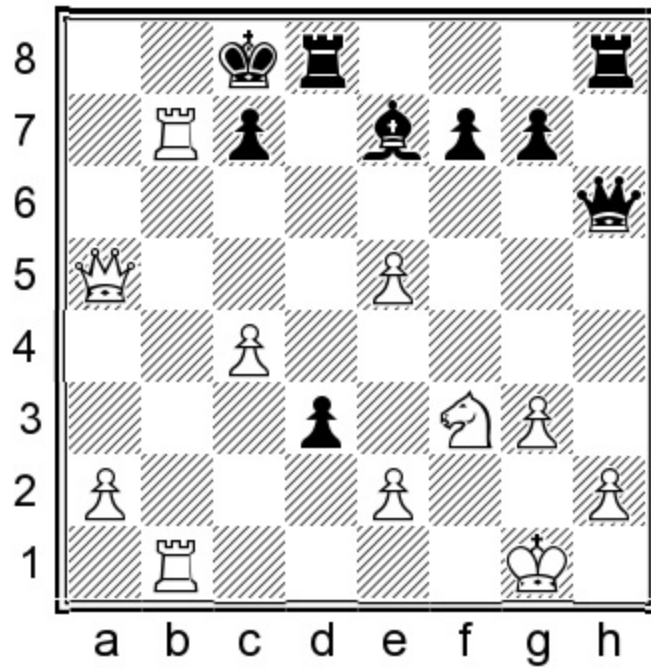
1... ♖xg2! 2. ♔xg2 [2. ♘xa6? ♜b2! -+]

2... ♜xb4! 3. ♚xb4 ♜f3+ 4. ♔g1 ♜xd1+ 5. ♘f1 ♘f3+ 6. ♔g2 ♘e1+ =

[Karpov, A-Lengyel, L Budapest 1973, 1/2]

[6... ♜d4 7. ♜xd4+ ♘xd4 8. ♘e3 =]

Exercise 34



1...? =

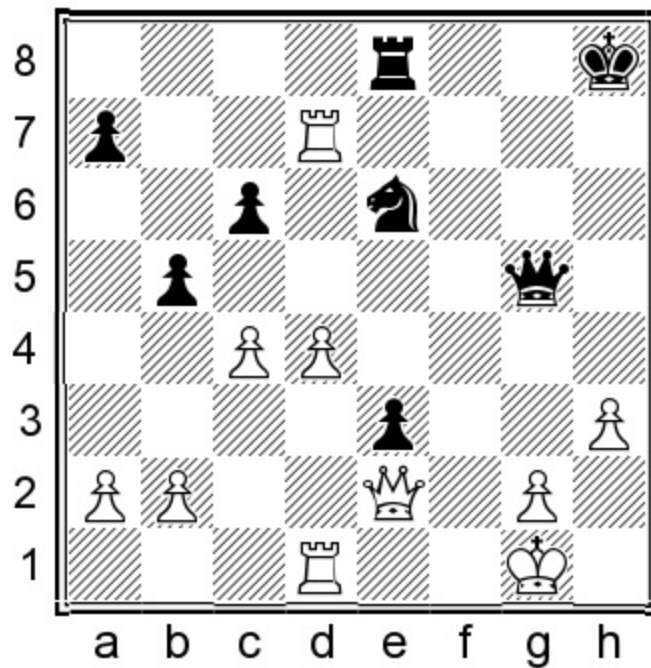
Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖e3+ 2. ♔h1 ♜xh2+! 3. ♔xh2 [3. ♘xh2 ♚e4+ 4. ♔g1 (4. ♘f3 ♜h8+ 5. ♔g2 ♚xe2+) 4... ♚e3+ =]

3... ♚xe2+ 4. ♔h3 ♜h8+ 5. ♘h4 ♜xh4+! =

[Rakhsin-Zhuravliov, V USSR 1973, 1/2]

Exercise 35



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

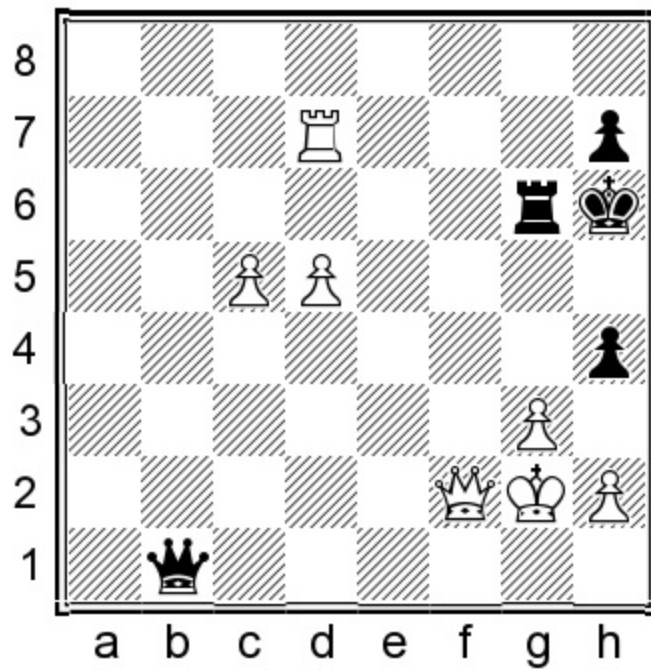
1... ♖f4! 2. ♕f3 e2! 3. ♖e1 ♖e3! 4. ♖d8+

[4. ♕xc6 ♖xh3+ 5. ♔h1 ♖f2+ 6. ♔g1 ♖h3+=]

4... ♔g7 5. ♖d7+ ♔h8 =

[Gufeld, E-Podgaets, M USSR (ch) 1973, 1/2]

Exercise 36



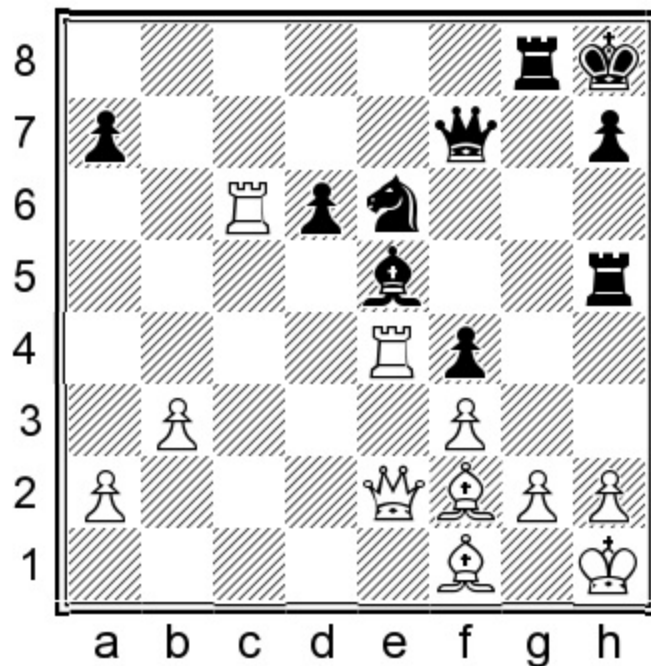
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...h3+! 2.♔xh3 ♖f5+!! 3.♜xf5 ♝xg3+! 4.♔h4 ♞g4+!

[Tiberger-Drelinkiewicz, T Polska 1970, 1/2]

Exercise 37



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

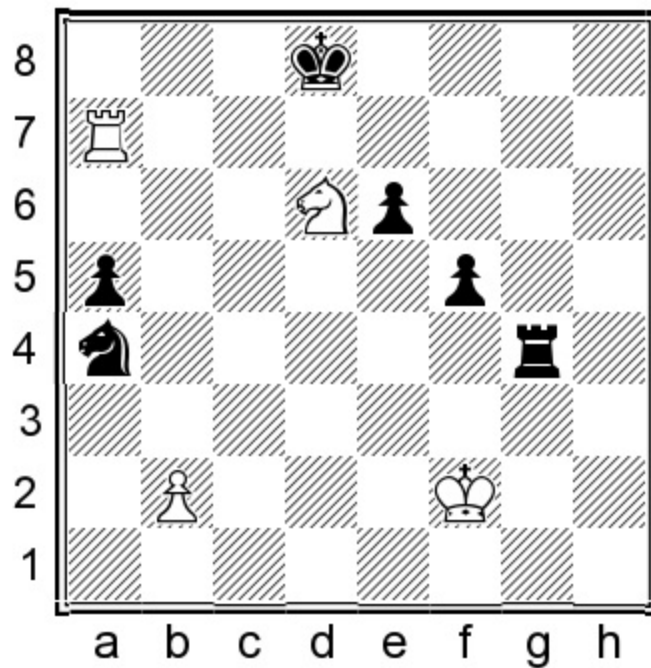
1... ♖xh2!

[1... ♘g5? 2. ♙g1! (2... ♖xe5? ♖xh2+! (2... dxe5? 3. ♚xe5+-) 3. ♙xh2 ♚h5+ 4. ♙g1 ♘h3+ 5. ♙h2 ♘g5+=) 2... ♘xe4 3. ♚xe4±]

1... ♖xh2+! 2. ♙xh2 ♚h5+ 3. ♙g1 ♘g5 4. ♖xe5 ♘h3+=

[Kovacevic, V-Popov, L Athens 1971, 1/2]

Exercise 38



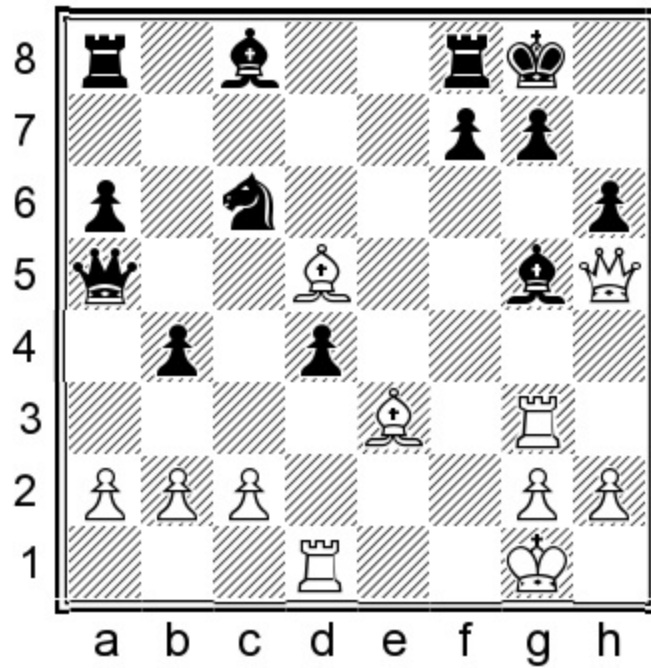
1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

46.♖xa5 ♜xb2 47.♜xf5! ♜f4+ 48.♔g3 ♜xf5 49.♖xf5 exf5 50.♔f4

[Mikhalchishin,A-Ivacic,V Nova Gorica 2000, 1/2]

Exercise 39

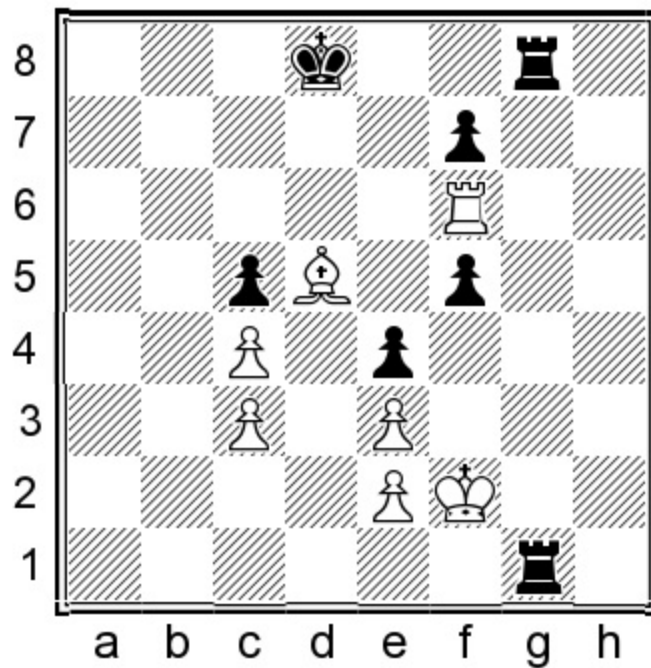


1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

21.♔xg5! ♚xd5! 22.♔f6!! ♚xh5 23.♖xg7+ ♔h8 24.♖g6+ ♔h7 25.♖g7+=
 [Short,N-Kasparov,G Novgorod 1997, 1/2]

Exercise 40



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

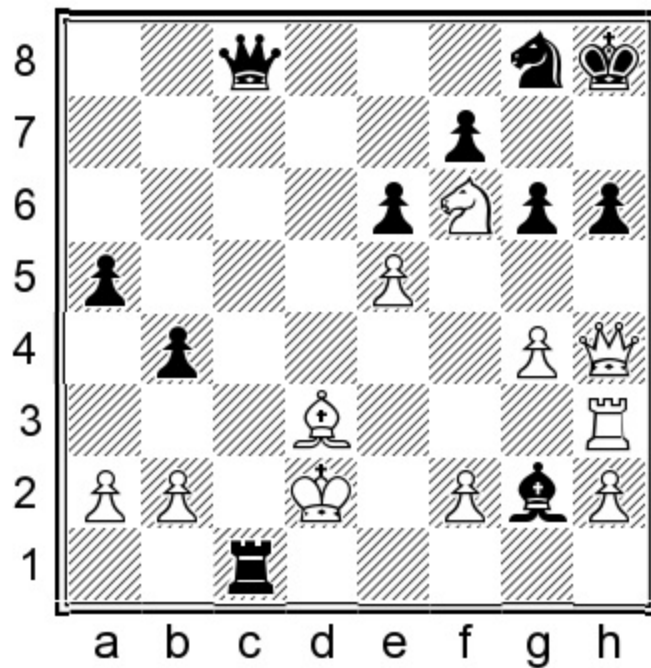
37.♙xe4! fxe4 38.♖d6+ ♔e7 39.♗e6+ ♔f8

[39...♕d7 40.♖d6+ ♔c7 (40...♕e7 41.♗e6+ ♔f8 42.♗e8+=) 41.♖c6+ ♔b7 42.♖b6+ ♔a7 43.♗a6+ ♔xa6=]

40.♗e8+=

[Perez Perez,F-Ivkov,B Havana 1962, 0-1]

Exercise 41



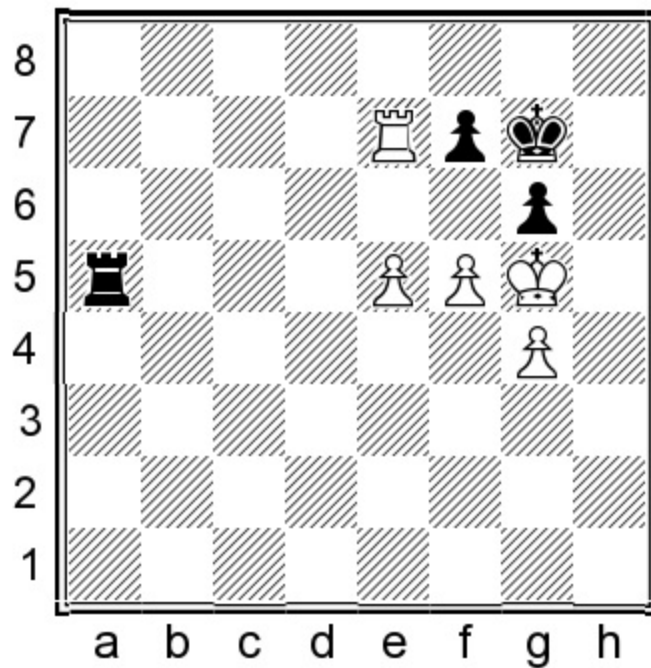
1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

35. ♖xh6+!! ♜xh6 36. ♝xh6+ ♔g7 37. ♝h7+ ♔f8 38. ♝h8+ ♔e7 39. ♜g8+! ♔f8
 [39... ♔d7 40. ♜f6+ ♔c7?? 41. ♝xc8+ ♔xc8 42. ♔xc1+-; 39... ♝xg8 40. ♝xg8±]
 40. ♜f6+=

[Ragozin, V-Levenfish, G Moscow 1935, 1/2]

Exercise 42



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

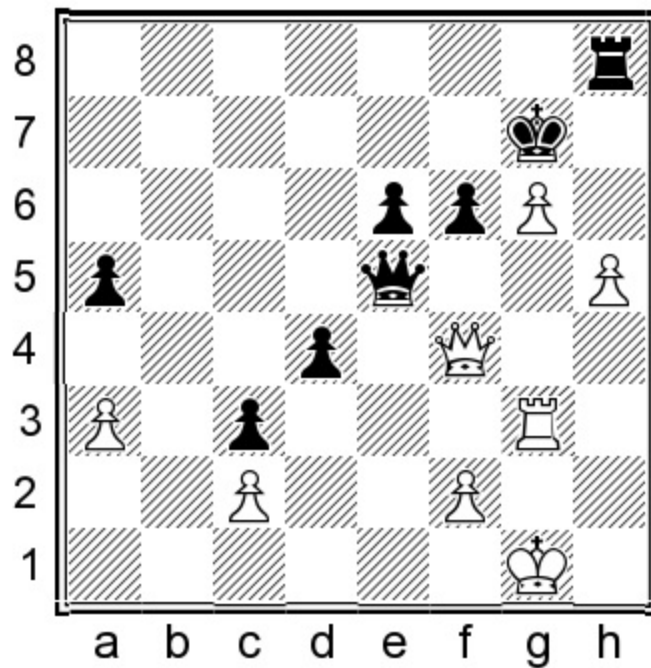
49...♖xe5! 50.♖xe5 f6+ 51.♔f4 fxe5+ 52.♔xe5 gxf5 53.♔xf5

[53.gxf5 ♔f7 54.f6 ♔f8 55.♔e6 ♔e8 56.f7+ ♔f8 57.♔f6=]

53...♔f7 =

[Adams, M-Aravindh, C Khanty-Mansiysk 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 43



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

33. ♖f3

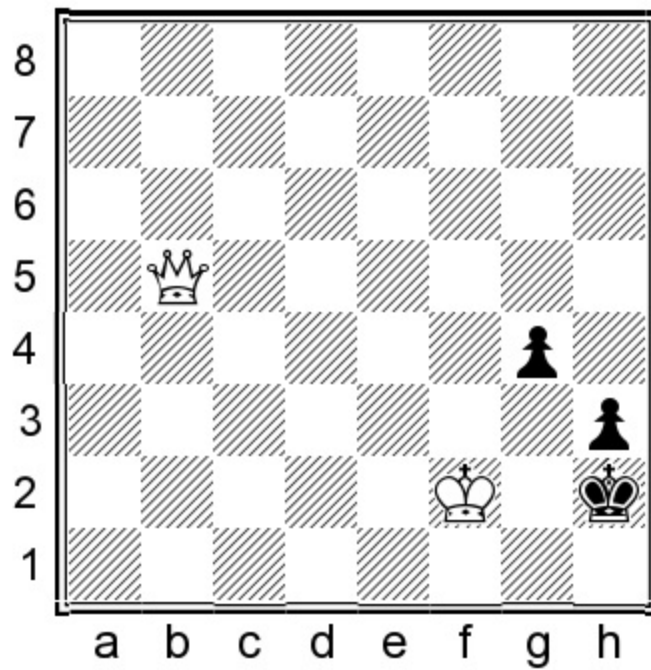
[33.h6+? ♜xh6 34. ♖xh6+ ♔xh6 35.g7 ♖xg3+ 36.fxg3 ♔xg7-+]

33. ♖f3 ♖d5 34. ♖f4=

[Tal,M-Kortschnoj,V Riga 1958 URS-ch, 0-1]

[34. ♖xd5 exd5=]

Exercise 44



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

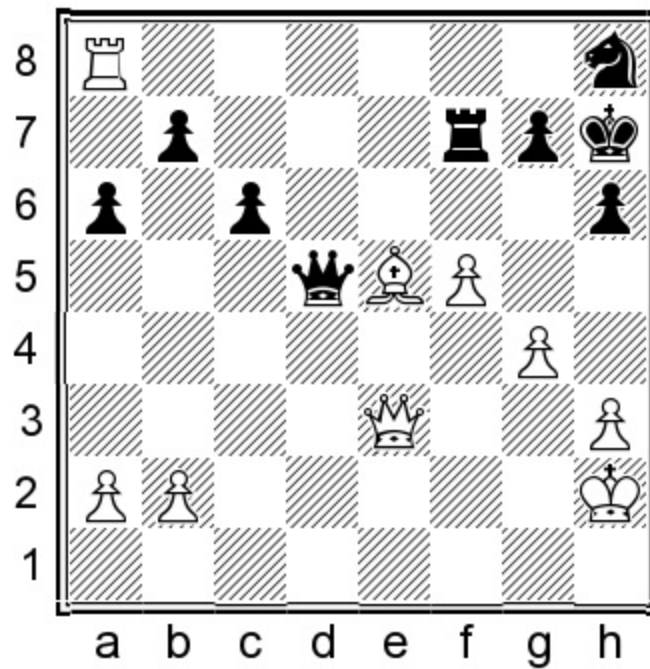
70...g3+ 71.♔f3 g2 72.♚e2! ♔h1 73.♔g3! g1=♚+ 74.♔xh3 ♚e3+!! 75.♚xe3

[Napier, W-Marshall, F New York 1896, 1/2]

Show in Text Mode

QUEEN SACRIFICE 3

Exercise 1



1.? +-

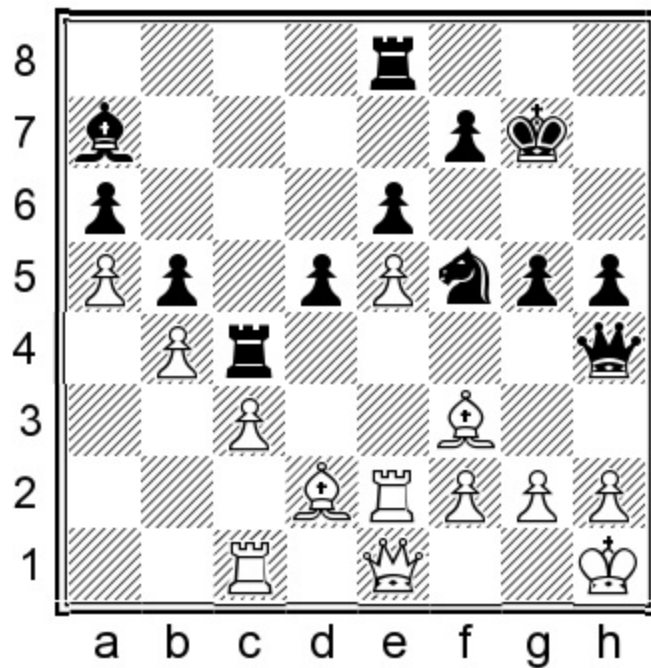
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xh6+!! ♔xh6 [1...gxh6 2. ♖xh8#]

2. ♖xh8+ ♔g5 3. ♖h5#

[Naumann-Przepiorka Wien 1904, 1-0]

Exercise 2



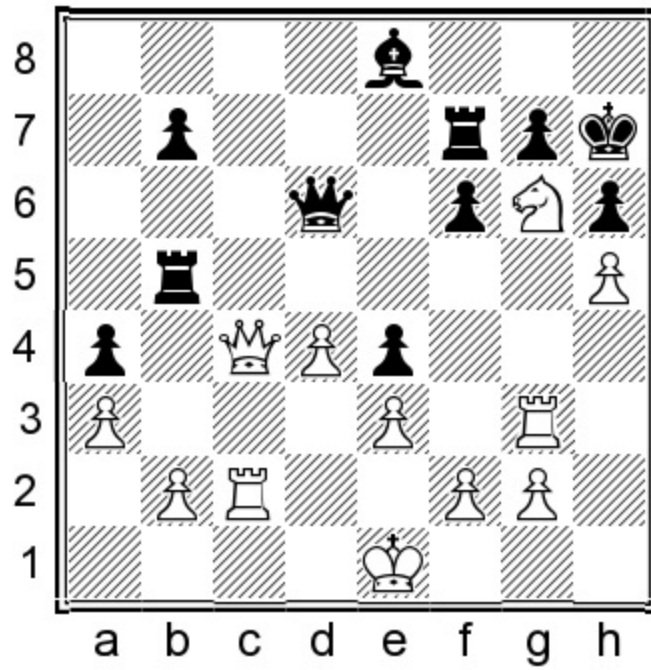
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

27...♙xh2+!! 28.♔xh2 ♖h4+ 29.♕g1 ♜g3! 30.♙e3 ♖h1#

[Reshevsky,S-Ivanovic,B Skopje 1976, 0-1]

Exercise 3



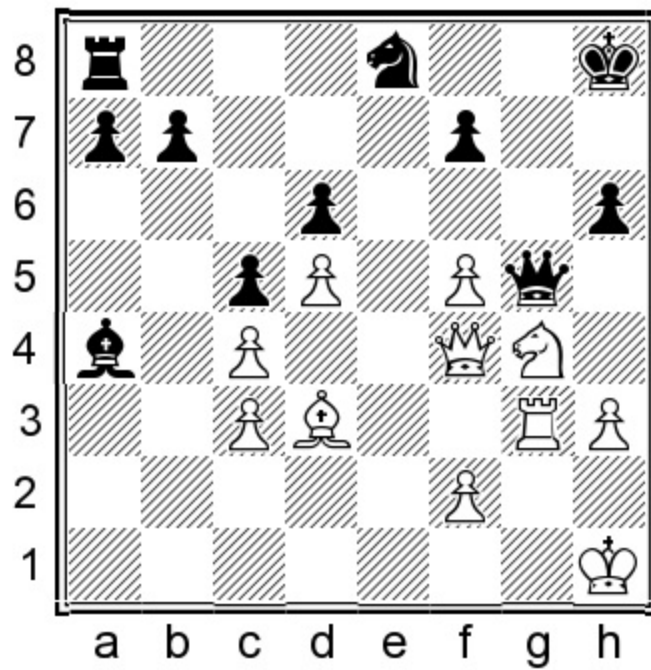
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xb5!! ♗xb5 2. ♖c8+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 4



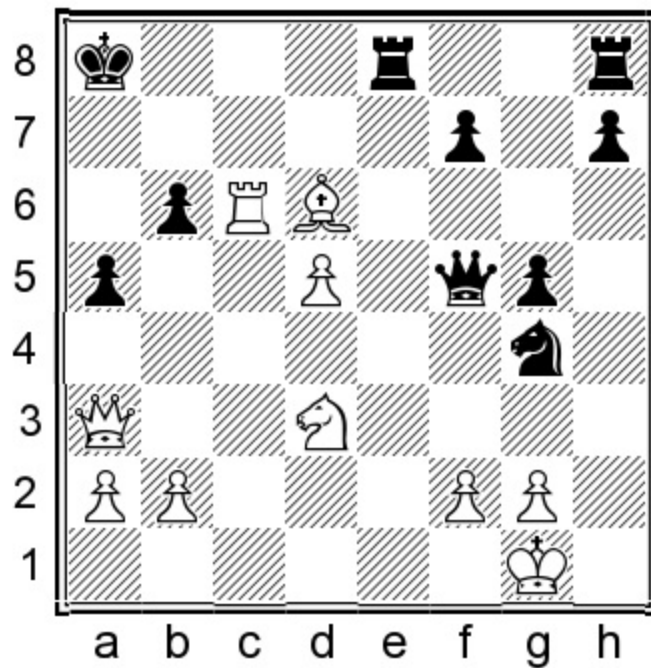
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xh6!! ♜xf4 2. ♖xf7+ ♔h7 3. f6+! ♜e4+ 4. ♗xe4#

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 5



1.? +-

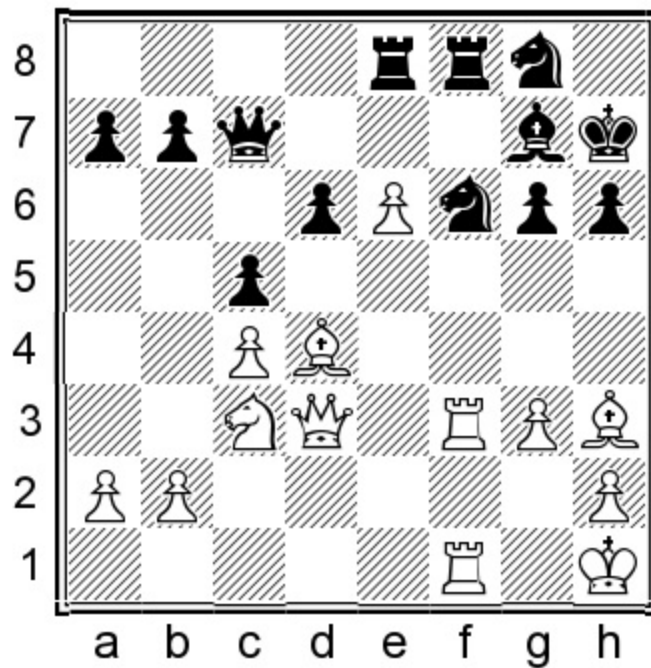
Show/Hide Solution

27. ♔xa5+!! [27. ♖c1?? ♗xd5↗]

27. ♔xa5+!! bxa5 28. ♖a6+ ♔b7 29. ♘c5+ ♔c8 30. ♖a8#

[Sermek,D-Mohr,G Maribor 1993, 0-1]

Exercise 6



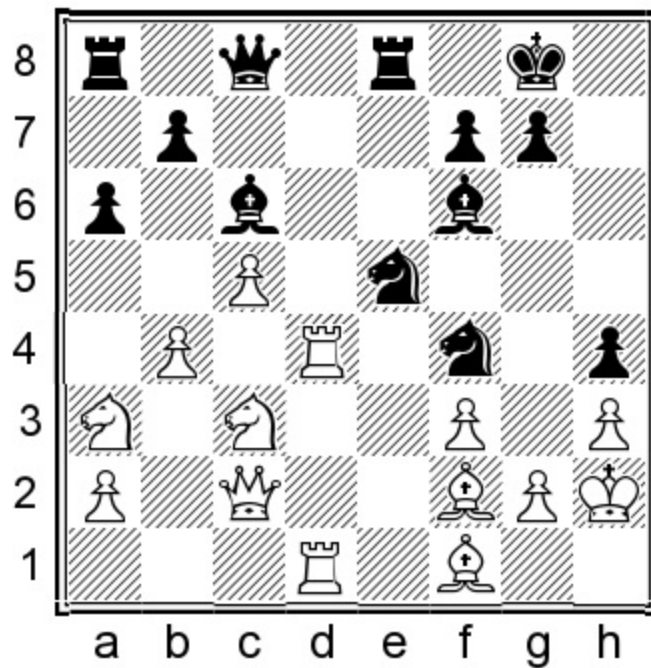
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

27. ♖xg6+!! ♔xg6 28. ♕f5+ ♔h5 29. g4+ ♖xg4 [29... ♔g5 30. ♕e3+ ♔h4 31. ♕f2+ ♔g5 32. h4#]
 30. ♖h3+ ♔g5 31. ♗e4#

[Lisitsin, G-Panov, V Tbilisi 1937, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1...? -+

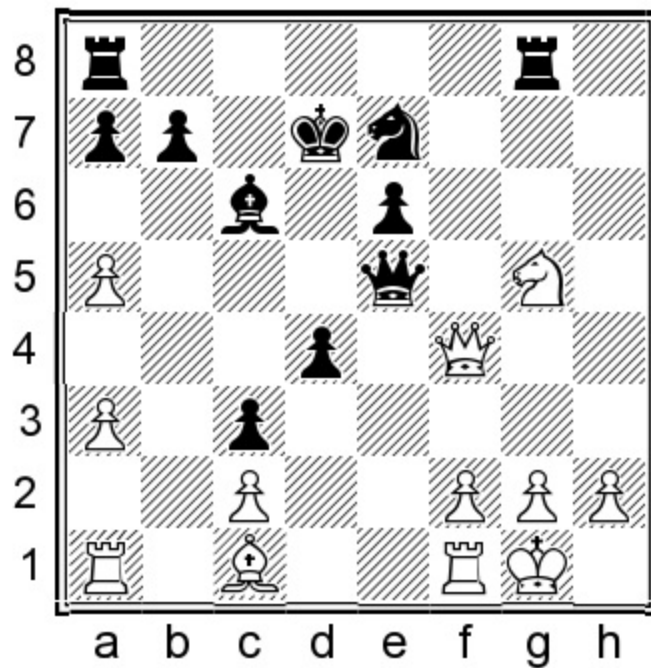
Show/Hide Solution

27... ♖xh3+!! 28. ♔g1 [28.gxh3 ♜xf3+ 29. ♔h1 ♜xd4+ 30. ♔h2 ♜xc2 31. ♜xc2 ♔xc3-+]

28... ♜xf3+ 29.gxf3 ♖xf3-+ 30. ♖xf4 ♖h1#

[Timofeev,V-Averkin,O Penza 1971, 0-1]

Exercise 8

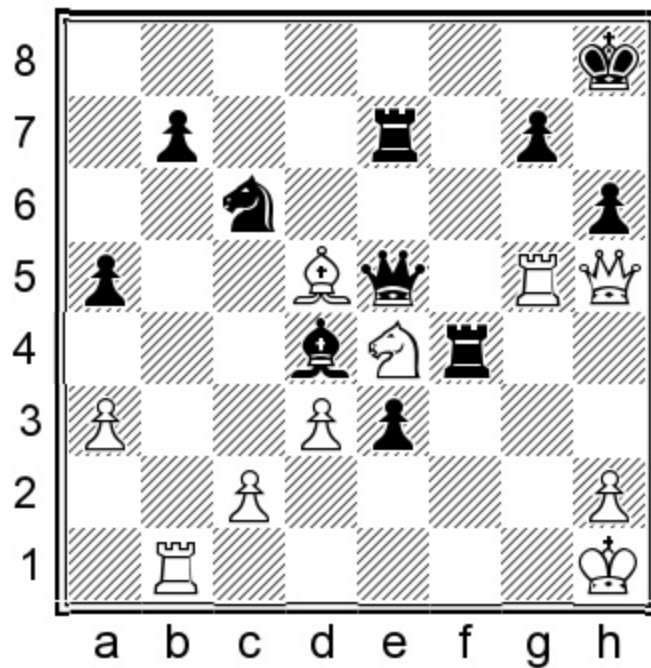


1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

17...♖xg5! 18.♗xg5 ♜g8!! 19.♗xe5 ♜xg2+ 20.♔h1 ♜xf2+ 21.♔g1 ♜g2+ 22.♔h1 ♜g3+ 23.♜f3 ♜xf3#
 [Rogulj,B-Atlas,D Zonal 1.1 Dresden 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 9



1...? -+

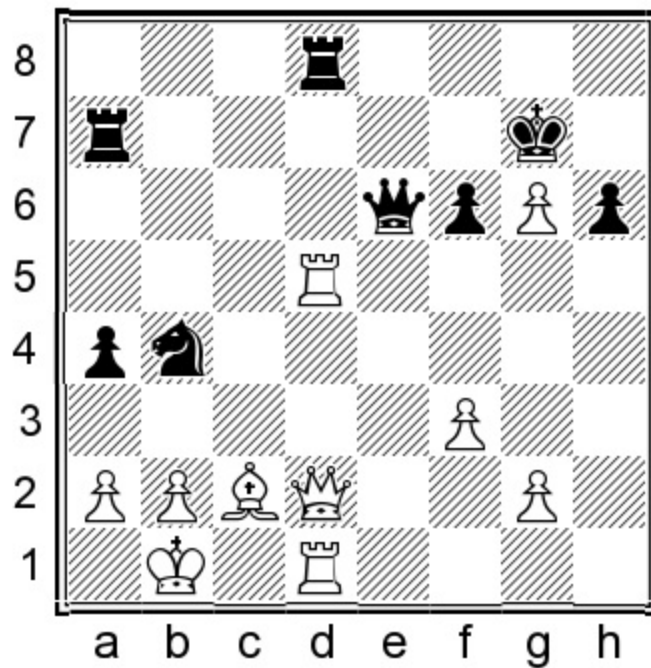
Show/Hide Solution

30...♖xe4! 31.♖xe5 [31.♙xe4 ♜xg5-+]

31...♖4xe5 32.♜f3 ♖xd5! 33.♜xd5 e2 34.♖e1 ♙c3-+

[Petenyi, T-Wojtaszek, R Bilbao 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

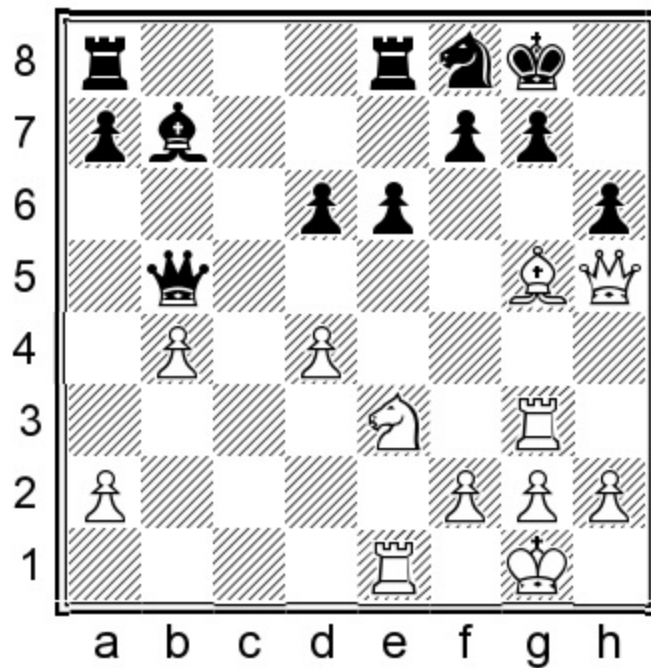
Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖xh6+! ♔xh6 32. ♖h1+ ♔g7 33. ♖h7+ ♔f8 [33... ♔g8 34. ♖xd8+ ♕e8 35. ♖xe8#]

34. ♖xd8+ ♕e8 35. ♖xe8+ ♔xe8 36. ♖xa7+-

[Papin, V-Ikeda, J Melbourne 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 11



1.? +-

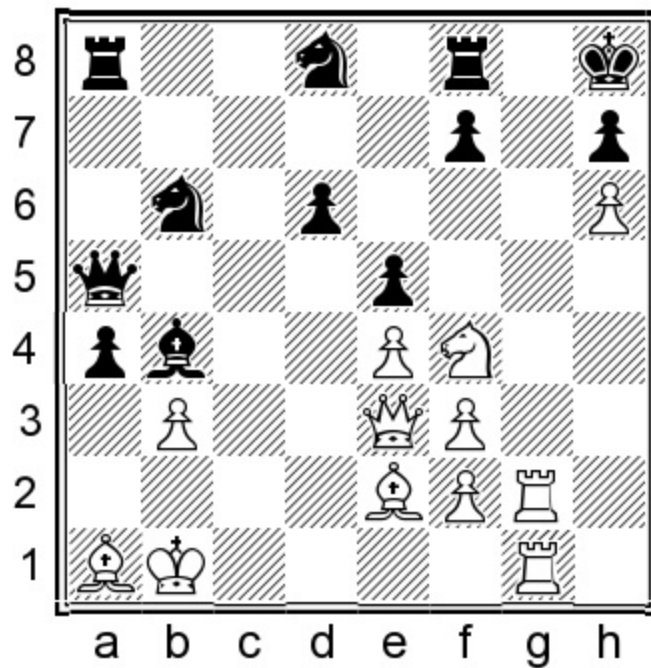
Show/Hide Solution

25.♙f6!! ♚xh5 26.♖xg7+ ♔h8 27.♖xf7+! [27.♖g5+ ♔h7 28.♖xh5 ♔g6-+]

27...♔g8 28.♖g7+! ♔h8 29.♖xb7+! ♔g8 30.♖g7+ ♔h8 31.♖g5+ ♔h7 32.♖xh5+-

[Torre Repetto,C-Lasker,E Moscow 1925, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

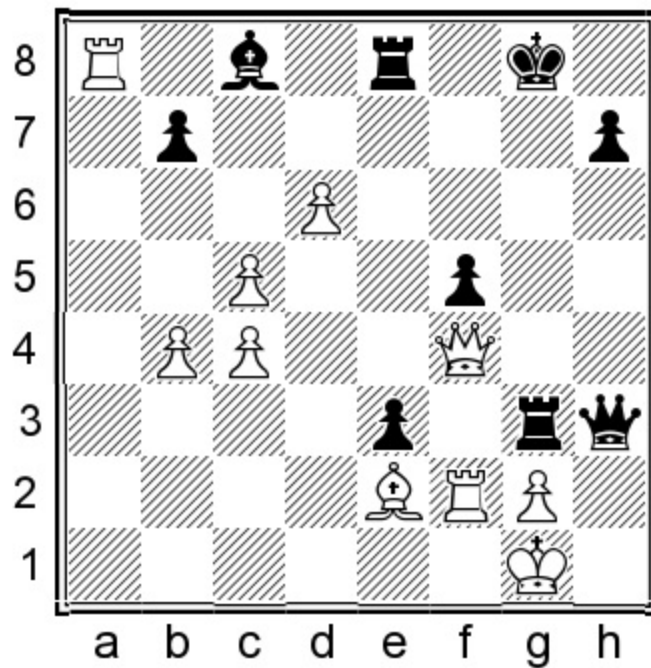
1. ♖xb6! ♜xb6 2. ♘d5! ♚a5 [2... ♙c5 3. ♘f6 ♜xb3+ 4. ♙b2 ♘c6 5. ♗g7+-]

3. ♘f6! ♘e6 4. ♗g7!+- ♘xg7 [4... axb3 5. ♗xh7#]

5. hxg7#

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

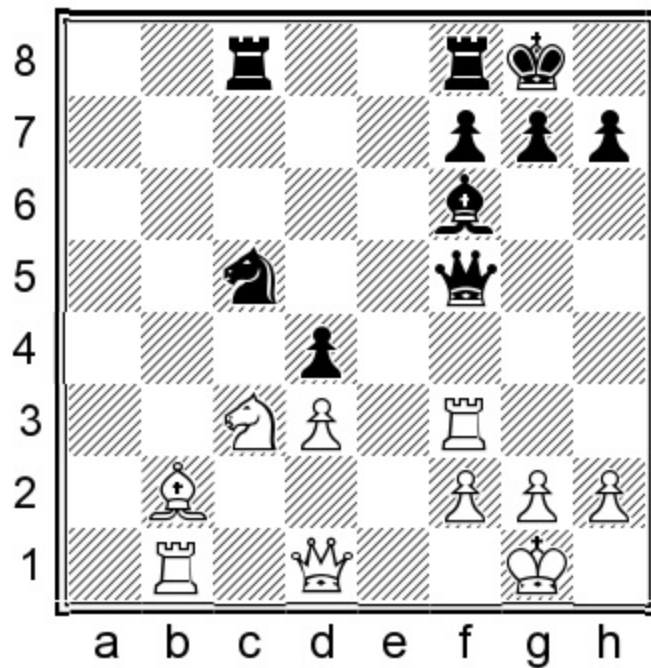
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xe3!! ♜exe3 2.d7! [2. ♜xc8+? ♔f7 3.d7 (3. ♜c7+ ♔f6 4. ♜xb7 ♜e4 5.d7 ♔e7-+) 3... ♜xe2= (3... ♜xg2+!?)=]

2... ♜xg2+ 3. ♜xg2+ ♖xg2+ 4. ♔xg2 ♜xe2+ 5. ♔f3+-

[Vuckovic,B-Maric,D Jugoslavija 2001, 1/2]

Exercise 14



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

27...♙xf3! 28.♙xf3 [28.gxf3 dxc3 29.♙c1 ♖e6-+]

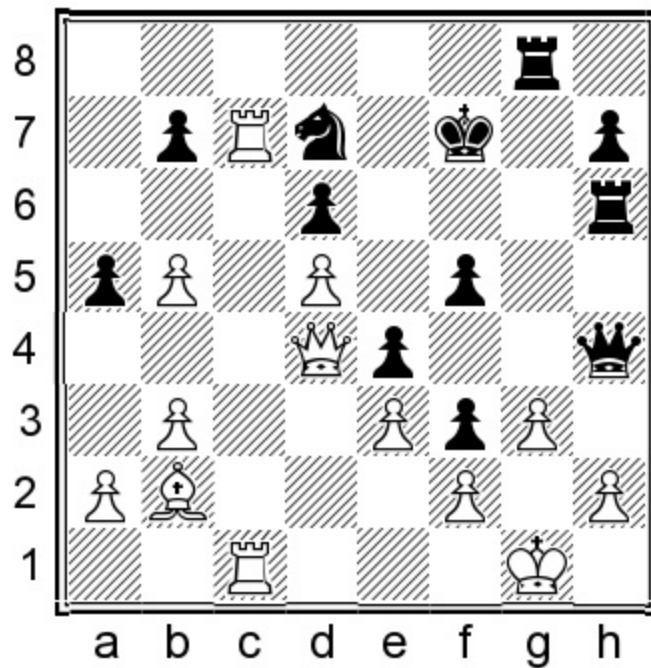
28...dxc3 29.♙a3 [29.♙c1 c2 30.♖b4 ♜fe8-+]

29...c2 30.♖e1 ♜b3-+

[Beerdsen,T-Gupta,A Hoogeveen 2016, 0-1]

[30...♜fd8-+]

Exercise 15



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

27. ♖f6+!! [27. ♖xd7+! ♔e8 28. ♖d8+! ♚xd8 29. b6+-]

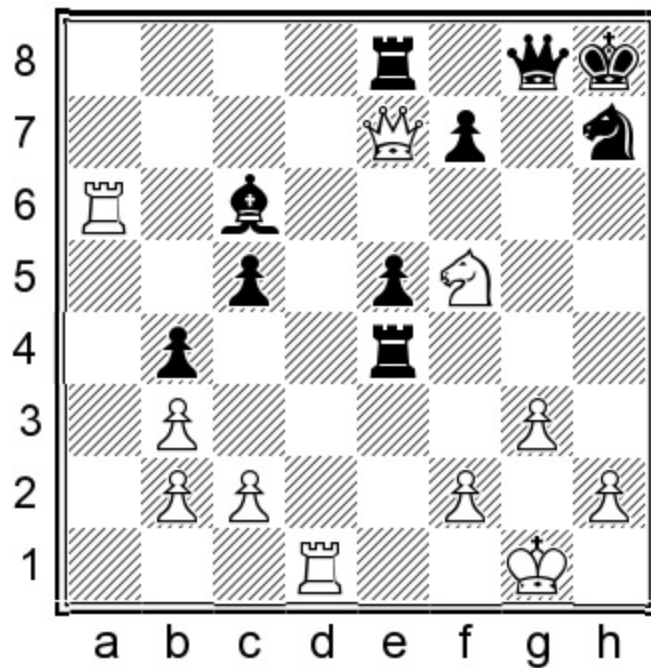
27. ♖f6+!! ♖xf6 28. ♖xd7+ ♔e8 29. ♖xb7

[29. ♔xf6 ♚xf6 30. ♖xb7 ♚d8 31. ♖xh7+-]

29... ♖ff8 30. ♖c8+ ♚d8 31. ♖xd8+ ♔xd8 32. b6+-

[Williams,S-Benitah,Y Oakham 1997, 1-0]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

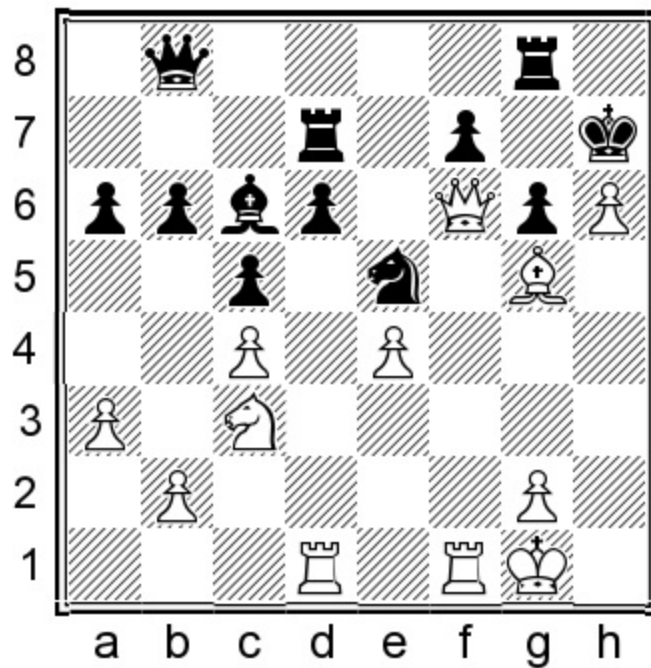
Show/Hide Solution

30.♖xc6! ♖xe7 31.♗xe7 ♜f8 [31...♞g7 32.♖d8+ ♗f8 33.♗f5!+-]

32.♖c8 ♜xc8 33.♗xc8+-

[Kapengut,A-Lukin,A Beltsy 1977, 1-0]

Exercise 17



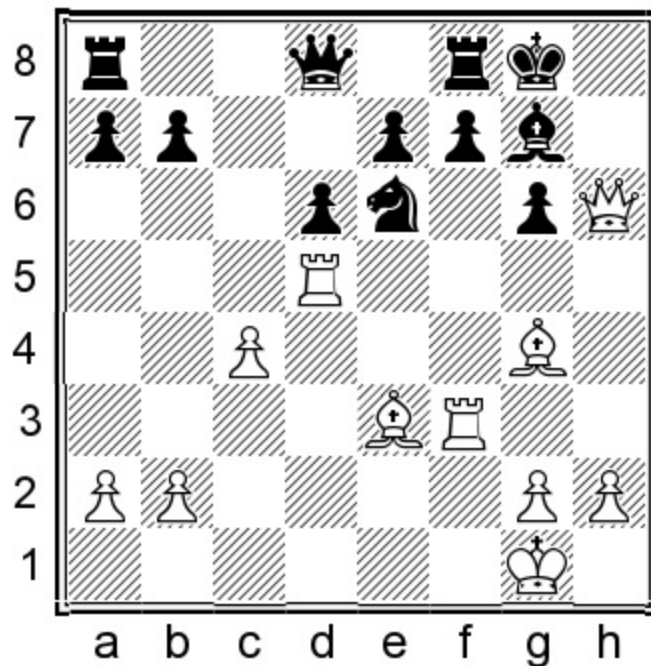
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖xe5! dxe5 31. ♖xd7 ♖f8 [31... ♗xd7 32. ♖xf7+ ♔h8 33. ♗f6+ ♖g7 34. ♖xg7+-]
 32. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 33. ♖xf7+ ♔g8 34. ♖g7+ ♔h8 35. ♗d5 ♖d6 [35... ♗xd5 36. cxd5+-]
 36. ♗f6+-

[Sokolov,I-Slobodjan,R Germany 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25. ♖xg6!! ♜f4 [25...fxg6 26. ♙xe6+ ♔h7 (26...♖f7 27. ♙xf7+ ♔f8 28. ♙xg6+ ♙f6 29. ♖h5+-) 27. ♖h3+ ♙h6 28. ♙xh6+-]

26. ♖xf4 fxg6 27. ♙e6+ ♖f7

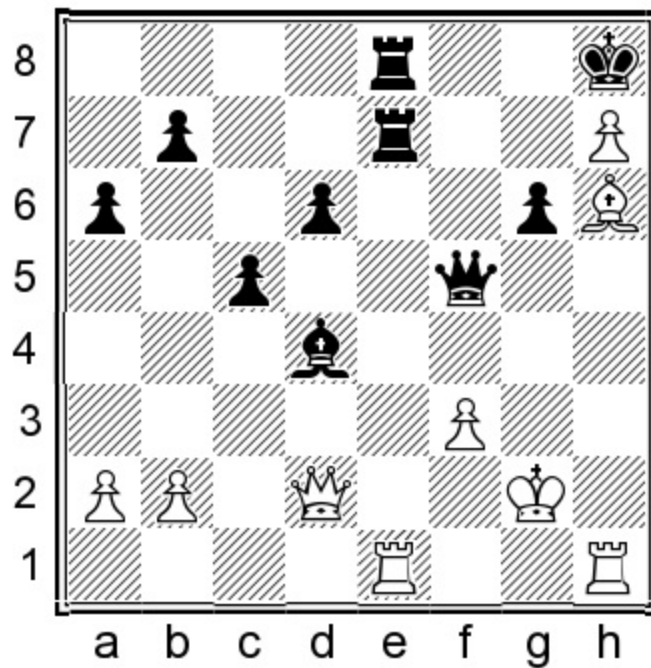
[27...♔h7 28. ♖h4+ ♙h6 29. ♙xh6 ♖f5 (29...g5 30. ♖xg5 ♗b6+ 31. c5) 30. ♖xf5 gxf5 31. ♙f7+-]

28. ♖xf7 [28. ♙xf7+ ♔f8 29. ♙xg6+ ♙f6 30. ♖h5+-]

28...♔h8 29. ♖g5 b5 30. ♖g3+-

[Larsen,B-Petrosian,T Santa Monica 1966, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1.? +-

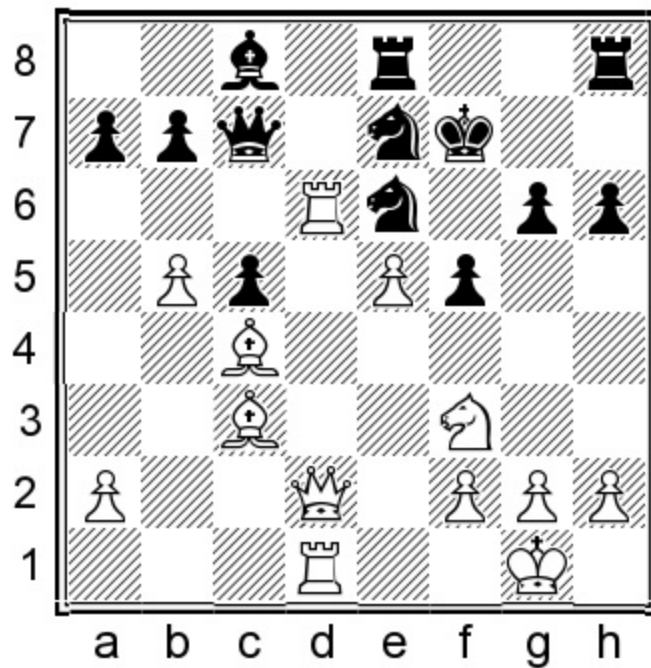
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xd4+!! cxd4 2. ♕g7+!! ♔xg7 [2... ♖xg7 3. ♖xe8+-]

3. ♖xe7+ ♖xe7 [3... ♔f6 4. ♖xe8 ♕g5+ (4... ♖c2+ 5. ♔g3+-) 5. ♔f2 ♖d2+ 6. ♖e2+-]

4. h8=♖+ ♔f7 5. ♖h7+ ♔e6 6. ♖c8+! ♔f6 7. ♖f8+!+- [Peishens-Tilson, 1-0]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

28. ♕xe6+ ♕xe6 **29.** ♖xe6 ♔xe6 **30.** ♗xh6!! [30. ♗d6+ ♗xd6 31. ♖xd6+ ♔f7 32. e6+ ♔g8 33. ♕xh8 ♔xh8 34. ♖d7±]

30... ♖xh6 [30... ♔f7 31. e6++-; 30... ♗xe5 31. ♔g5+-]

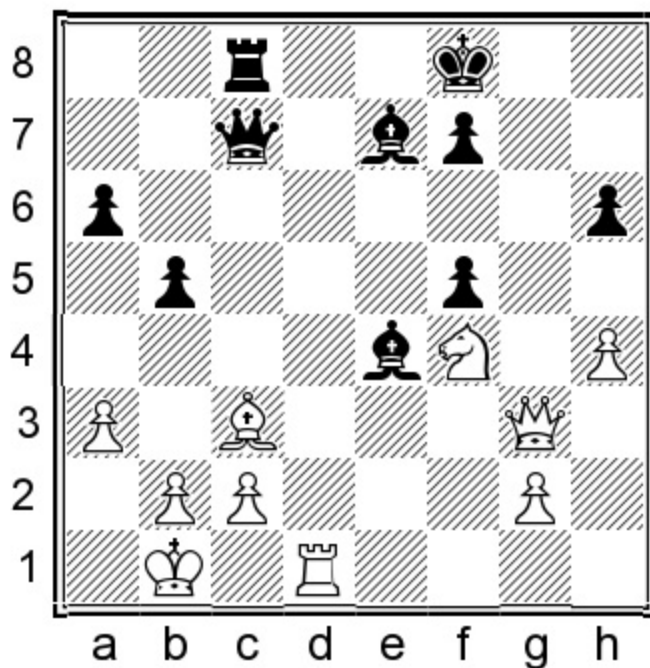
31. ♔g5#

[Zaitsev,I-Bonch Osmolovsky,M Moscow 1969, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

EXERCISES 3

Exercise 1



1.? +-

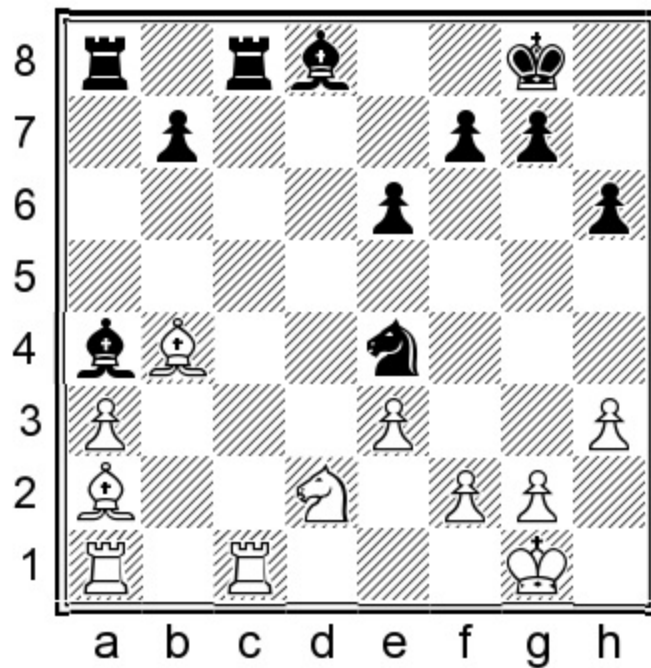
Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖e6+! fxe6 32. ♕g7+ ♔e8 33. ♕g6+ [33. ♕g8+ ♗f8 34. ♕xe6+-]

33... ♗f8 34. ♗g7+ ♔g8 35. ♗xh6+ ♔h8 36. ♕g7#

[Haddouche,M-Oussedik,M Staoueli 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 2



1...? -+

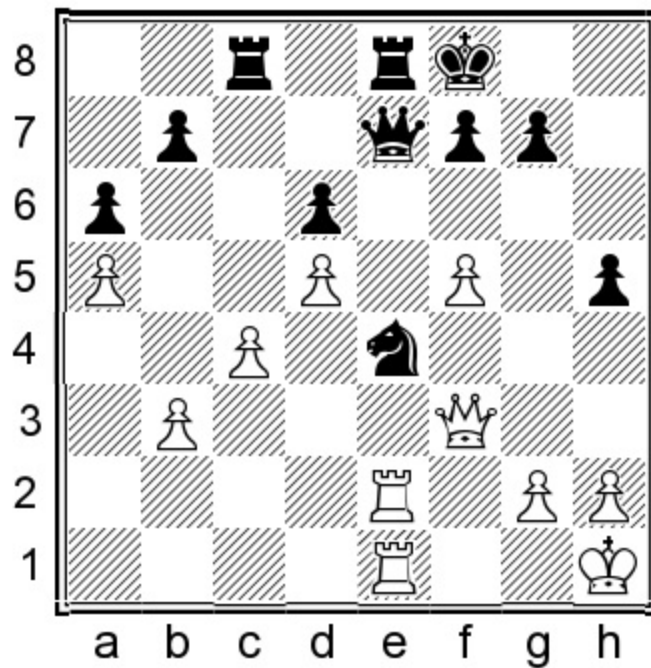
Show/Hide Solution

23... ♖xd2! 24. ♗xd2 [24. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 25. ♗xd2 ♖c2 26. ♗b4 ♗f6-+]

24... ♗c2! 25. ♖f1 ♗f6 26. ♖ac1 ♗b2 27. ♖ce1 ♗d3-+

[Spraggett,K-Almasi,Z Linares 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 3



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

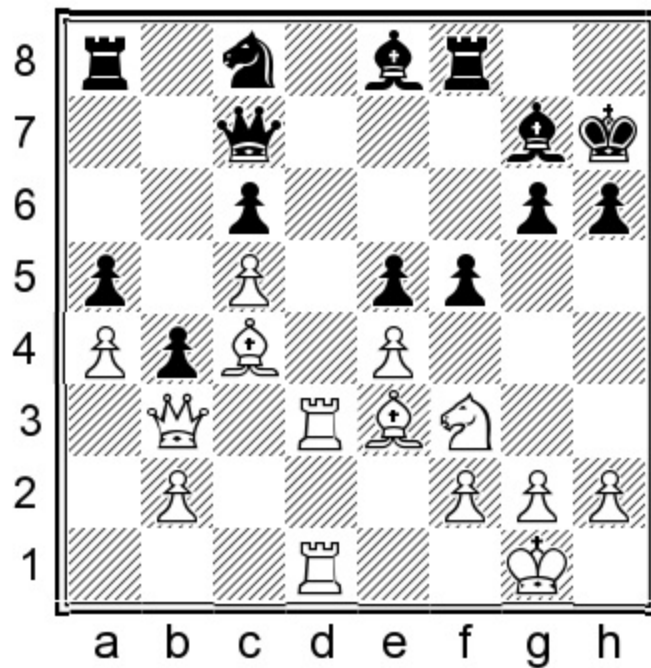
27...♔h4! 28.g3 [28.♖xe4 ♕xe1+! 29.♖xe1 ♖xe1+ 30.♗f1 ♖xf1#]

28...♗g4 [28...♘g5-+]

29.♗xg4 ♘f2+ 30.♖xf2 ♖xe1+ 31.♔g2 hxg4-+

[Orteu Capdevila,M-Korneev,O Linares 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

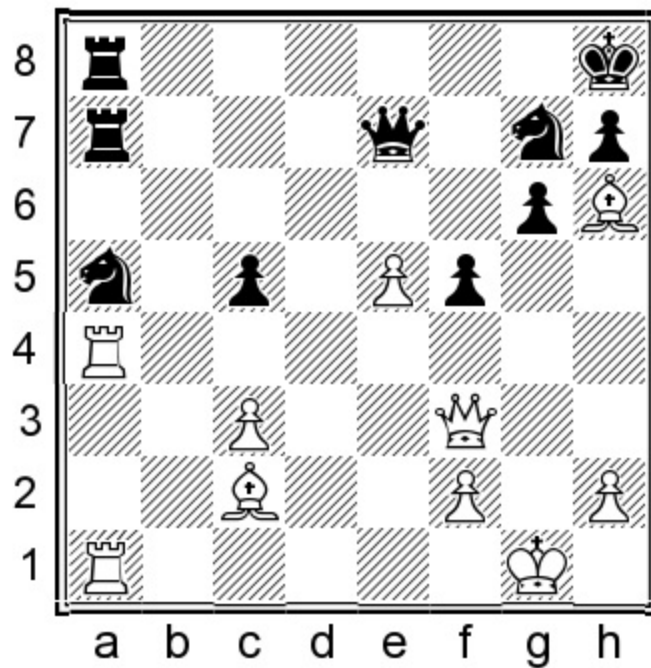
Show/Hide Solution

26. ♖g5+! hxg5 27. ♙xg5 ♜f7 [27... ♙f7 28. ♜d7 ♙xc4 29. ♚h3+ ♔g8 30. ♜xc7+-]

28. ♜d8+-

[Tseshkovsky,V-Golcman,E Odintsovo 2011, 1-0]

Exercise 5



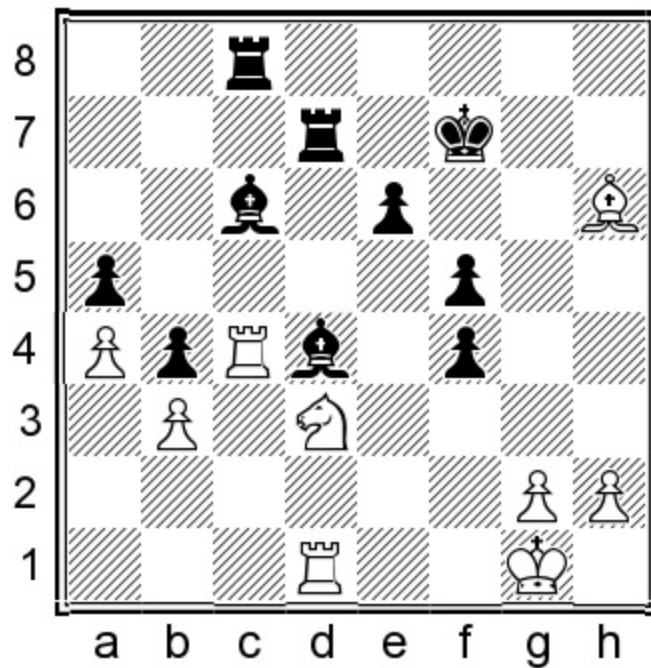
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

27.♖xa5! ♜xa5 28.♚xa8+! ♜xa8 29.♖xa8+ ♔e8 30.♙a4+-

[Lehner,O-Hresc,V Austria, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

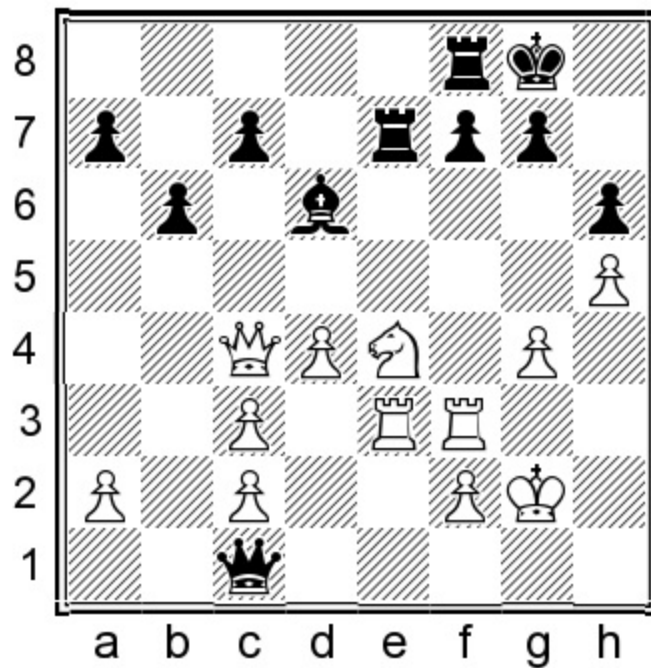
Show/Hide Solution

41.♖xd4! ♖xd4 42.♗e5+ ♔f6 [42...♗g8 43.♖xd4 ♗d5 44.♖d3+-]

43.♖xd4! ♗xe5 44.♗g7#

[Gater,D-Obili,A Richardson 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1.? +-

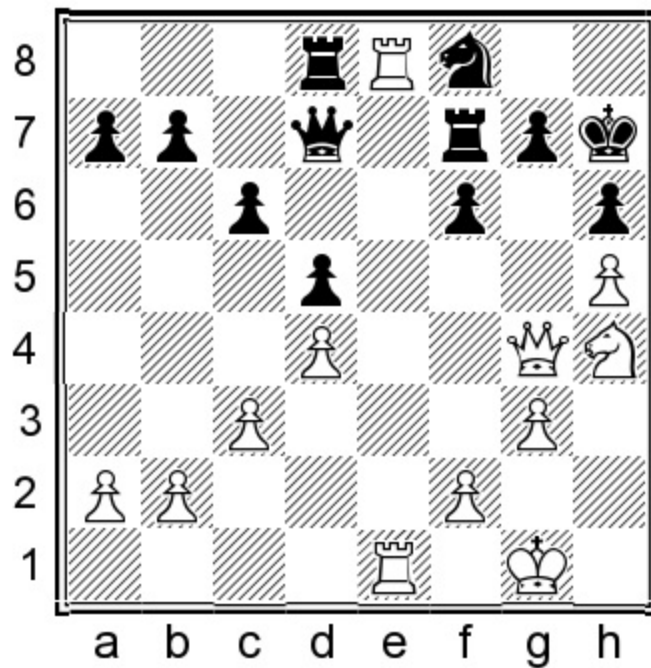
Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖xd6! ♜xe3 32. ♜xf7! ♜xf7 33. ♚xf7+ ♔h8 34. ♖f5+-

[Schon,E-Jones,R Sydney 2015, 1-0]

[34. ♚f8+ ♔h7 35. ♖f7 ♜g3+ 36. fxg3 ♚xc2+ 37. ♔h3+-]

Exercise 8



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

32. ♖g6+! ♔g8

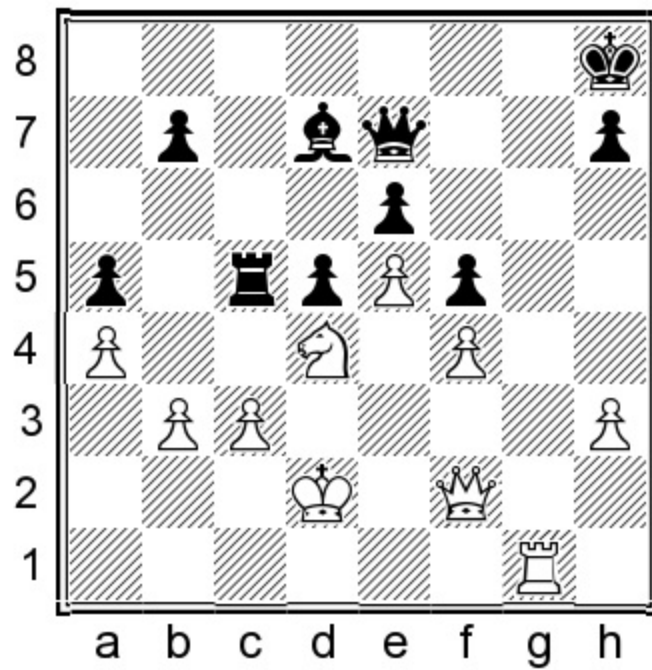
[32... ♕h8 33. ♖xd8 ♕xd8 34. ♖xf7+-; 32... ♗xg6 33. hxg6#]

33. ♗f5 ♖xe8 34. ♗xh6+ ♔h8 35. ♗xf7+ ♕xf7 36. ♖xe8+-

[Burgos Figueroa,C-Warner,D La Libertad 2015, 1-0]

[36. ♖xf7+-]

Exercise 9



1.? +-

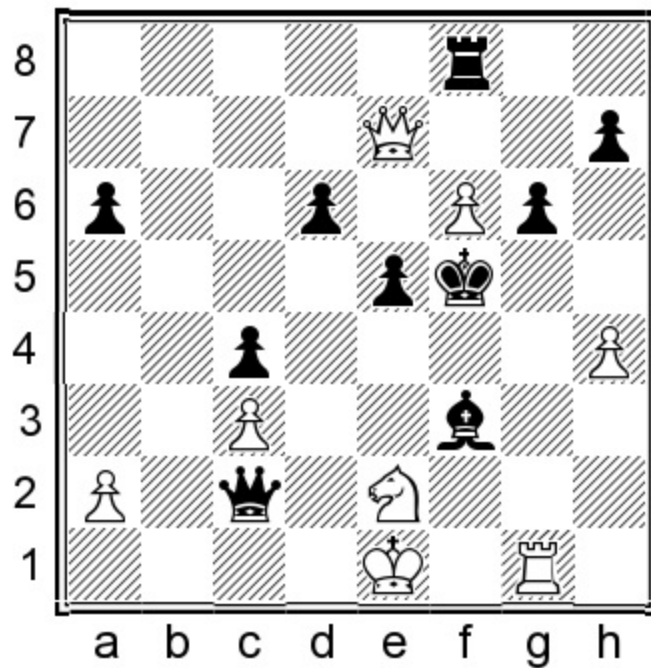
Show/Hide Solution

33. ♖xf5! exf5 34. e6! h6 [34... ♗xe6 35. ♕d4+ ♖g7 36. ♕xg7#]

35. exd7 ♔h7 36. ♕g3+-

[Kupreichik, V-Pushkov, N Eretria 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

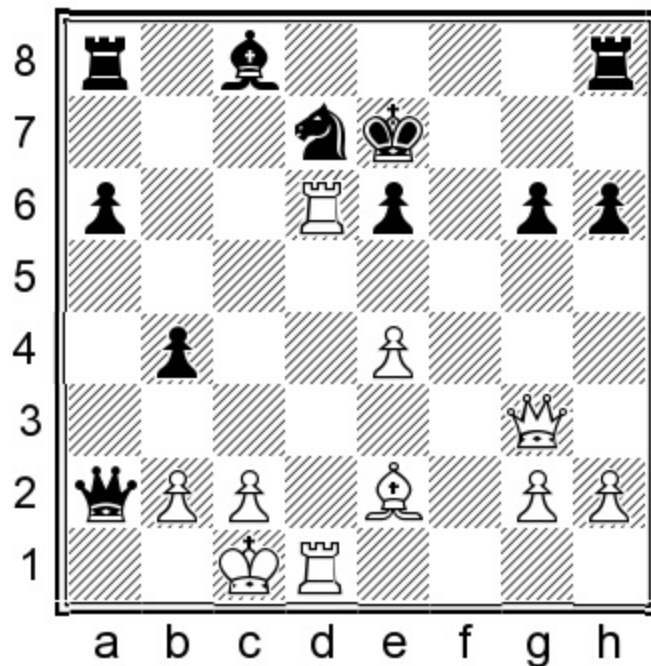
Show/Hide Solution

38. ♘d4+! [38. ♖g5+? ♕e4 39. ♗b7+ ♕e3! (39...d5?? 40. ♖xe5+ ♕xe5 41. ♗e7+ ♕f5 42. ♘d4+-) 40. ♗b6+ ♕e4 41. ♗b7+±]

38. ♘d4+! exd4 39. ♖g5+ ♕f4 40. ♗xd6+ ♕e3 41. ♗xd4#

[Shabalov,A-Krush,I San Diego 2004, 1-0]

Exercise 11



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

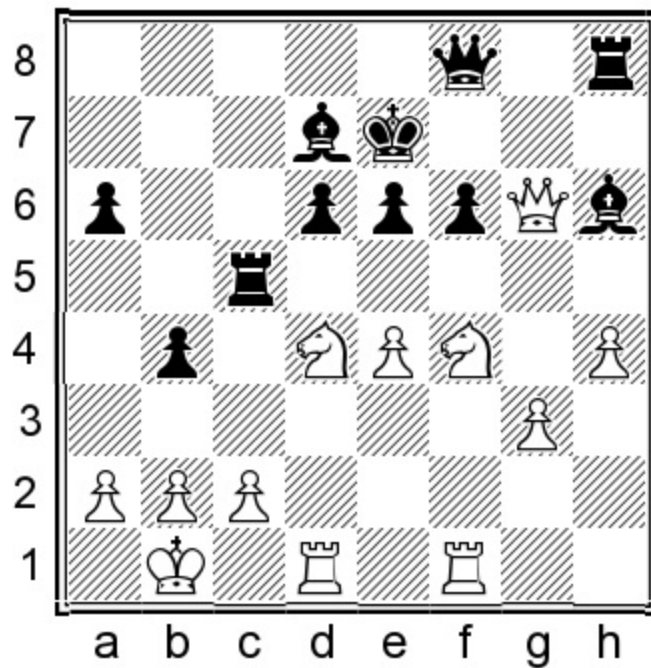
23. ♖xd7+! ♕xd7 24. ♗d6+ ♔f7 25. ♗xd7+ ♔g8

[25... ♔f6 26. e5+ (26. ♖f1+ ♔e5 27. ♗c7+ ♔d4 28. c3+ bxc3 29. bxc3+ ♔xe4 30. ♖f4+ ♔d5 31. ♕f3#)
26... ♔xe5 27. ♗d4+ ♔f5 28. ♖f1+ ♔g5 29. ♗f4#]

26. ♕g4!+-

[Karatorossian,D-Seres,L Budapest 2004, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24. ♖dx6! [24. ♖fxe6+-]

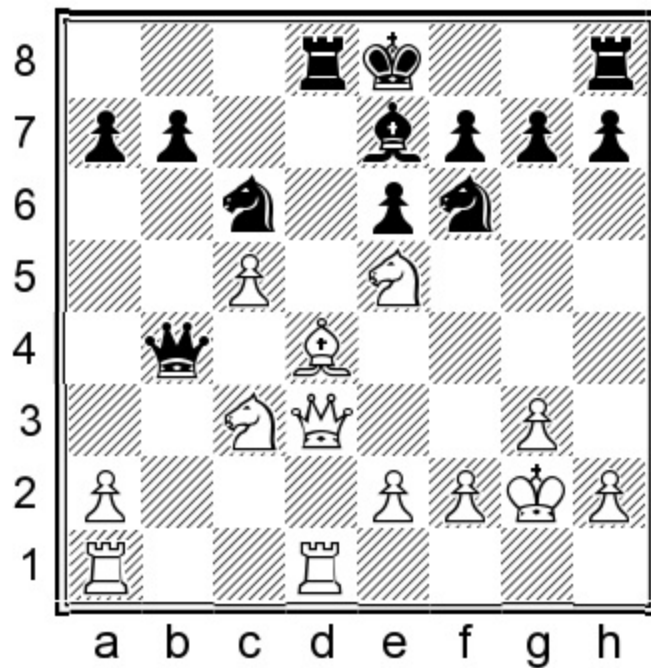
24. ♖dx6! ♙xe6 25. ♖xe6 ♔xe6 26. ♖xf6+! ♚xf6

[26... ♔e7 27. ♖fxd6+-]

27. ♖xd6+ ♔xd6 28. ♚xf6++-

[Predke,A-Leon Hoyos,M Voronezh 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

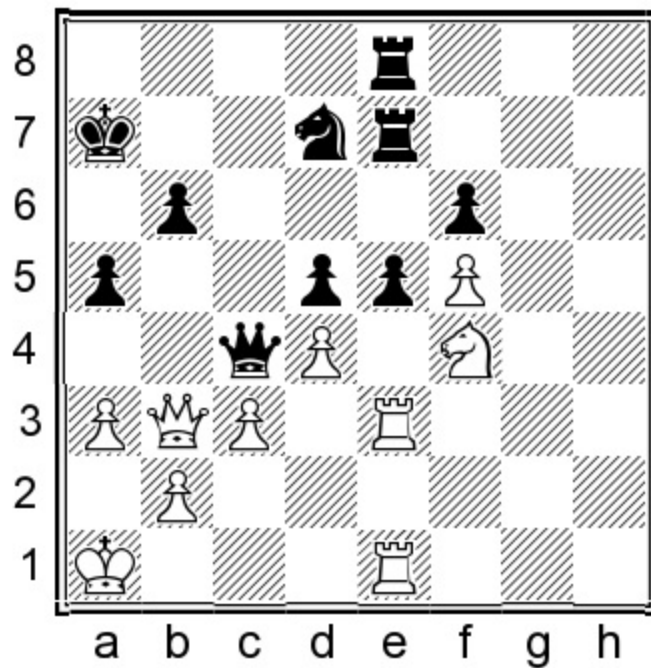
17. ♘xc6 bxc6 18. ♖a6! ♜xd4

[18...0-0 19. ♜ab1+-]

19. ♜xd4 ♖xd4 20. ♜d1+- ♖xc5 21. ♖c8+ ♔d8 22. ♖xd8#

[Mikhalevski, V-Meijers, V Lingen 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

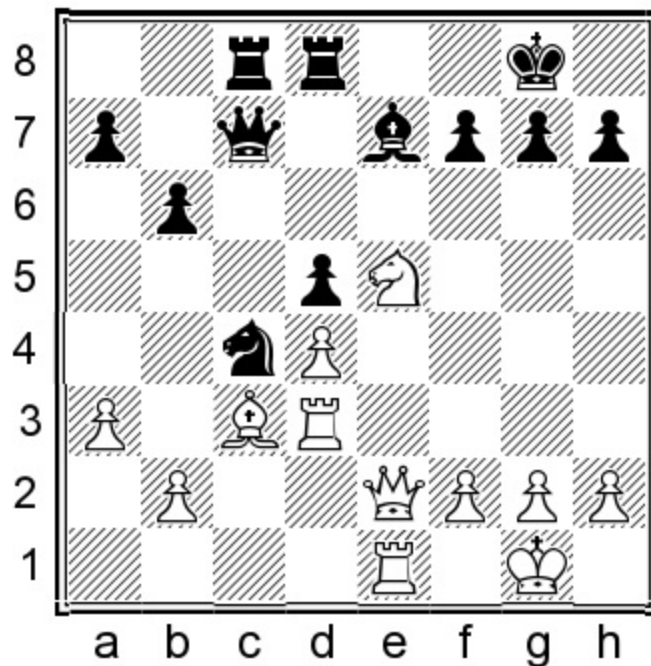
36. ♖a2!! ♜g7

[36... ♜xa2+ 37. ♔xa2 ♜h7 38. ♘xd5+-]

37. ♘xd5 ♜c6 38. ♘f4+-

[Maletin,P-Tkachiev,V Bad Wiessee 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖xf7! ♜xf7 23. ♚e6+ ♜f8 [23... ♜e8 24. ♘b4+- (24. ♖f3+-)]

24. ♖f3+ [24. ♘b4!+-]

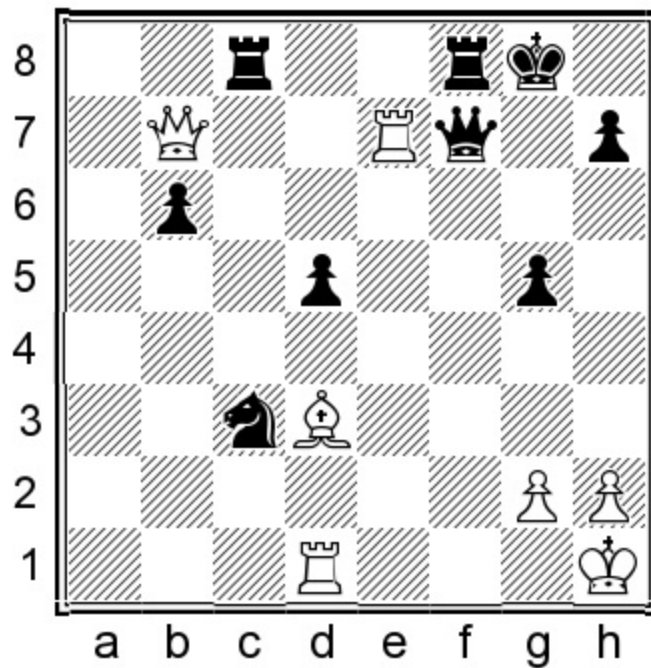
24... ♘f6 25. ♘b4+! [25. ♖xf6+ gxf6 26. ♚xf6+ ♚f7 27. ♚h8+ ♚g8 28. ♚f6+ ♚f7=]

25... ♖d6 26. ♖c3! ♚b8 27. ♖xc8 ♚xc8 [27... ♖xc8 28. ♘d6+-]

28. ♘d6+-

[Patil,P-Villar,J Barcelona 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 16



1...? -+

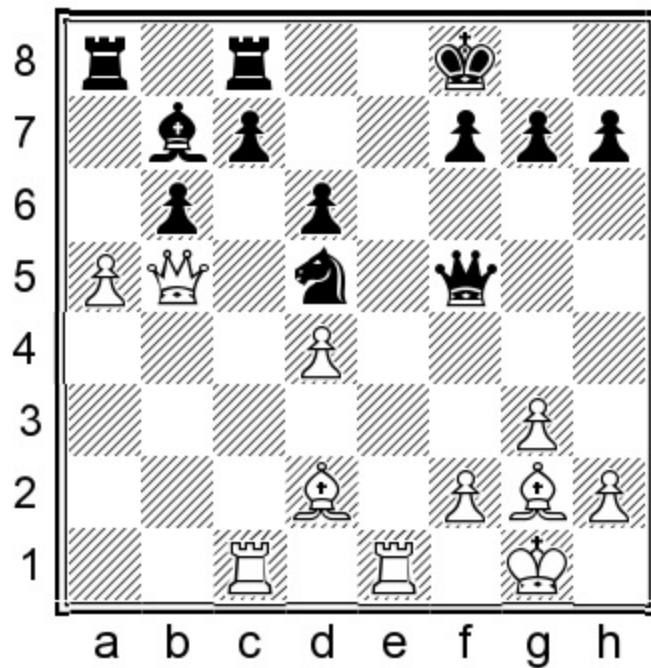
Show/Hide Solution

34... ♖xd1! 35. ♜xf7 ♜f2+ 36. ♔g1 [36. ♜xf2 ♜c1+ 37. ♙f1 ♜xf1+ 38. ♜xf1 ♜xf1#]

36... ♜c1+ 37. ♙f1 ♜xf7 38. ♚xd5 ♜e4! 39. ♚d8+ ♔g7 40. ♚d4+ ♔h6! -+

[Bacrot,E-Ivanchuk,V Thessaloniki 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25.a6! ♖xa6 [25...♙xa6 26.♚xd5+-]

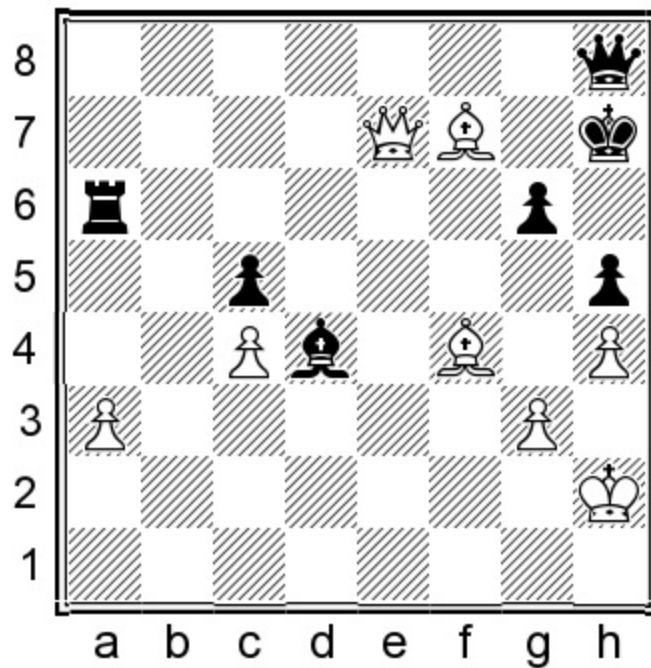
26.♖xc7!! ♖a7

[26...♘e7 27.♚xf5 ♘xf5 28.♖xb7+-]

27.♙xd5 ♙xd5 28.♚xd5!+-

[Levin,E-Pacher,M Herceg Novi 2008, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

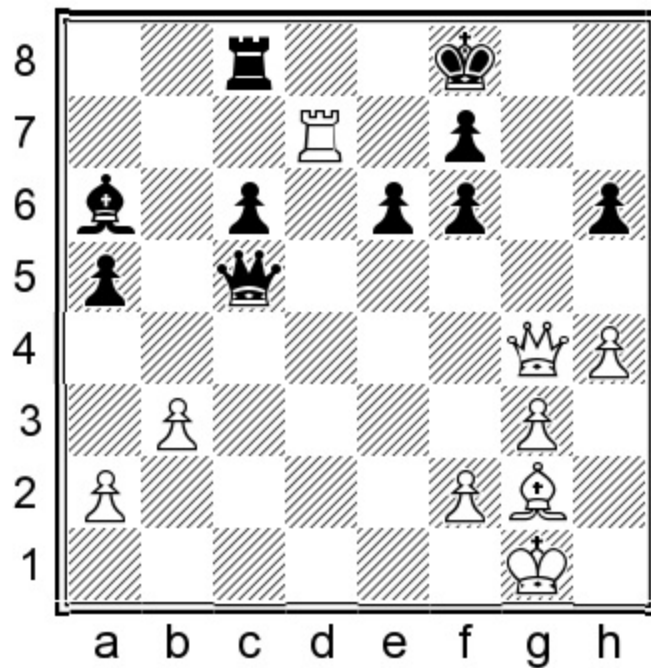
60. ♖xg6+

[60. ♜g5? ♜g7 61. ♜e8 ♜xa3 62. ♜c6 ♜a2+ 63. ♔h3 ♜g1 64. ♜g2 ♜d7+ 65. g4 hxg4+ 66. ♔g3 ♜d3+]

60. ♜xg6+ ♔xg6 61. ♜e4+! ♔f6 62. ♜g5+! ♔g7 63. ♜b7++-

[Worek, J-Klek, H Gladenbach 2012, 0-1]

Exercise 19



1.?±

Show/Hide Solution

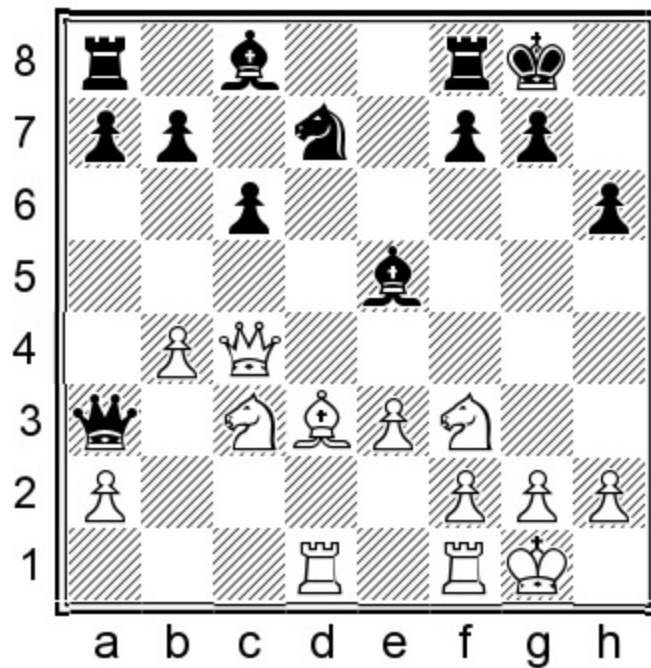
27.♙d5!! ♚c1+?

[27...♚xd5! 28.♖xd5 cxd5 29.♗a4 ♙e2 30.♗xa5±; 27...cxd5 28.♗h5 ♗e7 29.♗xh6+ ♔e8 30.♖xe7+ ♔xe7 31.♗d2+–]

28.♔h2 ♗e1 29.♗h5+–

[Akesson,R-Thorfinnsson,B Hafnarfjordur 1998, 1–0]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

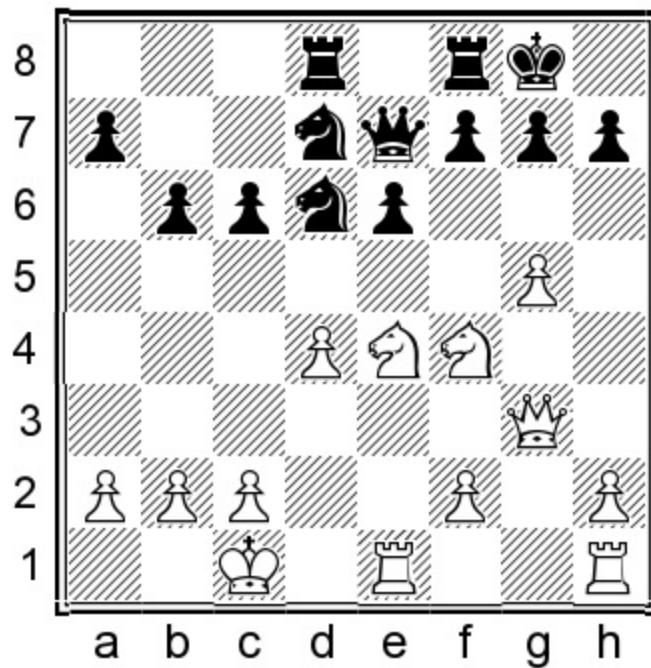
Show/Hide Solution

15. ♖b1! [15. ♕e4! g6 16. ♘b1 ♕b2 17. ♖d2 ♕a1 18. ♖c2+-]

15. ♘b1! ♕a4 16. ♙c2 ♕b5 17. ♕xb5 cxb5 18. ♙f5+-

[Zysk,R-Kokkalis,V Achaea 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 21



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

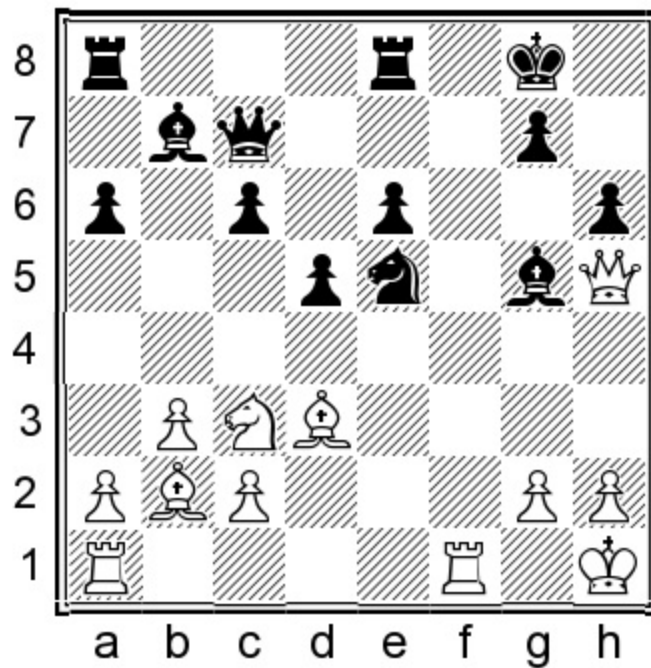
17. ♖xd6! ♜xd6 18. ♗g6!! ♜xg3 19. ♗e7+! ♔h8 20. hxg3 g6

[20...c5 21. ♖xh7+ ♗xh7 22. ♖h1#]

21. ♗xc6+-

[Nabaty, T-Chekletsov, I Pardubice 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

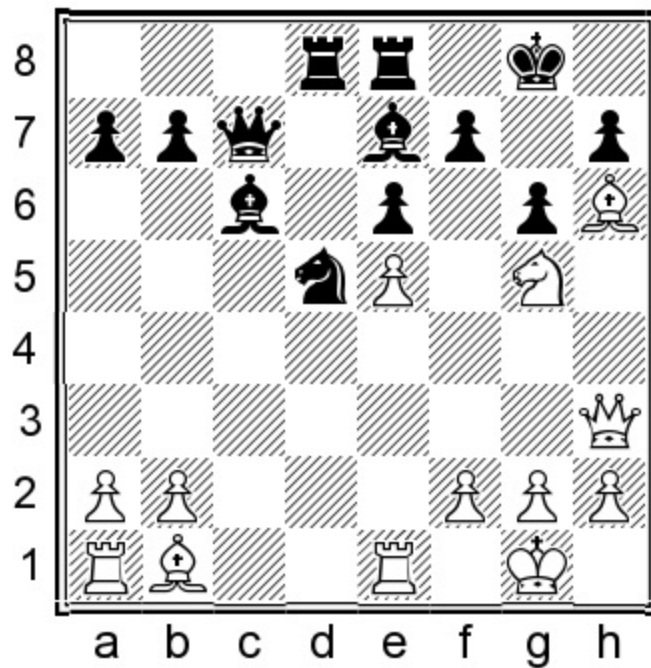
19. ♖b5!

[19. ♖xd5 exd5 20. ♗xe5 ♜xe5 21. ♚g6 ♞e4 22. ♗xe4 dxe4 23. ♚e6+ ♔h8 24. ♜f7+-]

19. ♖b5! cxb5 20. ♗xe5 ♚xe5 21. ♚f7+ ♔h8 22. ♚g6+-

[Jakubowski,K-Tunik,G Pardubice 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

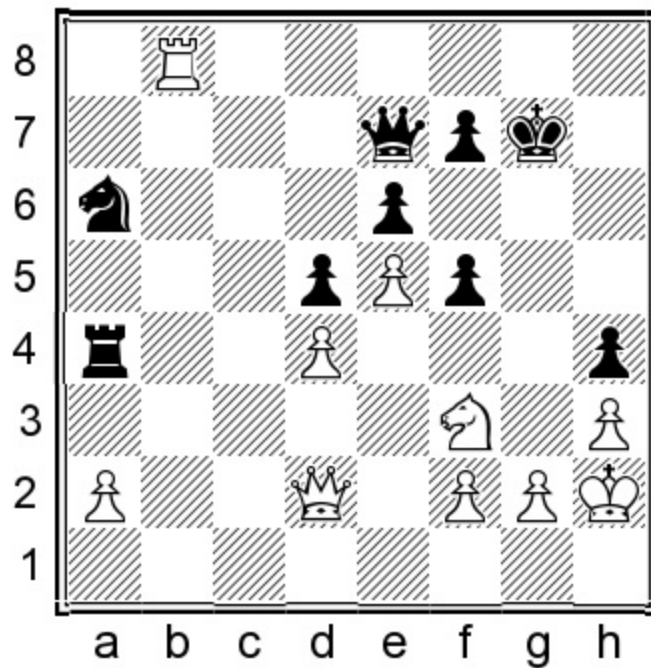
Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖xg6! hxg6 [21... ♖xg5 22. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 23. ♖xg5+ ♔g8 24. ♖e3+- (24. ♖f6? ♗xf6 25. exf6 ♖f4+-; 24. ♖h6!+-)]

22. ♖g7!+-

[Dely,P-Glass,E Reggio Emilia 1960, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

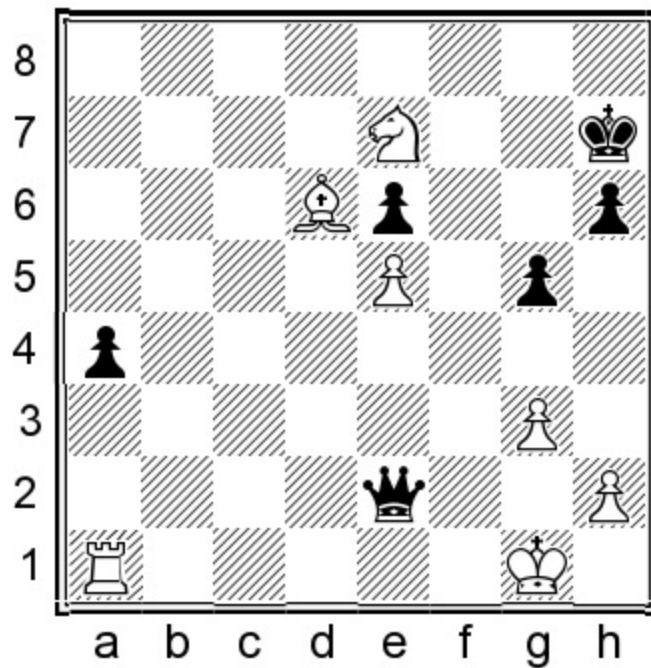
33.♖h8!! ♔xh8 34.♚h6+ ♔g8 35.♘g5 ♚xg5

[35...f6 36.exf6 ♚c7+ 37.g3 hxg3+ 38.♔g2!+- (38.fxg3?? ♖xa2+ 39.♔g1 ♚c1#)]

36.♚xg5++-

[Petrov,N-Fernandez,D Budapest 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 25



1...? -+

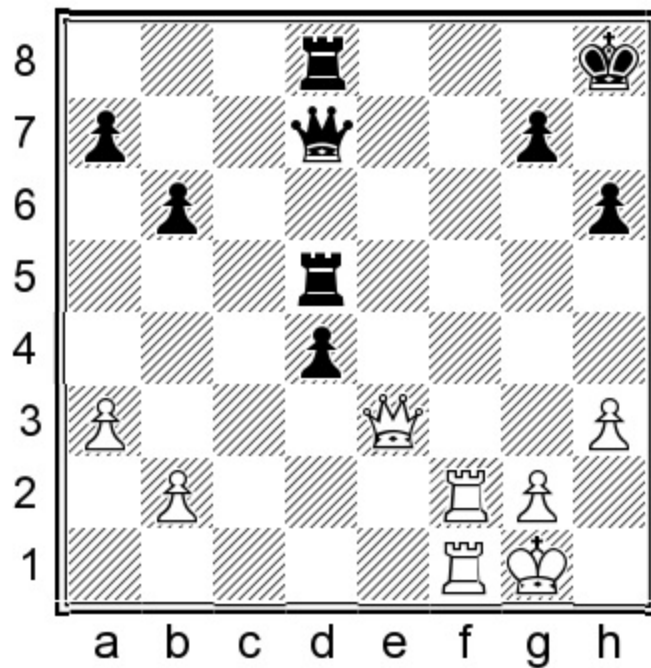
Show/Hide Solution

40...♔e3+ 41.♕g2 ♔e4+ 42.♖h3 g4+ 43.♕h4 ♔e3! 44.♕xg4 [44.♖xa4 ♔g5#]

44...♔d4+-+

[Ivanchuk,V-Mamedyarov,S Beijing 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 26



1.? +-

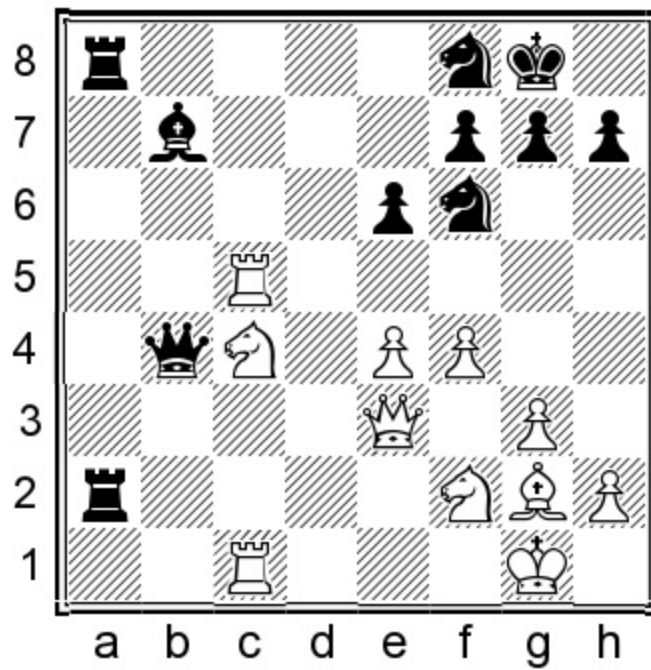
Show/Hide Solution

36. ♖f8+ ♜xf8 [36... ♔h7 37. ♚e4+ g6 38. ♖1f7+-]

37. ♖xf8+ ♔h7 38. ♚e4+ g6 39. ♖e8!!+-

[Anderssen,A-Schwarz,A Frankfurt 1878, 1-0]

Exercise 27



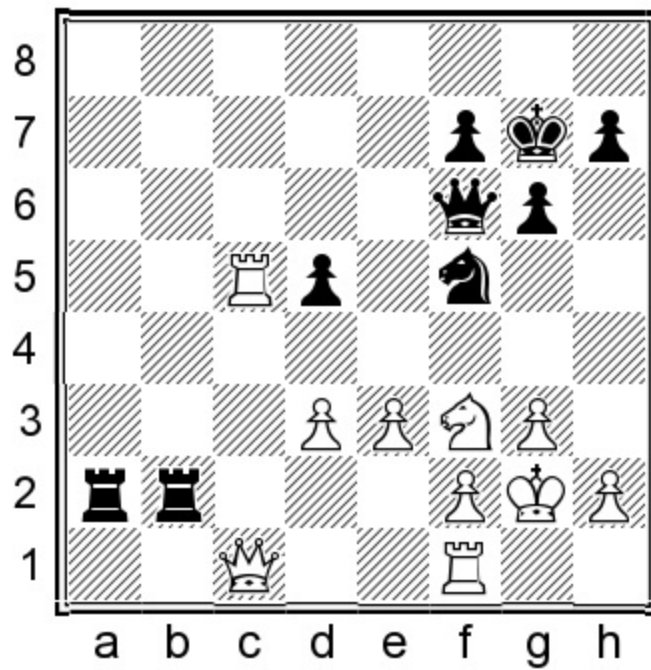
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

31...♖xf2! 32.♔xf2 ♘g4 33.♔d4 ♖d8!-+

[Haba,P-Hracek,Z Karlovy Vary 2004, 0-1]

Exercise 28



1...? -+

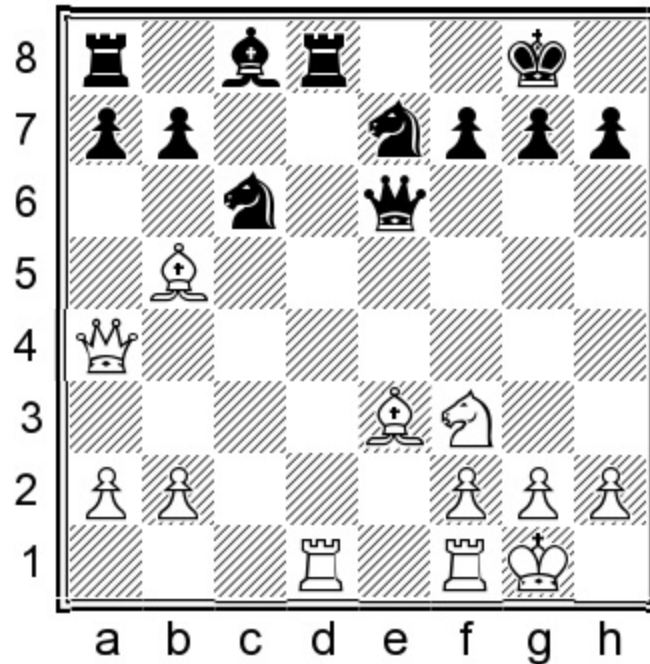
Show/Hide Solution

27...♖b1!! 28.♙xb1 ♜xe3+! 29.♔g1 ♙xf3-+

[Bouwmeester,H-Botvinnik,M Wageningen, 1/2]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 29



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

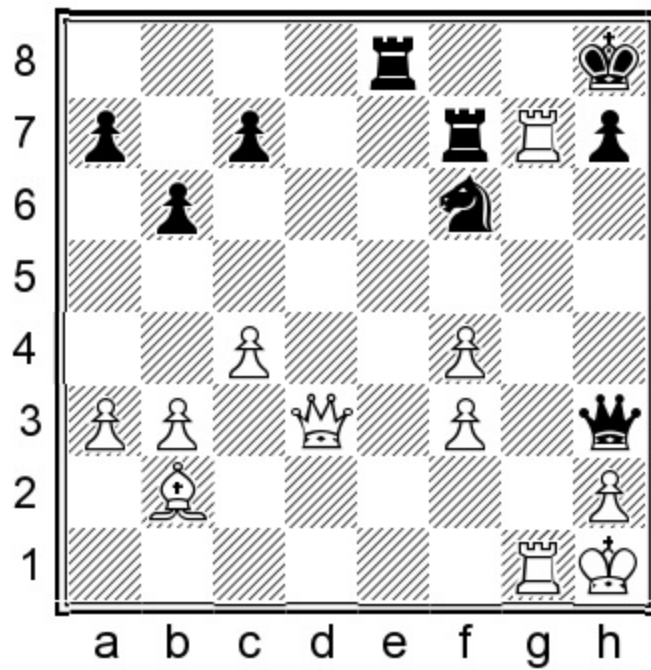
17. ♖xd8+! ♜xd8 18. ♖d1 ♜dc6

[18... ♜d5 19. ♖b3+-; 18... ♜ec6 19. ♙xc6 ♜xc6 20. ♖xc6+-]

19. ♙xc6 ♜xc6 20. ♖xc6!+-

[Burn,A-Tarrasch,S Breslau 1889, 1/2]

Exercise 30



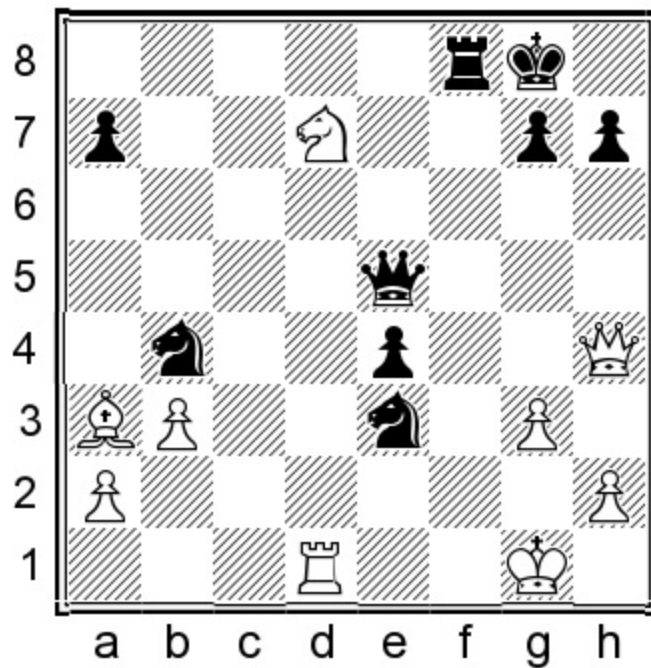
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖xg7 2.♙xf6 ♜g2+!! 3.♖xg2 ♜e1+ 4.♚f1 ♖xf1+ 5.♖g1 ♖fxg1#

[Uhlmann-Dely Budapest 1962, 0-1]

Exercise 31



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

30...♔d6!

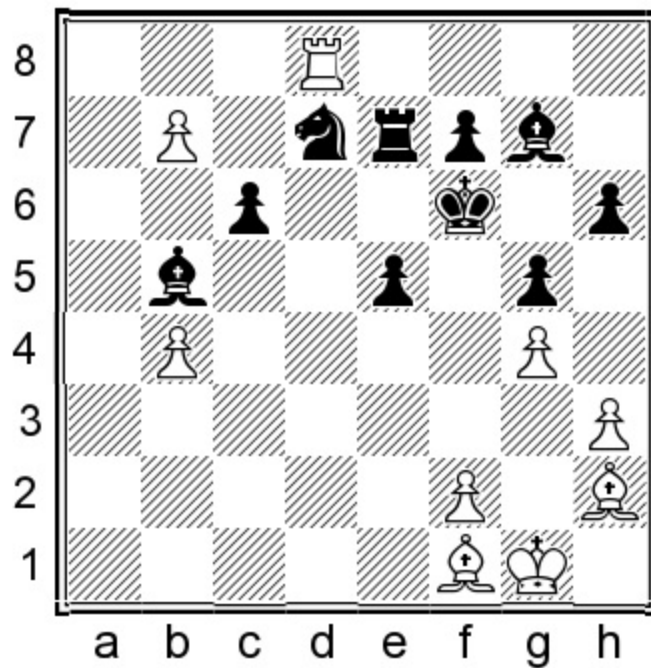
[30...♔d4? 31.♕xh7+! ♔xh7 32.♖xf8+ ♔g8 33.♗xd4 ♘bc2 34.♗xe4+-]

30...♔d6! 31.♗xd6 [31.♗e1 ♔d2-+]

31...♗f1#

[Bradford,J-Byrne,R Greenville 1980, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

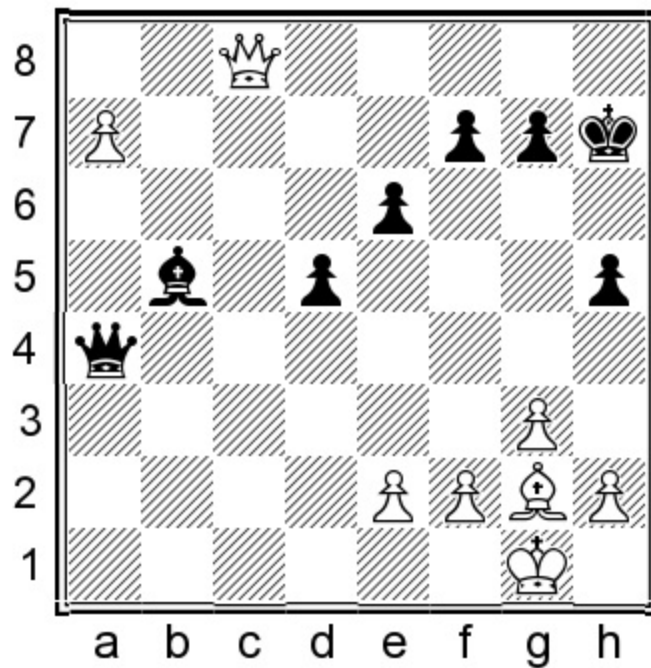
36. ♖xb5 cxb5 37. ♖xd7! ♖e8!

[37... ♖xd7 38. b8=♚+-]

38. ♖xe5+! ♔xe5 39. ♖e7+! ♖xe7 40. b8=♚++-

[Kamsky,G-Anurag,M Karlsruhe 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 33



1.? +-

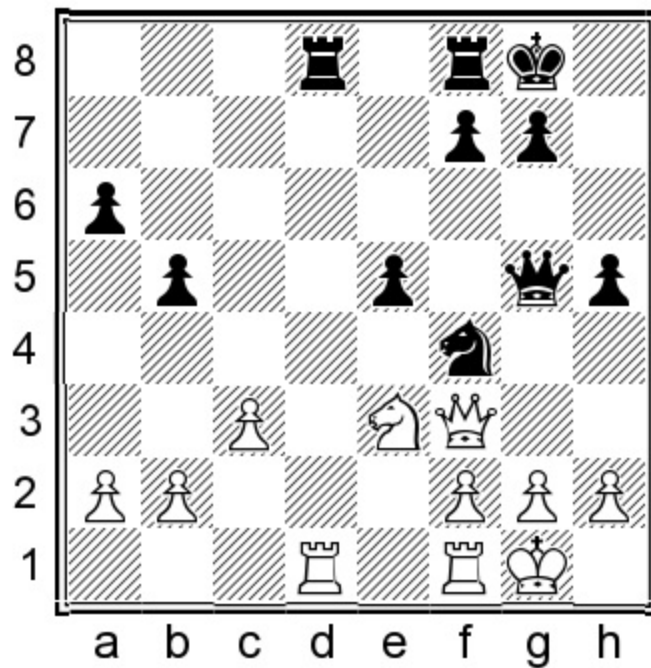
Show/Hide Solution

41.a8=♚! [41.♙e4+?? ♜xe4 42.a8=♚ ♜b1+ 43.♔g2 ♙xe2+-]

41.a8=♚! ♜d1+ 42.♙f1 ♙xe2 43.♚a1! ♜xa1 44.♚c2+ g6 45.♚xe2+-

[Laza,S-Banusz,T Zalakaros 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 34



1...? -+

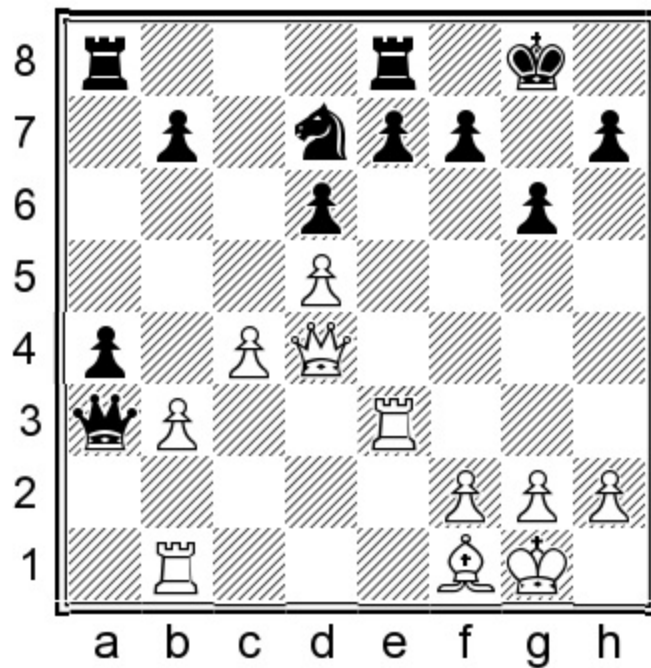
Show/Hide Solution

1...e4! 2.♙xe4 [2.h4 ♖e5 3.♙g3 ♘e2+-+; 2.♙g3 ♘e2+-+]

2...♘h3+ 3.♚h1 ♘xf2+! 4.♙xf2 ♙xe3!-+

[Perez,Y-Espinosa,E Cuba 2004, 0-1]

Exercise 35



1.? +-

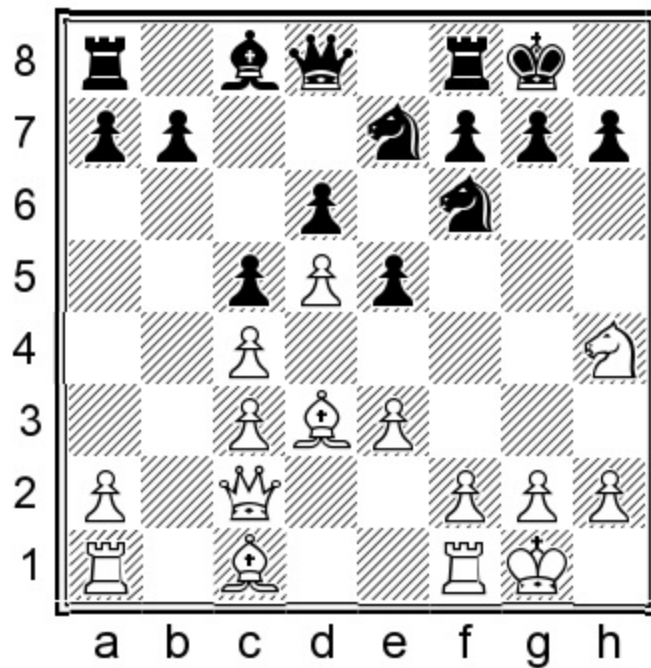
Show/Hide Solution

24. b4 ♔a2 25. ♕d1!+- a3 [25...b5 26. ♕c1! a3 27. ♖c3!+-]

26. ♖c3!+-

[Beliavsky,A-Hjartarson,J Barcelona 1989, 1-0]

Exercise 36



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

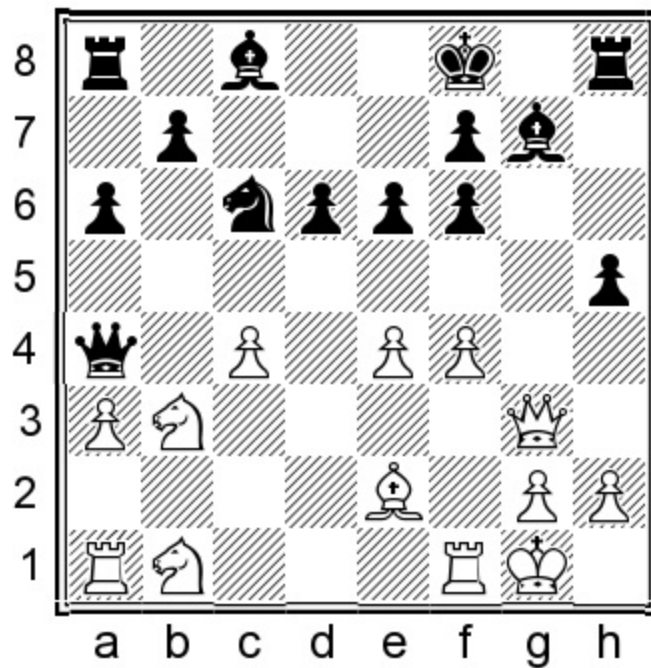
1...e4! 2.♙xe4 [2.♙e2 g5]

2...♘xe4 3.♚xe4 g5! 4.♘f3 [4.♚c2 gxh4-+]

4...♙f5-+

[Napolitano,G-Batik,F Corr 1958, 0-1]

Exercise 37



1.?±

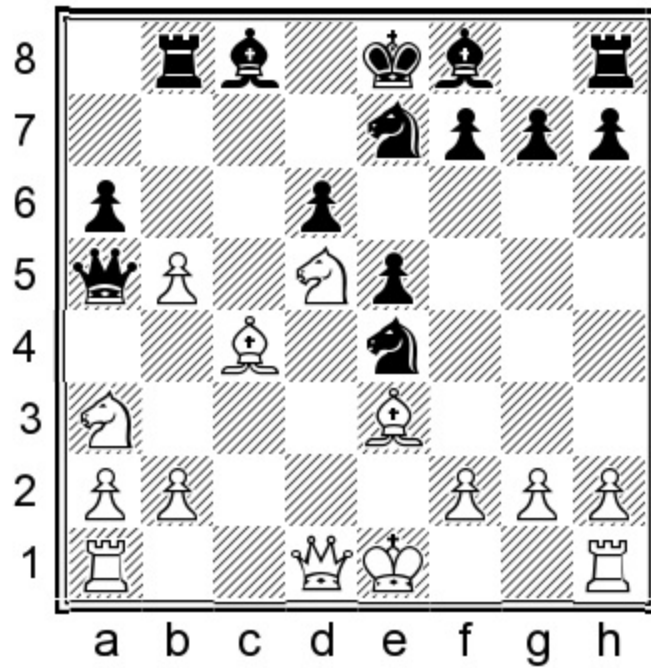
Show/Hide Solution

18.♘c3! ♜xb3 19.♝fb1 ♜c2 20.♞a2 h4! [20...♜xb1+ 21.♘xb1±]

21.♜e1! ♜xa2 22.♘xa2±

[Tal,M-Zilberstein,V USSR 1973, 1-0]

Exercise 38



1.? +-

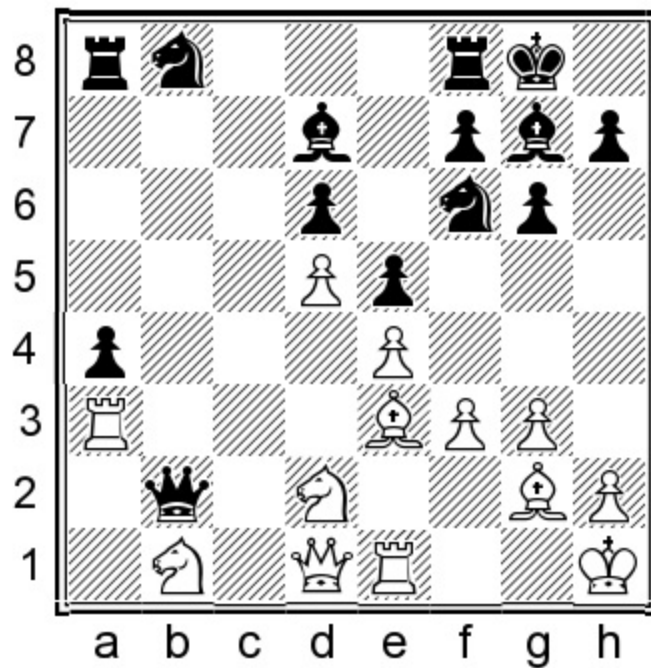
Show/Hide Solution

15.b4! ♖xa3 16.♗c1 ♜c3! 17.♚d2 ♜a4 18.♗b3 ♜exd5 [18...♚xb5 19.♜c7+-]

19.♗xa4 ♜xa4 20.♚xd5+-

[Mikhalchishin,A-Timoschenko,G Tbilisi 1973, 1-0]

Exercise 39



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

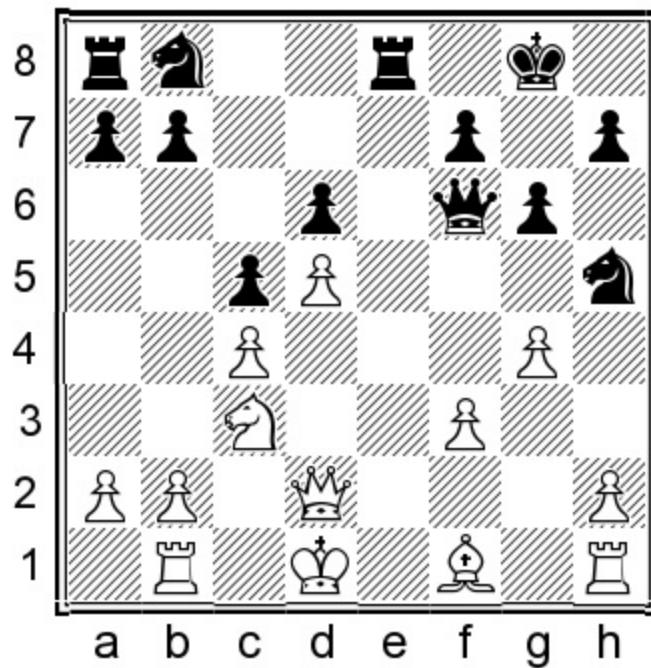
21. ♖b3! [21. ♖c4 ♜b4 22. ♖bd2 ♙b5 23. ♜a1! ♙xc4 24. ♜b1 ♙b3 25. ♖xb3±]

21. ♖b3! ♙b5 [21... ♜c8 22. ♜e2+-]

22. ♙f1! ♙xf1 23. ♜xf1 ♖bd7 24. ♜f2 ♜xb3 25. ♜xb3 axb3 26. ♜b2+-

[Schulze,U-Schebler,G Germany 2007, 1/2]

Exercise 40



1.? +-

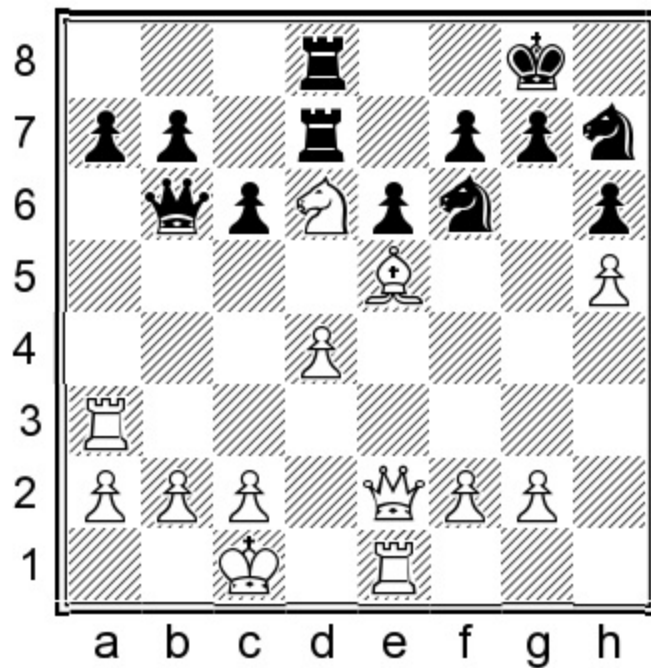
Show/Hide Solution

15.gxh5! ♖xf3+ 16.♔c2 ♖xh1 17.♚f2!! ♘a6 [17...♘c6 18.dxc6 ♖xc6 19.♙g2 ♚d7 20.♘d5+-]

18.♙d3 ♘b4+ 19.♔d2 ♘xd3 20.♔xd3+-

[Anand,V-Gelfand,B WCC match 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 41



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

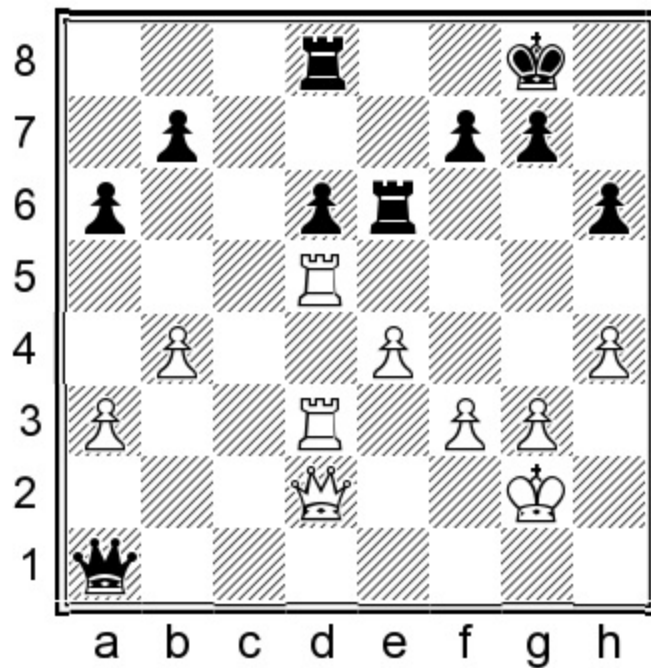
25. ♘c4 ♚b4 [25... ♛b5 26. ♖a5 ♛b4 27. ♙d6 ♜xd6 28. c3+-]

26. ♙d6! ♜xd6 [26... c5 27. ♙xc5 ♛b5 28. ♖xa7+-]

27. c3 ♛b5 28. ♖a5+-

[Beliavsky,A-Larsen,B London 1984, 1-0]

Exercise 42



1.? +-

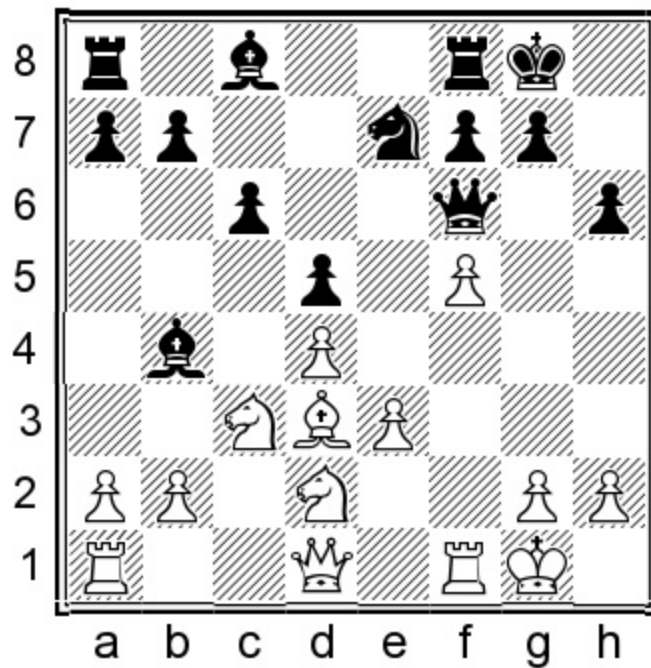
Show/Hide Solution

41.♖c3! ♜de8 [41...♞g6 42.e5! (42.♚c2 ♚e1 43.f4+-) 42...♞e6 43.f4 ♞ee8 44.♞dd3+-]

42.♚c2+-

[Nepomniachtchi,I-Kryvoruchko,Y World chess team champ. 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 43



1.? +-

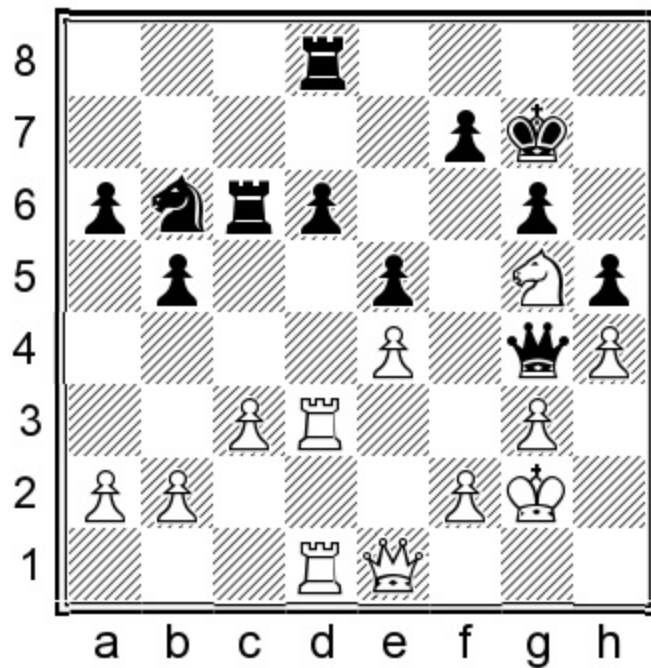
Show/Hide Solution

14. ♖de4! [14. ♖ce4!]

14. ♖de4! dxe4 15. ♖xe4 ♔h4 16. g3 ♔h3 17. ♖f2 ♔xf1+ 18. ♔xf1+-

[Aronian,L-Mamedyarov,S Khanty-Mansiysk 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 44



1.? +-

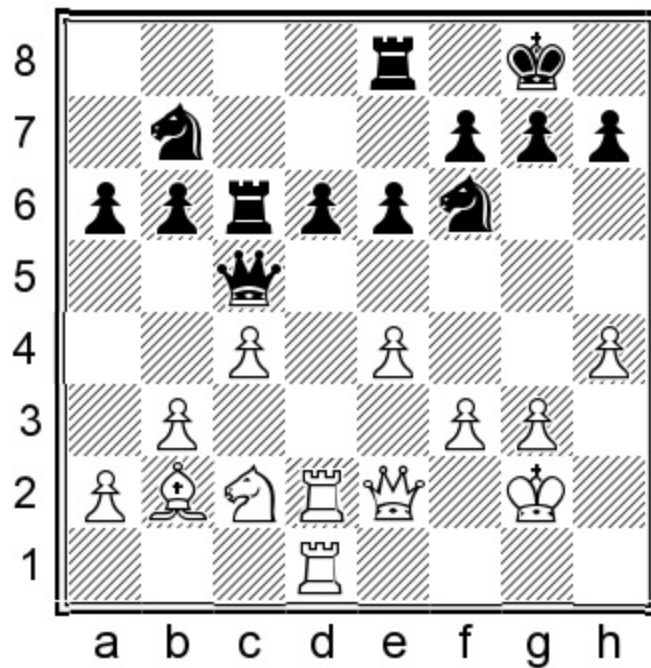
Show/Hide Solution

28.♖f3! f6 [28...♖d7 29.b3!+- (29.♖f5? ♖c4 30.f3 ♖xe4!⇝) 29...b4 30.♖f5+-]

29.♖f5!! fxg5 30.f3 ♕xf5 31.exf5+-

[Polgar,J-Yilmaz,M Erevan 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 45



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

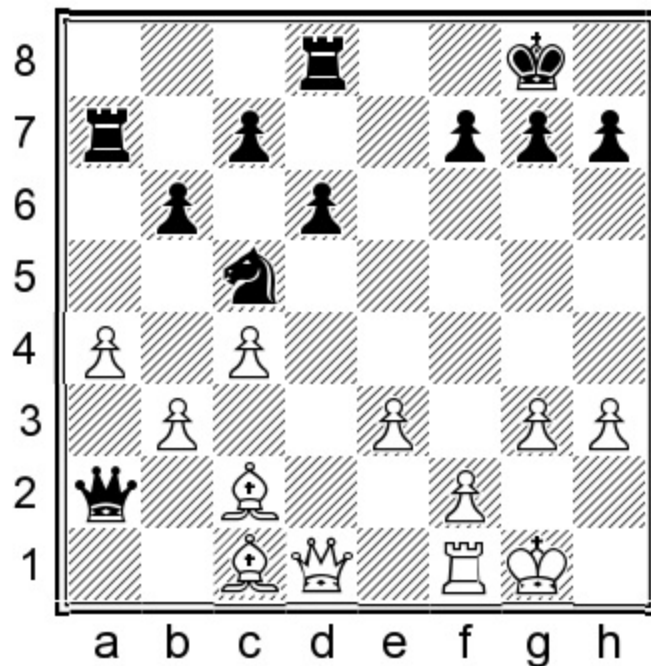
28.e5! dxe5 [28...♘d7 29.exd6+-]

29.♙a3 ♚a5 30.♙b4 ♚xa2 31.♘a1! [31.♘d4?! ♚xd2 32.♖xd2 exd4 33.♖xd4 e5↗]

31...♚xd2 32.♖xd2+-

[Reinderman,D-Ushenina,A Wijk aan Zee 2008, 1-0]

Exercise 46



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖d2! ♔f8 [21... ♟xb3 22. ♘xh7+ ♔xh7 23. ♚xa2+-]

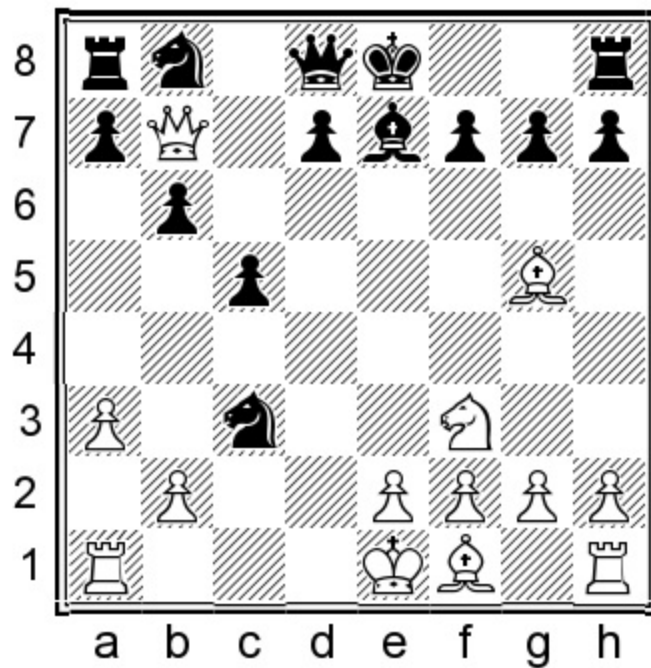
22. ♚c3! ♟xb3 [22... f6 23. ♘b2+-]

23. ♘b2 [23. ♘xb3 ♚e2 24. ♘d1 ♚a2 25. ♘b2 f6 26. ♘b3+-]

23... ♟a5 24. ♚xg7+ ♔e8 25. ♘f5+-

[Janssen,R-Guliyev,N Maarssen 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 47



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

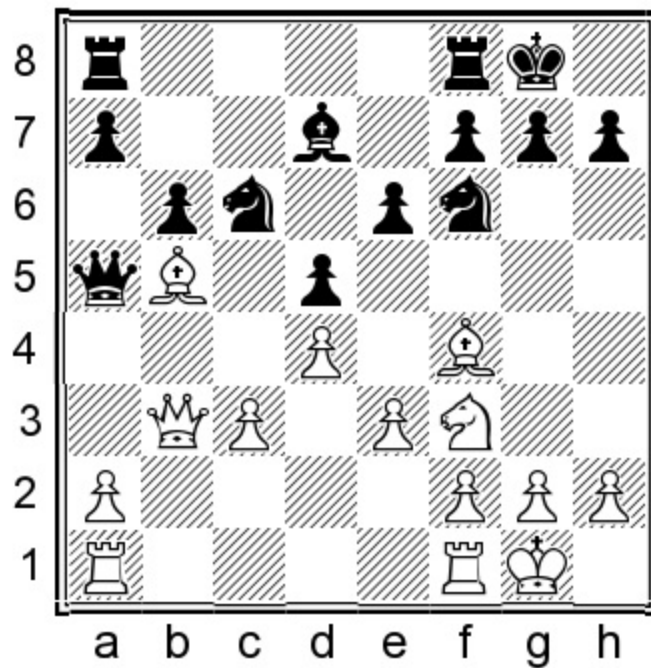
11...♖c6! 12.♗xe7

[12.bxc3 ♗xg5 13.♙a6 (13.♘xg5 ♜b8 14.♙a6 b5-+) 13...♗f6 14.♞c1 0-0-+]

12...♗xe7! 13.bxc3 ♜b8 14.♙a6 b5! 15.a4 ♜b6 16.axb5 ♜xa6 17.♞xa6 ♖b8-+

[Petrosian,A-Zaichik,G USSR 1982, 0-1]

Exercise 48



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

13.♙d6! ♜fc8 14.a4! [14.c4? ♘e4!± (14...♘b8? 15.♞fc1 ♘e4 16.♙b4)]

14...a6 [14...♘e4 15.♙b4 ♘xb4 16.cxb4+-]

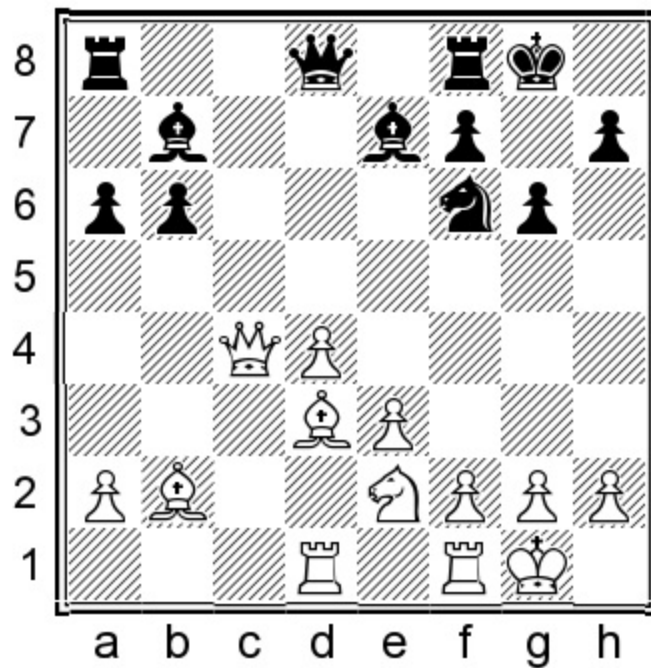
15.♙xc6!

[15.♙b4 axb5 16.♙xa5 ♘xa5 17.♞b4 bxa4 18.♘d2±; 15.♙d3! b5 16.axb5 ♞b6 17.♞a3 axb5 18.♞xa8 ♞xa8 19.♞xa8+ ♘e8 20.♞fa1+-]

15...♙xc6 16.♙b4+-

[Zlotnik,B-Romanishin,O Perm 1971, 1-0]

Exercise 49



1...? -+

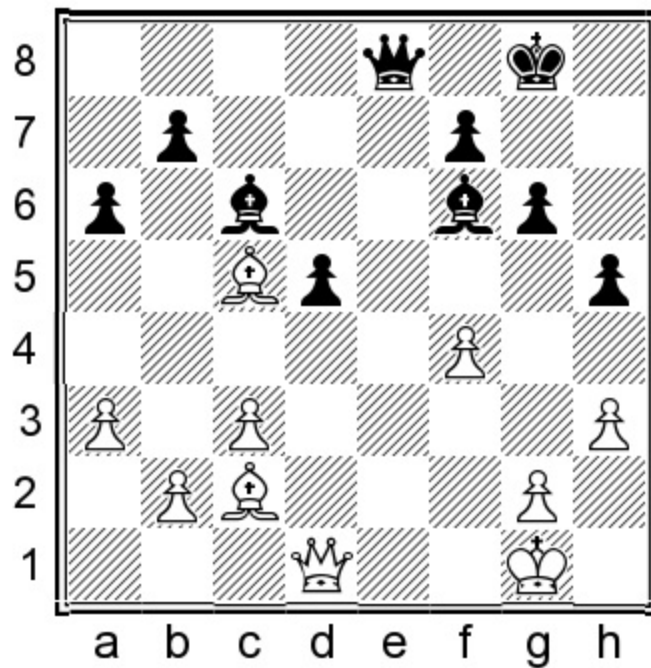
Show/Hide Solution

19...♖c8! 20.♙b3 [20.♙a4 b5 21.♙b3 ♔d5-+]

20...♔d5 21.♙a4 b5 22.♙xa6 ♖a8 23.♙xb5 ♖a5-+

[Kozma,E-Kortschnoj,V Luhacovice 1969, 0-1]

Exercise 50



1...?♣

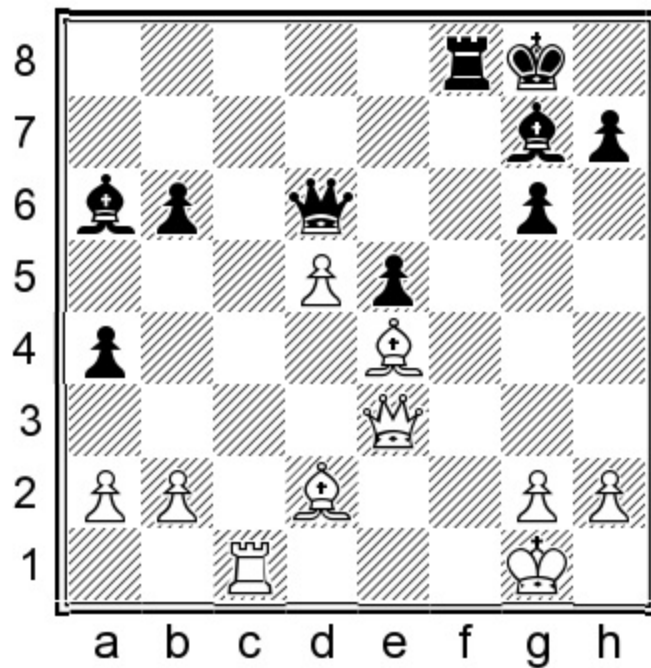
Show/Hide Solution

35...d4! 36.♖d2! [36.♗xd4?! ♗xd4+ 37.cxd4 (37.♖xd4? ♖e1+ 38.♔h2 ♖e2–+) 37...♖e3+ 38.♔h2 ♖xf4+ 39.♔h1 ♖g5 40.♖f1 ♗d5–+; 36.cxd4? ♖e3+ 37.♔h2 ♗d5–+]

36...dxc3 37.bxc3 ♖e6♣

[Giri,A-Kovalev,V Dortmund 2018, 0–1]

Exercise 51



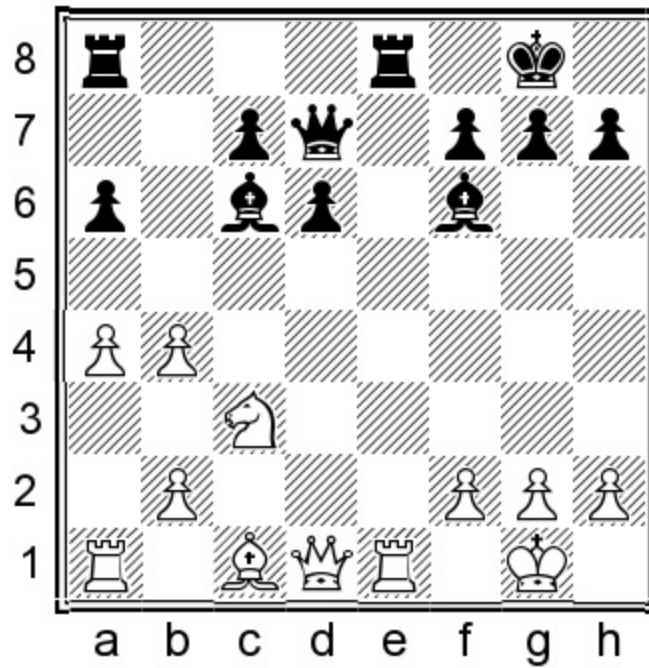
1...?±

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔h6! 2.♚xh6? [2.♚e1! ♜f1+ 3.♚xf1 ♔xf1 4.♔xh6 ♔a6±]

2...♚c5+ 3.♚e3 ♚xc1+! 4.♔xc1 ♜f1# [Training position, 0-1]

Exercise 52



1...? -+

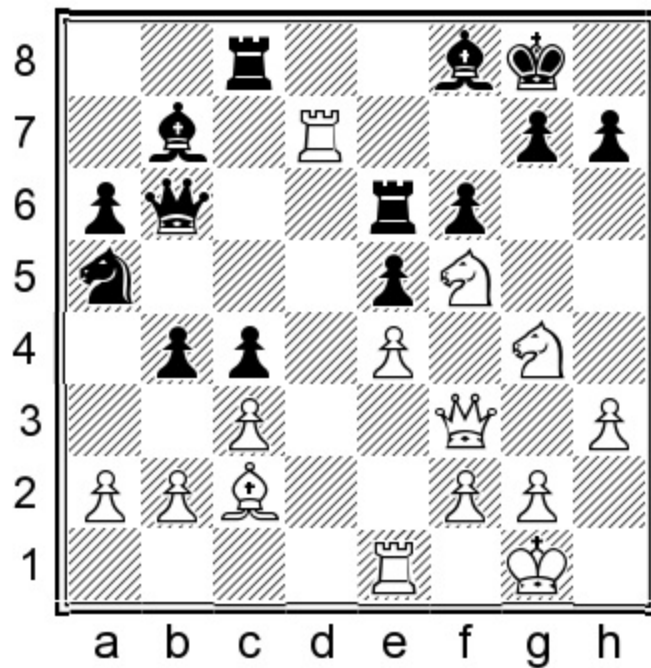
Show/Hide Solution

20...♔g4! 21.♖xe8+ ♖xe8 22.f3 ♘xf3! [22...♙d4+! 23.♕h1 ♘xf3 24.gxf3 ♖e1+ 25.♗xe1 ♗xf3#]

23.♗xf3 ♖e1+ 24.♔f2 ♘h4+ 25.g3 ♖f1+-+

[Vedder,R-Jens,J Dutch League 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 53



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖gh6+! gxh6

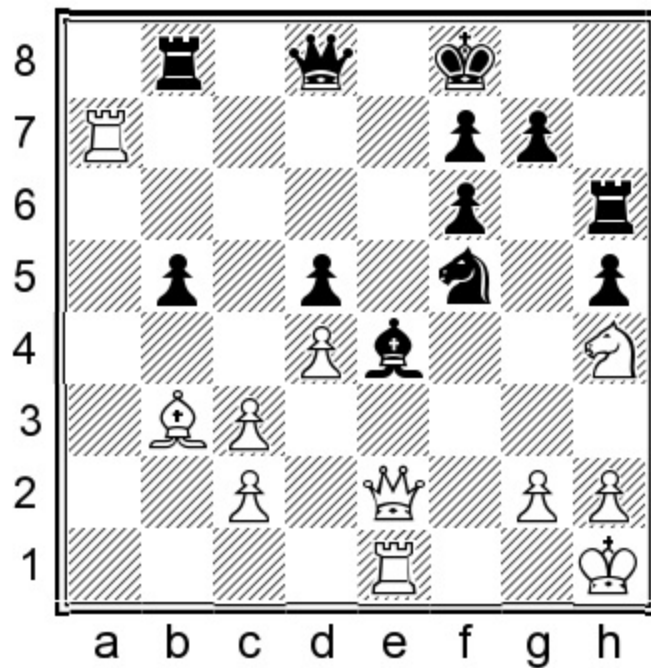
[1... ♔h8 2. ♜f7+ ♕g8 3. ♞5h6+ gxh6 4. ♚g4+ ♜g7 5. ♞xh6+-]

2. ♚g4+ [2. ♞xh6+ ♜xh6 3. ♚f5+-]

2... ♔h8 3. ♜g7+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 54



1.? +-

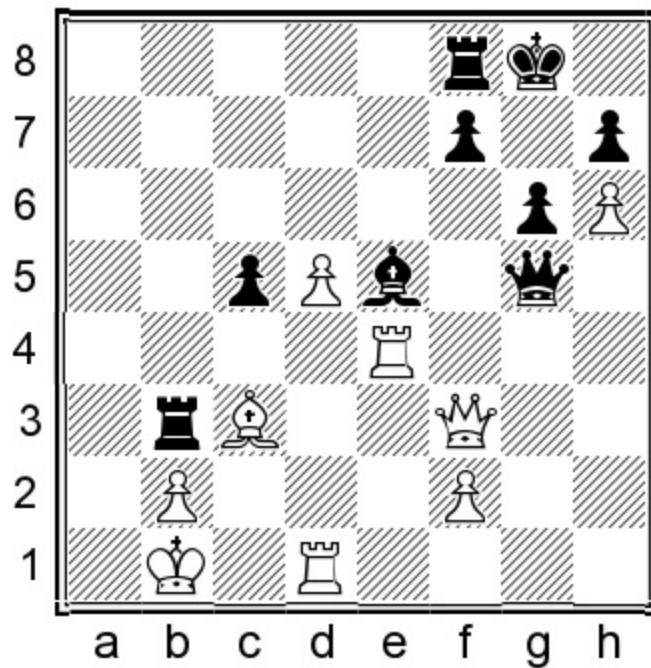
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xe4!! dxe4 2. ♖xf7+ ♔e8 [2... ♕g8 3. ♖d7+ ♔h7 4. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 5. ♗xf5+-]

3. ♖xe4+ ♗e7 4. ♗f5+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 55



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

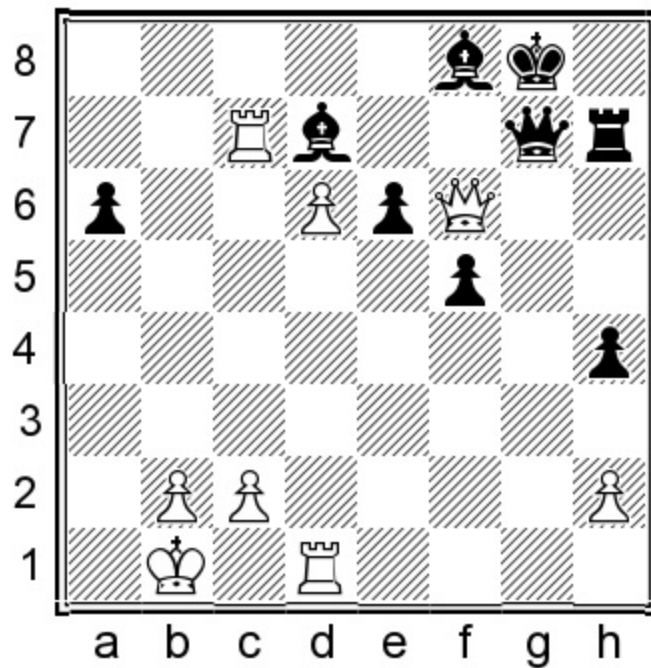
34.♖xe5! ♜xe5 35.♙xe5!

[35.d6? ♜xc3! (35...f6! 36.d7 ♜xc3 37.♜xc3 ♜xc3! 38.bxc3 ♜d8 39.♙b2 ♙f7 40.♙b3 ♙e6 41.♙c4 ♜xd7 42.♜xd7 ♙xd7 43.♙xc5 g5=) 36.♜xc3 ♜e4+ 37.♜d3 ♜e6]

35...♜xf3 36.♙c7 ♜xf2 37.d6+-

[Eljanov,P-Nepomniachtchi,I Geneve 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 56



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖d8! f4 31. ♜xd7! ♜xd7 [31... ♛g4 32. ♜c1+-]

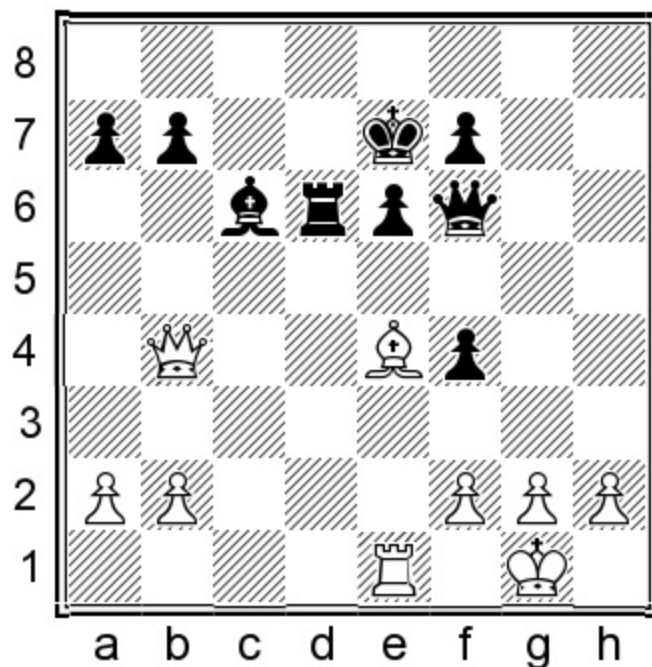
32. ♜g1+ ♜g7 [32... ♔h8 33. ♛xf8#]

33. ♛xd7+-

[Sutovsky,E-Najer,E Poikovsky 2017, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 57



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

26...a5! 27.♔xa5 [27.♕a3 ♖e5 28.f3 f5-+]

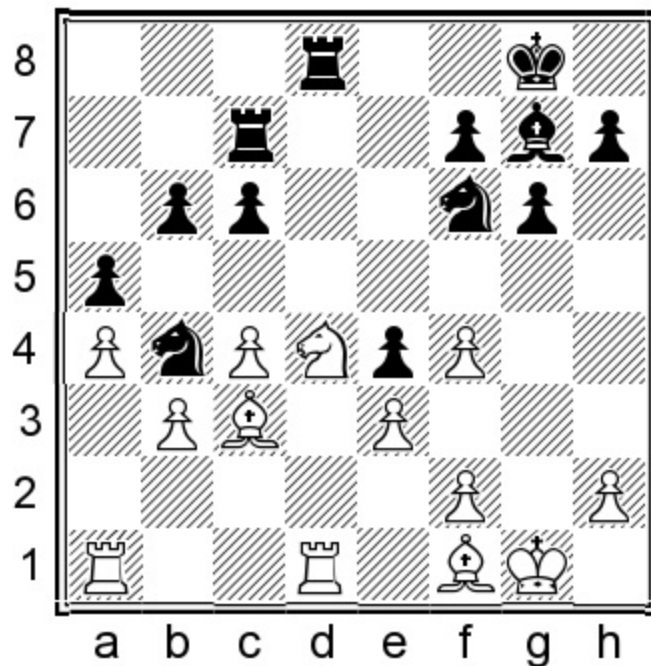
27...♙xe4 28.♞xe4 [28.♕c7+ ♞d7 29.♕c5+ ♔e8 30.♕c8+ ♕d8-+]

28...♗f5! 29.♕c7+ [29.♗b4 ♗xe4 30.♗xe4 ♞d1+ 31.♗e1 ♞xe1#]

29...♞d7-+

[Kovalev,A-Gajek,R Legnica 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 58



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

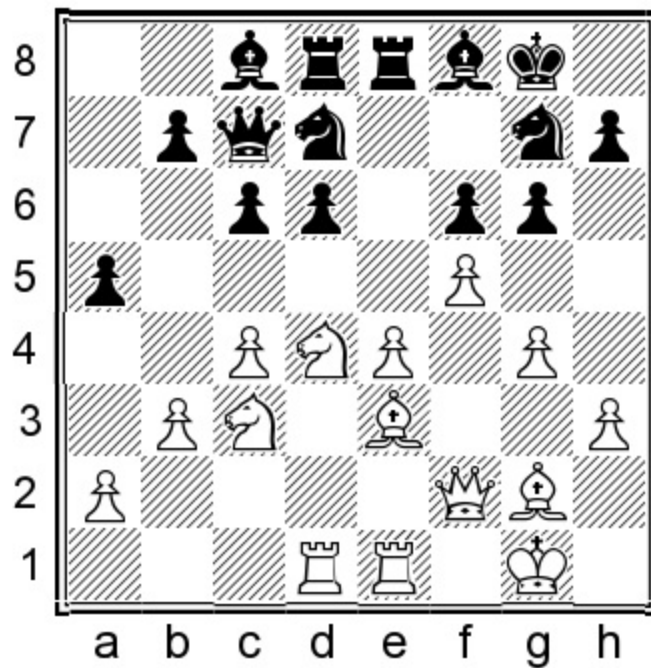
28. ♖f5! [28. ♗h3 ♜a8 (28... ♘d7⇒) 29. ♗xb4 axb4 30. ♞a2 ♗f8=]

28. ♖f5! ♜xd1 [28... ♞cd7 29. ♞xd7 ♞xd7 30. ♘xg7 ♔xg7 31. ♗g2 ♞e7 32. ♞d1 ♘d3 33. ♗h3 h5 34. f3+-]

29. ♞xd1 gxf5 30. ♞d8+ ♗f8 31. ♗xf6+-

[Schreiner,P-Maiwald,J Berlin 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 59



1.? +-

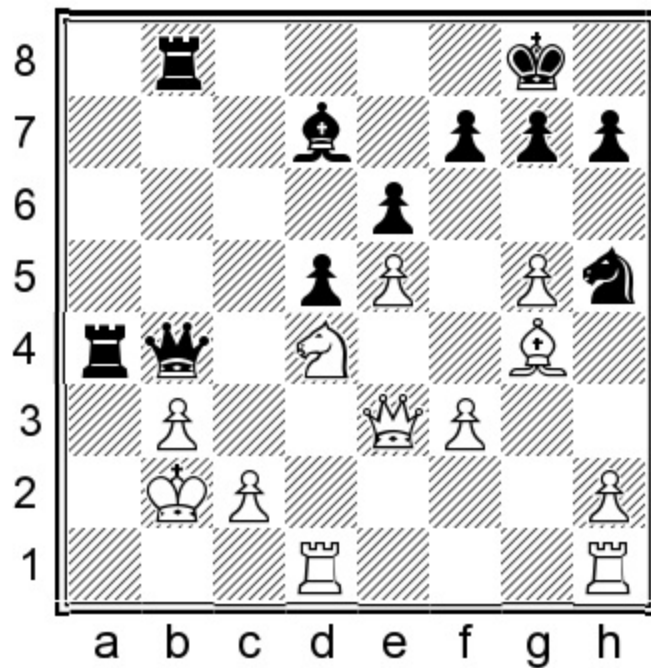
Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖db5! cxb5 23. ♘xb5 ♕c6 [23... ♖b8 24. ♗a7 ♖a8 25. ♘c7+-]

24. e5! ♘xe5 25. ♗xc6 bxc6 26. ♘d4+-

[Kortschnoj, V-Piket, J Tilburg 1992, 1-0]

Exercise 60



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

28... ♖f4!! [28... ♜c8 29. ♜a1! ♚xd4+ 30. ♚xd4 ♜xd4 31. ♙xh5⇌;

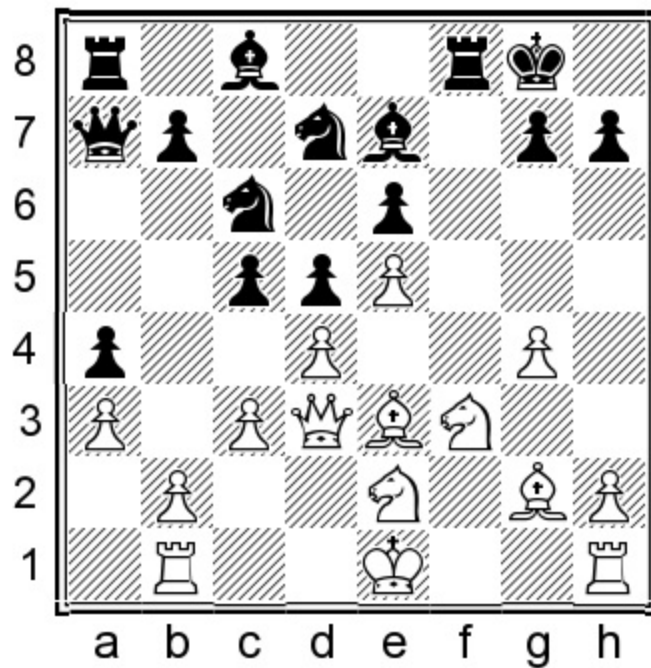
28... ♚a3+ 29. ♔c3 ♚c5+ 30. ♔b2 ♖f4!!]

28... ♖f4!! 29. ♚xf4 ♜c8! 30. ♜a1 [30. ♔c1 ♜a1+ 31. ♔b2 ♚a3#]

30... ♚c3+-+

[Espinosa Veloz,E-Quesada Perez,Y Culan 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 61



1...? -+

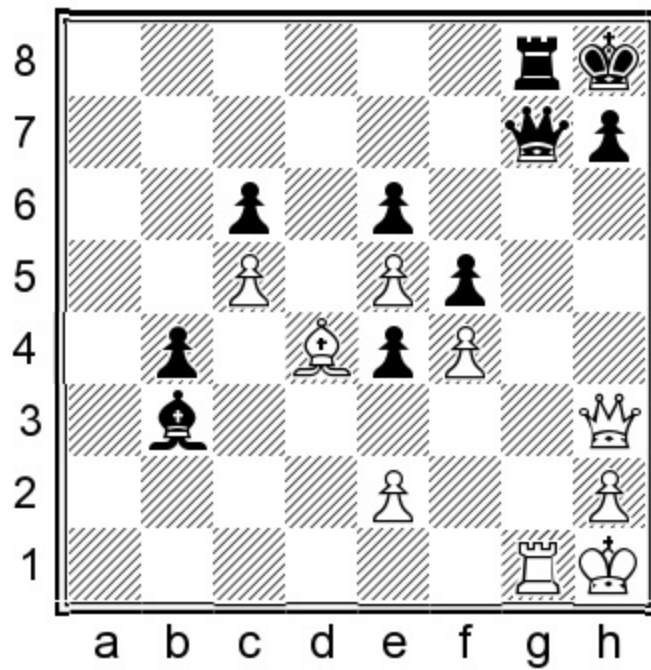
Show/Hide Solution

15...♖xf3! 16.♗xf3 ♜dxe5 17.dxe5 ♜xe5 18.♚c2 ♜xf3+ 19.♔f2 ♜e5-+

[Halvax,G-Sebenik,M Jenbach 2017, 0-1]

[19...♜h4-+]

Exercise 62



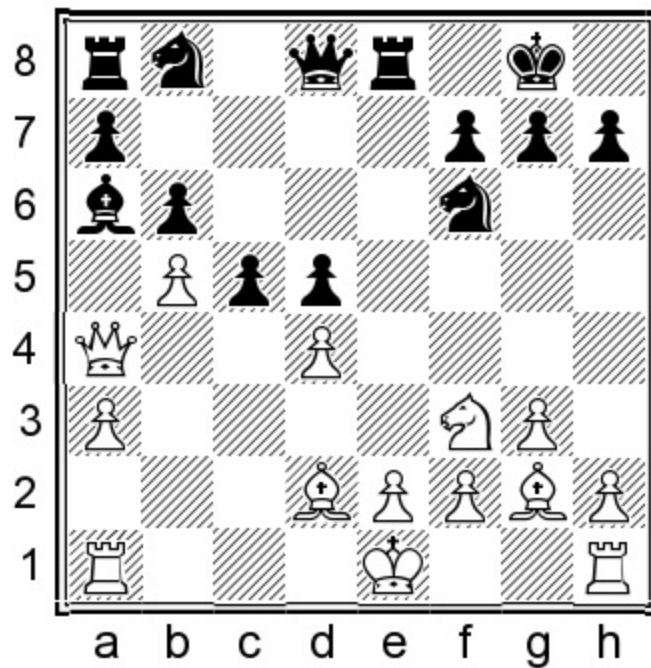
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

35...♔xg1+!! 36.♙xg1 e3!!-+

[Frayna,J-Hoang,T Baku 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 63



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

12...♖xe2+! 13.♔f1

[13.♔xe2 ♚e8+! 14.♔d1 (14.♔f1 ♘xb5+) 14...♘xb5 15.♚c2 ♘a4-+]

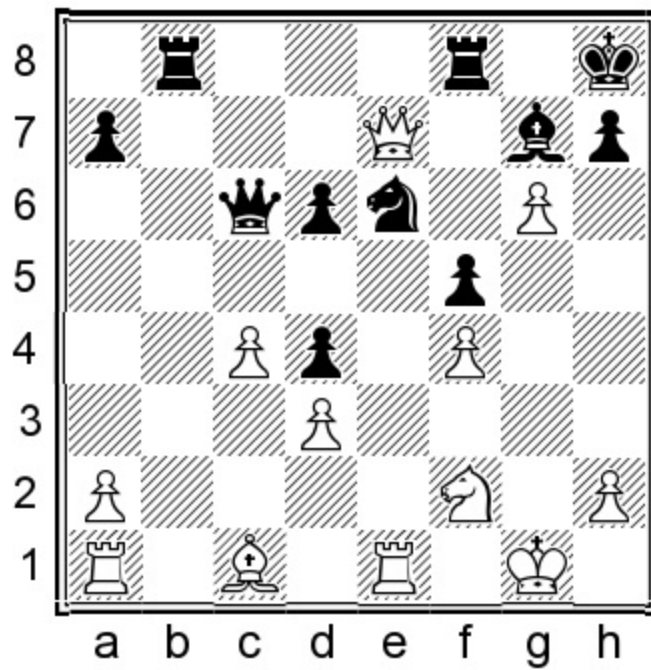
13...♚e8! 14.♖b1 ♘e4! 15.♙e1 [15.♔xe2 ♘c3+-+]

15...♖xe1+! 16.♘xe1 [16.♖xe1 ♘xb5+]

16...♘d2+ 17.♔g1 ♘xb1-+

[Raykhman,A-Heinemann,T Germany 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 64



1...? -+

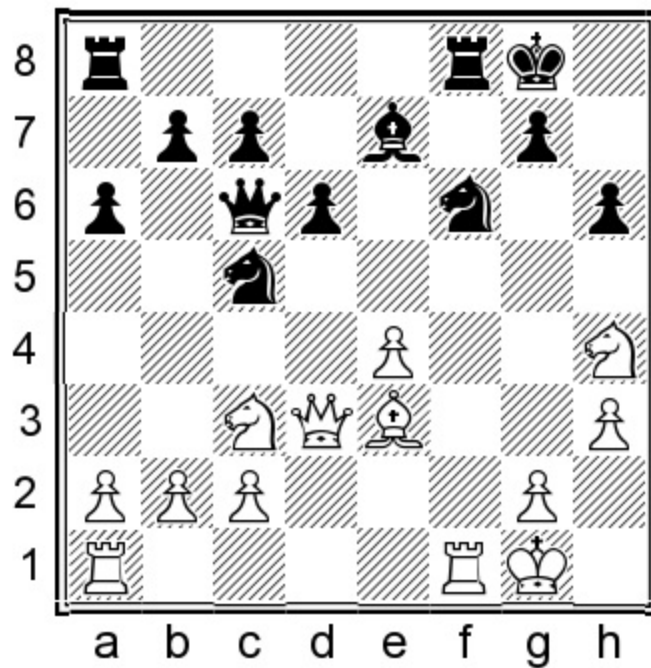
Show/Hide Solution

23...♖be8! 24.♚h4 ♘g5! 25.♗xe8 [25.fxg5 ♗xe1#]

25...♘f3+ 26.♔f1 ♘xh4-+

[Teran Alvarez,I-Salem,A Caleta 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 65



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖g6! ♜f7 [20... ♚e8 21. ♚c4+-]

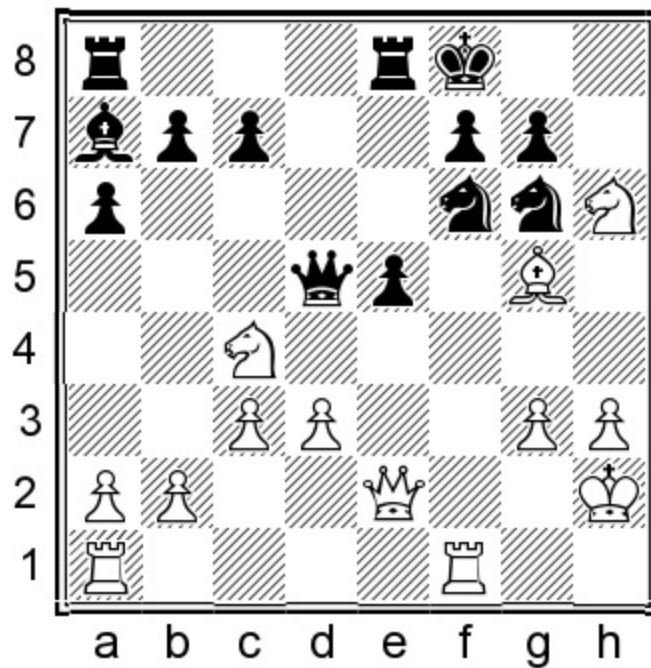
21. ♚c4 ♜e8 [21... ♗f8 22. ♖h8+-]

22. ♖h8!+-

[Perunovic,M-Radjabov,T Tromso 2014, 1-0]

[22.e5 dxe5? (22...b5!) 23. ♖xe7+ ♜exe7 24. ♚xc5+-]

Exercise 66



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

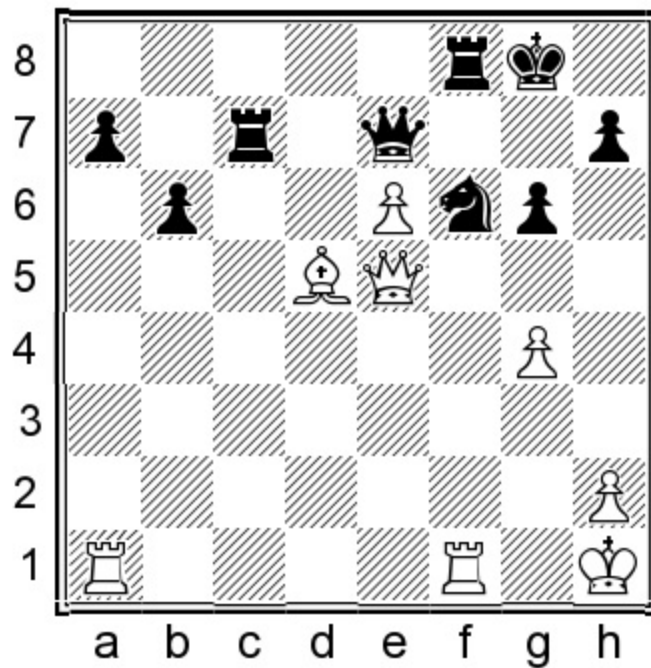
21...e4! 22..♙xf6 exd3! 23.♚f3 [23..♙xg7+ ♔xg7 24.♖xf7+ ♚xf7-+]

23...♚xf3 [23...♖e2+ 24.♔h1 ♚xc4-+]

24.♖xf3 ♖e2+ 25.♔h1 gxf6-+

[Topalov,V-Aronian,L Flor & Fjaere 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 67



1.? +-

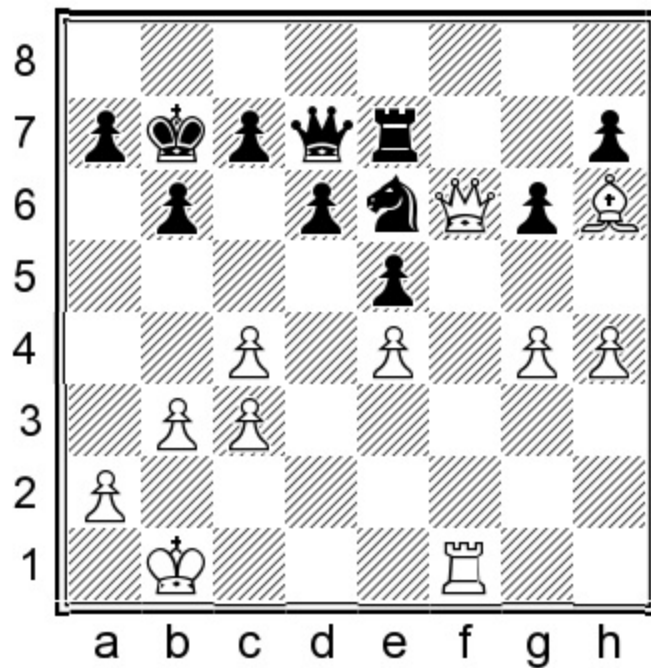
Show/Hide Solution

36.♖xf6! [36.♔xc7! ♔xc7 37.e7+ ♘xd5 38.exf8=♔#]

36.♖xf6! ♖xf6 37.♔xf6! ♔xf6 38.e7+ ♔g7 39.e8=♘+!+-

[Riff,V-Schachinger,M Rhodes 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 68



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

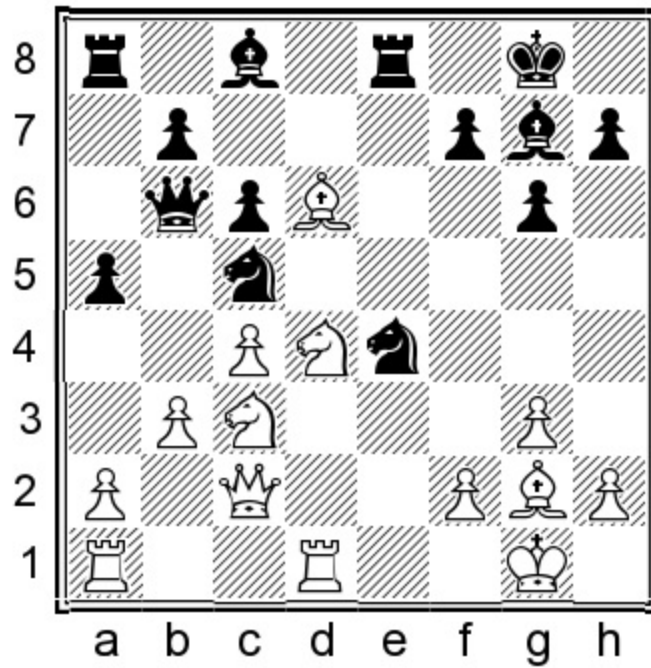
37...♖f4! [37...♘d8 38.♙h8 (38.♙f8! ♘f7 39.♙e3=) 38...♘f7 39.♙xh7 ♘xh6 40.♙xh6 ♙xg4+]

37...♖f4! 38.♙xf4 ♙f7 39.♙g5 [39.♙h8 ♙xg4-+]

39...♙c6!-+

[Pourkashiyan,A-Kosteniuk,A Nalchik 2008, 0-1]

Exercise 69



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

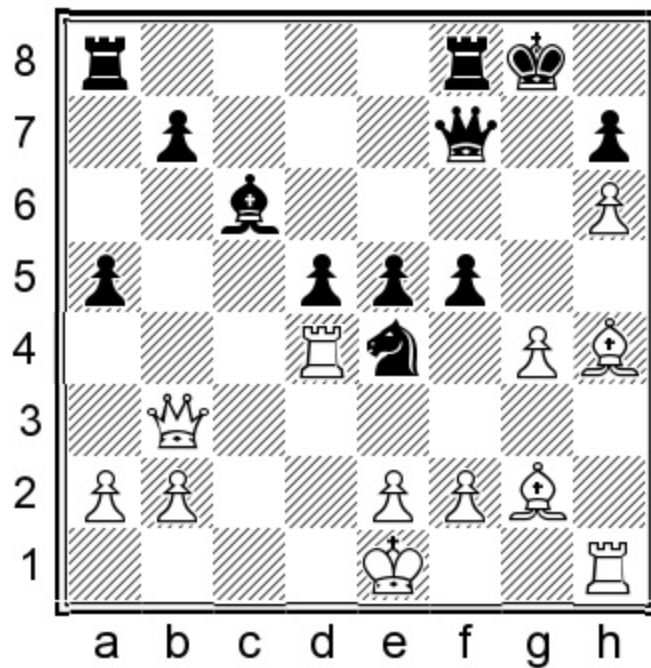
15.♙xe4! [15.♘xe4? ♘xe4 16.c5 ♚b4 17.♙xe4 ♙xd4 18.♞ac1 (18.a3 ♚c3≠) 18...♙xf2+ 19.♚xf2 ♞xe4≠]

15.♙xe4! ♘xe4 **16.♘xe4 ♙xd4** **17.c5!** ♚b4 **18.a3!** ♙xf2+ **19.♘xf2+-**

[Lanchava, T-Haast, A Hilversum 2008, 0-1]

[19.♚xf2 ♚xe4 20.♞e1+-]

Exercise 70



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

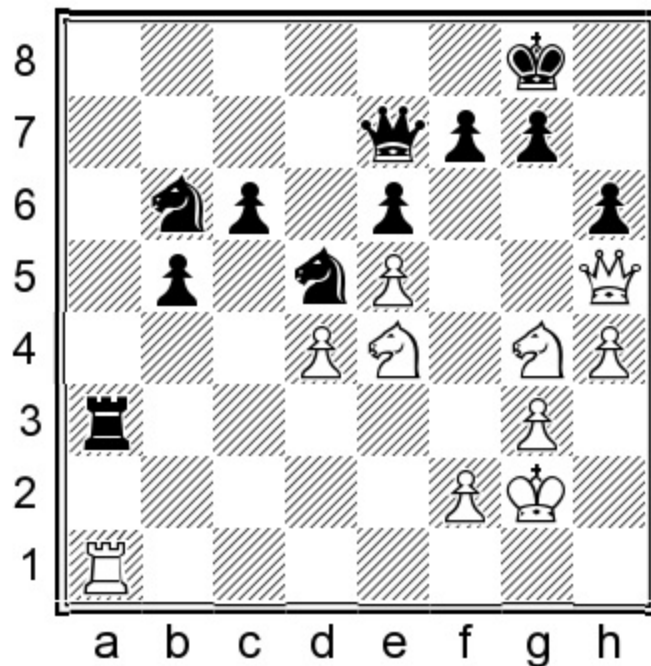
23.gxf5! exd4 [23...♖xf5 24.♗xe4+-]

24.♗xe4 ♜ae8 [24...dxe4 25.♖g3+ ♔h8 26.♖e5+ ♔g8 27.♜g1+-; 24...♖c7 25.♗g3 ♖d7 26.♗e5+-]

25.♖g3+ ♔h8 26.♗d3+-

[Stefanova,A-Gurevich,M Gibraltar 2008, 1-0]

Exercise 71



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

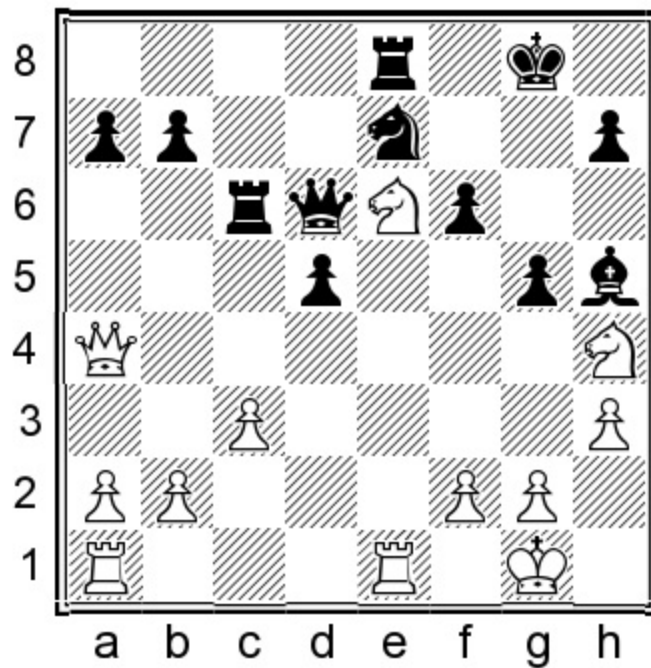
38. ♖xh6+!

[38. ♖ef6+! ♜xf6 (38... ♔f8 39. ♖xh6 gxf6 40. ♖f5!+-) 39. exf6 gxf6 40. ♖xa3 ♜xa3 41. ♖xf6+ ♔g7 42. ♜e5+-]

38. ♖xh6+! gxf6 39. ♖f6+ ♜xf6 40. exf6 ♖xg3+ 41. fxg3 ♜xf6 42. ♜g4+ ♔h8 43. ♖a6+-

[Caruana,F-Dominguez Perez,L Saint Louis 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 72



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖g7! ♔xg7 22. ♖xe7+! ♔h8 [22... ♖xe7 23. ♖f5++-]

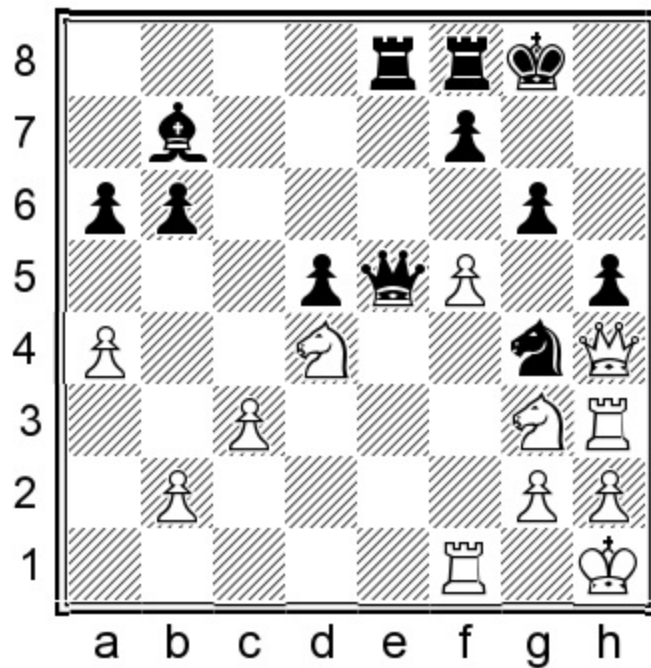
23. ♖f5 ♚b8 24. ♖ae1+- ♖xe7 25. ♖xe7 [25. ♖xe7+-]

25... ♖a6 26. ♚b5 [26. ♚d7+-]

26... ♖b6 27. ♚xd5+-

[Kupreichik, V-Gulko, B Frunze 1981, 1-0]

Exercise 73



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

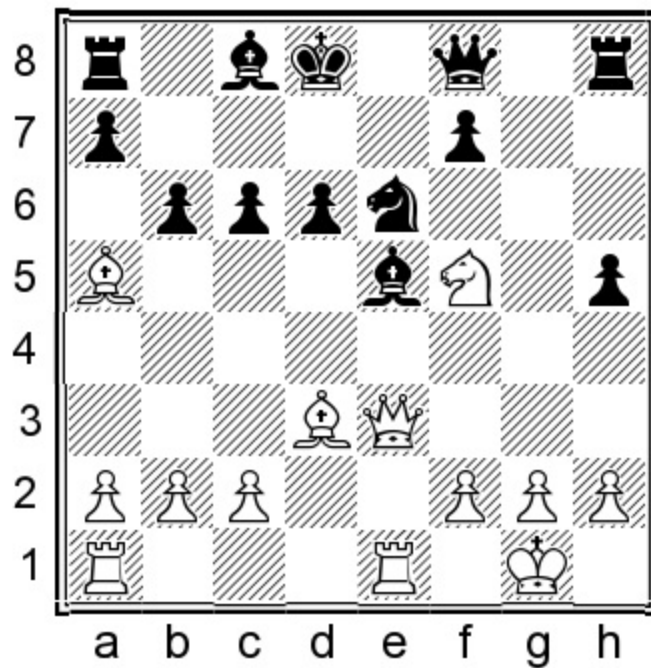
28. ♖xh5! gxh5 29. ♖g3! [29. ♗xh5?? ♘f2+-+]

29... ♗h8 30. ♗g5+ ♔h7 [30... ♗g7 31. ♗xh5 ♖e4 32. h3+-]

31. ♗xh5+ ♘h6 32. ♖g6+-

[Sokolov,A-Novikov,I Sochi 1980, 1-0]

Exercise 74



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

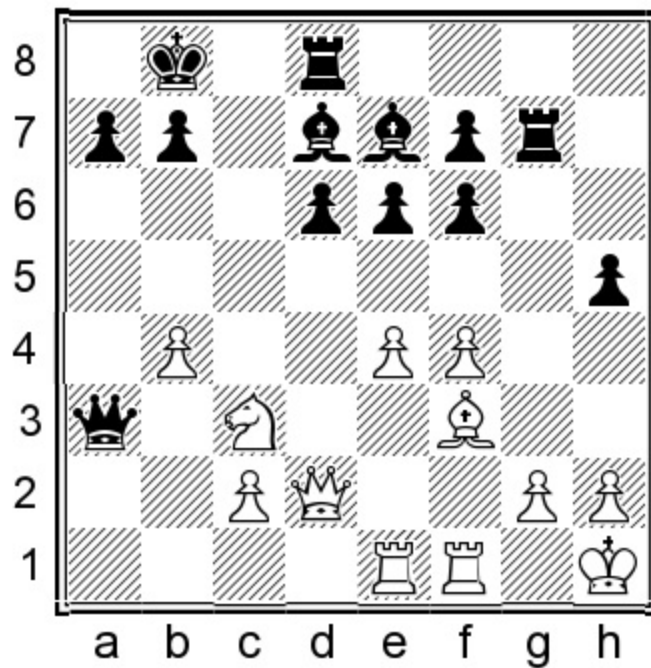
21. ♖xb6+! axb6 22. ♜xb6+ ♔d7 [22... ♗c7 23. ♞xe5 dxe5 24. ♞d1+-]

23. ♞xe5! dxe5 24. ♖e4 ♜c5 25. ♞d1+ ♔e8 26. ♜xc6+ [26. ♞d8+ ♗xd8 27. ♜xc5+-]

26... ♜xc6 27. ♖xc6+ ♖d7 28. ♖xa8+-

[Mikhalchishin,A-Legky,N Soviet Union 1978, 1-0]

Exercise 75



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

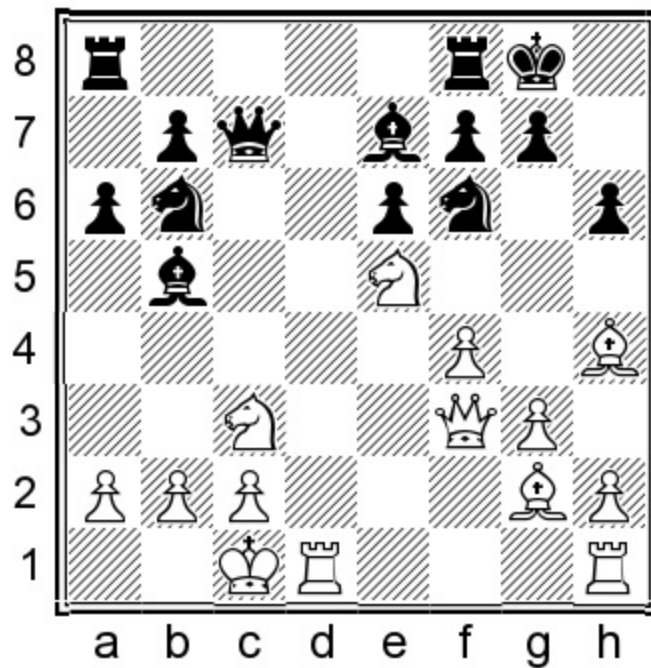
19.♘d5!! ♚a6 [19...exd5 20.♞a1 ♚b2 21.♞fb1+-]

20.♞a1! [20.♘xe7 ♞e8 21.e5 fxe5 22.fxe5 ♞xe7 23.exd6 ♞e8 24.♚c3+-]

20...♙a4 21.♘xe7+- [Mednis,E-Commons,K Los Angeles 1974, 1-0]

[21.b5!? ♚xb5 22.♘c3+-]

Exercise 76



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

16...g5! 17.fxg5 hxg5 18.♖he1 ♜h7! [18...♘e8? 19.♞d4 gxh4 20.♞g4+ ♜g7 21.gxh4+-]

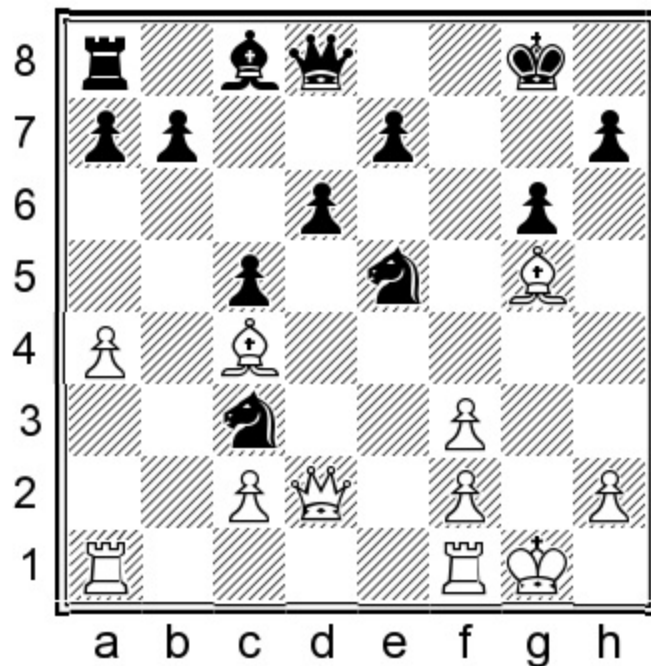
19.♞h5 [19.♞d4 ♞ad8+-]

19...♙e8! [19...gxh4+-]

20.♞h6 gxh4 21.gxh4 ♜h8+-

[Kavalek,L-Ljubojevic,L Las Palmas 1974, 0-1]

Exercise 77



1...? -+

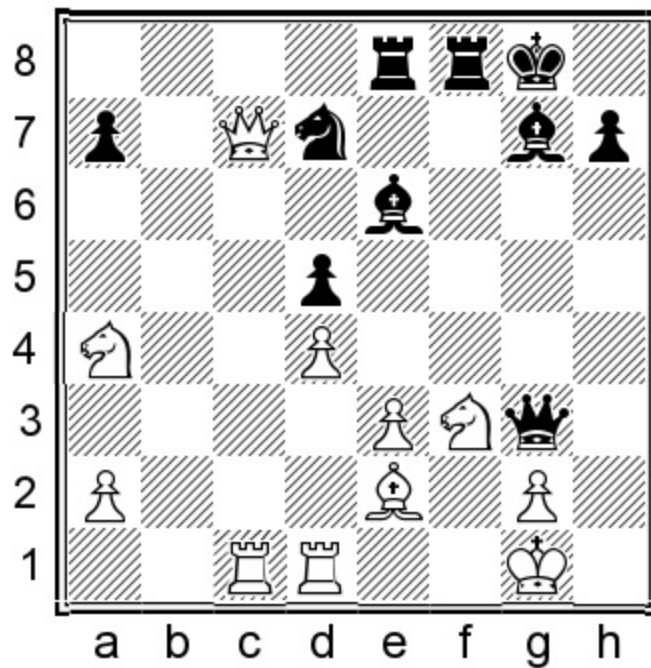
Show/Hide Solution

17...e6! 18.♖xc3 [18.♗xd8 ♜xf3+ 19.♔g2 ♜xd2 20.♗a5 ♜xc4 21.♗xc3-+]

18...♗xg5+-+ 19.♔h1 b6! 20.♞fd1 ♗f4! 21.♞xd6 ♜xf3 22.♞d8+ ♔f7 23.♔g2 ♗g5+ 24.♔h3
[24.♔xf3 ♗b7+]

24...♗h4+ 25.♔g2 ♜d4!-+ [Larsen,B-Browne,W USA 1972, 0-1]

Exercise 78



1...? -+

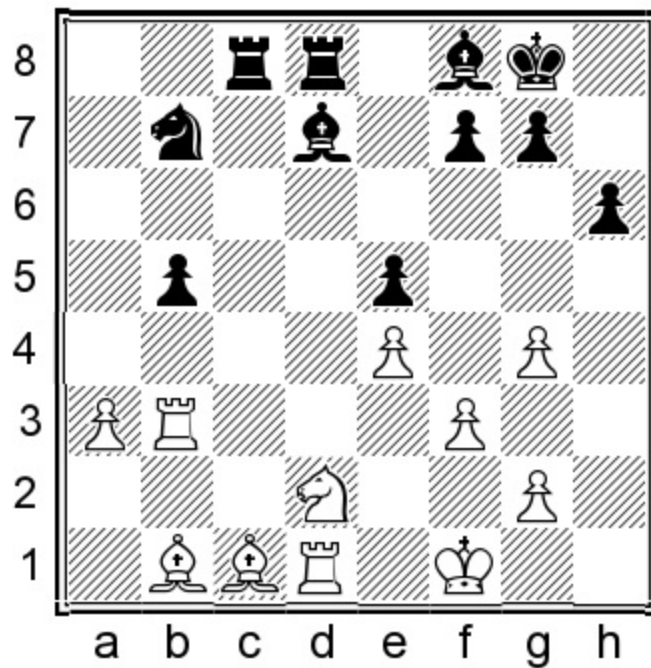
Show/Hide Solution

25...♖e5! 26.dxe5 [26.♗xe5 ♕h3 27.♕f3 ♜xf3-+]

26...♕h3 27.♕f1 ♜xf3-+

[Poch,C-Planinec,A Mar del Plata 1971, 0-1]

Exercise 79



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

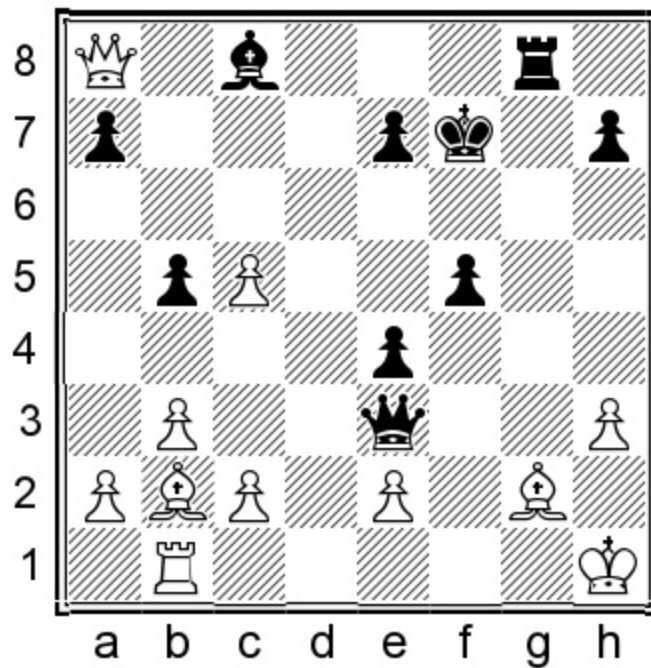
28...b4! 29.♖b2 [29.axb4 ♕a4-+]

29...♕a4 30.♖e1 ♖c7 [30...♕c5-+; 30...♖c3-+]

31.♕a2 [31.axb4 ♖dc8 32.♖a2 ♕b5+]

31...bxa3-+ [Shankland,S-Ding Liren Wijk aan Zee 2019, 0-1]

Exercise 80



1...? -+

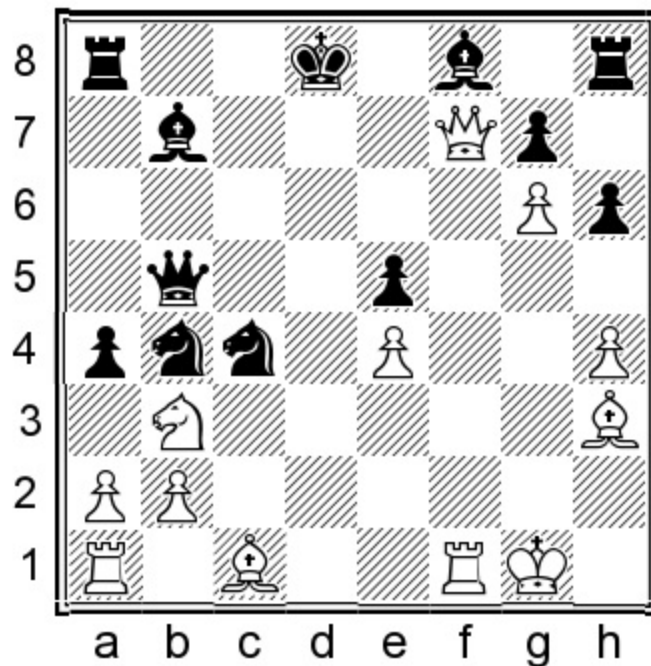
Show/Hide Solution

28...♙e6!! [28...♖xg2?? 29.♗xg2 ♜xe2+ 30.♗h1 ♜f3+ 31.♗h2= f4 32.♜d5+ ♙e6 33.♜d2 ♜xh3+ 34.♗g1 e3 35.♜g2 f3=]

28...♙e6!! 29.♜b7 ♖xg2! 30.♗xg2 ♜xe2+ 31.♗h1 ♜f3+ 32.♗h2 f4-+

[Bareev,E-Paehtz,E Wijk aan Zee 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 81



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24.♙xh6! [24.♖d1+ ♜d5!+-]

24.♙xh6! gxh6 [24...♖xh6 25.♚xf8+ ♚e8 26.♚xb4+-]

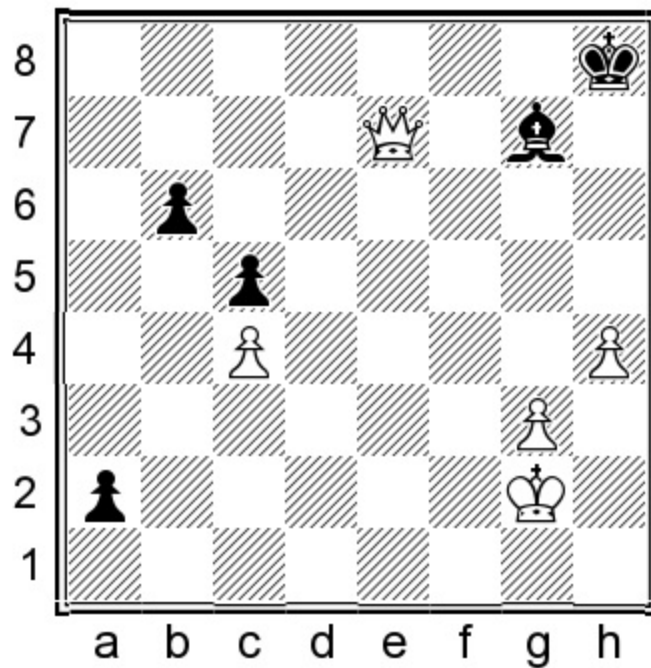
25.♖ad1+ [25.g7! ♙xg7 26.♚xg7 ♖e8 27.♖ad1+-; 25.♖ac1 axb3 26.♖xc4+-]

25...♜d5 [25...♙d6 26.g7 ♖e8 27.♜a5!!+-]

26.g7 ♙xg7 27.♚xg7+-

[Gunina,V-Sebag,M Saint Louis 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 82



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

45. ♖e8+ ♔h7 46. ♗e4+ ♔h6

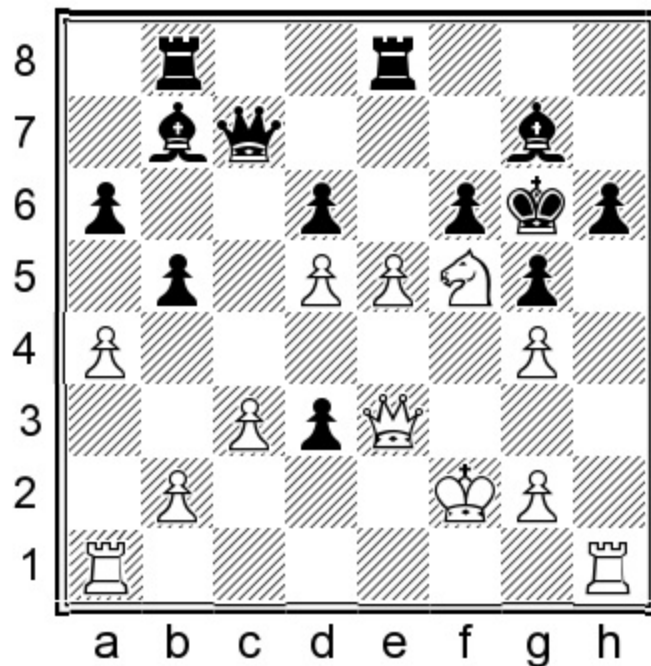
[46... ♔h8 47. ♗a8+-]

47. h5!! a1=♖ [47... ♔xh5 48. ♗e2+ ♔h6 49. ♗xa2+-]

48. ♗g6#

[Narciso Dublan, M-Felgaer, R Barcelona 2005, 1-0]

Exercise 83



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31.♖xh6+!! [31.♘xd6? fxe5 (31...♖xe5+-) 32.♚e4+ ♔f6+]]

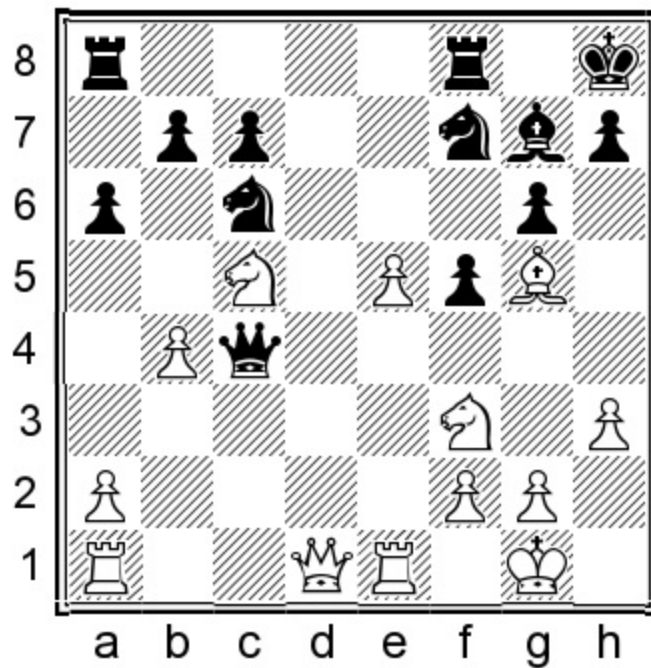
31.♖xh6+!! ♕xh6 32.♚h3 ♖h8

[32...♔h7 33.♚xh6+ ♔g8 34.♖h1+-]

33.♚h5+ ♔h7 34.♚xh6+ ♔g8 35.♚g6+ ♔f8 36.♚xf6+ ♔g8 37.♘e7+ ♚xe7 38.♚xe7+-

[Heinemann,J-Grgic,N Al Ain 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 84



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

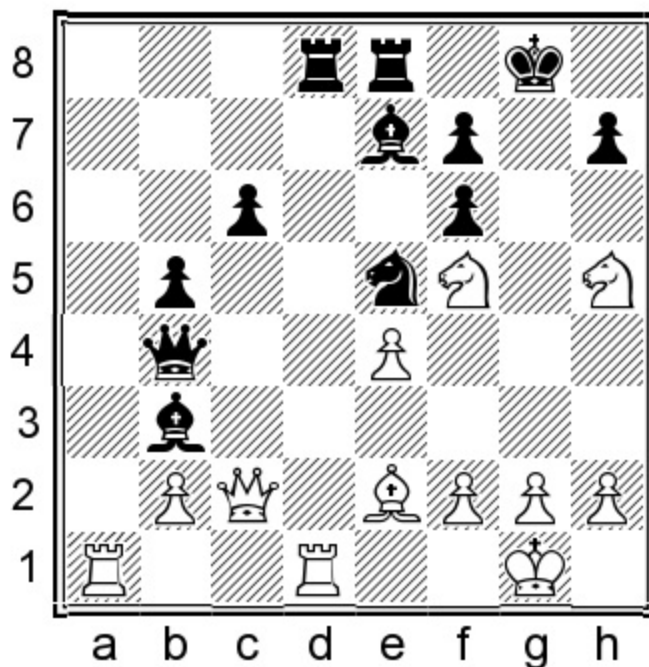
22.♖c1! ♕xb4

[22...♕xa2 23.♖e2 ♕a3 24.♖e3 ♕xb4 25.♖b3 ♕a5 26.♘xb7 ♕a4 27.♘c5 ♕a5 28.♙d2 ♕a2 (28...♖fd8 29.♘e6+-) 29.♖a1+-]

23.♙d2 ♕a3 24.♖e3 ♕xa2 25.♖c2 ♕d5 26.♖d3+-

[Sokolov,A-Smyslov,V Montpellier 1985, 1-0]

Exercise 85



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

26. ♖xd8! ♜xd8 [26... ♖xd8 27. ♘xe7+ ♔f8 (27... ♚xe7 28. ♚xb3+-) 28. ♘xc6+-; 26... ♜xc2 27. ♖xe8+ ♜f8 28. ♘xf6+ ♔h8 29. ♖xe5+-]

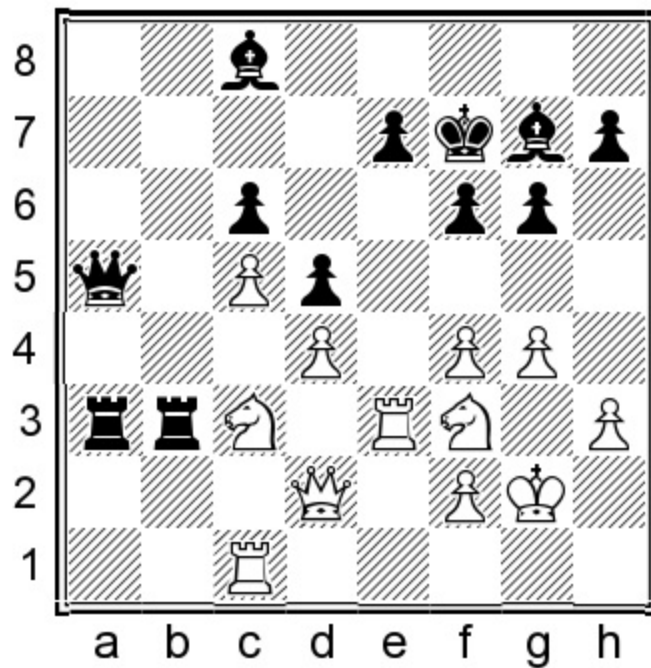
27. ♚c1!! ♜e6 28. ♘fg7!

[28. ♚h6?! ♚f8 29. ♘xf6+ ♜xf6 30. ♚xf6 ♜xf5 31. exf5±]

28... ♖f8 29. ♚h6+-

[Grigorian,S-Olsen,F Berlin 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 86



1.?±

Show/Hide Solution

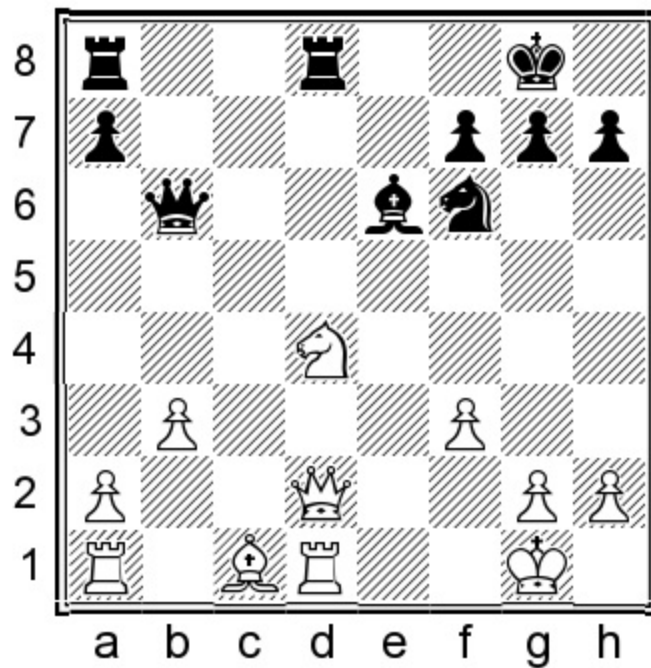
26. ♖xd5! ♜xe3

[26... ♛xd2 27. ♜xe7+ ♔f8 28. ♖xd2 cxd5 29. ♜ce1!+-; 26... cxd5 27. ♛xa5 ♜xa5 28. ♜xb3+-]

27. ♛xa5 ♜xa5 28. ♖xe3±

[Zhao Xue-Bok, B Wijk aan Zee 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 87



1...? -+

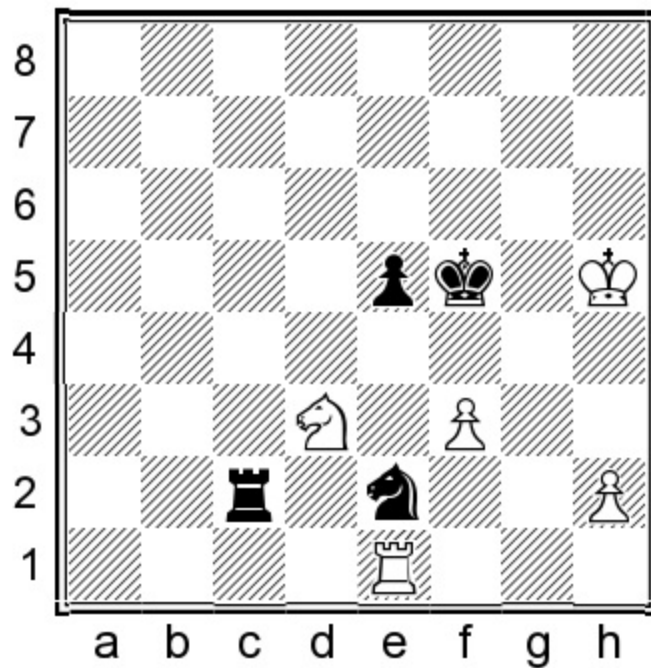
Show/Hide Solution

20...♖xd4! 21.♗xd4 ♜d8 22.♗xb6 [22.♘b2 ♜xd4 23.♘xd4 ♗a6-+]

22...♖xd1+ 23.♙f2 axb6-+

[Dimitrov, V-Spraggett, K Ubeda, 0-1]

Exercise 88



1...? -+

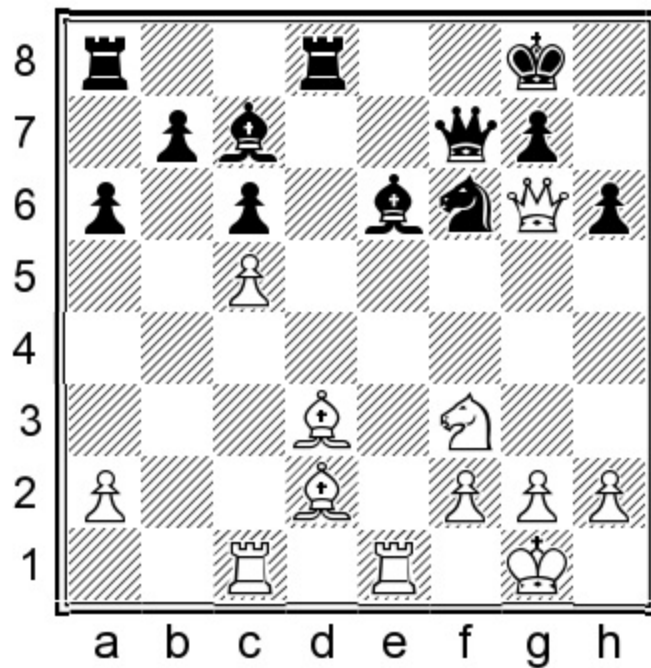
Show/Hide Solution

47... ♖f4+! 48. ♗xf4 [48. ♖h6 ♜xh2+ 49. ♖g7 ♗xd3+-; 48. ♖h4 ♜xh2+ 49. ♖g3 ♜h3+ 50. ♖f2 ♗xd3+-+]

48... ♜xh2+ 49. ♗h3 ♜xh3#

[Lopukhin,A-Smirnov,P Dvorkovich memorial 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 89



1.?±

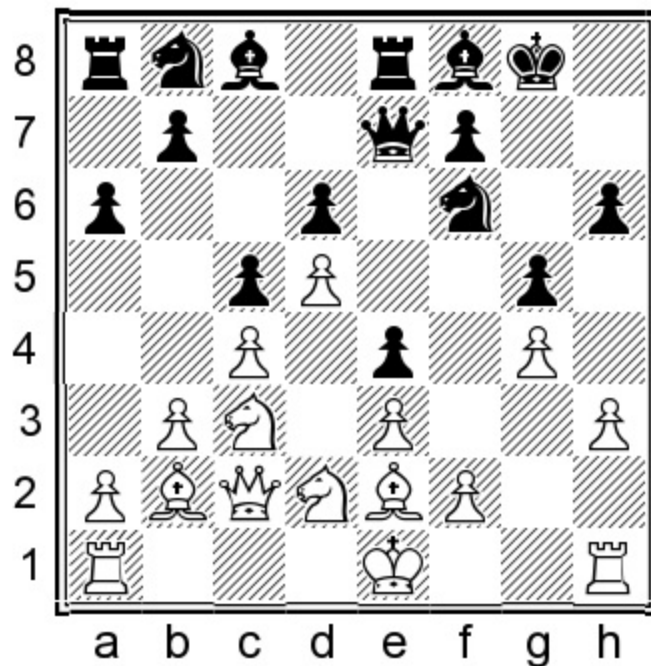
Show/Hide Solution

26.♖xe6! [26.♙xh6?! ♙xa2±]

26.♖xe6! ♚xe6 27.♙c4 ♜d5 28.♙xh6 ♚f7 29.♚xf7+ ♔xf7 30.♙e3±

[Wojtaszek,R-Fridman,D Dortmund 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 90



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

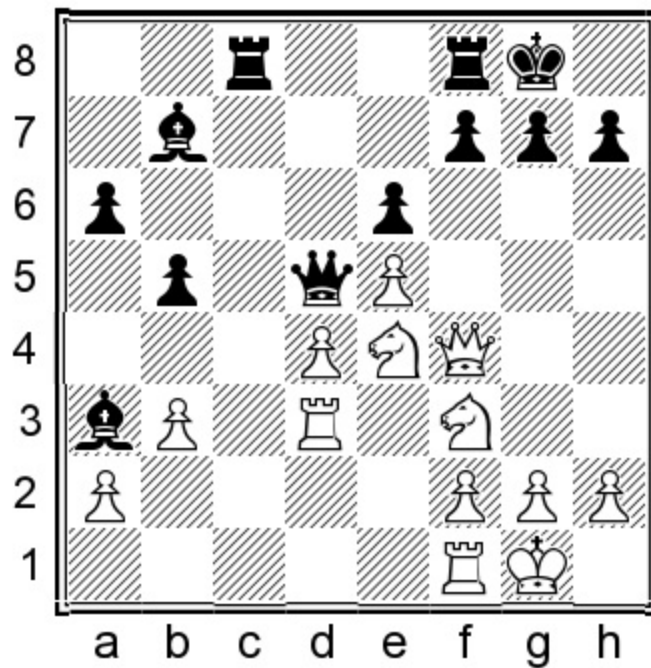
1. ♖cxe4! ♗xe4 2. ♖xe4 ♜xe4 [2... ♘g7 3. ♘xg7 ♔xg7 4. ♚c3+-]

3. ♙d3! ♜xh1+ 4. ♔d2!+- [4. ♔e2? ♞xe3+ 5. ♔xe3 ♜xh3+ 6. ♔d2 ♘g7 7. ♘h7+ ♔f8 8. ♘xg7+ ♔xg7 9. ♚b2+ ♔xh7 10. ♚f6=]

4... ♜xh3 5. ♙h7#

[Bagirov, V-Luko, A Cappelle la Grande 1988, 1-0]

Exercise 91



1.? +-

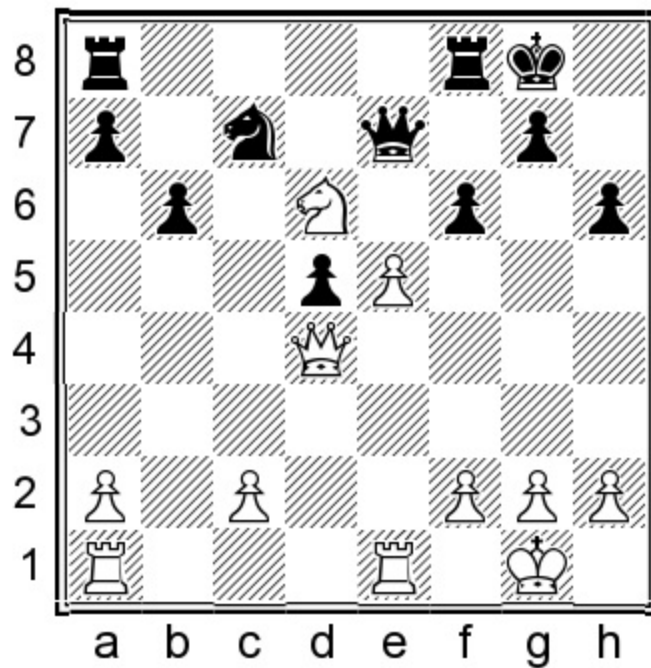
Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖f6+! gxf6 23. ♖h4! ♔d8 [23...fxe5 24. ♖g3+ ♔h8 25. ♖f6#]

24. ♖f5! exf5 25. ♖h6 ♔c1 26. ♖g3+ ♔g5 27. exf6+-

[Wagner,D-Bailet,P Meissen 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 92



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

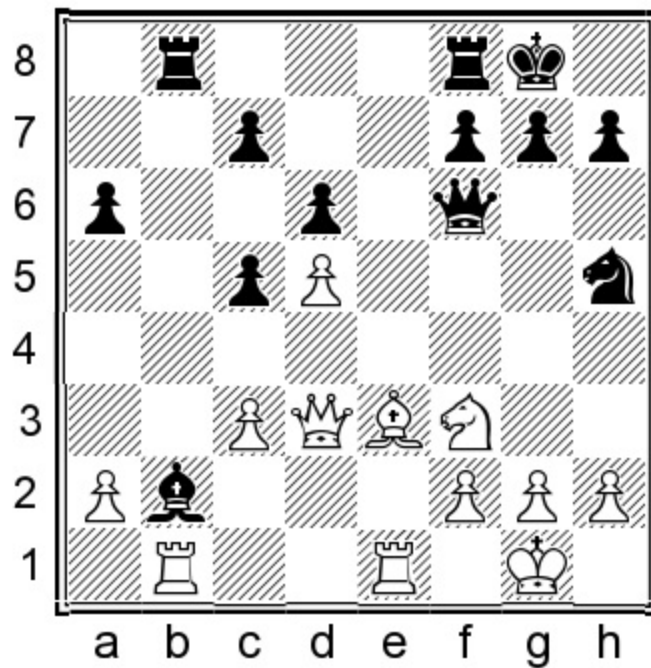
19. ♖f5 ♜f7 [19... ♜e6 20. ♜g4+-]

20. e6! ♜xe6 21. ♝xe6! ♜xe6 22. ♜g4!+- ♔f7 [22... ♜d7 23. ♜xh6+ ♔h7 24. ♜xd7+-]

23. ♜xg7+ ♔e8 24. ♜b7 ♜xf5 25. ♝e1+-

[Kovacevic,B-Markoja,B Murska Sobota 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 93



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

18. ♖e2 ♙xc3

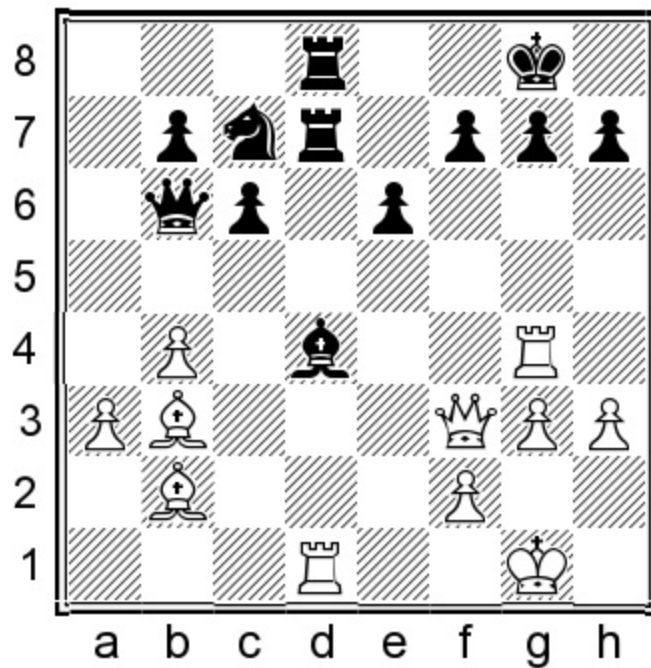
[18... ♗xc3!? 19. ♙c1! ♙xc1 (19... h6 20. ♖xb2+-) 20. ♖xb8 ♖xb8 21. ♗e8+ ♖xe8 22. ♖xe8#]

19. ♖xb8 ♖xb8 20. ♙g5! ♙xe1 [20... ♗xg5 21. ♗e8+ ♖xe8 22. ♖xe8#]

21. ♙xf6 ♗xf6 22. ♗xe1+-

[Tal, M-Bannik, A Yerevan 1962 URS-ch, 1-0]

Exercise 94



1.? +-

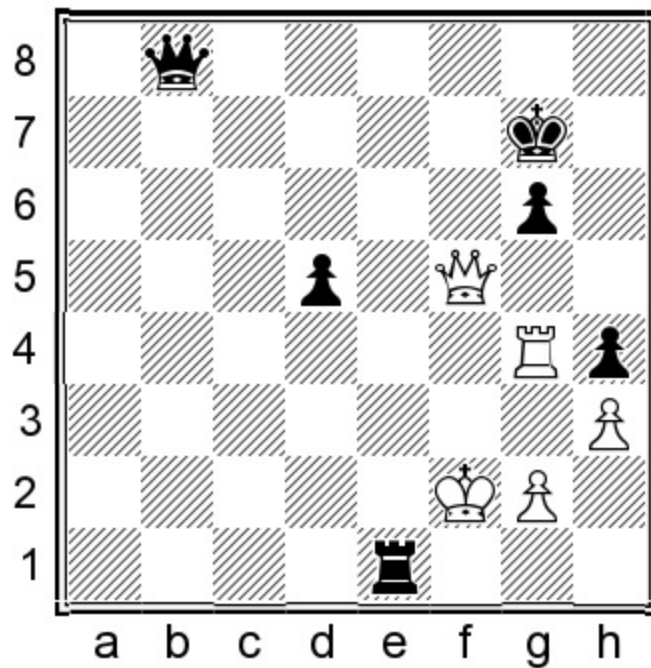
Show/Hide Solution

25.♖dxd4 ♜xd4 26.♚f6! [26.♙xd4! ♜xd4 27.♚f6 ♘e8 28.♚xd4+-]

26...♘e8 27.♙xd4 ♘xf6 28.♙xb6 ♘xg4 29.♙xd8+-

[Meulders,R-Hartoch,R Dieren 1988, 1-0]

Exercise 95



1...? -+

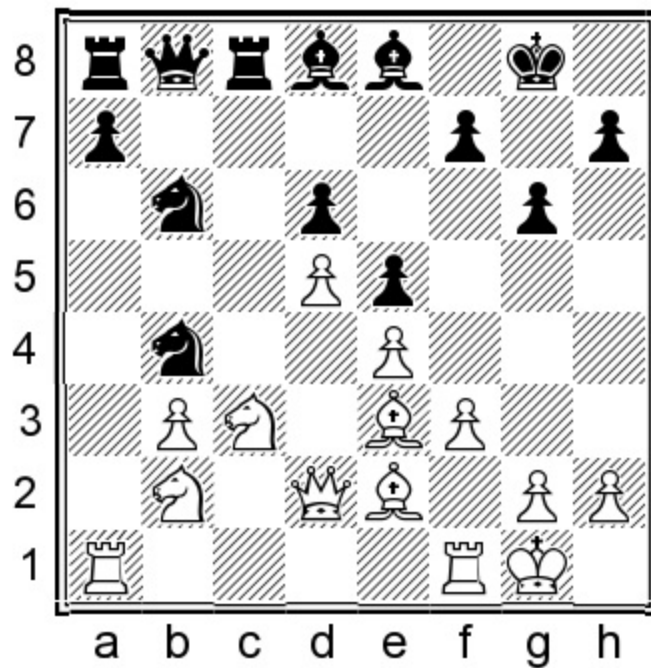
Show/Hide Solution

55...♔g3+! 56.♖xg3 hxg3+ 57.♕xe1 gxf5 58.♕e2 d4! 59.♕d3 f4! 60.♕e4 [60.♕xd4 f3-+]

60...d3!

[Munguntuul,B-Ahmed,A Tagaytay 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 96



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

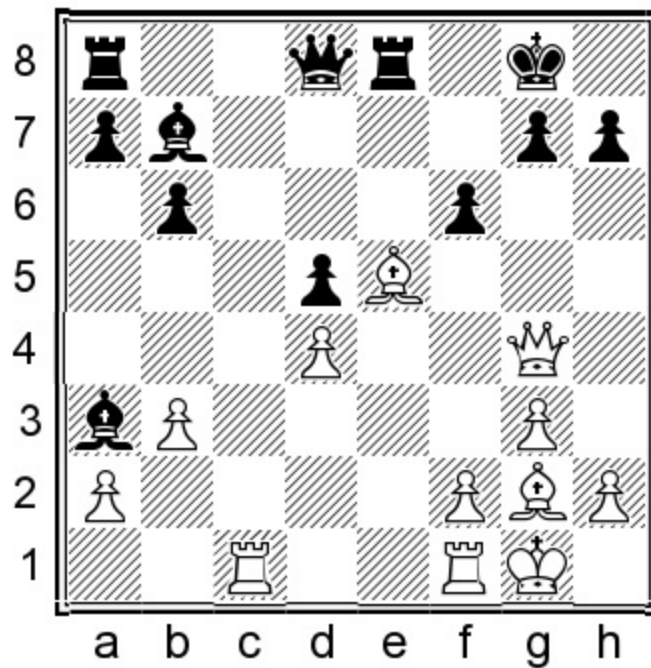
21...♖xc3! 22.♔xc3 ♜6xd5! 23.exd5 ♜xd5 24.♔d2 ♜xe3 25.♖fe1

[25.♔xe3 ♜b6-+]

25...♔xb3-+

[Khismatullin,D-Smirin,I Poikovsky 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 97



1.?±

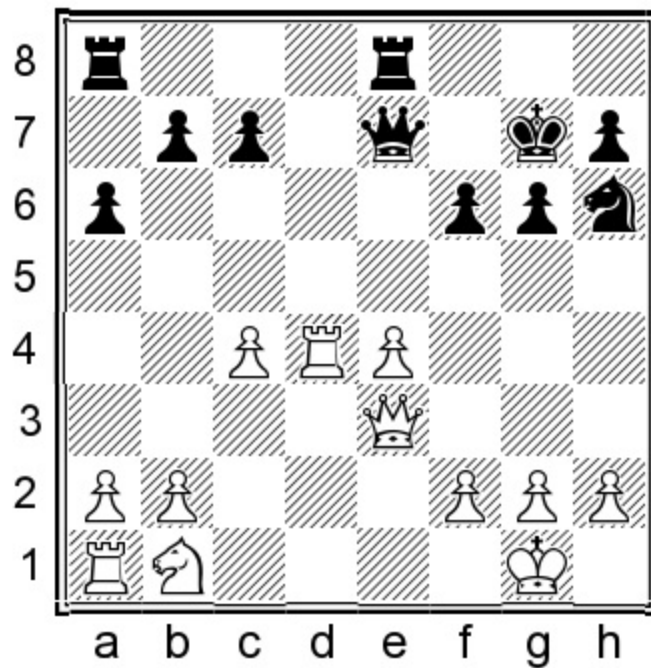
Show/Hide Solution

20.♖c7 ♜e7 21.♖xb7! ♜xb7 22.♙xf6! ♚d6 [22...♚xf6 23.♙xd5+ ♔h8 24.♙xb7±]

23.♚g5±

[Melkumyan,H-Alekseenko,K Yerevan 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 98



1...? -+

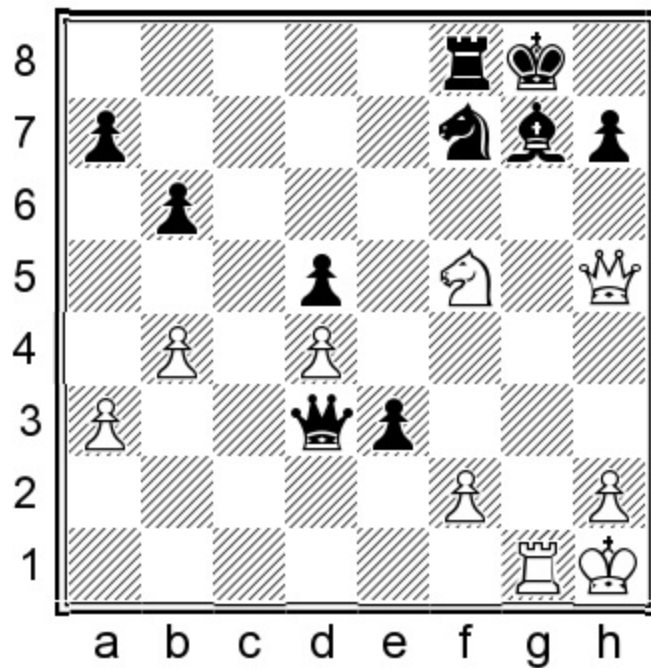
Show/Hide Solution

19...♖f5! [19...♘g4 20.♙g3±]

19...♖f5! 20.exf5 ♚b4! 21.♙e4 ♜xe4 22.♙xe4 ♚xb2-+

[Kravtsiv,M-Safarli,E Gaziantep 2008, 0-1]

Exercise 99



1...? -+

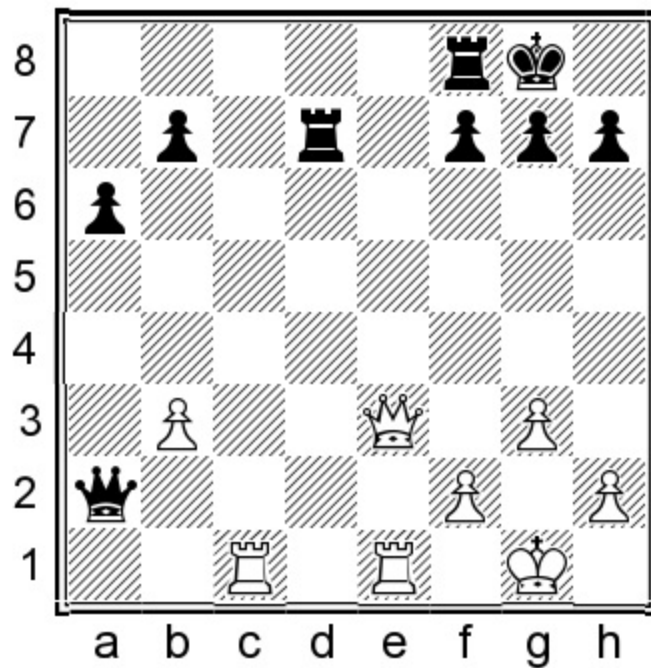
Show/Hide Solution

29...♔h8! [29...♘g5? 30.♙xg5 ♖e4+ 31.♞g2 ♗b1+ 32.♞g1=]

29...♔h8! 30.♞xg7 ♘g5!!-+ 31.♙xg5 ♖e4+ 32.♙g2 exf2-+

[Lei Tingjie-Sulava,N Cannes 2014, 1/2]

Exercise 100



1.? +-

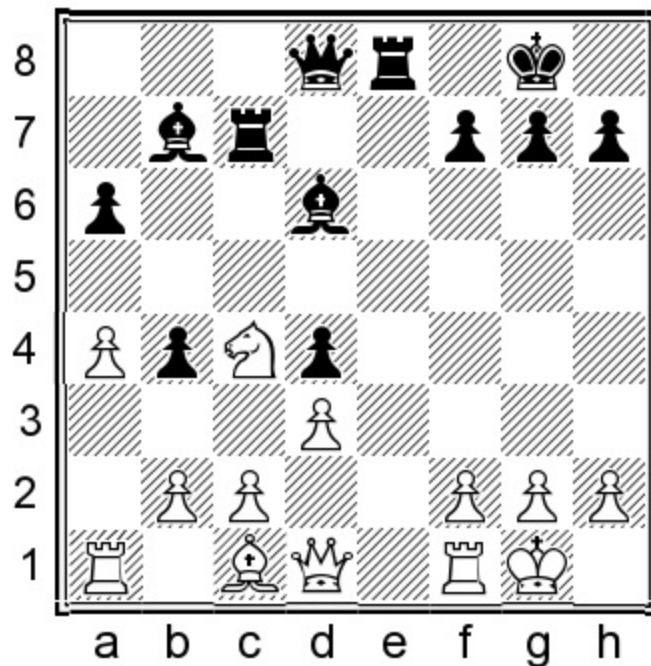
Show/Hide Solution

25.♖c8! ♔a3 [25...♖xc8 26.♚e8+ ♖xe8 27.♖xe8#]

26.♚e8! ♖d3 27.♚xf8+ ♚xf8 28.♖ee8!+-

[Lie,E-Gausel,E Oslo 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 101



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♙xh2+!

[1...♖xc4! 2.dxc4 ♕h4 3.h3 ♖e6-+]

1...♙xh2+! 2.♔xh2 ♕h4+ 3.♔g1 ♙xg2! 4.♔xg2 ♖c6 5.♙f4

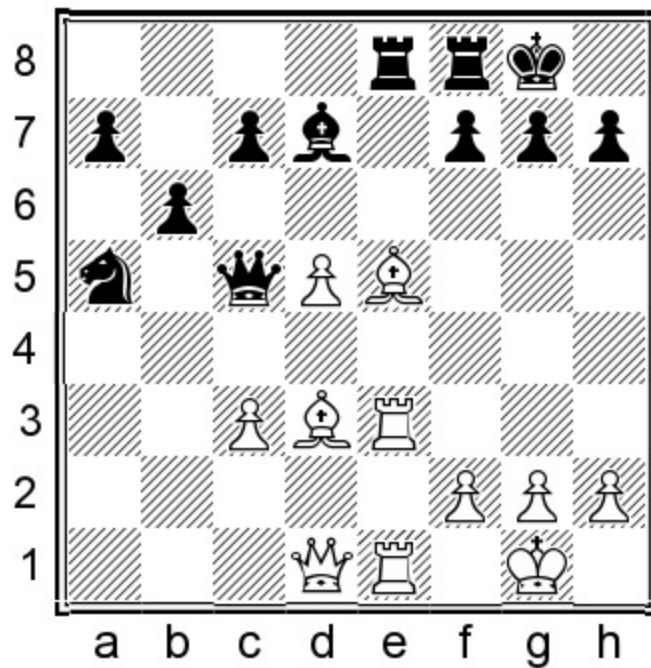
[5.♕f3!? ♖g6+ 6.♕g3 ♖e2! 7.♕xg6 fxg6 8.♙d2 ♖xd2! 9.♘xd2 ♕g5+ 10.♔h2 ♕xd2-+]

5...♕xf4 6.♖h1 ♖f6 7.♖h2 [7.♖h3 ♕xf2+ 8.♔h1 ♖e2 9.♕g1 ♕f3+!! 10.♖xf3 ♖h6+-+]

7...♖g6+! 8.♔h1 ♖e1+!-+

[Kirillov-Furman Vilnius 1949, 0-1]

Exercise 102



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

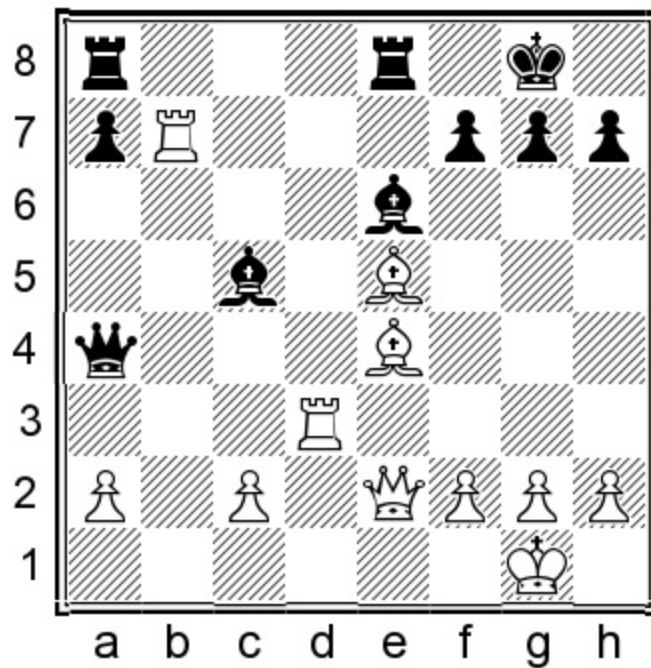
25. ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 26. ♚h5+ ♜g8 27. ♖xg7!

[27. ♖g3? f6 28. ♖xg7+ ♜xg7 29. ♚g5+ ♜h7 30. ♚h5+=]

27... ♜xg7 28. ♖g3+ ♜f6 29. ♚g5#

[Polgar, J-Karpov, A Hoogeveen 2003, 1-0]

Exercise 103



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xh7+! ♔f8 [1... ♖xh7 2. ♗h5+ ♔g8 3. ♖h3 ♖xf2+ 4. ♔h1!+-]

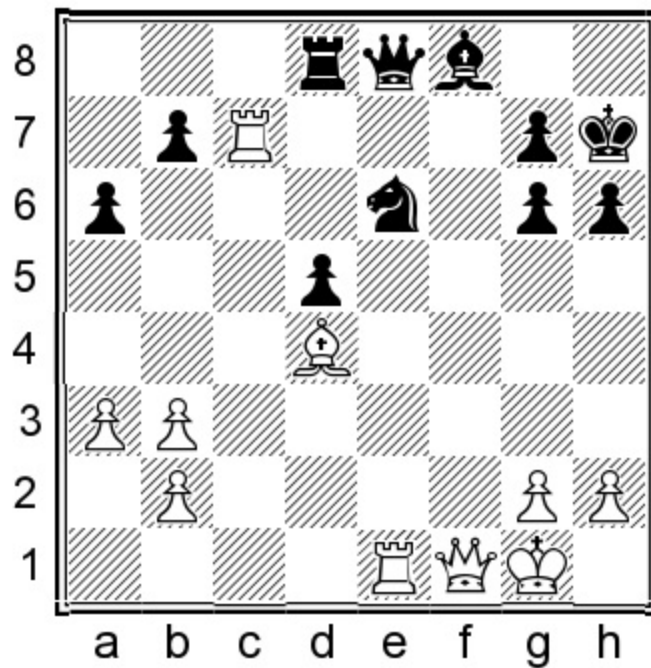
2. ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 3. ♗e5+ ♔xh7

[3... ♔h6 4. ♗f6+ ♔xh7 5. ♖h3+-]

4. ♗h5+ ♔g7 5. ♖g3+-

[Miroshnichenko,E-Gunnarsson,J Ohrid 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 104



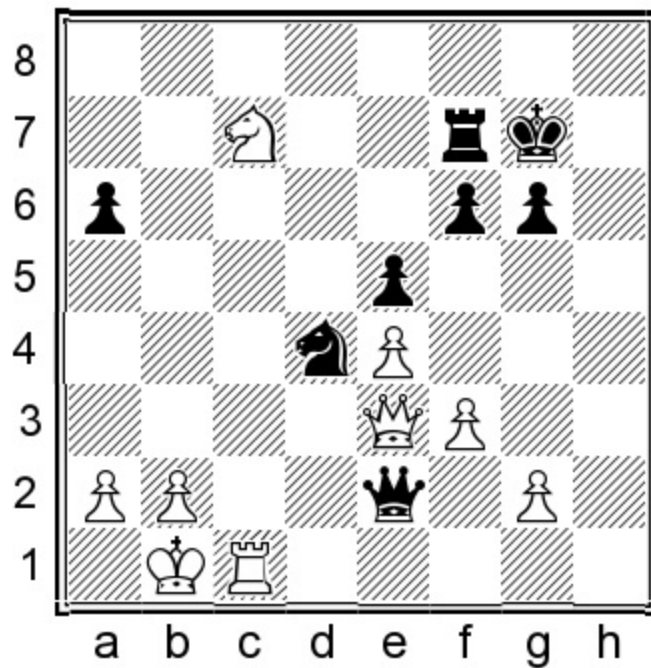
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35.♖xe6! ♜xe6 36.♗xf8!! ♝xf8 37.♖xg7+ ♔h8 38.♖xg6++-

[Vasiukov,E-Djurasevic,B Belgrade 1961, 1-0]

Exercise 105



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

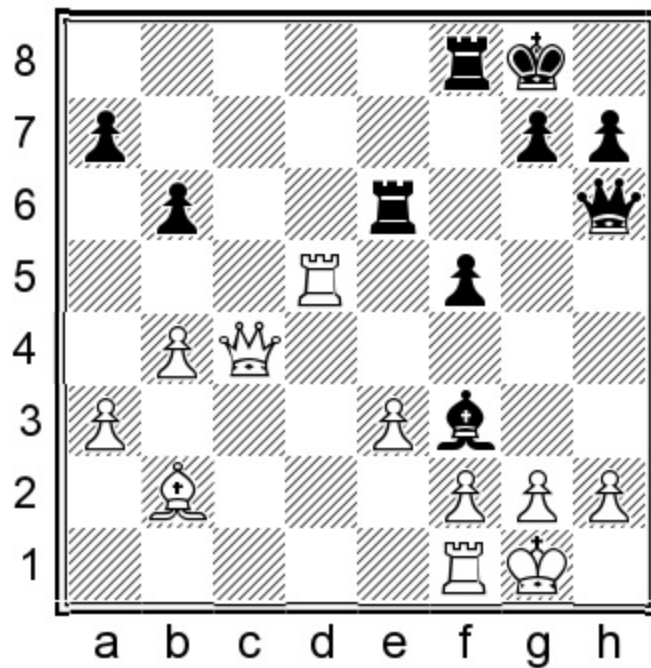
34. ♖e6+! ♔h7 [34... ♕g8 35. ♖c8+ ♔h7 36. ♗xe2 ♘xe2 37. ♖a8+-]

35. ♗h6+!! ♔xh6 [35... ♕g8 36. ♖c8+ ♖f8 37. ♖xf8#]

36. ♖h1#

[Spassky, B-Kortschnoj, V Kiev 1968, 1-0]

Exercise 106



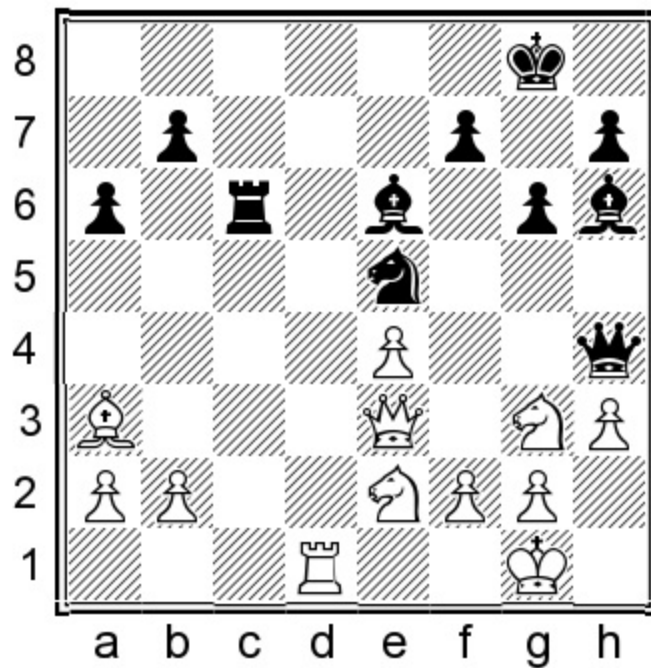
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

22...♔h3!! 23.gxh3 ♖g6+ 24.♔g4 fxg4 25.♖fd1 gxh3+ 26.♕f1 ♖g2-+

[Tregubov,P-Moiseenko,A Doha 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 107



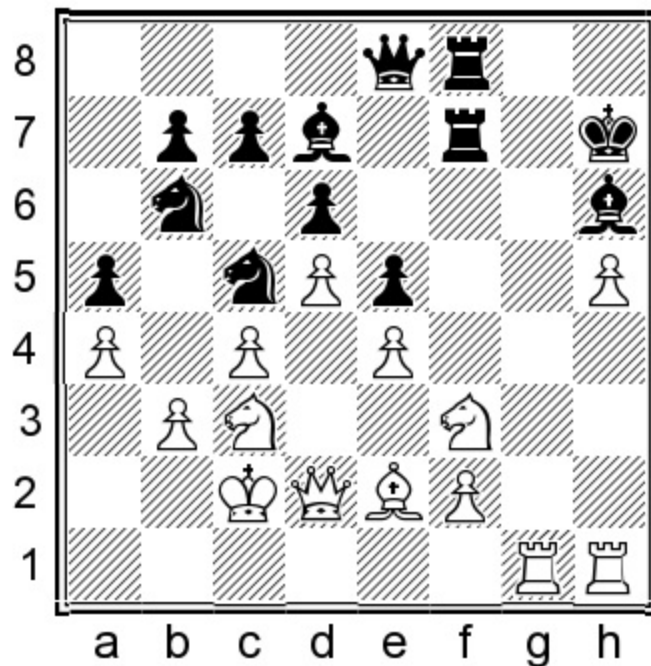
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♔xh6!! ♚xh6 23. ♖d8+ ♔g7 24. ♘f8+ ♔g8 25. ♘xh6#

[Mamedjarova, T-Savina, A Stary Smokovec 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 108



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24. ♖g5+ ♙xg5 25. ♚xg5 ♜e7

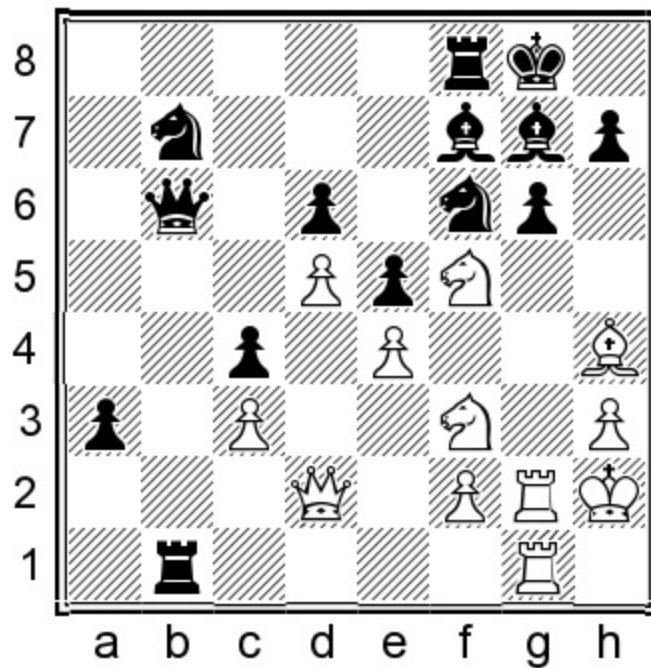
[25... ♜g8 26. ♚g6+! ♜xg6 27. hxg6+ ♔g8 28. gxf7+ ♔xf7 29. ♙h5+-]

26. h6! ♜g8 27. ♚g7+!! ♜xg7 28. hxg7+ ♔g8 29. ♜h8+ ♔f7 30. ♙h5+! [30. ♜xe8? ♜xe8 31. ♙h5+ ♔g8 32. ♙xe8 ♙xe8=]

30... ♔f6 31. ♜f8+! ♚xf8 32. gxf8=♚+ ♜f7 33. ♚xf7#

[Sreeshwan Maralakshikari-Vo,P Wyc 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 109



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

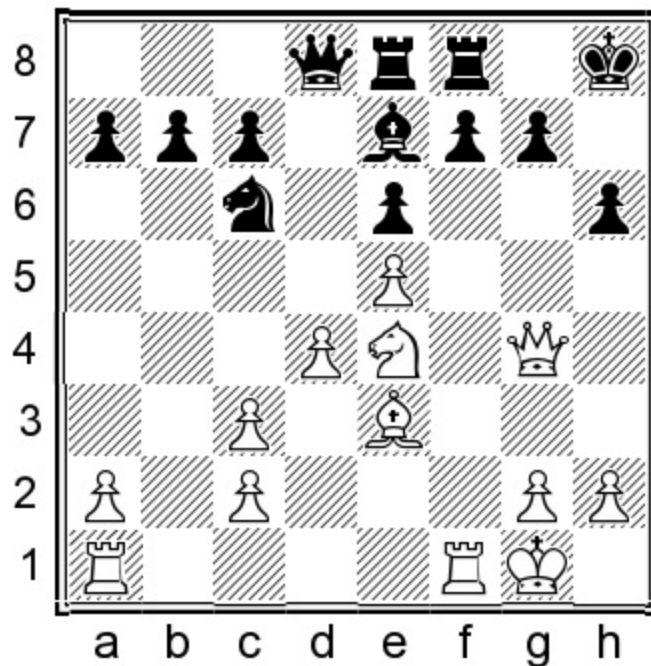
33.♙xf6!

[33.♚h6? ♗xh6 34.♘xh6+ ♔g7 35.♙f5+ ♔g8 36.♙e7+ ♔g7]

33.♙xf6! ♗xf6 34.♚h6 ♚c7 35.♙g5 ♙e8 36.♙e6 ♚f7 37.♖xb1+-

[Mazzoni,G-Kraidman,Y Tel Aviv 1964, 1/2]

Exercise 110



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17.♙xh6! gxh6 18.♖h5 ♔h7 [18...♙g5 19.♖f6!+-; 18...♔g7 19.♖f6! ♙xf6 20.exf6+ ♔h7 21.♗g5+ ♔g8 22.♖xh6+-]

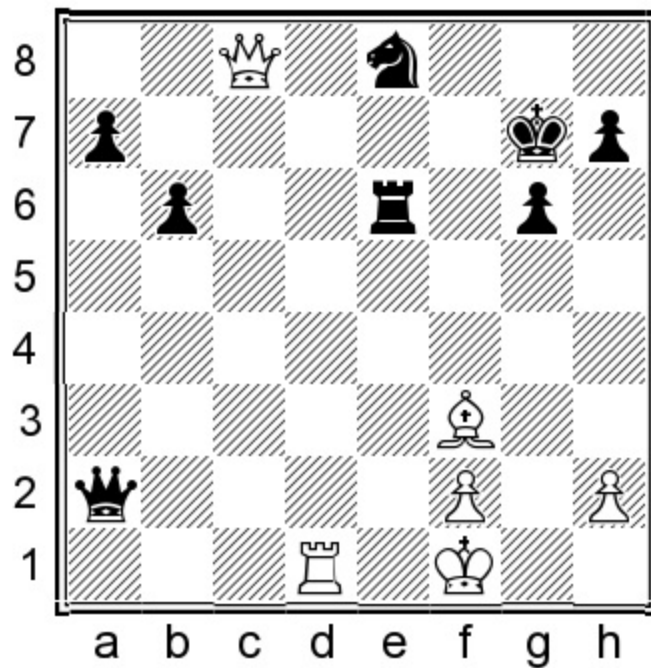
19.♖f6! [19.♗f6+! ♙xf6 20.♖xf6 ♖xf6 21.exf6+-]

19...♙xf6 20.♗xf6+ ♖xf6 [20...♔g7 21.♖g4+ ♔h8 22.♖e4+-]

21.exf6+-

[Micheli,C-Skalkotas,N Skopje 1972, 1-0]

Exercise 111



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

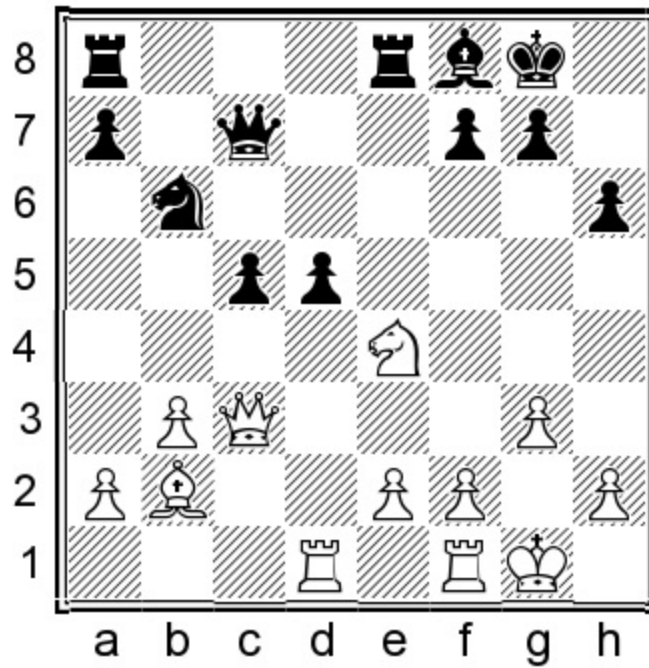
46. ♖c3+! [46. ♖d7+? ♔f8 47. ♖xh7 ♕a1+ 48. ♔g2 ♖e7 49. ♗c6 ♖xh7=]

46. ♖c3+! ♜f6! [46... ♘f6 47. ♖a1+-]

47. ♖d7+! ♔f8 48. ♖b4+ ♘d6 49. ♖xd6 ♖xd6 50. ♖xd6+-

[Wang,H-Maghsoodloo,P Douglas, Isle of Man 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 112



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖f6+! gxf6 2. ♜xf6 ♔h7

[2...d4 3. ♞xd4 cxd4 4. ♙xd4 ♔h7 5. g4!+-]

3. ♜h8+! [3.g4? d4 4. ♞xd4 ♙g7+]]

3... ♔g6 4. ♜g8+ ♔f5 5. e4+!!

[5. ♞d3±; 5. ♜h7+ ♔e6↔]

5... ♞xe4

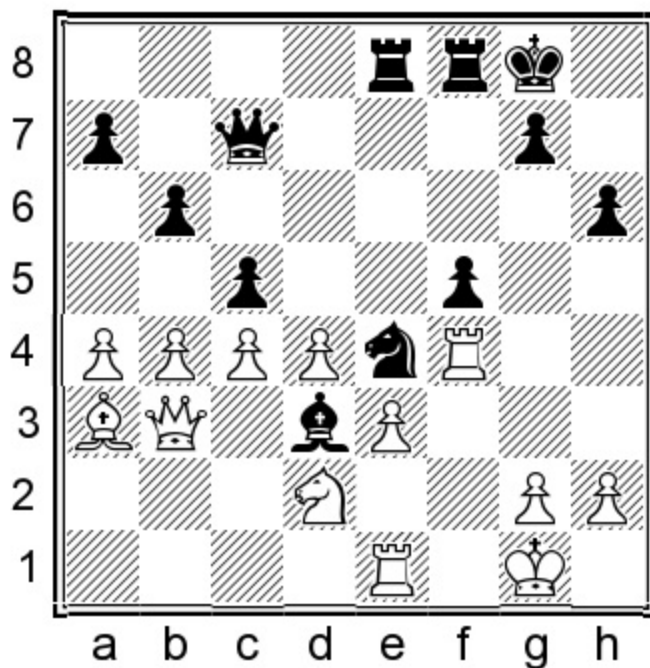
[5...dxe4 6. ♜h7+ ♔e6 7. ♜xe4++-]

6. f3+-

[Training position, 1-0]

TACTICS ACCORDING TO SMYSLOV 4

Exercise 1



1...?±

Show/Hide Solution

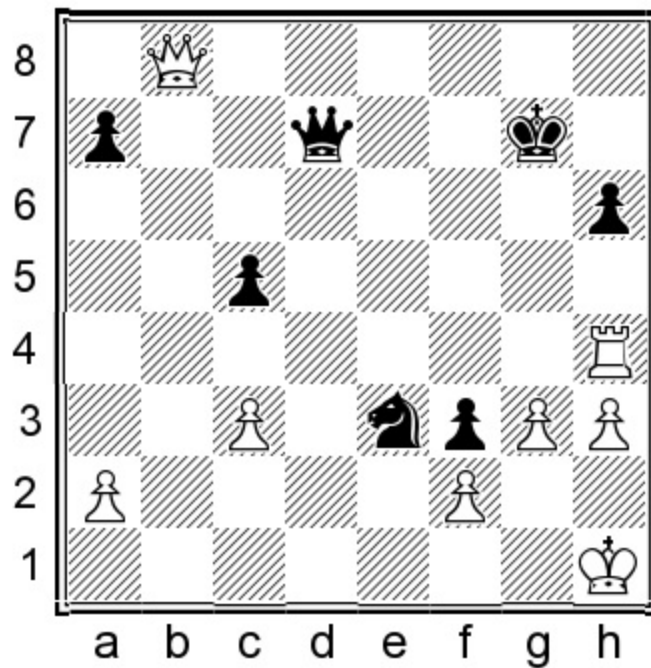
1...♖xd2! 2.♗xd3 ♜xf4! 3.exf4 ♝xe1+ 4.♔f2 ♞d1! [4...♞f1+?! 5.♔e2 ♞xf4 6.dxc5±]

5.♔e2 ♜e4! 6.♔xd1 [6.♗xd1 ♜c3+ 7.♔d2 ♜xd1 8.♔xd1 cxb4+]

6...♜f2+ 7.♔c2 ♜xd3 8.♔xd3±

[Training position, 0–1]

Exercise 2



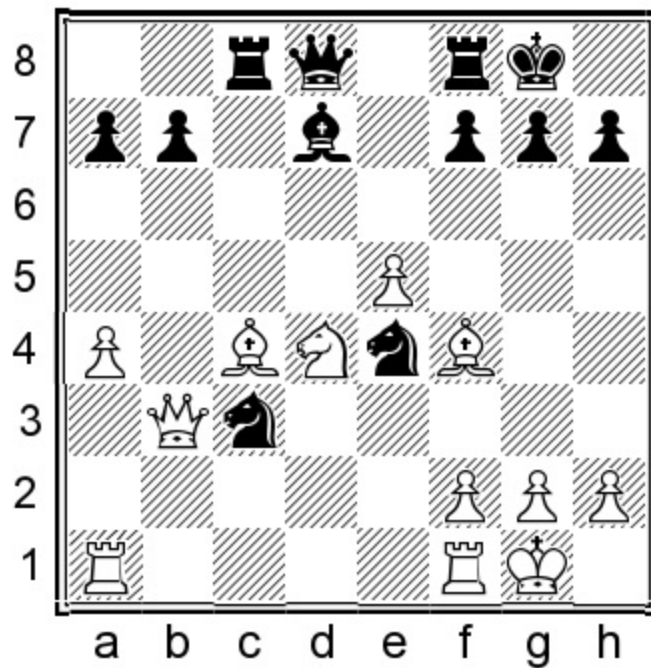
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

35...♔d1+! 36.♕h2 ♖f1+ 37.♕h1 ♖xg3+ 38.♕h2 ♔h1+! 39.♕xg3 ♔g2+ 40.♕f4 ♔h2+ 41.♕xf3 ♔xb8-+

[Kovalev,V-Edouard,R Warsaw 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 3



1...? -+

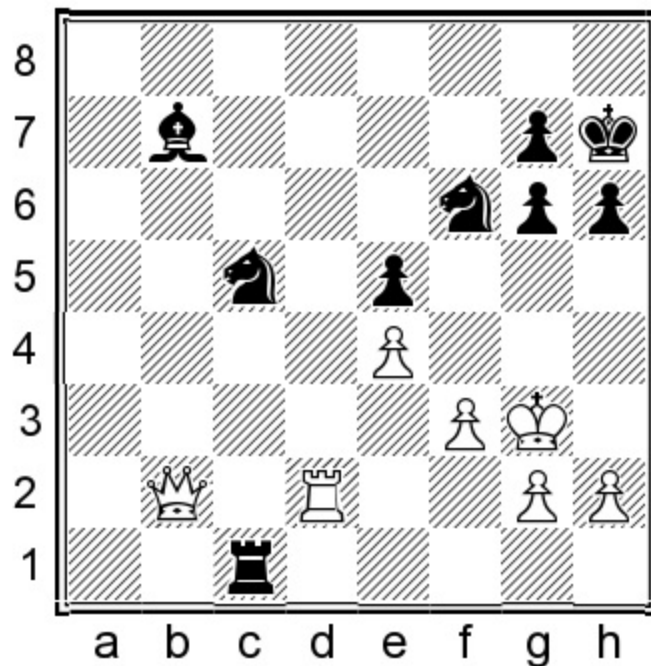
Show/Hide Solution

18...♙xa4! 19.♖xa4 ♘xa4 20.♗f5 [20.♚xa4 ♘c3! (20...♚xd4?? 21.♙xf7+-) 21.♚b4 (21.♚xa7 ♖xc4-+) 21...♚xd4! 22.♙xf7+ ♖xf7 23.♚xd4 ♗e2+!-+]

20...♗ac3-+

[Ushenina,A-Hou Yifan Taizhou 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 4



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

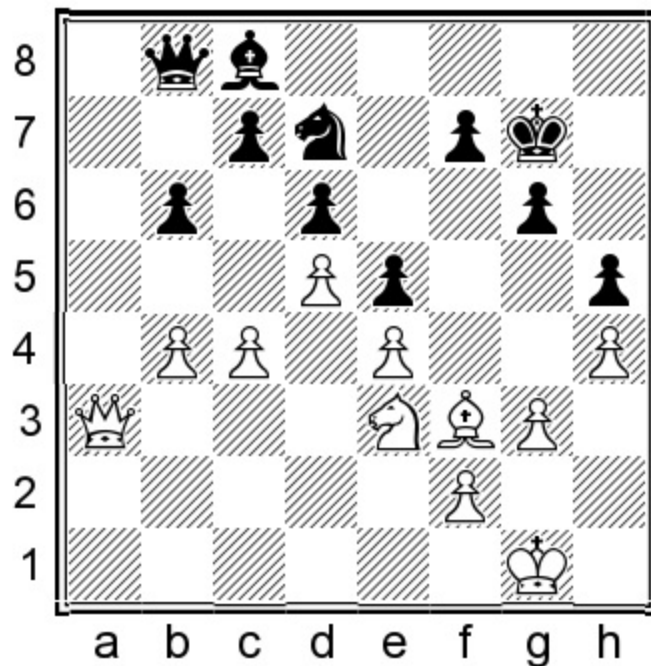
33... ♖cxe4+! [33... ♖c3? 34. ♔f2 ♖b3 35. ♚c2 ♖c3 36. ♚b2 ♖b3 37. ♚c2 ♖cxe4+ 38. fxe4 ♖xe4+ 39. ♔e1 ♖xd2 40. ♔xd2=]

33... ♖cxe4+! 34. fxe4 ♖xe4+ 35. ♔f3 [35. ♔h4 ♕c8!-+; 35. ♔g4 ♖c3-+; 35. ♔h3 ♖c3+ 36. g3 ♖g5+ 37. ♔h4 ♕c8!-+ 38. ♖f2 ♖f3+ 39. ♖xf3 g5+ 40. ♔h5 g6#]

35... ♖b1! 36. ♚xb1 ♖xd2+-+

[Korobov,A-Berkes,F Reykjavik 2015, 1/2]

Exercise 5



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35. ♔xh5! gxh5 36. ♖f5+ ♔g8 [36... ♔f8 37. ♕e3+-]

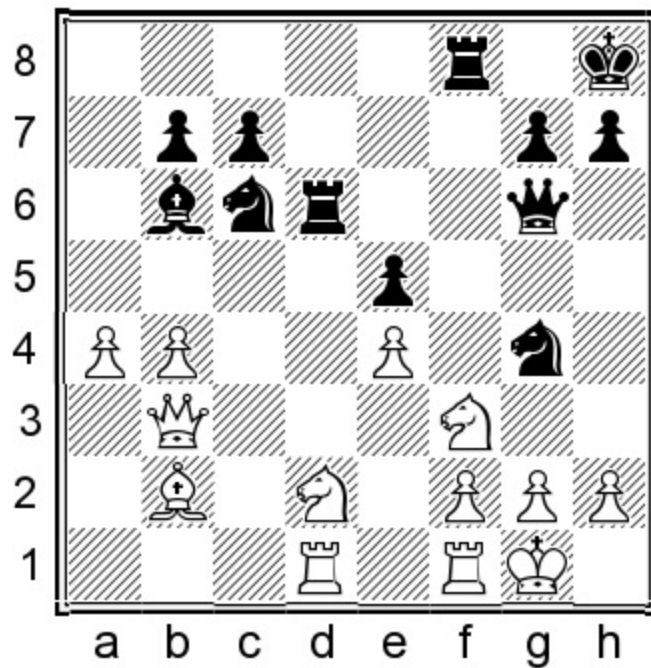
37. ♕e3! ♖f8 38. ♕g5+ ♖g6 39. ♕d8+ ♖f8 [39... ♔h7 40. ♕e8+-]

40. ♕xc8 [40. ♖e7+-]

40... ♕xc8 41. ♖e7+ ♔g7 42. ♖xc8+-

[Markus,R-Hracek,Z Tromso 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

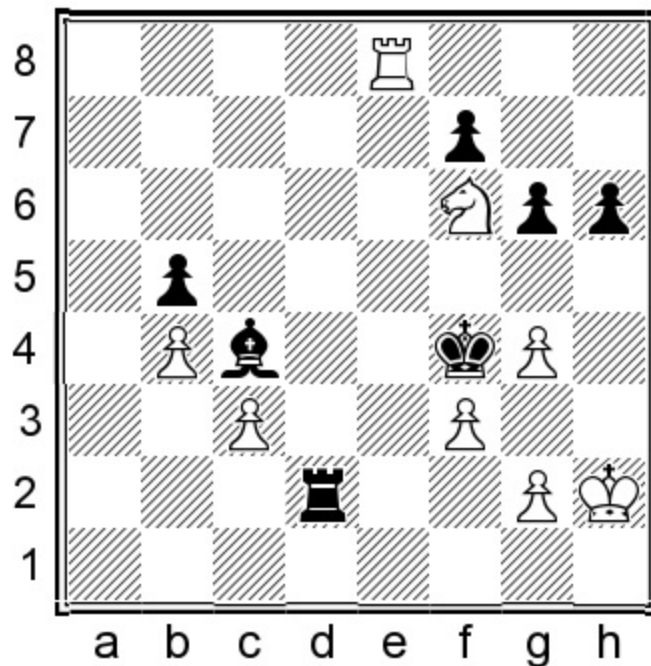
20...♔h6! [20...♖df6? 21.b5±]

20...♔h6! 21.h3 [21.b5 ♖xd2 22.♖xd2 ♖xf3-+]

21...♘xf2! 22.♖xf2 ♘xf2+ 23.♔xf2 ♖xd2+ 24.♖xd2 ♔xd2+-+

[Gajcin,M-Atalik,S Novi Sad 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

47.♖e4+!

[47.♘e4?! ♜c2 48.♗d6 ♕d5 49.♙h3 ♜c1=]

47.♖e4+! ♔g5 48.♗h7+!

[48.♜xc4!? ♙xf6! (48...bxc4? 49.♗e4+ ♔f4 50.♗xd2+-) 49.♜c5 ♜c2 50.♜xb5 ♜xc3±]

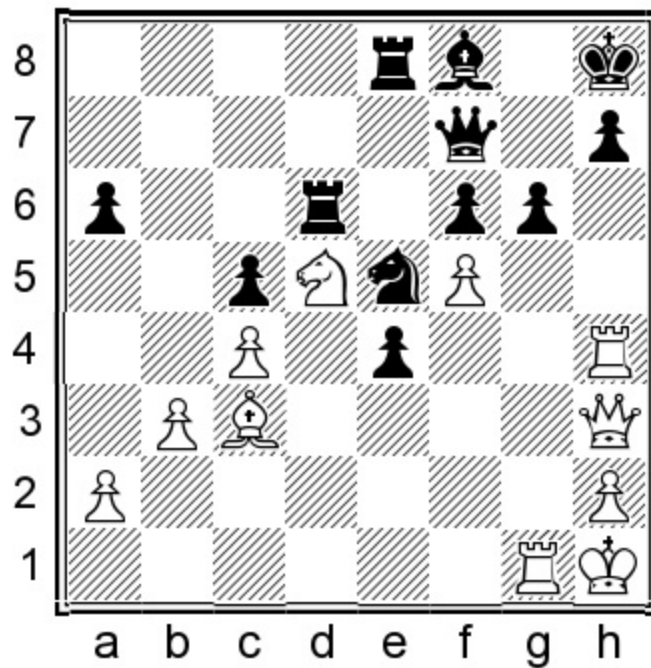
48...♔h4 49.g5+! ♔h5 50.♜xc4! bxc4 51.♗f6+ ♔h4 [51...♔xg5 52.♗e4+-]

52.gxh6 ♜d8 53.h7 ♜h8 [53...♔g5 54.♗g8]

54.f4+-

[Quparadze,G-Chu Wei Chao Stavanger 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 8



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

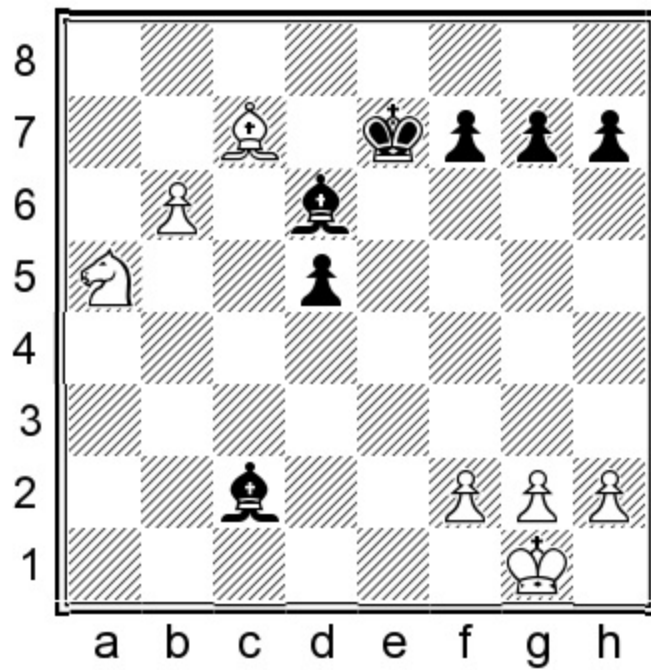
38.fxg6! ♖xg6 39.♙xf6+! ♜xf6 40.♜xh7+!!

[40.♖xf6? ♖xh4 41.♜g8+ ♜xg8 42.♖xg8 e3! 43.♜xh4 e2!]=]

40...♜xh7 41.♜xh7+ ♔xh7 42.♖xf6+ ♔h6 43.♖xe8+-

[Carlsen,M-Rapport,R Wijk aan Zee 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 9



1.? +-

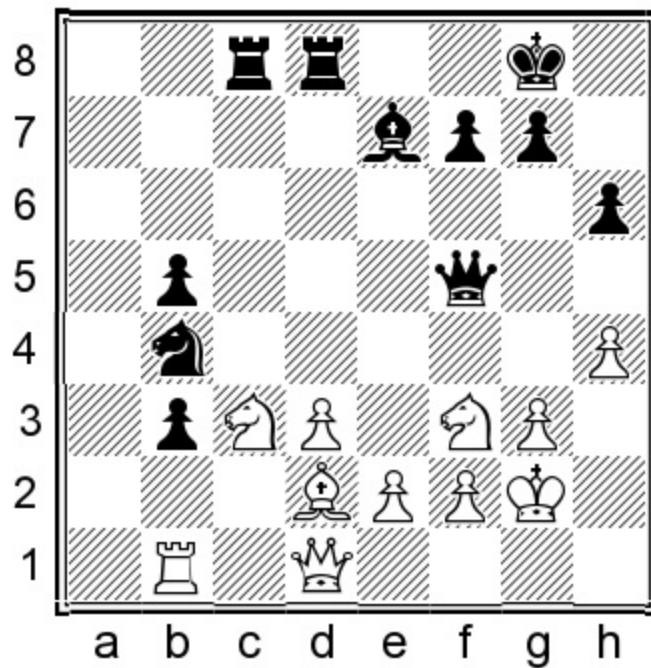
Show/Hide Solution

33. ♖c6+! ♔d7 34. ♖b8+! ♕e6 [34... ♖c8 35. ♗xd6+-]

35. ♗xd6 ♕xd6 36. ♖a6! ♕c6 37. ♖b4++-

[Chabanon,J-Naiditsch,A Baden-Baden 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 10



1...? -+

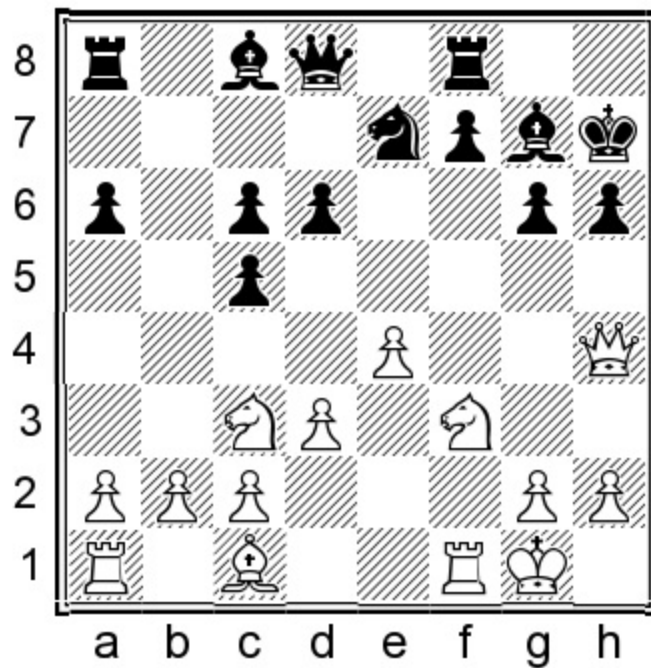
Show/Hide Solution

38...♘xd3! [38...♘c6? 39.e4 ♖h5?! (39...♙c5!♣) 40.♘d5⇌]

38...♘xd3! 39.exd3 ♜xc3! 40.♙xc3 ♜xd3 41.♙d2 ♜xf3! 42.♙xf3 ♙xb1-+

[Ding,L-Van Wely,L Wijk aan Zee 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 11



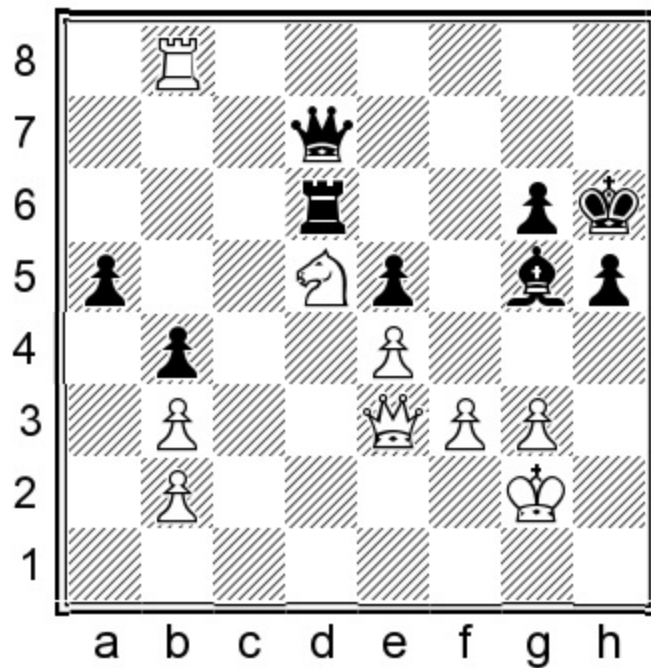
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♙xh6! ♜xh6 2.♘g5+ ♔g7 3.♞xf7+! ♞xf7 4.♚xh6+!! ♔g8 [4...♙xh6 5.♘xf7+ ♔g7 6.♘xd8+-]
 5.♞h8+!! ♙xh8 6.♘xf7+ ♔g8 7.♘xd8+-

[Gonzalez Perez,A-Espinosa,E Cuba 2004, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

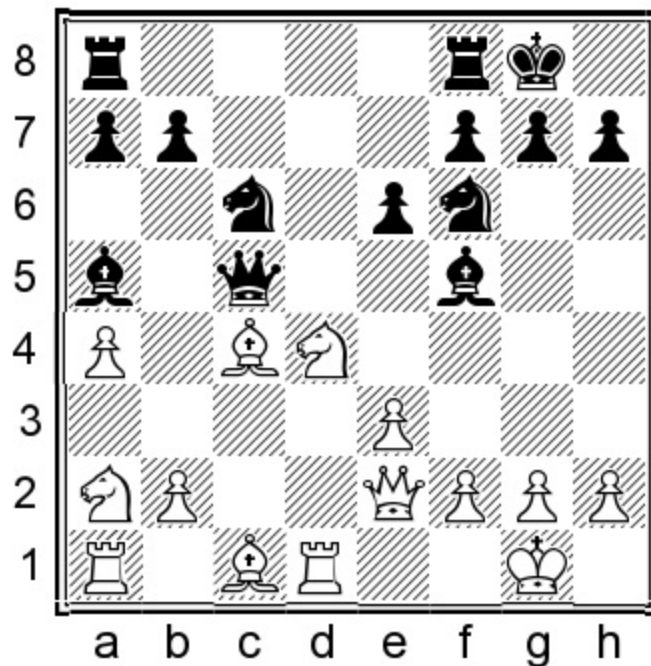
55.f4! exf4

[55...♙xf4 56.gxf4 ♖g4+ 57.♗g3 ♖e2+ 58.♔h3 ♖f1+ 59.♗g2 ♖xg2+ 60.♔xg2+-]

56.♖h8+! ♔g7 57.♗d4+ ♙f6 58.♗xf6+!! ♖xf6 59.♖h7+ ♔xh7 60.♘xf6+ ♔g7 61.♘xd7+-

[Polgar,J-Anand,V Wijk aan Zee 1998, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

14.b4! ♖xb4

[14...♙xb4 15.♘xc6 bxc6 16.♘xb4 ♖xb4 17.♙a3+-]

15.♙a3! ♜fc8 16.♜dc1 ♖b6

[16...♖d6 17.♘b5 ♖b6 (17...♖e7 18.♖b2+-) 18.♙xb4 ♙xb4 19.♘xb4 a6 20.a5 ♖c5 21.♖b2 axb5 22.♙xc6+-]

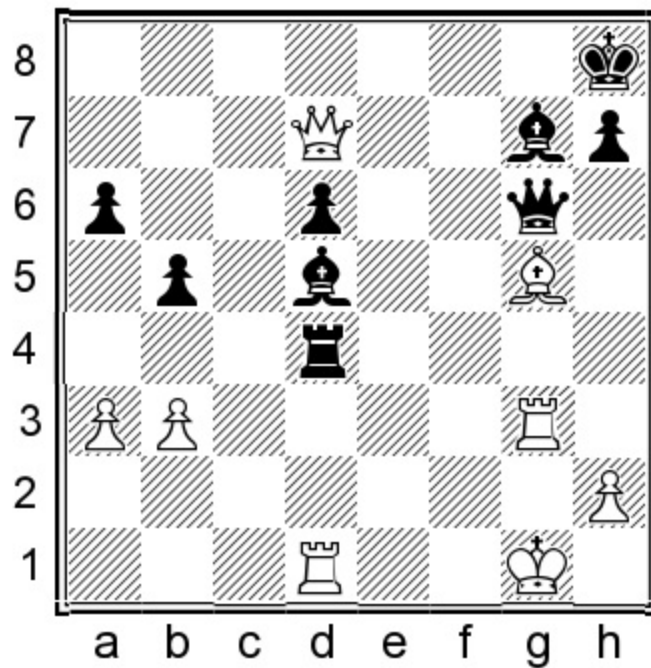
17.♘xf5! exf5 18.♜ab1 ♘xa2 19.♙xf7+! [19.♜xb6 ♘xc1]

19...♙xf7 20.♖xa2+ ♔g6 [20...♖e6 21.♜xb7+ ♘d7 22.♜xd7+-]

21.♜xb6+-

[Belavenets,S-Veresov,G Leningrad 1934, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

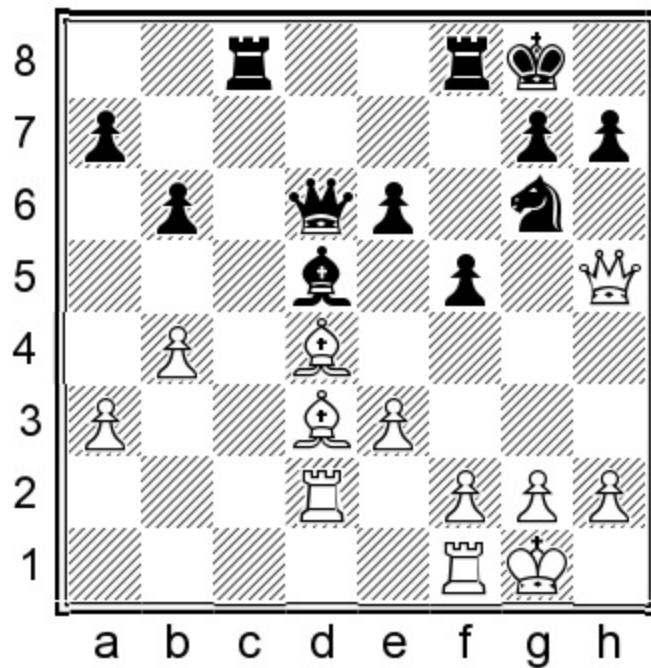
36.♙d2!

[36.♚d8+? ♜g8 37.♞f1 ♞d3↔]

36.♙d2! ♚f7 37.♚d8+ ♚g8 38.♚xg8+ ♜xg8 39.♞xg7 ♜xg7 40.♙c3+-

[Steinberg,N-Svidler,P Gibraltar Masters 2017, 1/2]

Exercise 15



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

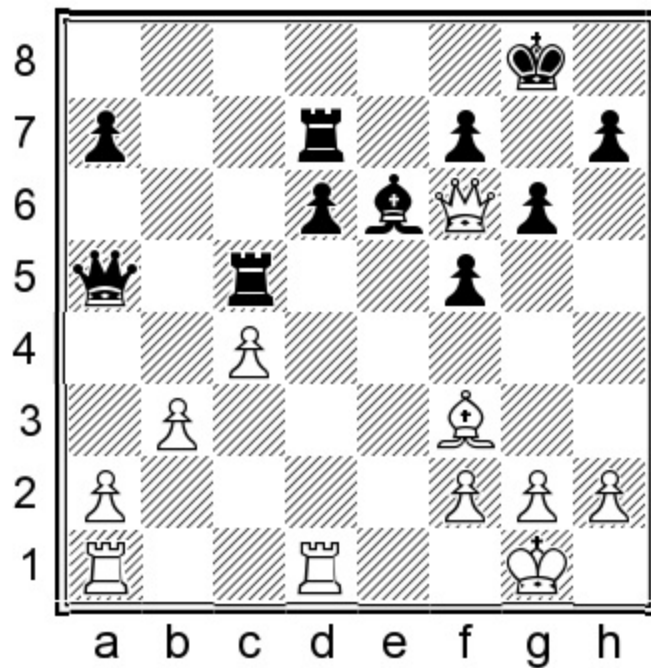
20...♙xg2! 21.♔xg2 ♜xd4 22.♜xg6

[22.exd4 ♘f4+ 23.♔f3 ♘xh5±; 22.♜xh7+ ♔xh7 23.exd4 ♞c3-+]

22...♜d5+! 23.e4 fxe4 24.♜xe4 ♜g5+ 25.♔h1 ♜xd2-+

[Vaganian,R-Hou Yifan Biel 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

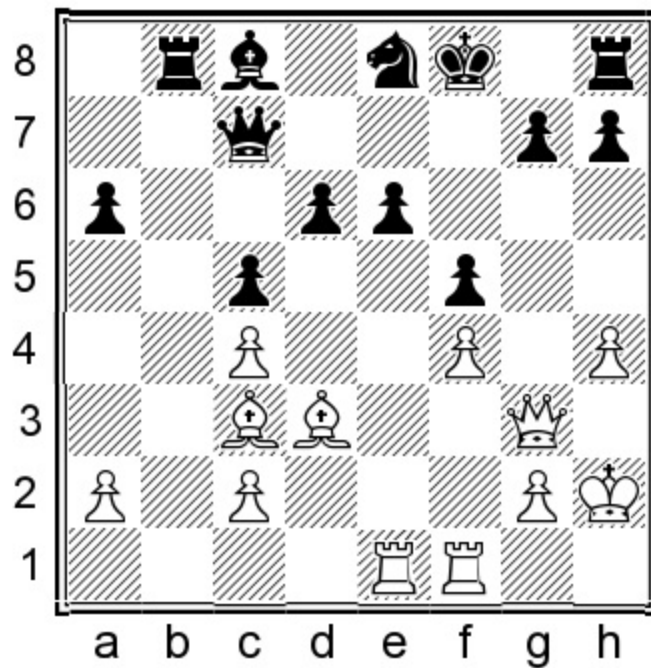
22.b4! ♖xb4 23.♞db1! ♜xc4 24.♙e2! ♚c2

[24...♜xe2? 25.♞b8+ ♜c8 26.♞xc8+ ♞d8 27.♞xd8#]

25.♙d3! ♜c3 26.♞b8+ ♜c8 27.♜xc3+-

[Bukic,E-Romanishin,O Moscow 1977, 1-0]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♙xf5! exf5 2.♖xe8+! ♔xe8 3.♖e1+ ♕f8

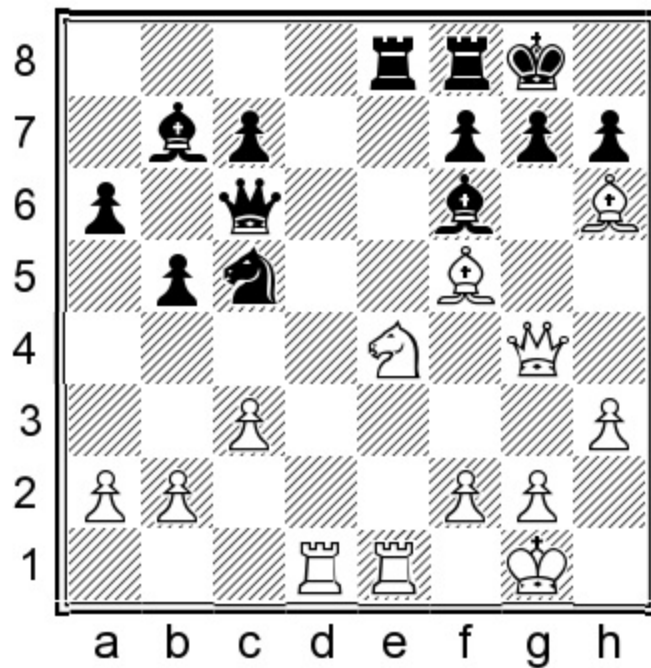
[3...♙e6 4.♖xe6+ ♕f8 5.♚d3+-; 3...♔d7 4.♖e7+ ♕xe7 5.♚xg7+ ♕e6 6.♚xc7+-]

4.♙xg7+! ♚xg7 5.♖e8+ ♕xe8 [5...♕f7 6.♖e7+ ♕xe7 7.♚xg7+-]

6.♚xg7 ♖f8 7.♚c7 ♖a8 8.♚c6+-

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 18

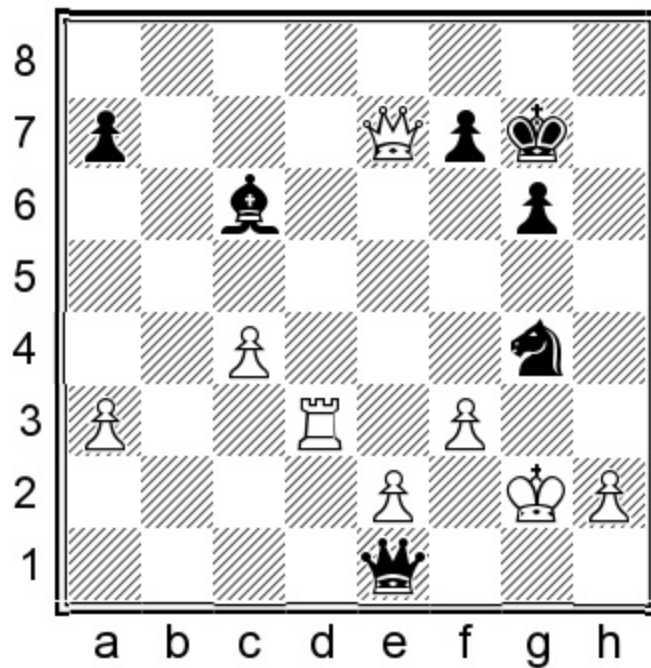


1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25. ♘xc5! ♚xc5 26. ♙xg7! ♙xg7 27. ♚h5! h6 28. ♙h7+ ♔xh7 29. ♚xc5+-
 [Vasiukov,E-Kholmov,R Moscow 1964, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

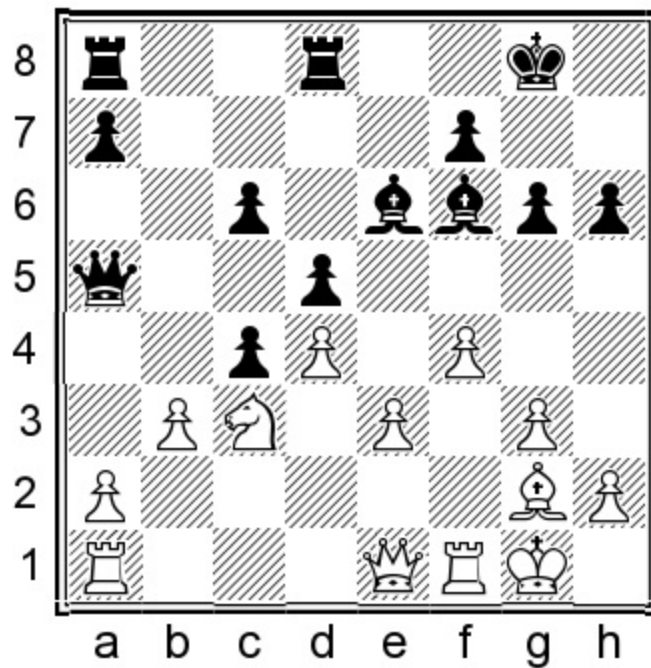
1...♙e4!! 2.fxe4 ♚xe2+ 3.♔g3 ♜f6! 4.♞d5 ♜xe4+ 5.♔f4 ♚xh2+ 6.♔xe4

[6.♔f3 ♚f2+ 7.♔xe4 ♚e2+-+]

6...♚e2+-+

[Forintos,G-Blehm,P MK Cafe Cup-A 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

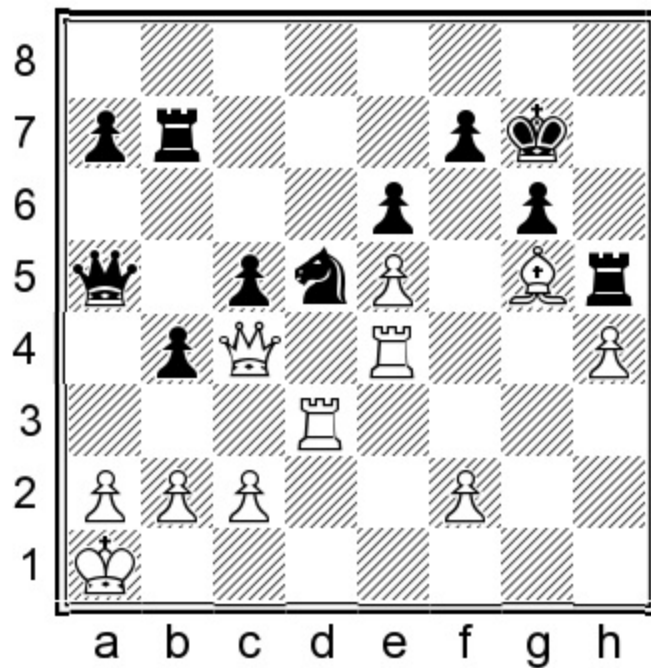
17.f5! gxf5

[17...♙xf5 18.g4+- (18.♘e4! ♚xe1 19.♘xf6+ ♔g7 20.♗axe1 ♕xf6 21.g4+-)]

18.♘e4 ♚xe1 19.♘xf6+ ♔g7 20.♘h5+ ♔g6 21.♘f4+ ♔g7 22.♗fxe1+-

[Williams,A-Morris,C 31st ECC Open 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 21



1...? -+

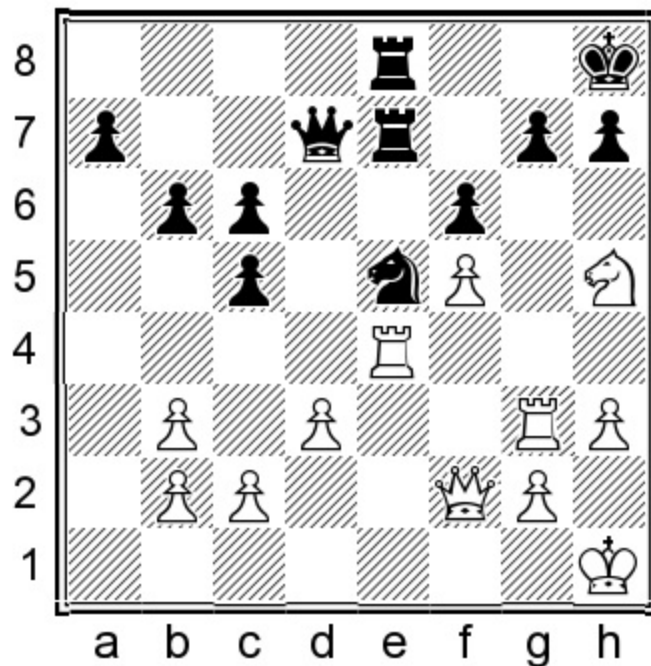
Show/Hide Solution

31...♖xg5! [31...♘b6?? 32.♙f6++-]

31...♖xg5! 32.hxg5 ♘b6 33.♚b3 c4 34.♖xc4 ♘xc4 35.♚xc4 b3-+

[Suetin,A-Kasparian,G Moscow 1952 URS-ch, 1-0]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31.♖xg7! ♖xg7

[31...♘xd3 32.cxd3 ♖xg7 33.♘xf6+-]

32.♘xf6 ♖e7 33.♘xe8 ♖xe8 34.♚f4!

[34.f6? ♖f7 35.♚f5 ♖d8 36.♚xe5 ♚xf6 37.♚xf6+ ♖xf6 38.♖e7 ♖f2±; 34.♚e3!+-]

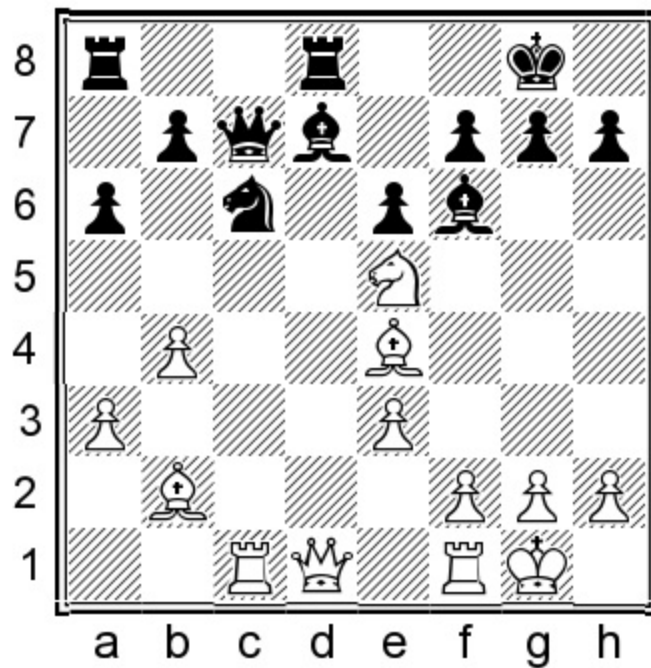
34...♖e7 35.f6 ♘g6

[35...♖f7 36.♖xe5+-; 35...♖e6 36.♖xe5 ♖xe5 37.f7 ♖e1+ 38.♙h2 ♚f8 39.♚f6+ ♚g7 40.f8=♚#]

36.♖xe7 ♘xe7 37.f7 ♚f8 38.♚f6+ ♚g7 39.f8=♚+ ♘g8 40.♚6xg7#

[Tartakower,S-Rubinstein,A Moscow 1925, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

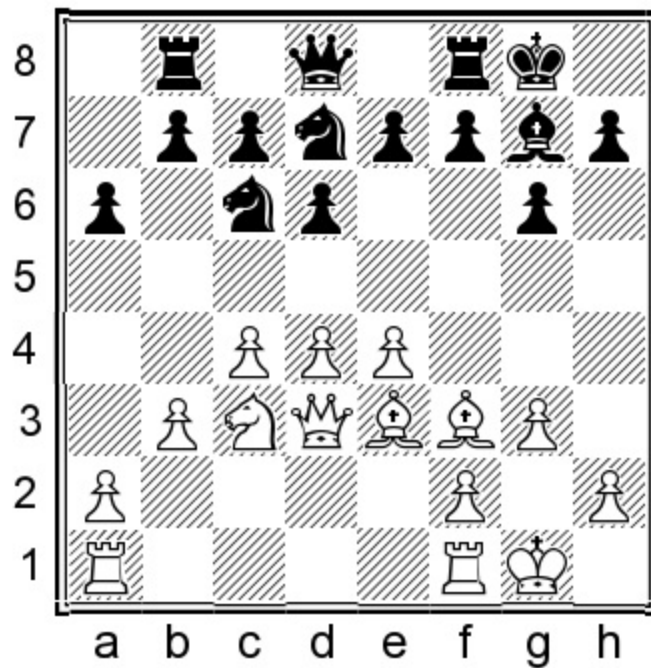
17. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 18. ♚h5+ ♔g8 19. ♚xf7+ ♔h7 20. ♘xc6

[20. ♘g4 ♖xb2 21. ♖c5+-]

20... ♖xb2 21. ♚h5+ ♔g8 22. ♘e7+-

[Gavrikov, V-Bass, L Budapest 1989, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1...?♣

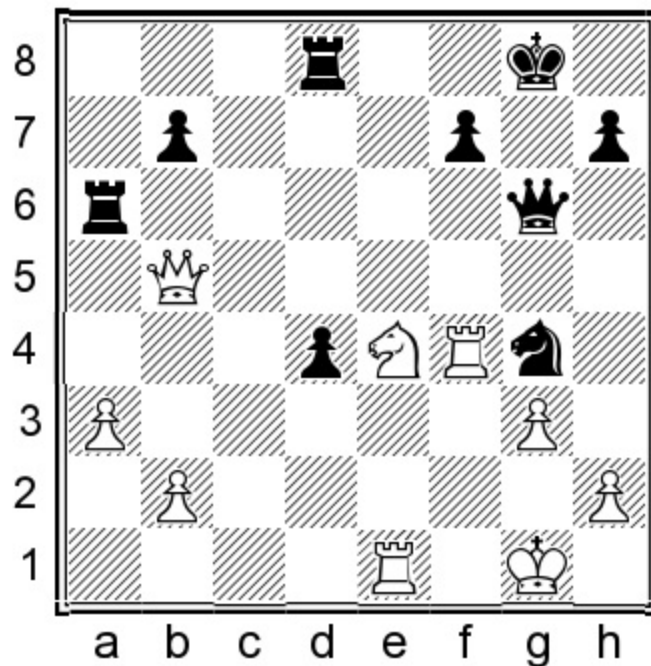
Show/Hide Solution

12...♞de5! 13.♚e2 [13.dxe5 ♞xe5 14.♚e2 ♞xf3+ 15.♚xf3 ♜xc3♣]

13...♞xd4 14.♜xd4 ♞xf3+ 15.♚xf3 ♜xd4♣

[Moaataz,A-Socko,M Chengdu 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 25



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xg4! ♜xg4 2. ♝xa6! ♜xe4! [2...bxa6 3. ♘f6+ ♔g7 4. ♘xg4+-]

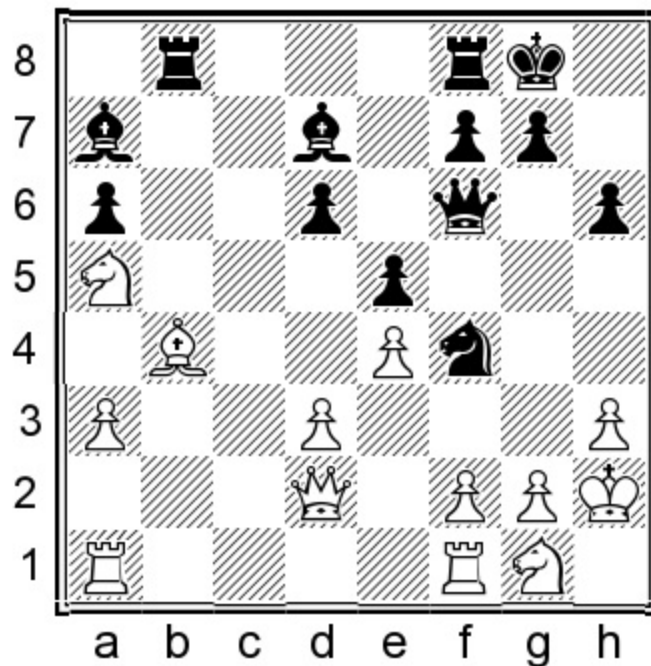
3. ♝a5!! ♜d5 [3...b6 4. ♝g5+ ♝g6 5. ♝xd8+-]

4. ♖e8+ ♜xe8 [4...♔g7 5. ♝xd8+-]

5. ♝xd5+-

[Gavlikovskij-Olejarchuk Warszaw 1963, 1-0]

Exercise 26



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

20...♖g6! 21.f3 [21.g3 ♜xh3! 22.♜xh3 ♜h5 23.♙xd6 ♜xh3+ 24.♙g1 ♜xg3+ 25.♙h1 ♜h3+ 26.♙g1 ♜g4+ 27.♙h2 ♜h5+ 28.♙g1 ♜g6+-+]

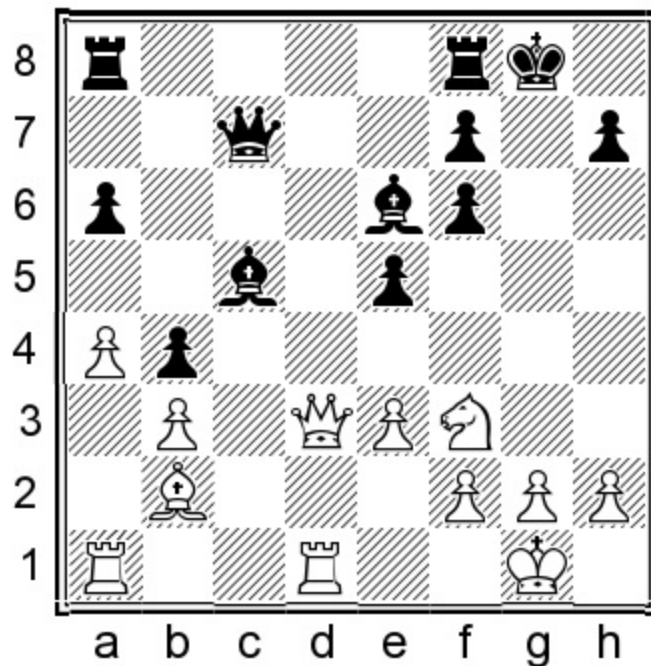
21...♙e3! 22.♜c2 [22.♜xe3 ♜xg2#]

22...♜fc8! [22...♙a4 23.♜a2 ♜xd3+-+]

23.♜c4 d5! 24.exd5 ♜xc4!-+

[Hracek,Z-Kramnik,V Prague 2002, 0-1]

Exercise 27



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

18.♙xe5! fxe5 19.♘g5 ♔g7

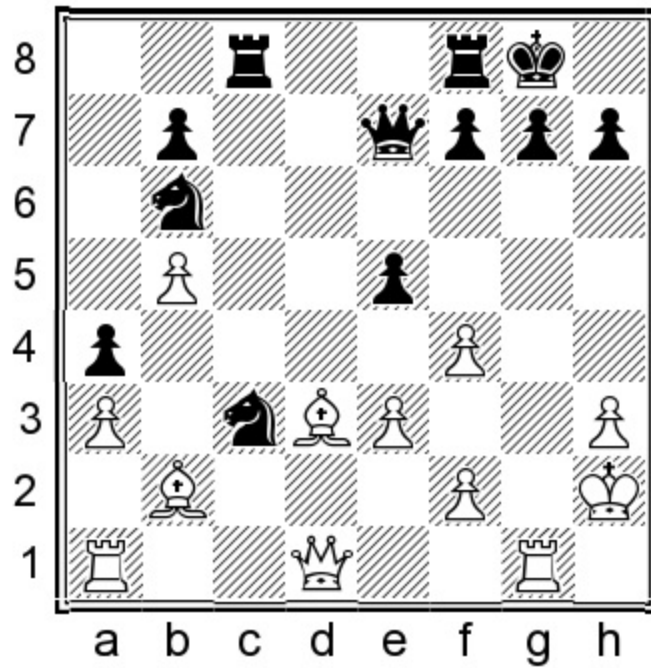
[19...♖fe8 20.♚xh7+ ♔f8 21.♘xe6+ ♖xe6 22.♚h8+ ♔e7 23.♚xa8+-; 19...♖fc8 20.♚xh7+ ♔f8 21.♘xe6+ fxe6 22.♖d7+-]

20.♚xh7+ ♔f6 21.♘e4+ ♔e7 22.♚h4+ f6 23.♖dc1+-

[Flohr,S-Horowitz,I Radio 1945, 1-0]

[23.♖ac1+-]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

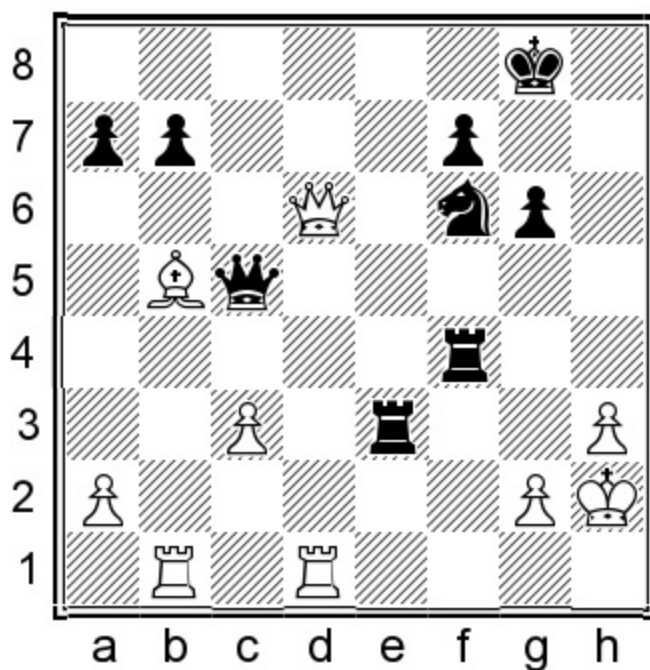
1.♙xc3 ♜xc3 2.♙xh7+! ♔xh7 3.♚h5+ ♔g8 4.♞xg7+! ♔xg7 5.♞g1+ ♔f6 6.f5!! e4 7.♚g5+ ♔e5
8.♚xe7++-

[Matanovic-Nedelkovic Belgrad 1950, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

MATING CONSTRUCTION 4

Exercise 1



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

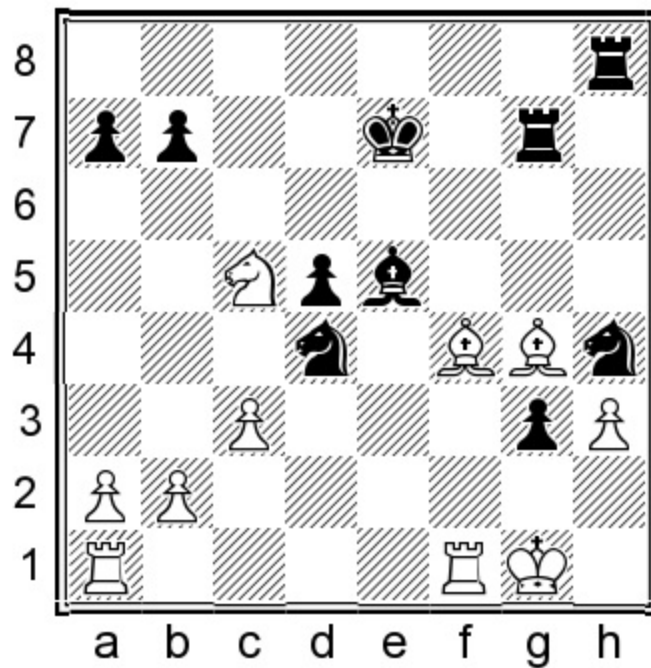
23...♖xh3+! 24.gxh3

[24.♔xh3 ♜h5+ 25.♔g3 ♜h4#]

24...♜f2+ 25.♔h1 ♜f3+ 26.♔h2 ♘g4+! 27.hxg4 ♜f2+ 28.♔h1 ♜h4+! 29.♔g1 ♜xg4+-+

[Arnaudov,G-Onischuk,V Albena 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 2



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

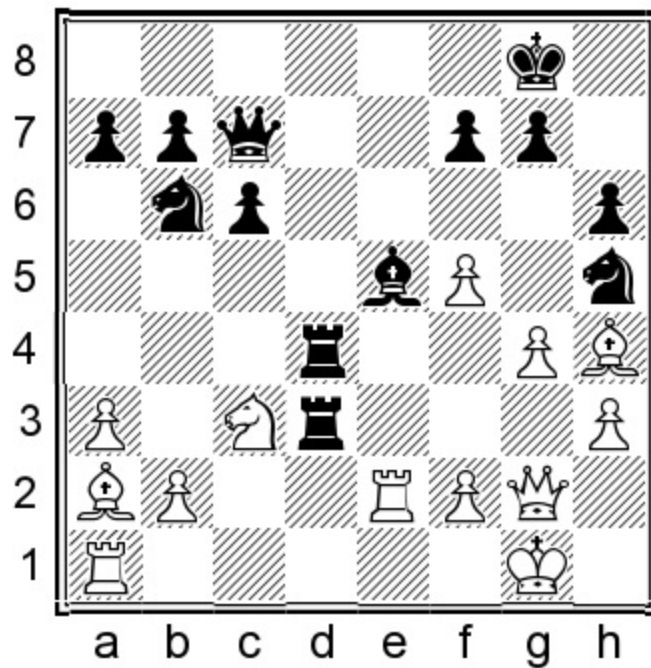
26...♖xg4! 27.hxg4

[27.♙xe5 ♜e2+ 28.♚h1 g2+ 29.♚h2 g1=♙+ 30.♖xg1 ♜f3+ 31.♚h1 ♖xh3+ 32.♙h2 ♖xh2#]

27...♜e2+ 28.♚h1 ♜f5+ 29.♚g2 ♖h2+ 30.♚f3 ♜g1+! 31.♖xg1 ♖f2#

[Nielsen,A-Stany,G Fornebu 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 3



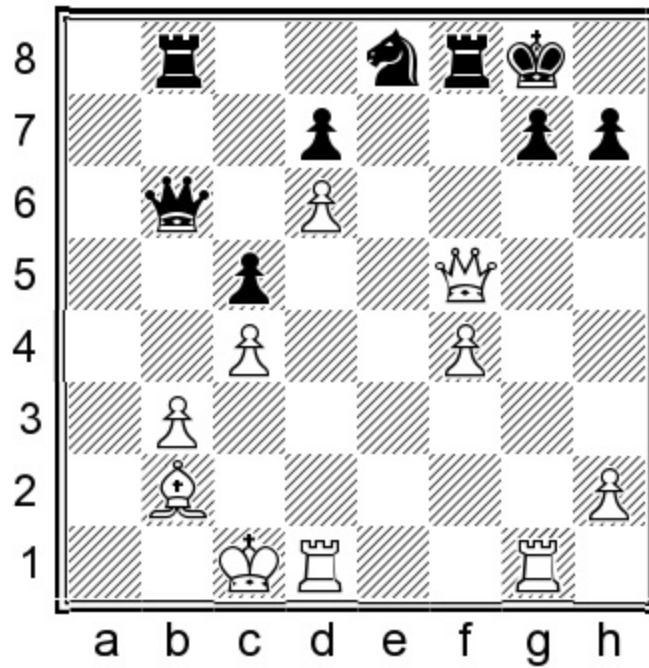
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24.gxh5! ♖xh4 25.f6! ♙xf6 26.♞e8+ ♜h7 27.♞g6+! fxg6 28.♙g8+ ♜h8 29.♙f7+ ♜h7 30.hxg6#

[Krupenski,J-Gelfand,B Tallinn 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

25.♖xg7+! [25.♚d5+! ♔h8 26.♖xg7 ♜xg7 27.♙xg7+ ♔xg7 28.♖g1+ ♔f6 29.♚e5+ ♔f7 30.♚e7#]

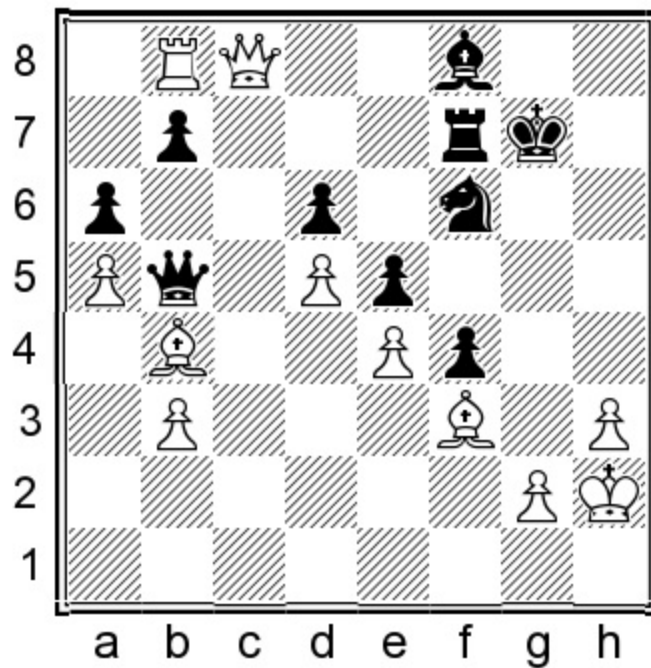
25.♖xg7+! ♜xg7 26.♚e5 ♖f7 [26...♜f5 27.♖g1+ ♔f7 28.♚xf5+ ♔e8 29.♖e1+ ♔d8 30.♚xf8#]

27.♖g1 ♔f8 28.♖xg7 ♚d8 [28...♖xg7 29.♚xg7+ ♔e8 30.♚g8#]

29.♖g8+ ♔xg8 30.♚h8#

[Santos Ruiz,M-Praggnanandhaa R New Delhi 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 5



1.? +-

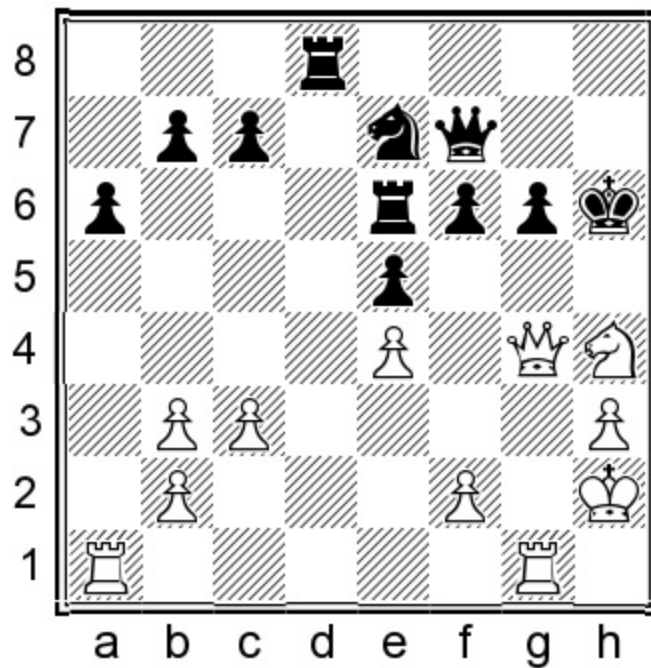
Show/Hide Solution

42.♙xd6! ♜xd6 43.♚h8+ ♖g6 44.♞g8+! ♜xg8 45.♙h5+ ♖g5 46.♙xf7 [46.h4+ ♖xh4 47.♙xf7+ ♖g5 48.♚g7+ ♖h4 49.g3+ fxg3+ 50.♚xg3#]

46...f3 47.♖g3! f2 48.h4#

[Mikhalchishin,A-Belsak,Z Ljubljana 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

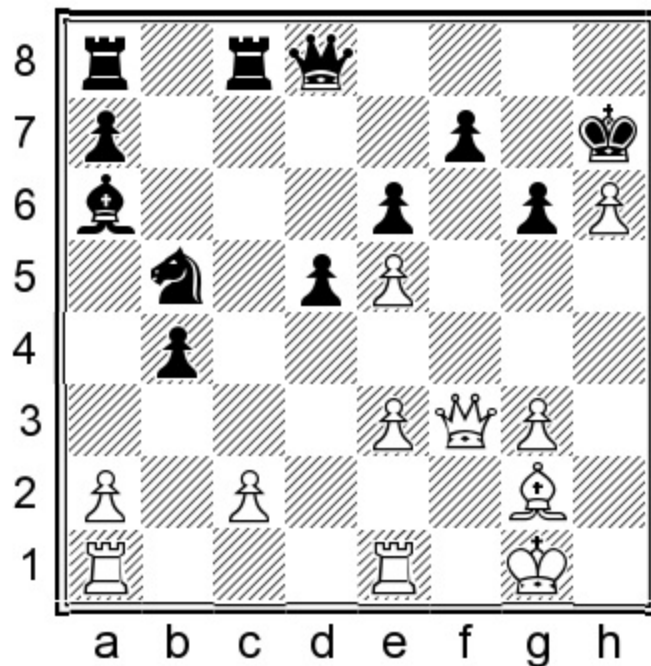
Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖f5+! gxf5 [30... ♗xf5 31. exf5 gxf5 32. ♕xf5 ♜d2 33. ♝a4+-]

31. exf5 ♜c6 32. ♝a4! ♜d2 33. ♕g7+! ♕xg7 34. ♝h4#

[Socko,B-Brunello,S Civitanova Marche 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

28. ♖xf7+! ♔xh6 29. ♕e4!! [29. ♖xe6? ♘c7 30. ♖f7 ♖f8-+]

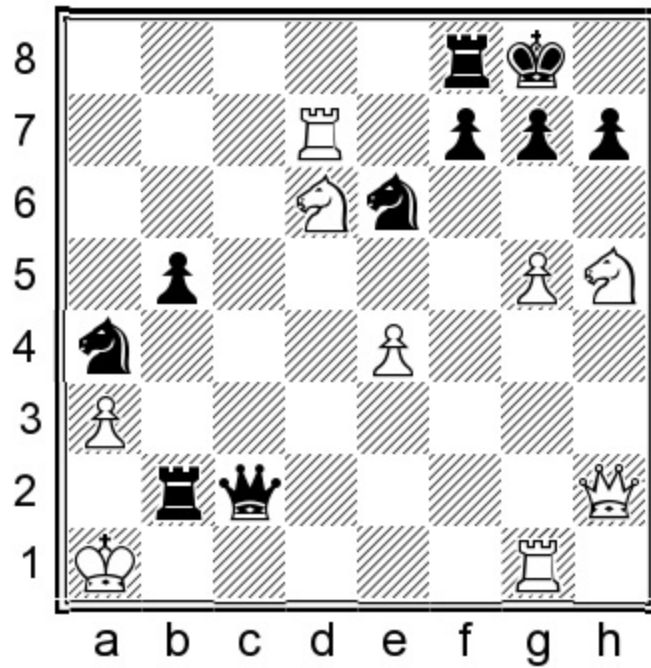
29...dxe4

[29... ♖g8 30. ♖f4+ ♔h7 (30...g5 31. ♖f6+ ♔h5 32. ♕f3+ (32. ♔g2+-) 32...g4 33. ♖e2+-) 31. ♖h4+ ♔g7 32. ♖f6+ ♔h7 33. ♕g2+-]

30. ♖e2! ♖f8 31. ♖h2+ ♔g5 32. ♖h7! ♖h8 33. ♖e7+-

[Grischuk,A-Karjakin,S Beijing 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 9



1.? +-

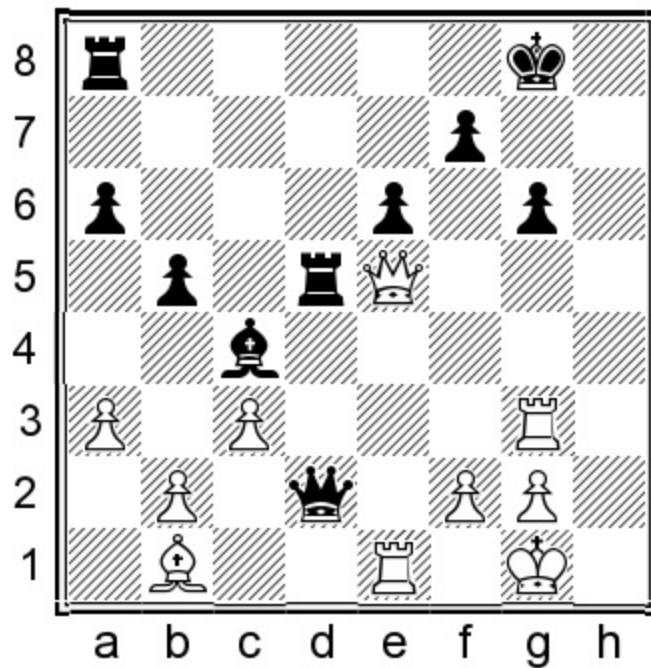
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖f6+! gxf6 2. gxf6+ ♔h8 3. ♖g8+!! ♕xg8 [3... ♖xg8 4. ♖xf7#]

4. ♚g3+ ♔h8 5. ♚g7+!! ♖xg7 6. ♖xf7+!! ♖xf7 7. ♖d8+ ♖e8 8. ♖xe8+ ♖f8 9. ♖xf8#

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

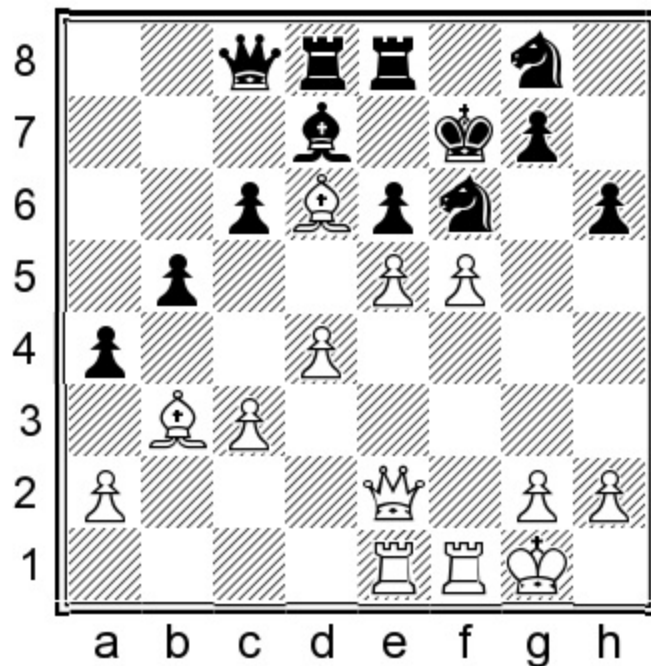
35. ♖xg6+! fxg6 [35...♔f8 36. ♕g7+ ♔e7 37. ♖gxe6+-]

36. ♕xe6+ ♔g7 [36...♔h8 37. ♕f6+ ♔g8 38. ♕xg6+-]

37. ♕xg6+ ♔f8 38. ♕f6+ ♔g8 39. ♕h7+! ♔xh7 40. ♖e7+ ♔g8 41. ♕g7#

[Timoscenko,G-Mikhalchishin,A Tbilisi 1974, 1-0]

Exercise 11



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖h5+!! [22. exf6! ♜xf6 23. fxe6+ ♗xe6 24. ♖xf6+!+-]

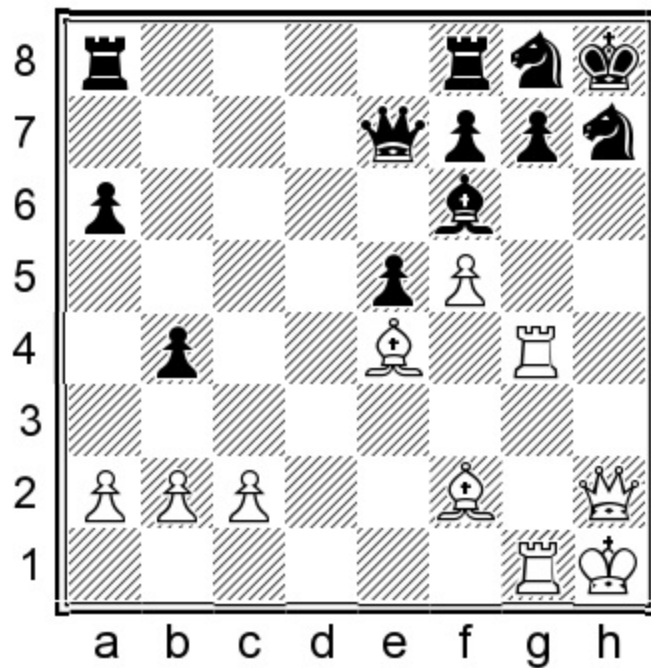
22. ♖h5+!! ♜xh5 23. fxe6+ ♔g6 24. ♗c2+ ♔g5 25. ♖f5+! ♔g6

[25... ♔g4 26. h3+ ♔g3 27. ♖e3+ ♔h4 28. ♖e4+ ♜f4 29. ♖exf4+ ♔g3 30. ♖g4#; 25... ♔h4 26. ♖e4+ ♜f4 27. ♖exf4#]

26. ♖f6+ ♔g5 27. ♖g6+ ♔h4 28. ♖e4+ ♜f4 29. ♖xf4+ ♔h5 30. g3 ♖xe6 31. ♖h4#

[Alekhine, A-Prat, J Paris 1913, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

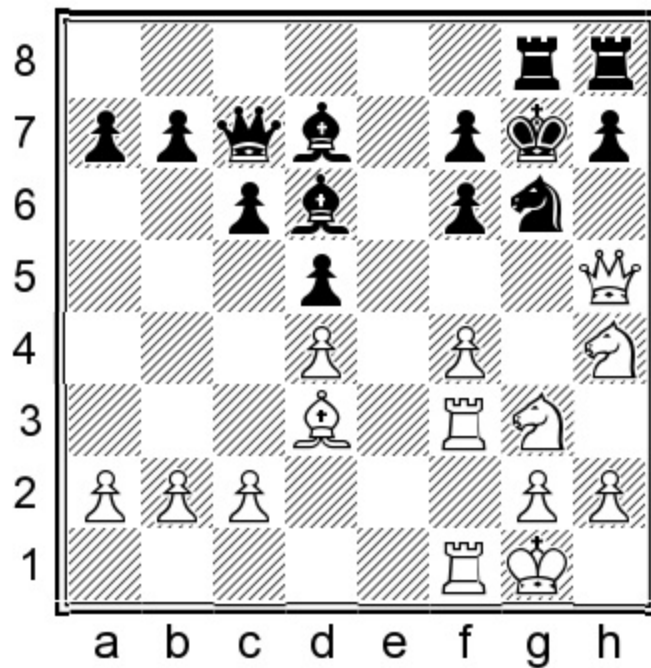
31. ♖xg7! ♕xg7

[31... ♕h4 32. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 33. f6+ ♔h8 34. ♖xh4+ ♖h6 35. ♖xh6#]

32. ♖xh7+!! ♔xh7 33. f6+ ♔h6 34. ♕e3+ ♔h5 35. ♕f3+ ♔h4 36. ♕f2+ ♔h3 37. ♕g4#

[Shuvalova, P-Afonasieva, A Renaissance Hotel and Convent 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

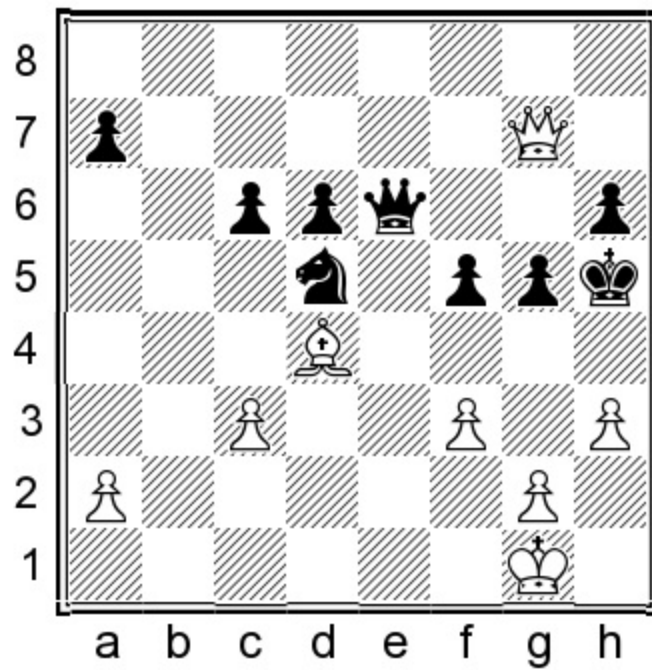
Show/Hide Solution

17.♖h6+!! ♔xh6 18.♗hf5+ ♕xf5 19.♗xf5+ ♔h5 20.g4+ [20.♖h3+ ♔g4 (20...♗h4 21.♖xh4+ ♔g6 22.♖h6#) 21.♗h6#]

20...♔xg4 21.♖g3+ ♔h5 22.♕e2#

[Mackenzie,G-Mason,J Paris 1878, 1-0]

Exercise 14



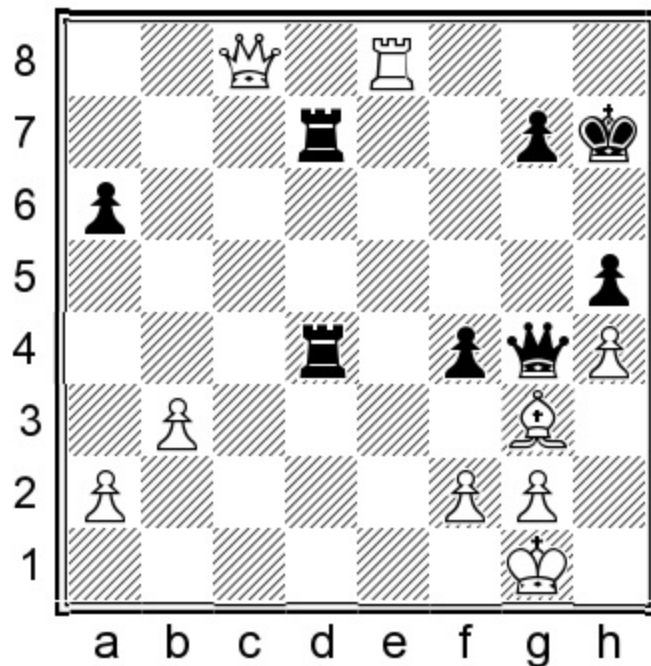
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31.g4+! fxg4 32.hxg4+ ♔h4 33.♙xh6+!! ♚xh6 34.♕h2+-

[Schlechter,C-Meitner,P Vienna 1899, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

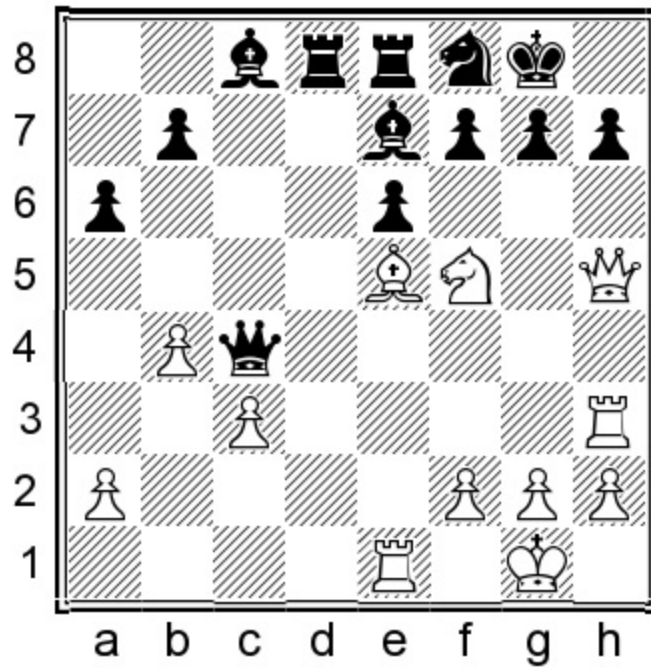
35...♖d1+

[35...fxg3 36.♖h8+! (36.fxg3? ♖f5? (36...♖d1+ 37.♔h2 ♖h3+!!) 37.♖f8 ♖e6? (37...♖d1+ 38.♔h2 ♖h3+ 39.gxh3 ♖7d2+ 40.♖f2 ♖xf2#) 38.♖e8 ♖f7? 39.♖f8 ♖e6? 40.♖e8 ♖d5? 41.♖h8+ ♔g6 42.♖xa6+ ♖d6 43.♖c8 ♖e6 44.♖c3 ♖d3 45.♖a5 ♖e3+ 46.♔h1) 36...♔g6 37.♖e8+ ♖f7 38.♖c6+ ♔f5 39.♖c5+=]

35...♖d1+ 36.♔h2 fxg3+ 37.fxg3 ♖h3+!! 38.gxh3 ♖7d2+ 39.♖e2 ♖xe2#

[Hug,W-Kavalek,L Haifa 1976, 0-1]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

22. ♖h6!! ♗g4 23. ♖g3 ♜f6

[23...exf5 24. ♖xg7+ ♗xg7 25. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 26. ♖xf7+ ♔g8 27. ♖g7+ ♔h8 28. ♖g6+ ♜f6 29. ♜xf6#]

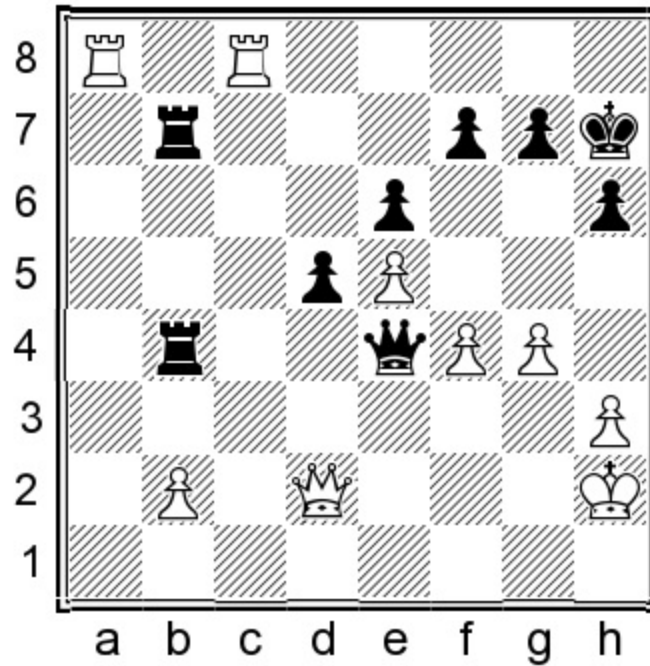
24. ♜xf6 exf5 [24...gxf6 25. ♖xh6#]

25. ♖xg7+! ♗xg7 26. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 27. ♖g4#

[Schmittziel,E-Ernst,T Gausdal 1987, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 17



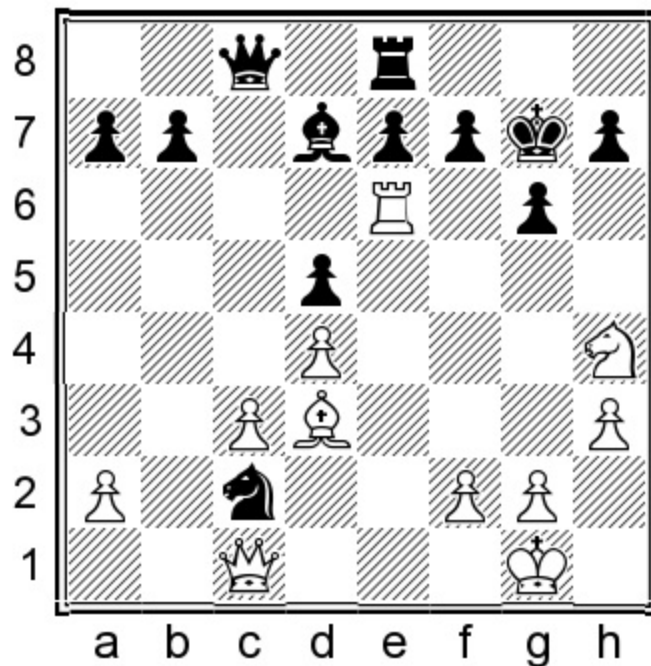
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

49. ♖h8+ ♔g6 50. f5+!! exf5 51. ♕xh6+!! gxh6 52. ♖ag8#

[Bernstein, O-Kotov, A Groningen 1946, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖h6+!! [1. ♘f5+-]

1. ♖h6+!! ♔xh6 [1... ♖g8 2. ♘xg6 ♙xe6 3. ♘xe7+ ♜xe7 4. ♖xh7+ ♔f8 5. ♖h8#]

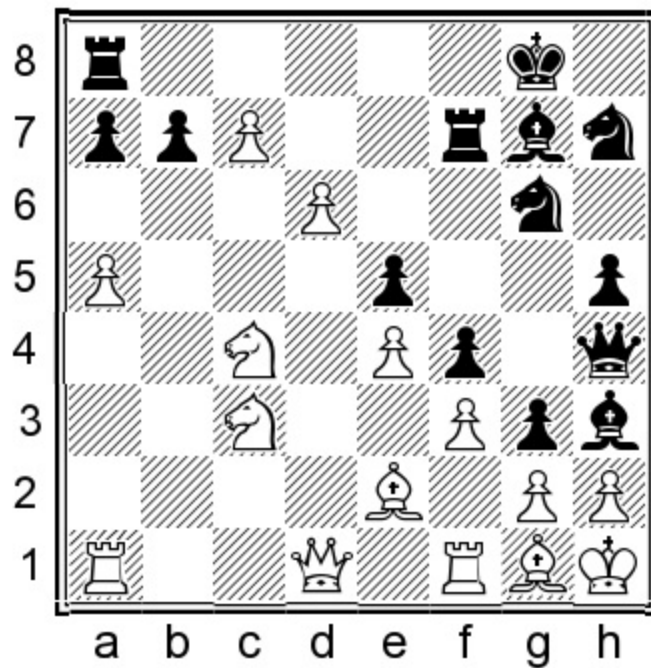
2. ♘f5+ ♔h5

[2... ♖g5 3. h4+ ♔f4 (3... ♖g4 4. f3+ ♔f4 5. ♔f2 ♙xe6 6. g3#) 4. g3+ ♔g4 5. f3+ ♔h5 (5... ♔xf3 6. ♙e2#) 6. g4#]

3. f4!! gxf5 4. ♙e2+ ♔h4 5. ♔h2! ♜g8 6. ♜h6#

[Popov,N-Schmutter L Moscow 1988, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1...? -+

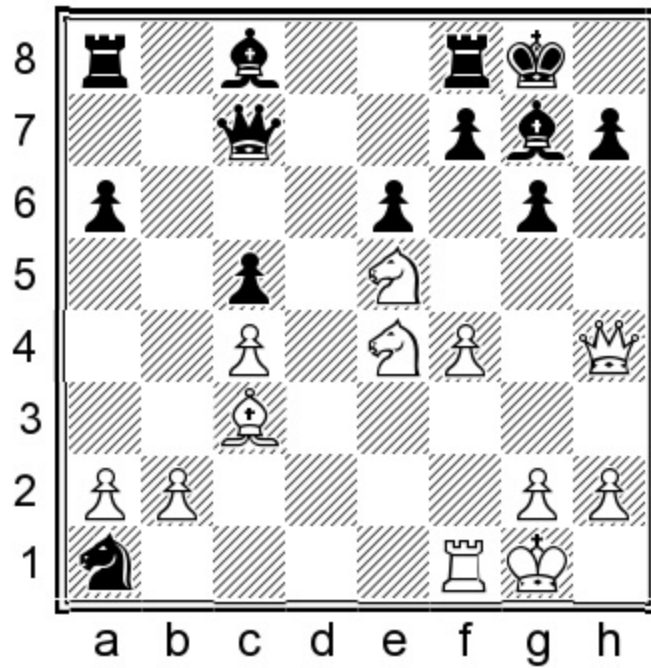
Show/Hide Solution

1...♙xg2+! 2.♖xg2 ♜h3+!! 3.♖xh3 [3.♖h1 g2#]

3...♜g5+ 4.♖g2 ♜h4+ 5.♖h1 g2#

[Ftacnik,L-Cvitan,O BRD 1997, 0-1]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

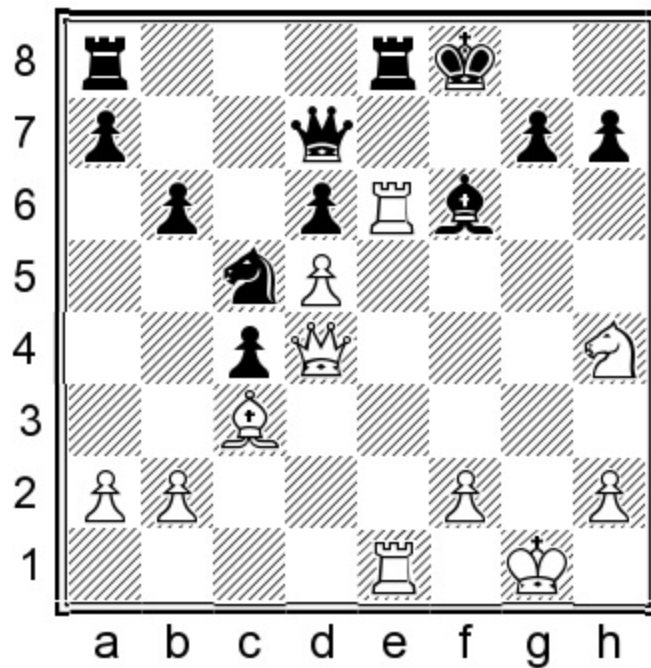
Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖f6+! ♙xf6 20. ♜xf6 ♚d8 [20...h5 21. ♘xg6 fxg6 22. ♜xg6+ ♚g7 23. ♜xg7#]

21. ♜h8+!! ♔xh8 22. ♘xf7+ ♔g8 23. ♘h6#

[Bolacky,J-Rode,T Litomysl 2010, 1-0]

Exercise 21



1.? +-

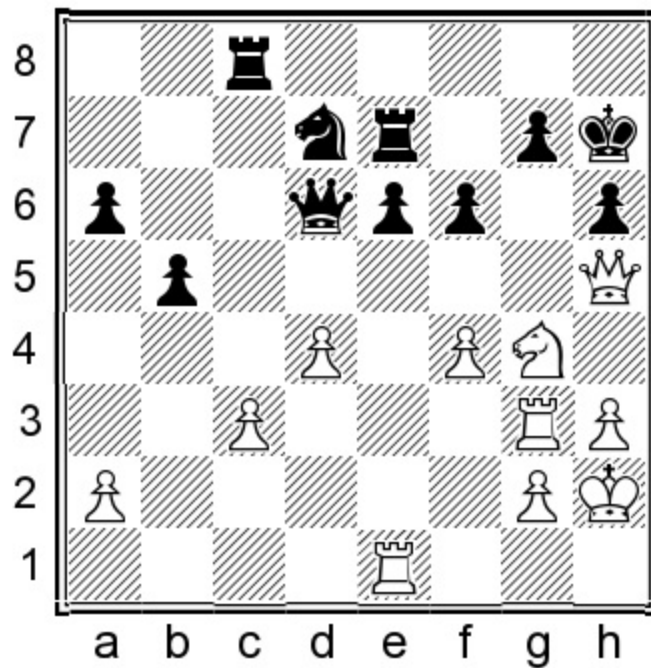
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf6+! gxf6 2. ♗xf6+ ♔f7 3. ♘g6+! [3. ♗h8+ ♔g8+ 4. ♘g6+-]

3...hxg6 4. ♗h8+ ♔g8 5. ♗h6+ ♔f7 6. ♗f4#

[Tomas-Markvell Corr, 1-0]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

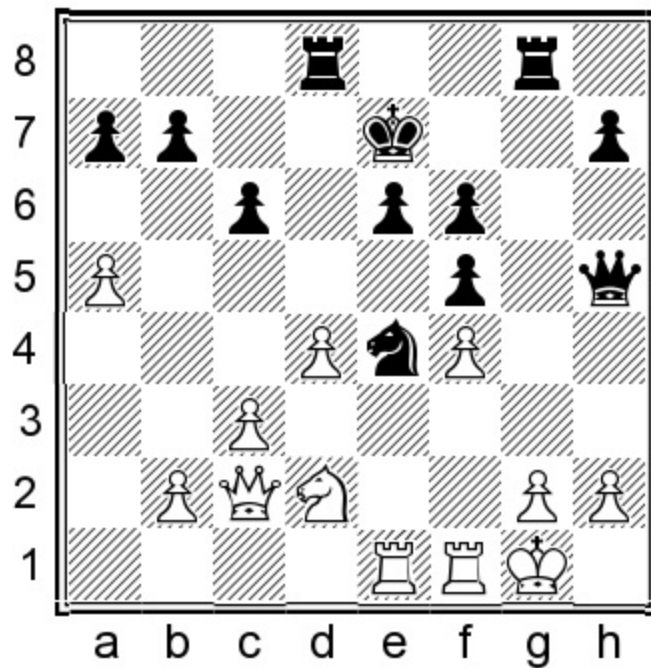
28. ♖xh6! [28. ♖f1? ♖g8↗]

28. ♖xh6! gxh6 29. ♖xe6!! ♚xe6 [29... ♖xe6 30. ♚f7+ ♔h8 31. ♚g7#]

30. ♖g6 ♔h8 31. ♖xh6+ ♔g7 32. ♚g6+ ♔f8 33. ♖h8+ ♚g8 34. ♚xg8#

[Tolush, A-Bannik, A Riga 1958 URS-ch, 1/2]

Exercise 23



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

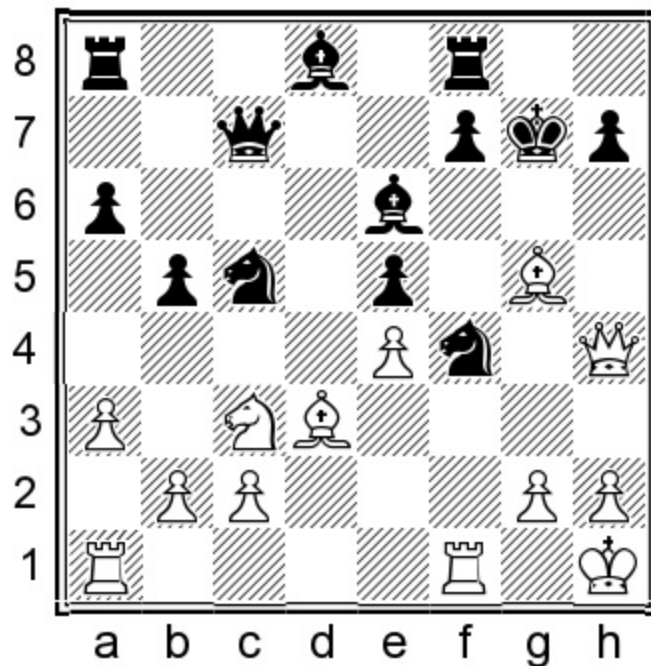
23...♖xg2+! 24.♔xg2 ♜g8+ 25.♔h1 ♘g3+ 26.♔g2 ♘xf1+ 27.♔xf1 ♚xh2 28.♖xe6+! ♔d7!
 [28...♔xe6?? 29.♚b3+ ♔d6 30.♚xg8 ♚xd2=]

29.♖d6+! ♔c7!-+

[Jacobsen,E-Saemisch,F Copenhagen 1923, 0-1]

[29...♔xd6 30.♘c4++-]

Exercise 24



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

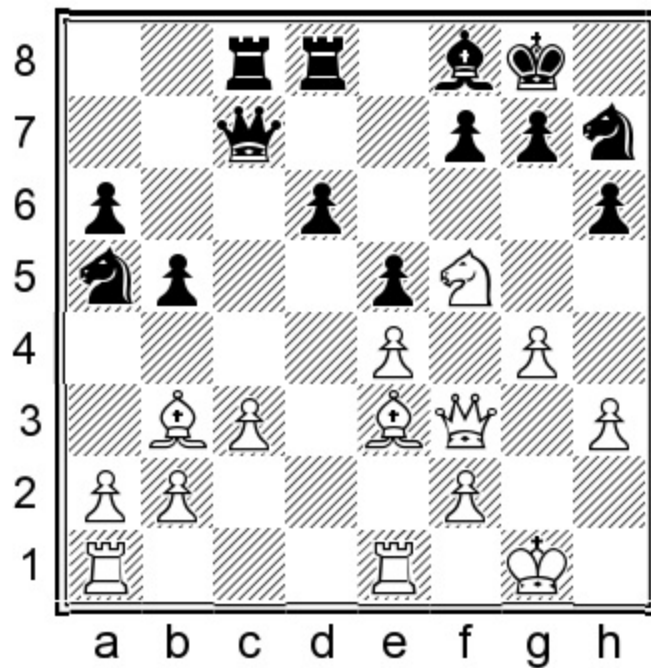
19. ♖xf4! exf4 20. ♗h6+ [20.e5? f5!-+]

20... ♔g8 21. ♕f6! ♕xf6 22.e5! ♘xd3 23.exf6 ♘f2+ 24. ♔g1 ♘h3+! 25. ♔f1! [25.gxh3? ♗c5+ 26. ♔h1 ♗c6+=]

25... ♕c4+ 26. ♘e2 ♕xe2+ 27. ♔e1!+-

[Ravinsky,G-Ilivitzki,G Riga 1952, 1-0]

Exercise 25



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

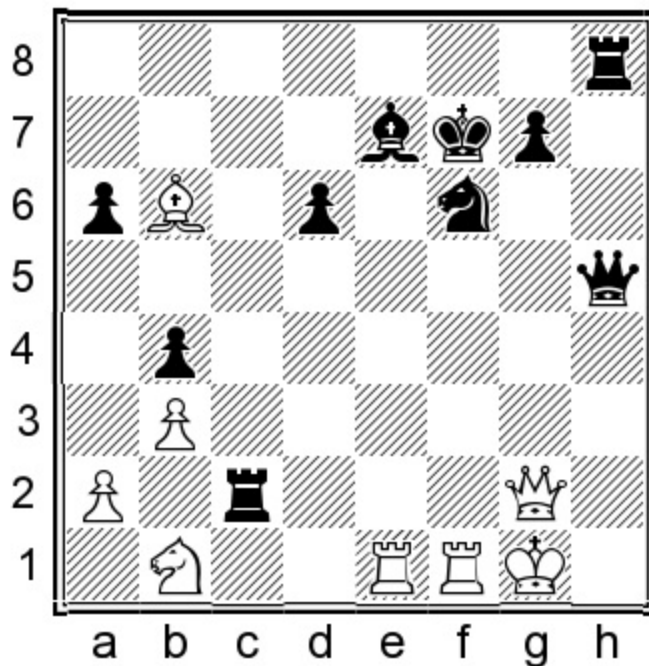
24. ♖b6! ♜xb6 25. ♘xh6+ ♔h8 [25...gxf6 26. ♜xf7+ ♔h8 27. ♜g8#]

26. ♘xf7+ ♔g8 27. ♘xe5+ ♘xb3 [27...d5 28. ♖xd5+ ♜xd5 29. ♜f7+ ♔h8 30. exd5+- (30. ♘g6+-)]

28. ♜f7+ ♔h8 29. ♘g6#

[Kinmark, O-Oliviera, J Havana 1966, 1-0]

Exercise 26



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

32.♖xe7+! ♔xe7 33.♙xg7+ ♔e6 34.♖xf6+!

[34.♙xf6+?? ♔d7 35.♙g7+ ♔c6 (35...♔e6 36.♖f6+ ♔d5 37.♘c3+!! ♖xc3) 36.♙c7+ ♔d5 37.♙b7+ ♖c6-+]

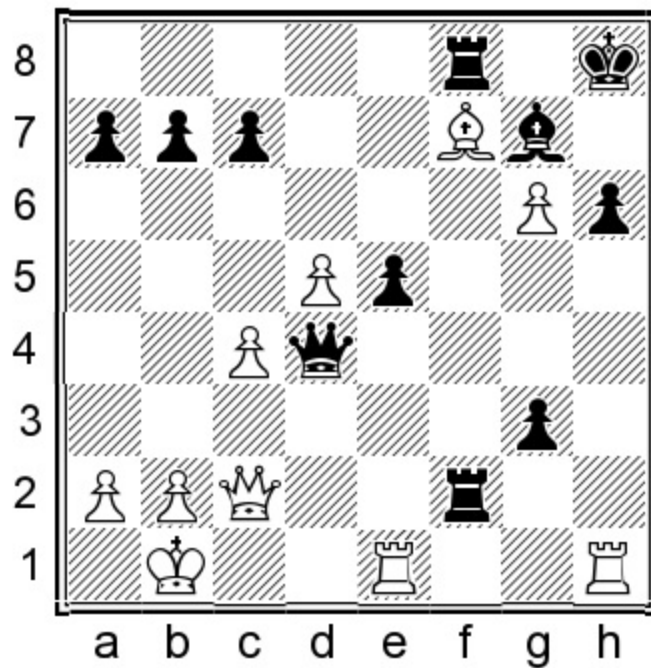
34...♔d5 35.♘c3+!! ♖xc3

[35...bxc3 36.♙b7+ ♔e5 37.♙e7+ ♔d5 38.♖xd6#]

36.♙g2+ ♔e5 37.♙d4+! ♔xd4 38.♖xd6+ ♔e5 39.♙d5+ ♔f4 40.♙d4+ ♔g3 41.♙f2+ ♔g4 42.♖d4++-

[Perez Perez,F-Najdorf,M Malaga 1961, 0-1]

Exercise 27



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

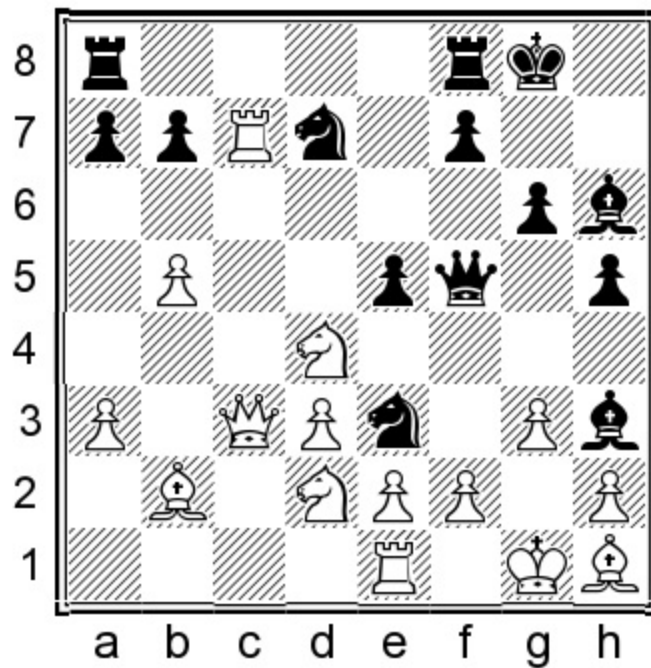
25.♖xh6+!! ♕xh6 26.g7+ ♕xg7

[26...♔xg7 27.♖g6+ ♔h8 28.♖xh6#]

27.♖h1+ ♖h2 28.♖xh2+ gxh2 29.♖xh2+ ♕h6 30.♖xh6#

[Adly,A-Potapov,P St Petersburg 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 28



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

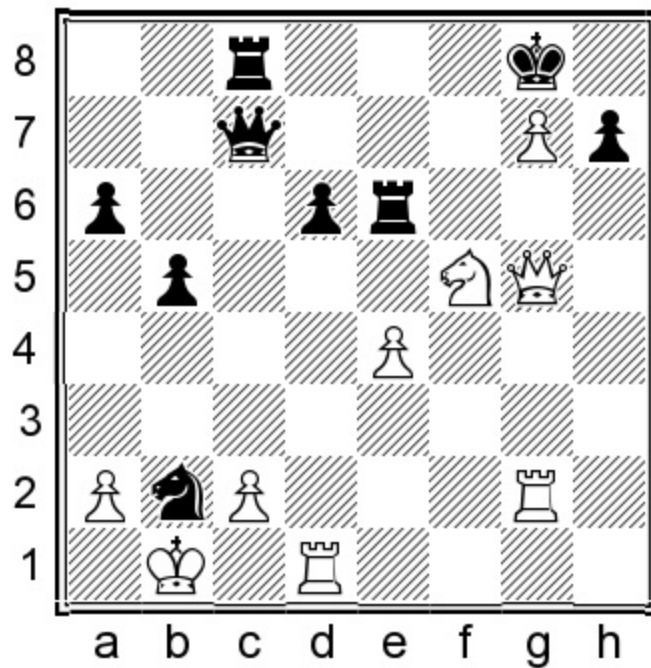
21...♚xf2+!! 22.♘xf2 ♖g4+ 23.♘f3 [23.♘g1 ♕e3#]

23...e4+ 24.♘xe4 [24.♖xe4 ♖de5#; 24.dxe4 ♖de5#]

24...♖df6+ 25.♘f3 ♖e5+ 26.♘f2 ♖fg4+ 27.♘g1 ♕e3#

[O'Kelly de Galway,A-Devos,P Brussels 1937, 0-1]

Exercise 29



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

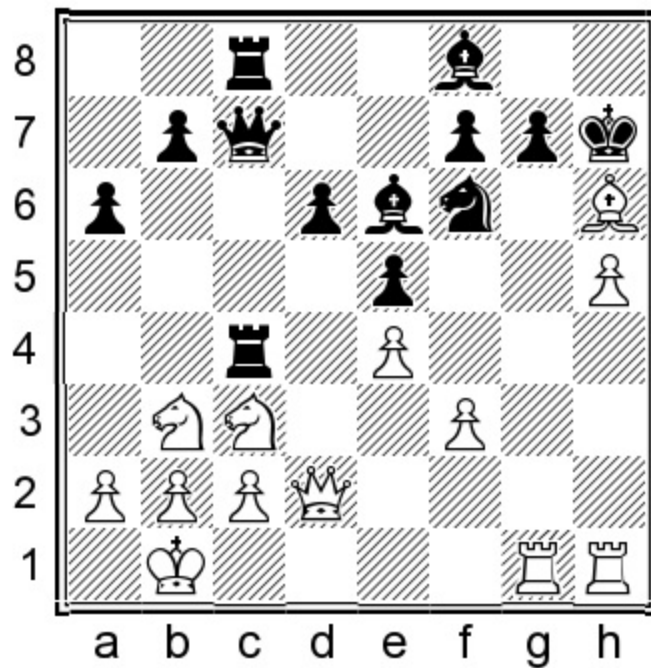
41. ♘h6+! ♜xh6 42. ♚xh6 ♛c4!?

[42... ♔f7 43. g8=♚+ ♜xg8 44. ♞f1+ ♔e7 45. ♚xh7+ ♔e6 46. ♚f5+ ♔e7 47. ♚f7+ ♔d8 48. ♞xg8#]

43. ♚xh7+! ♔xh7 44. g8=♚+! ♚xg8 45. ♞h1#

[Zawadzka, J-Kovalev, A Litomysl 2004, 1-0]

Exercise 30



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

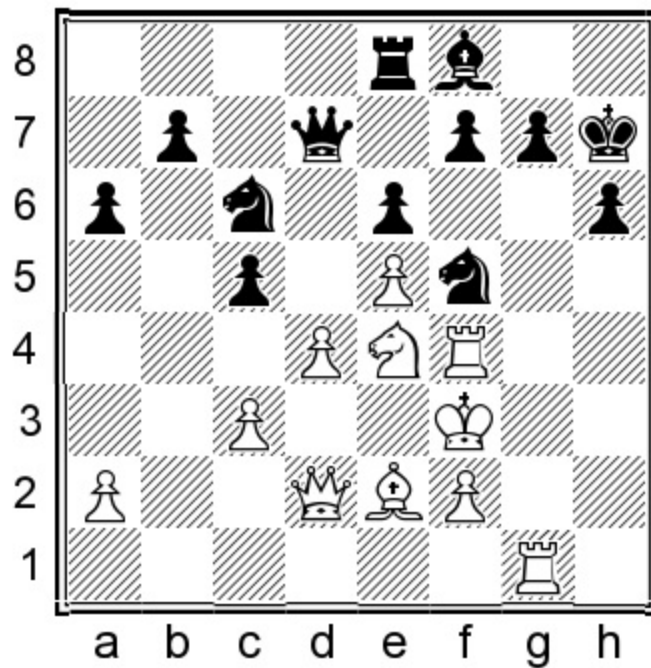
21.♙xg7! ♜xg7 22.h6! ♜f8! [22...♜h8 23.♞g7+ ♜xg7 24.hxg7+ ♜g8 25.♞h8+ ♜xg7 26.♞h6#]

23.♞g5! ♜g4 [23...♞e7 24.♞g7+!! ♜xg7 25.hxg7+ ♜g8 26.♞h8#]

24.♞xg4 ♜xg4 25.♜d5+-

[Ehlvest,J-Popovych,O Philadelphia 2001, 1-0]

Exercise 31



1.? +-

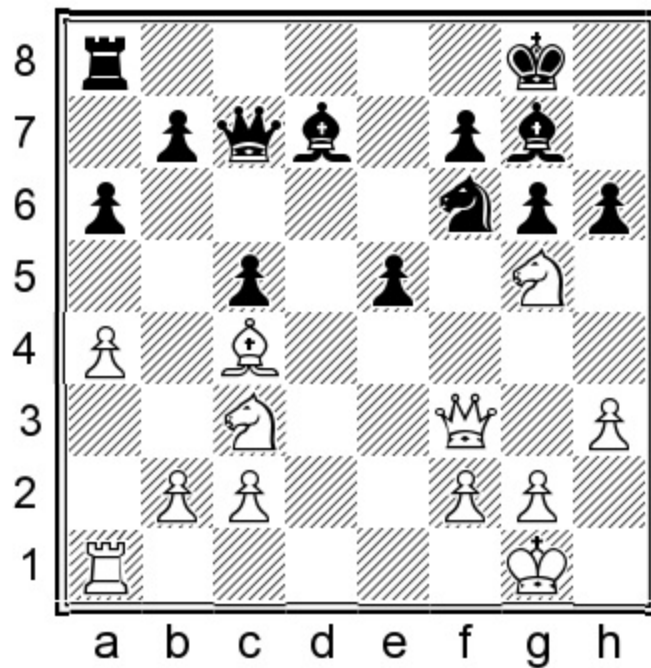
Show/Hide Solution

1.♞xf5! exf5 2.♚xh6+!! ♔xh6 [2...gxh6 3.♘f6+ ♔h8 4.♞g8#]

3.♞h1+ ♔g6 4.♘f4!! ♞e6 5.♞h8!! fxe4 6.♙h5#

[Rossolimo-NN Paris, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖d5! ♜xd5 20. ♙xf7+ ♔h8 21. ♙xg6! ♜f6 [21...hxg5 22. ♙h5+ ♔g8 23. ♙xd5+- ♙e6 24. ♙xe6+ ♔f8 25. ♖a3+-]

22. ♜f7+ ♔g8 23. ♜xh6+! ♔h8 24. ♜f7+ ♔g8 25. ♜xe5+ [25. ♖a3+-]

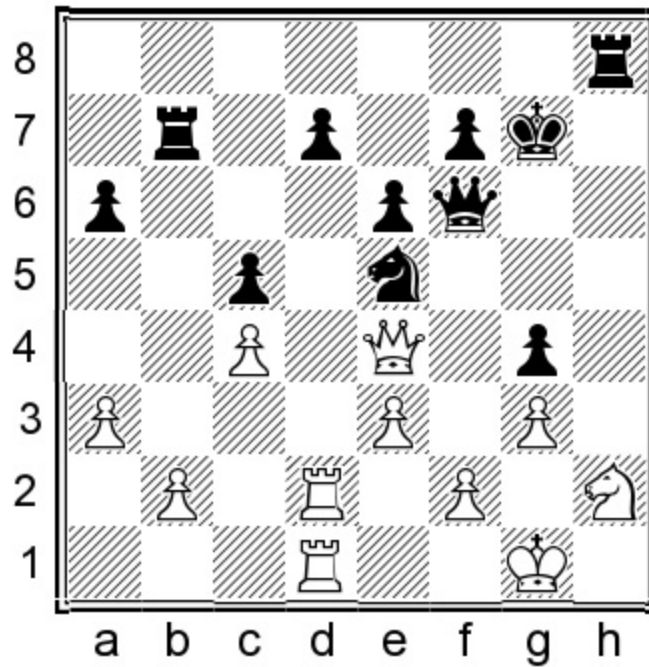
25... ♔h8 26. ♙g3+-

[Gonzalez Garcia, J-Speelman, J Turin 2006, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

TYPICAL MATING MOTIFS AND ATTACKS 4

Exercise 1



1...? -+

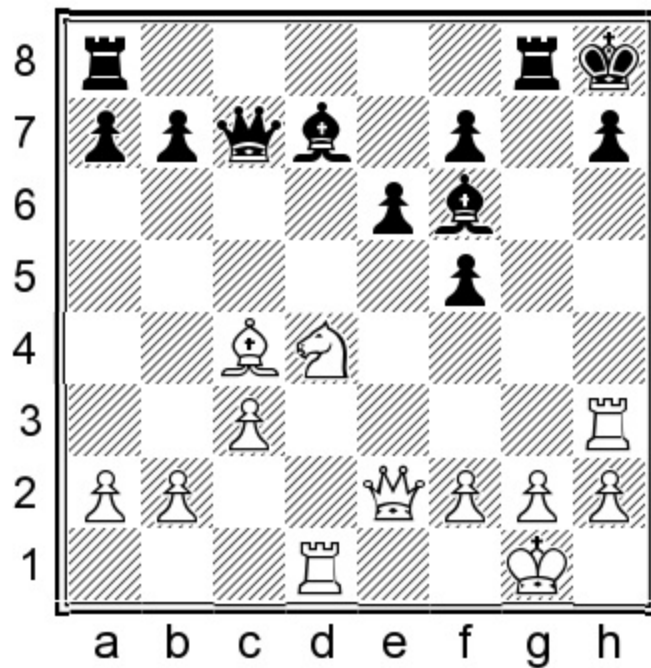
Show/Hide Solution

28...♖xh2! 29.♔xh2 ♚h6+ 30.♔g1 ♜f3+ 31.♔f1 ♚h1+ 32.♔e2 ♜g1+!! 33.♔d3 [33...♖xg1 ♚xe4-+]

33...♖b3+!-+

[Jaracz,P-Cornette,M Schwaebisch Hall 2015, 0-1]

Exercise 2



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖xf5! [20. ♕h5? ♜g7≐]

20. ♖xf5! exf5 21. ♜xh7+!! ♔xh7 22. ♕h5+ ♔g7 23. ♕xf7+ ♔h6 24. ♕xf6+

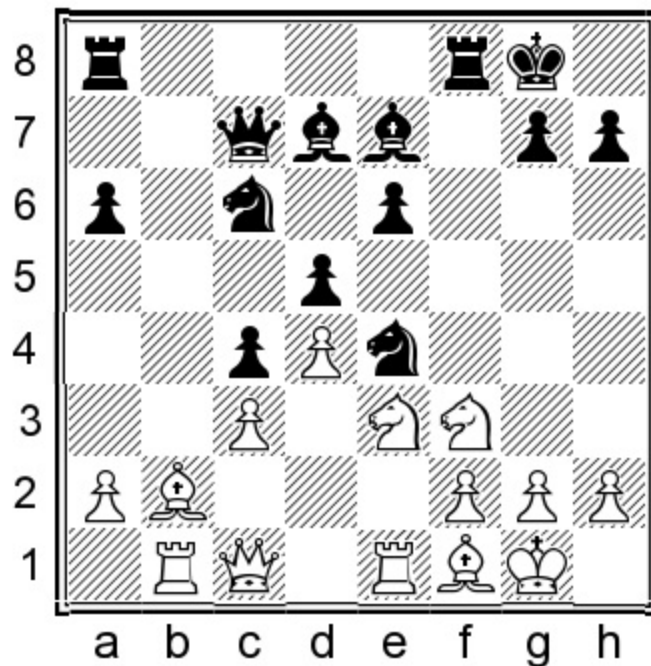
[24. ♜xd7 ♕xd7 25. ♕xd7 ♜ad8 26. ♕xf5 ♜d1+ 27. ♔f1+-]

24... ♜g6 25. ♕h4+ ♔g7 26. ♕e7+ ♔h6 27. ♜xd7 ♕xc4 28. ♕h7+ [28. ♕e3+ f4 29. ♕e7+-]

28... ♔g5 29. ♜d4+-

[Najer,E-Timofeev,A Sochi 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 3



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

20...♖xf2! 21.♔xf2 ♚xh2 22.♔e2

[22...♞d1 ♕h4+ 23.♔e2 ♞xf3 24.♔xf3 ♚g3+ 25.♔e2 ♚f2#]

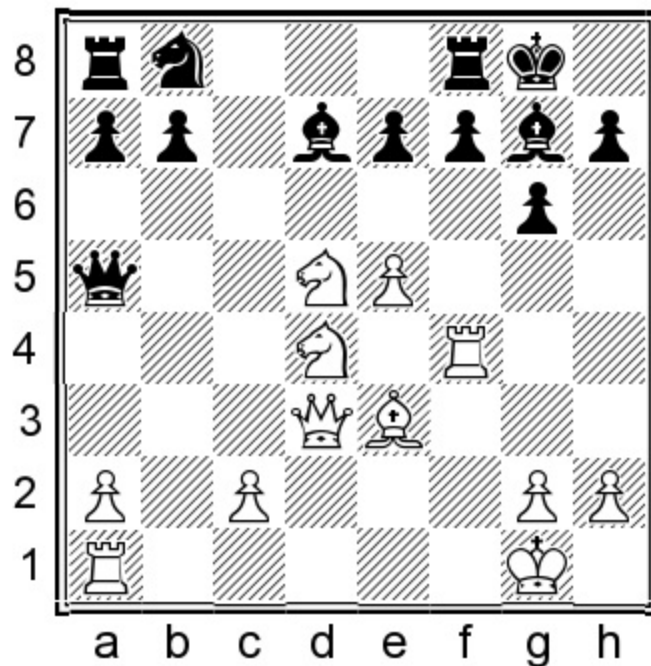
22...♞xf3! 23.♖g4

[23.♔xf3 ♞f8+ 24.♔e2 ♚h4! (24...♚g3-+) 25.♔d1 ♖b4! 26.cxb4 ♕a4+ 27.♖c2 ♕g5-+]

23...♞af8! 24.♖xh2 ♖xd4+ 25.cxd4 ♞f2+ 26.♔d1 ♕a4+ 27.♚c2 ♕xc2+ 28.♔c1 ♕g5+ 29.♞e3 ♕xe3#

[Minasian,A-Sokolov,A Linares 1999, 0-1]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

16. ♖xe7+! ♔h8 17.e6! ♚d8

[17...fxe6 18. ♖h4!+-; 17...♙xe6? 18. ♖xe6 fxe6 19. ♖h4 ♙xa1 20. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 21. ♚xg6+]

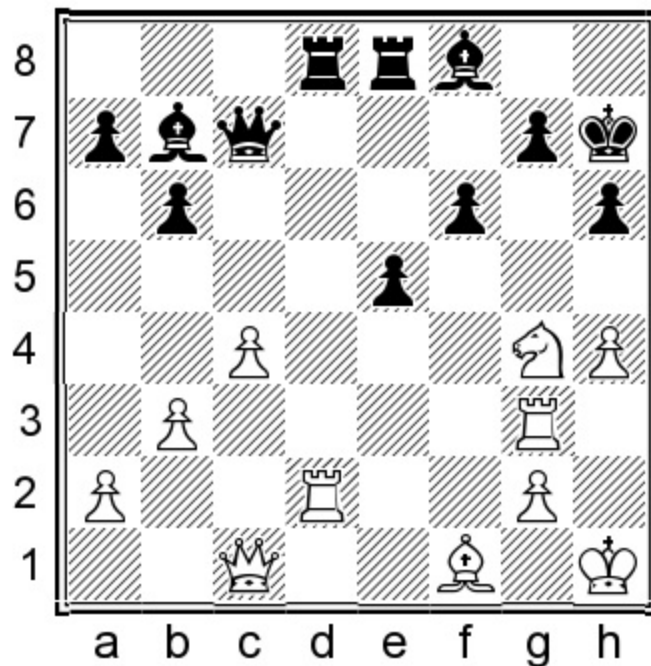
18. ♖af1! ♚xe7 19. ♖xf7 ♖xf7 20. ♖xf7 ♚e8 [20...♚b4 21.c3+-]

21. ♖f5! [21. ♚c3+-]

21...gxf5 [21...♚xe6 22. ♖xg7 ♚xf5 23. ♙d4!; 21...♙xe6 22. ♖xg7+-]

22. ♙d4+- [Beliavsky,A-Kupreichik,V USSR 1973, 1-0]

Exercise 5



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♖d7!! ♜xd7

[1...♙xd7 2.♚xh6+ ♔g8 (2...gxh6 3.♘xf6+ ♔h8 4.♞g8#) 3.♘xf6+ ♔f7 4.♚g6+ ♔e6 5.♘d5#]

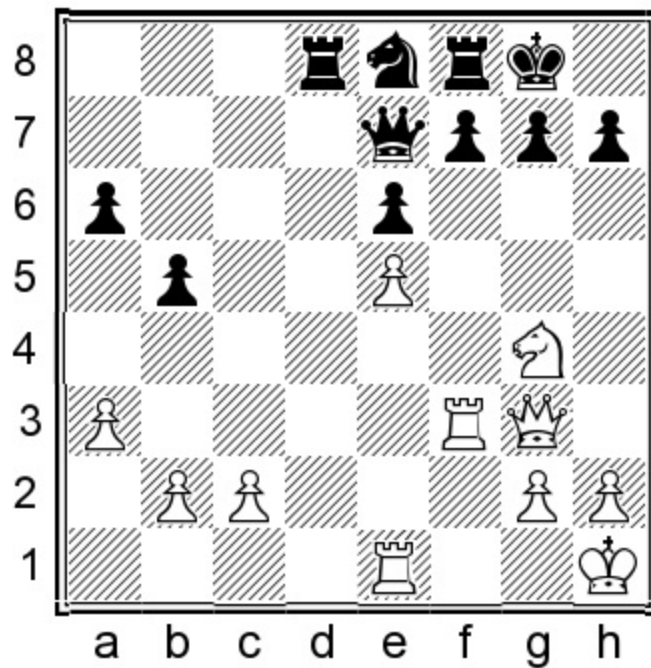
2.♚xh6+!! gxh6?

[2...♔g8! 3.♘xf6+! ♔f7 4.♚g6+! ♔e7 5.♚xe8+! ♔xf6 6.♞g6+ ♔f5 7.♚e6+ ♔e4 8.♚g4+ ♔e3 9.♚e2+! ♔d4 10.♚d2+ ♔e4 11.♚f2+-]

3.♘xf6+ ♔h8 4.♞g8#

[Training position, 1-0]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♘f6+! ♔h8 [1... ♘xf6 2. exf6+-]

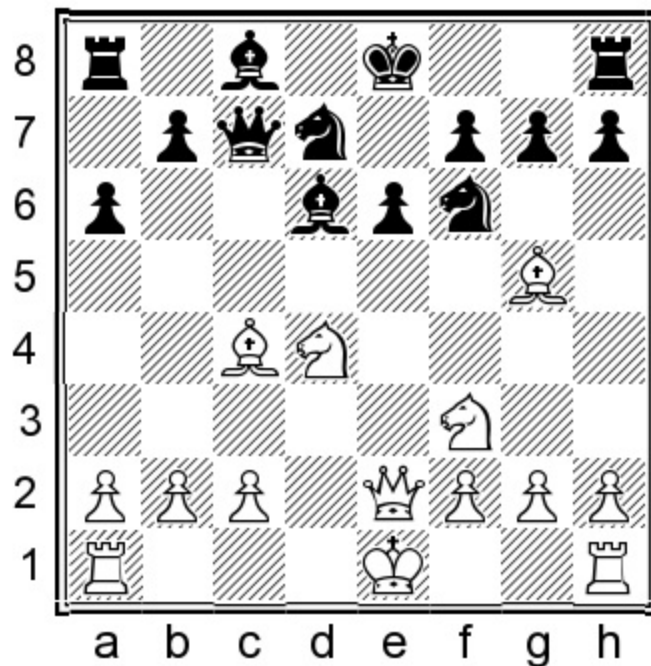
2. ♚h4! h6 [2... gxf6 3. ♖h3+-; 2... ♘xf6 3. exf6 gxf6 4. ♖h3+-]

3. ♚e4! ♘xf6 [3... gxf6 4. ♚h4! ♔h7 5. ♖h3+-]

4. exf6 ♚d6 5. ♖d3 ♚b6 6. fxg7+ ♔xg7 7. ♖g3+ ♔h8 8. ♚f4+-

[Zhigalko,S-Bukavshin,I Baku 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

12. ♖xe6! [12. ♗xe6?! 0-0⇌]

12. ♖xe6! fxe6 13. ♕xe6+ ♗e7

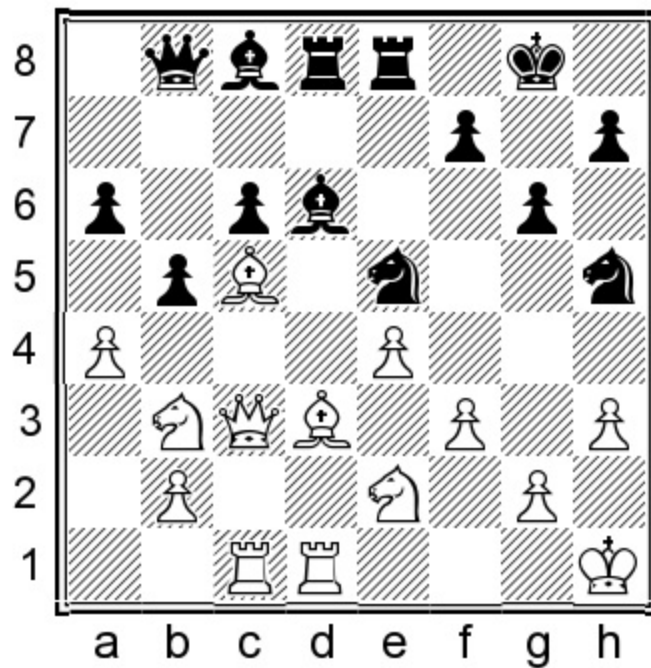
[13... ♔d8 14. 0-0-0 ♗f4+ 15. ♔b1 ♗xg5 (15... ♖e8 16. ♗xf6+ gxf6 17. ♕xf6+ ♖e7 18. ♖he1+-) 16. ♖xg5 ♕c5 17. ♖f7+ ♔c7 18. ♖xh8 ♖e5 19. ♖d5!+-]

14. ♕f7+ ♔d8 15. 0-0-0 ♖f8 16. ♖d4! ♖xf7 17. ♖e6+ ♔e8 18. ♖xc7+ ♔f8 19. ♗xf7+-

[Adams, M-Wan, Y WorldCup 2013, 1-0]

[19. ♖xa8+-]

Exercise 8



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

26...♔xh3! 27.gxh3

[27.♔xd6 ♖xd6 28.gxh3 ♜xf3-+]

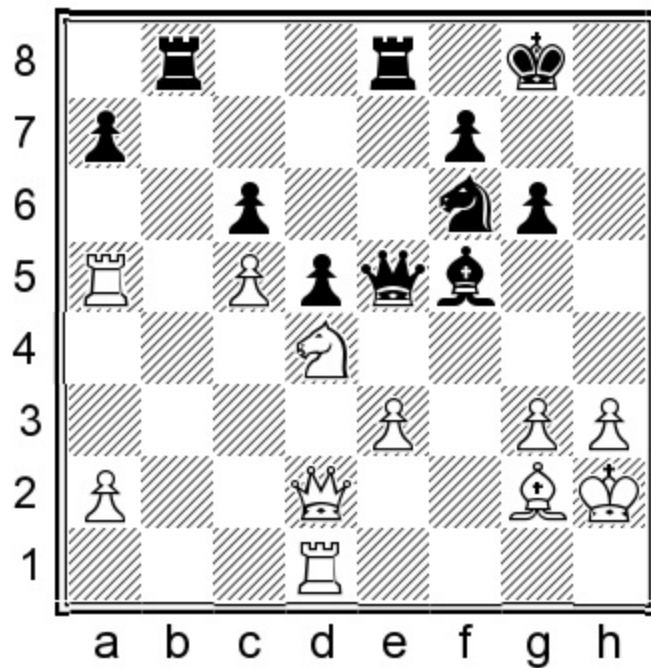
27...♔xc5! 28.♜xc5 ♜xf3 29.e5 [29.♔g2 ♜h4+ 30.♔g1 b4! 31.♚b3 ♚e5-+]

29...♖xe5 30.♔e4 ♖xd1+ 31.♖xd1 ♖xe4 32.♚xf3 [32.♜xe4 ♚h2#]

32...♖xe2!-+

[Barbosa,O-Le,Q Tromso 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 9



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

34...♙xh3! 35.♘xc6

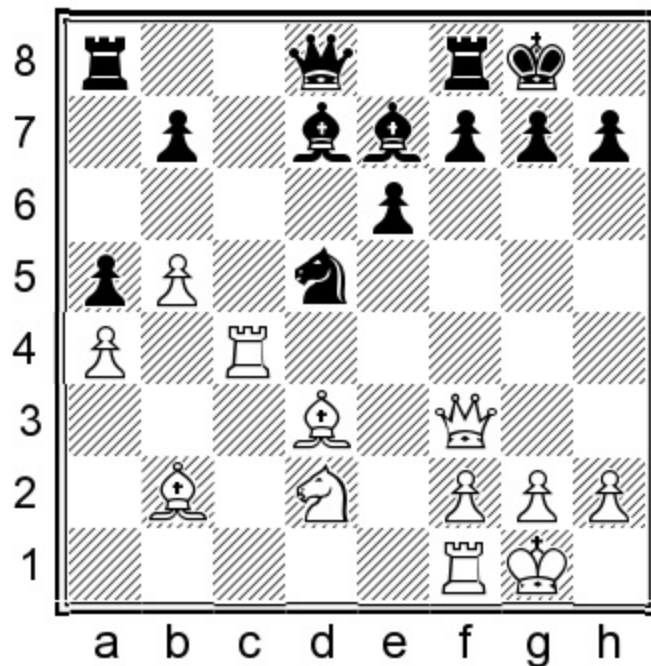
[35.♙xh3 ♘e4 36.♚g2 ♜b2! 37.♚xb2 ♚xg3+ 38.♙h1 ♚xh3+ 39.♚h2 ♚xe3-+]

35...♘g4+ 36.♙g1 [36.♙xh3 ♚h5#; 36.♙h1 ♚xg3-+]

36...♚xg3 37.♘xb8 ♜xe3-+

[Gislason,G-Olafsson,H Reykjavik 2014, 0-1]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

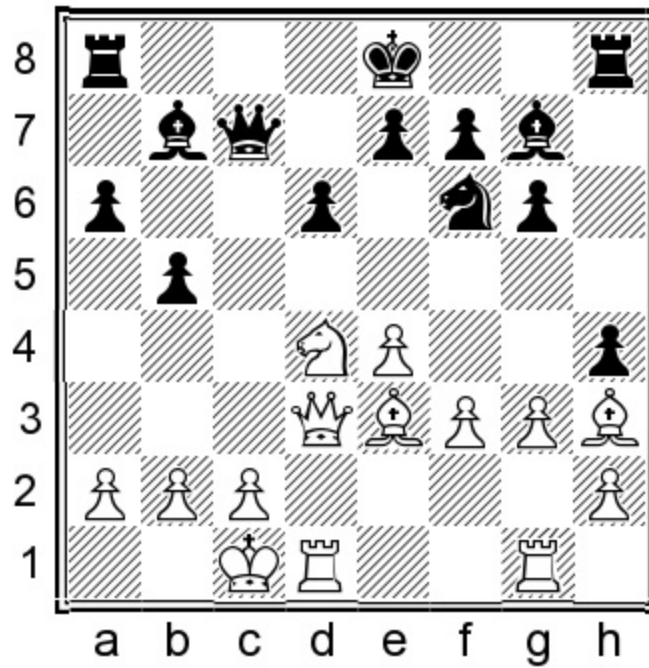
22. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 23. ♚h5+ ♔g8 24. ♖xg7! f5

[24... ♔xg7 25. ♖g4+ ♖g5 26. ♖xg5+ ♔f6 27. ♚h4! (27. ♚h6+?? ♔e7) 27... ♖h8 (27... ♔e7 28. ♖xd5+-) 28. ♖h5+ ♔g7 29. ♚g3+ ♔f8 (29... ♔f6 30. ♚g5#) 30. ♖xh8+-]

25. ♖e5 ♖f6 26. ♖h4+-

[Hovhannisyanyan, R-Kostin, K St Petersburg 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 11



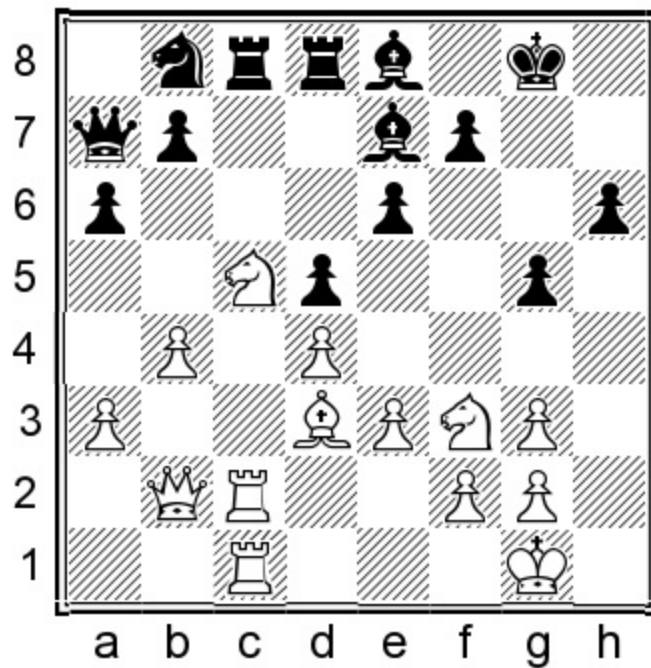
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

18.e5! dxe5 19.♘e6! ♚a5 [19...fxe6 20.♙xg6+ ♜f8 21.♙xe6+-; 19...♙d6 20.♘xg7+ ♜f8 21.♘e6+! fxe6 22.♙xg6+-]

20.b4! ♚xb4 21.♙d8+ ♜xd8 22.♜xd8# [Fuchs,G-Deglmann,L Austria 2008, 1-0]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

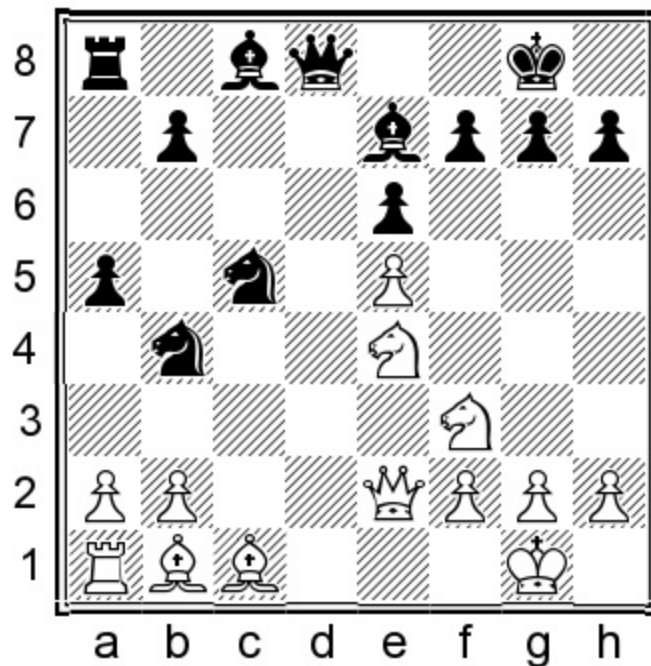
Show/Hide Solution

25. ♖xe6!! ♜xc2 26. ♚xc2 fxe6 27. ♘g6! ♙c6 [27... ♗d7 28. ♘xe8 ♗f8 (28... ♜xe8 29. ♚g6+ ♗f8 30. ♚xh6+ ♗f7 31. ♜c7+-) 29. ♘h5+-]

28. ♘f7+! ♗h8 29. ♚g6+-

[Moskalenko, V-Rius Marse, J Banyoles 2000, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17. ♖xc5 ♗xc5 18. ♗xh7+! ♖xh7 19. ♖g5+ ♖g8

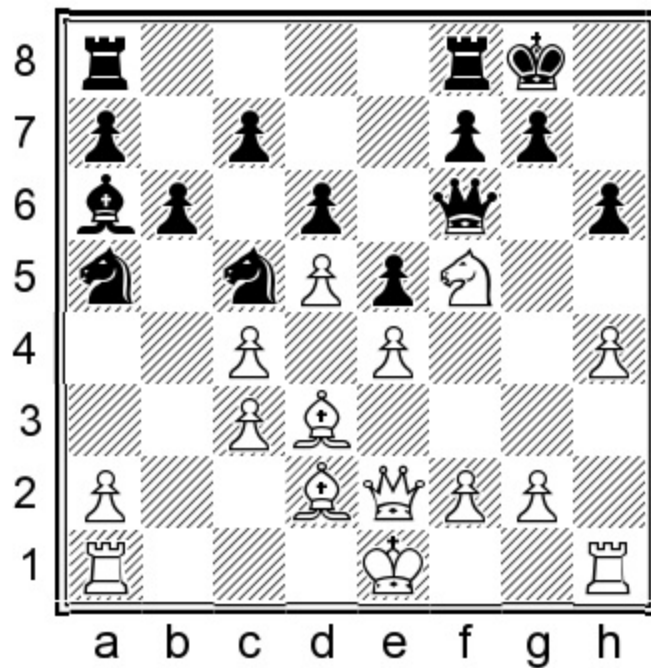
[19... ♖g6 20. ♗g4 ♗d4 21. ♖e4+ ♖h7 22. ♗e3 ♗xe5 23. ♗xc5+-]

20. ♗h5 ♗e8? [20... ♗c7! 21. ♗h7+ ♖f8 22. ♖e4! b6 23. ♗g5 ♖e8 24. ♖d1 ♖d5 25. ♗xg7 ♖d7 26. h4+-]

21. ♗h7+ ♖f8 22. ♖e4! b6 23. ♗g5+-

[Codenotti, M-Cordes, H Gibraltar Masters 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

16. ♖g5!! hxg5 [16... ♔g6 17. ♗e7+-]

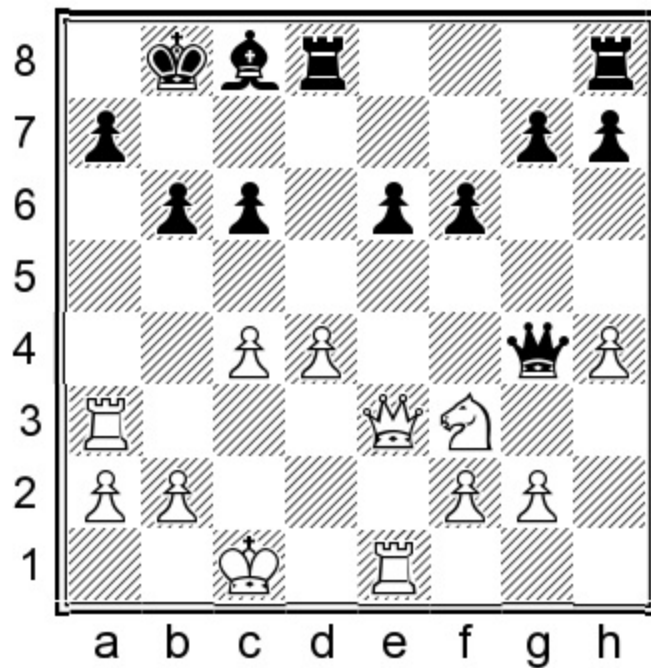
17. hxg5 ♔xg5 18. ♔h5! ♗xd3+

[18... ♔xh5 19. ♗e7+ ♗h7 20. ♖xh5#]

19. ♗f1 ♔xg2+ 20. ♗xg2 ♗f4+ 21. ♗f3 ♗xh5 22. ♗e7+ ♗h7 23. ♖xh5#

[Krueger-Iskov, G Dortmund 1978, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

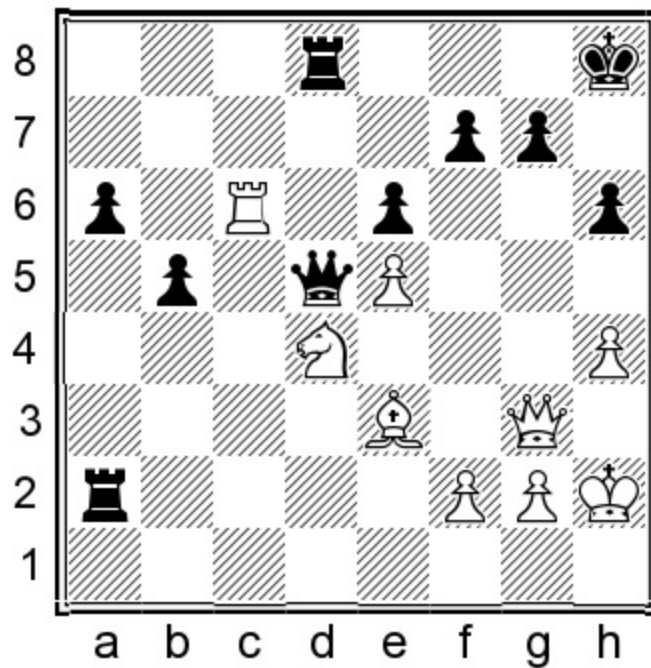
24. ♖e5! fxe5 [24... ♗xg2 25. ♗f7+-]

25. ♗xe5+ ♔b7 26. ♖xa7+!! ♔xa7 27. ♗c7+ ♔a6 [27... ♕b7 28. ♖e3+-]

28. ♖e3 ♗h5 29. ♖a3+ ♗a5 30. c5!+-

[Cornette,M-Zaragatski,I Schwaebisch Hall 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

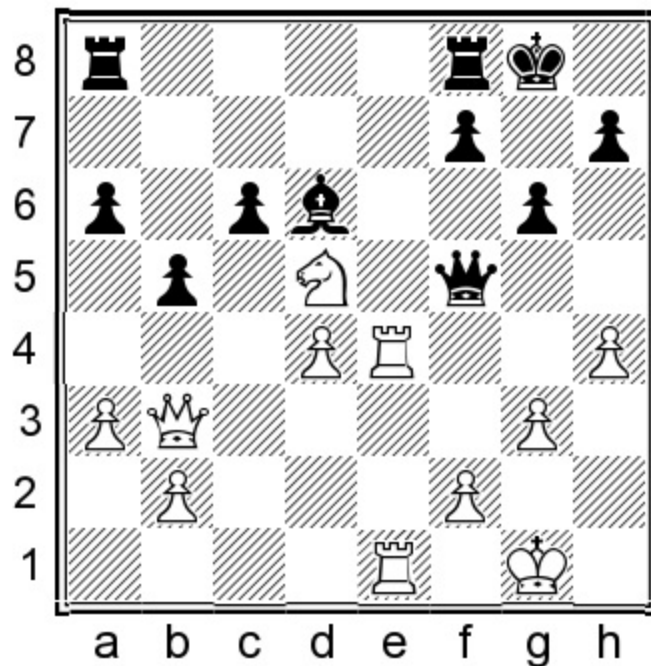
Show/Hide Solution

33.♙xh6! gxh6 34.♘f5! ♜g8 [34...exf5 35.♞xh6#]

35.♞c8! ♜xc8 36.♚g7#

[Shengelia,D-Sakelsek,T Graz 2011, 1-0]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

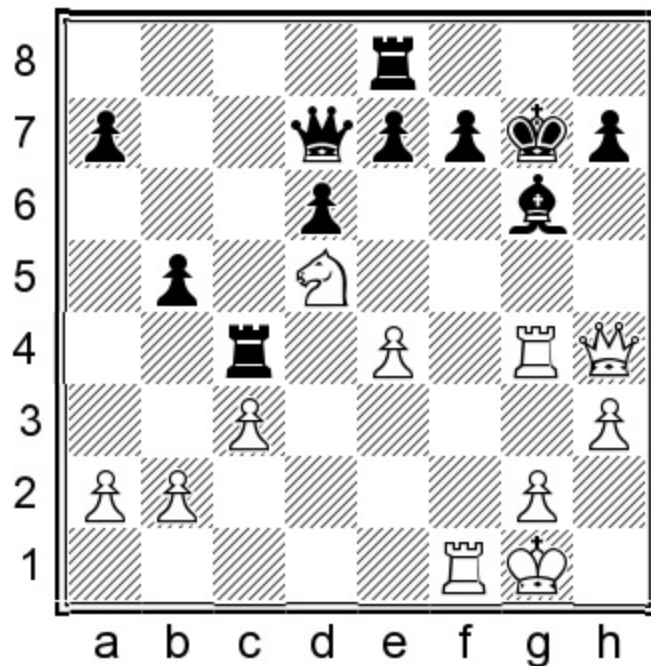
23.♖e5! ♜h3 [23...♜c8 24.♜f6+ ♔h8 25.♞h5!! (25.♖e8 ♜b7 26.♞8e4+-) 25...gxh5 26.♜d3 ♔g7 27.♜xh7+ ♔xf6 28.♜h6+ ♔f5 29.♜g5#; 23...♞xe5 24.♜e7+-]

24.♜f6+ ♔h8 [24...♔g7 25.♜e8+-]

25.♞h5!! ♔g7 26.♞xh7+ ♔xf6 27.♖e3!+-

[Schussler,H-Olafsson,F Reykjavik 1982, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

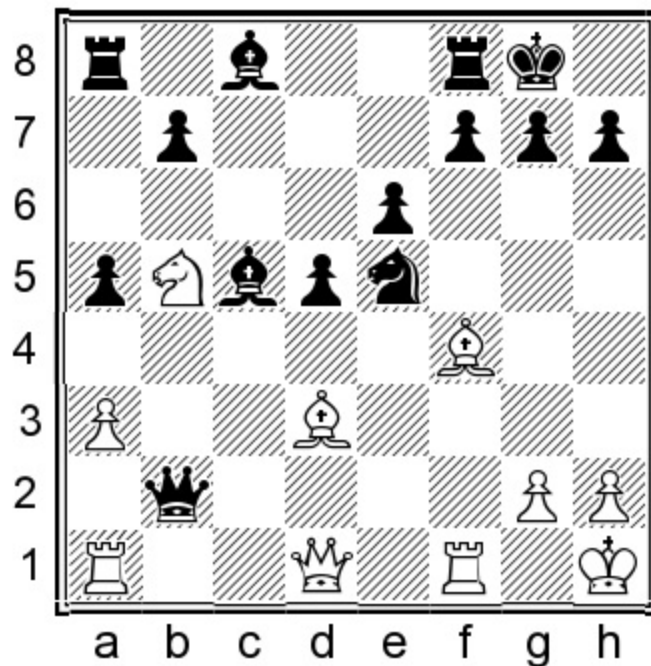
24. ♖xg6+! fxg6 [24...hxg6 25. ♖xf7+ ♔xf7 26. ♕h7+ ♔e6 27. ♕xg6+ ♔e5 28. ♕g7+-]

25. ♖f7+!! ♔xf7 26. ♕xh7+ ♔e6 27. ♕xg6+ ♔e5 28. ♕g7+! ♔xe4 [28...♔e6 29. ♘f4#]

29. ♘f6+! exf6 30. ♕xd7+-

[Ragozin, V-Veresov, G Moscow 1945, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

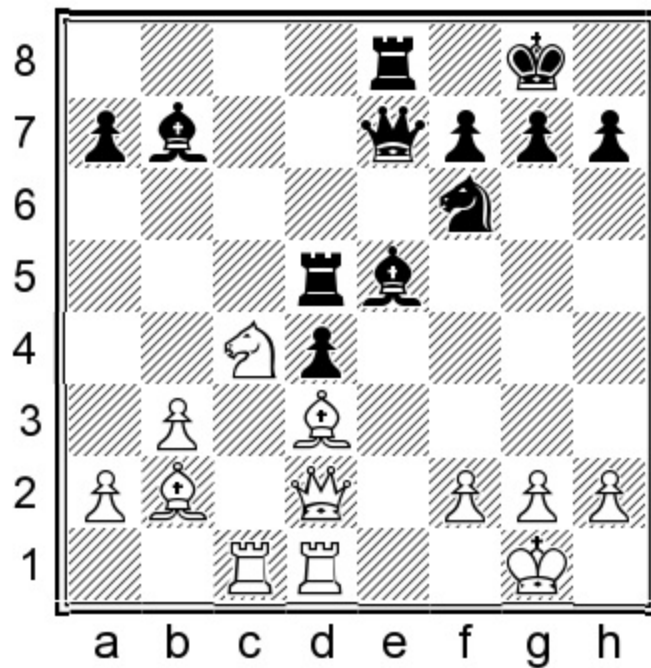
20. ♖xh7+! ♜xh7 **21.** ♗h5+ ♜g8 **22.** ♖xe5 ♗xb5?! [22... ♗c2!? 23. ♘c7! ♗h7 (23... ♗a7 24. ♖xg7! ♜xg7 25. ♘e8+! ♜g8 26. ♖f6+-) 24. ♗xh7+ ♜xh7 25. ♘xa8+-]

23. ♖xg7! f5 [23... ♜xg7 24. ♗g4+ ♜h8 25. ♖f3+-]

24. ♖e5! ♗d8 **25.** ♖f3 ♜f8 **26.** ♖g3+-

[Sutovsky, E-Vavrak, P Plovdiv 2008, 1-0]

Exercise 20



1...? -+

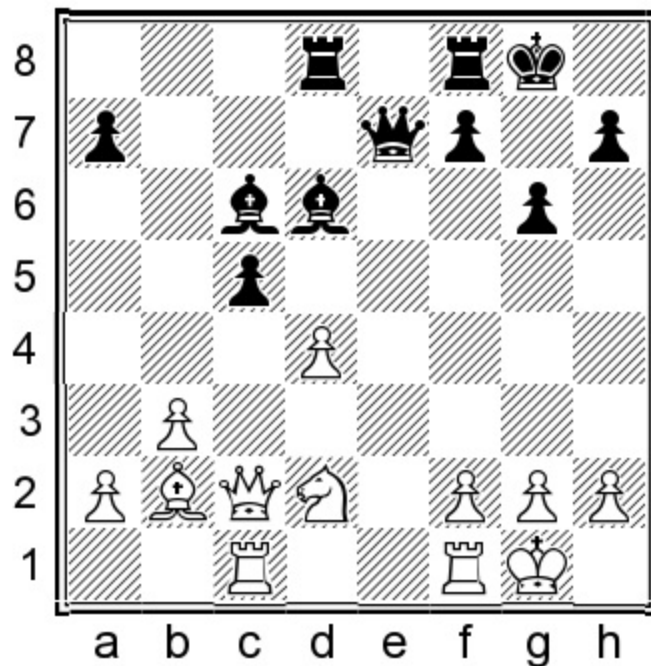
Show/Hide Solution

20...♙xh2+! 21.♔xh2 ♖h5+ 22.♔g1 ♜g4 23.f3 [23.♖e1 ♖h1+ 24.♔xh1 ♗h4+ 25.♔g1 ♗h2+ 26.♔f1 ♙xg2#]

23...♖h1+! 24.♔xh1 ♗h4+ 25.♔g1 ♗h2+ 26.♔f1 ♗h1#

[Spassky,B-Tal,M Montreal 1979, 0-1]

Exercise 21



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

19...♙xh2+! 20.♔xh2 ♚h4+ 21.♔g1 ♙xg2! 22.f3 [22.♔xg2 ♚g4+ 23.♔h1 ♜d5!-+]

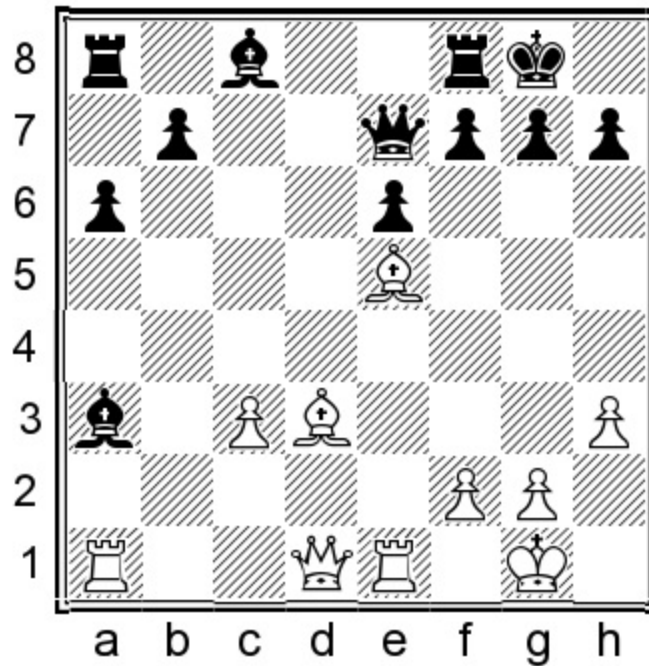
22...♞fe8! 23.♘e4 ♚h1+! 24.♔f2 ♙xf1! 25.d5 [25.♞xf1 ♚h2+-+]

25...f5! 26.♚c3 ♚g2+ 27.♔e3 ♞xe4+! 28.fxe4 f4+-+

[Nimzowitsch,A-Tarrasch,S St Petersburg 1914, 0-1]

[28...♚g3+ 29.♔d2 ♚f2+ 30.♔d1 ♚e2#]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♖xa3! ♜xa3 [1...f6 2.♙d6 ♜xd6 3.♙xh7+-]

2.♙xh7+! ♔xh7 3.♞h5+ ♔g8 4.♙xg7! ♔xg7

[4...f5 5.♞g6 ♜f7 6.♙h6+-]

5.♞g5+ ♔h8 [5...♔h7 6.♞e4+-]

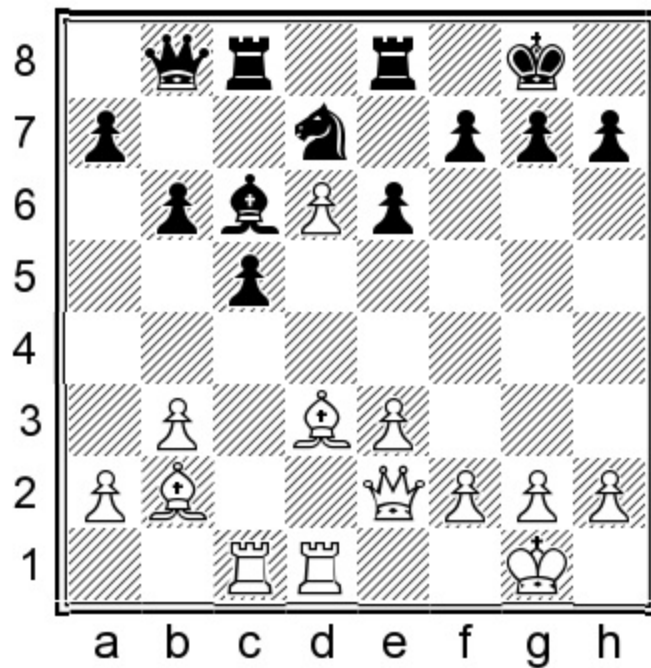
6.♞e4 ♜a1+ 7.♔h2 ♞b1! 8.♞h6+! [8.♞h4+? ♞h7 9.♞f6+ ♔g8 10.♞g4+ ♞g6=]

8...♔g8 9.♞h4! [9.♞g4+? ♞g6=]

9...f6 10.♞g4+! ♔f7 11.♞g7+ ♔e8 12.♞h5+ ♔d8 13.♞c5!+-

[Beliaev,M-Pavlov,N Russia 1992, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

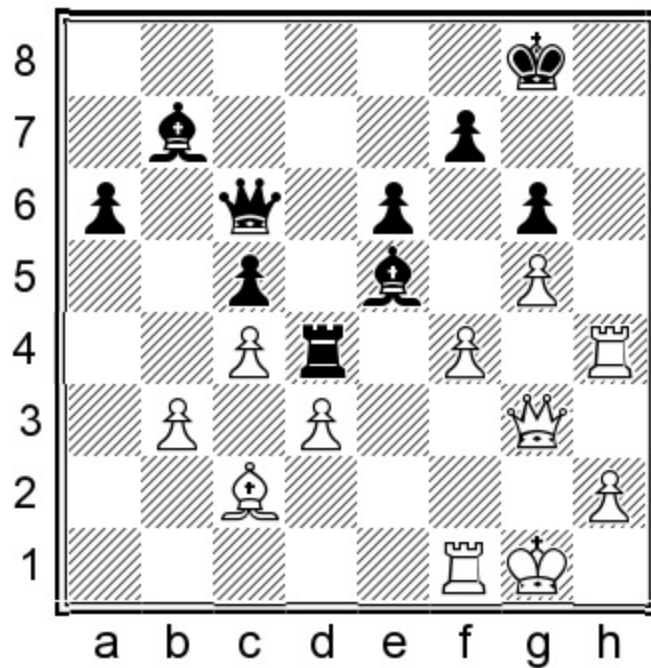
1.♙xh7+! [1.b4!?;

1.♚h5!?]

1.♙xh7+! ♔xh7 2.♚h5+ ♔g8 3.♙xg7! ♔xg7 4.♚g5+ ♔f8 5.♚h6+ ♔g8 6.♙c4 ♖e5 7.♙h4 ♖g6
8.♚h7+ ♔f8 9.♙f4!!+-

[Velikic,A-Guichard,P Reykjavik 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

36...♖xd3!! [36...♙g7?? 37.♔f2↗]

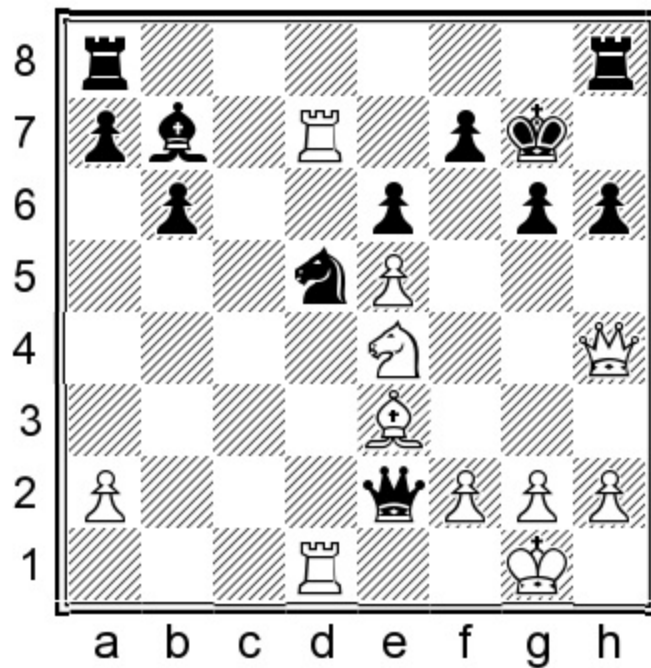
36...♖xd3!! 37.♖f3 [37.♙xd3 ♙d4+ 38.♖f2 ♚h1#]

37...♖xf3 38.♚g2 ♖f1+ **39.♔xf1** [39.♚xf1 ♙d4+ 40.♚f2 ♚g2#]

39...♚xg2+ 40.♔e1 ♙c3+ **41.♔d1 ♚d2#**

[Bischoff,K-Plachetka,J Austria 1995, 1-0]

Exercise 25



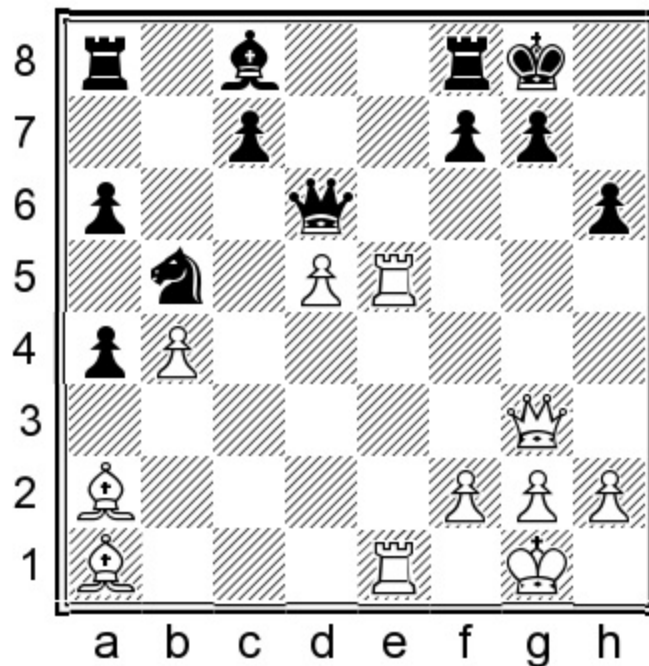
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♘xh6+!! ♖xh6 2. ♚f6+!! ♜xf6 3. exf6+ ♔h8 4. ♖d8+ ♜xd8 5. ♖xd8+ ♔h7 6. ♜g5#

[Cortlever,N-Donner,H Beverwijk 1960, 1-0]

Exercise 26



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xg7+! ♔xg7 2. ♖g5+ ♔h7 3. ♖g7+ ♔h8 4. ♖xf7+ ♔g8 5. ♖g7+ ♔h8 6. ♖xc7+ ♔g8

[6... ♖f6 7. ♕xf6+ ♖xf6 8. ♖e8+ ♖f8 9. ♖xf8#]

7. ♖g7+ ♔h8 8. ♖ee7! [+]

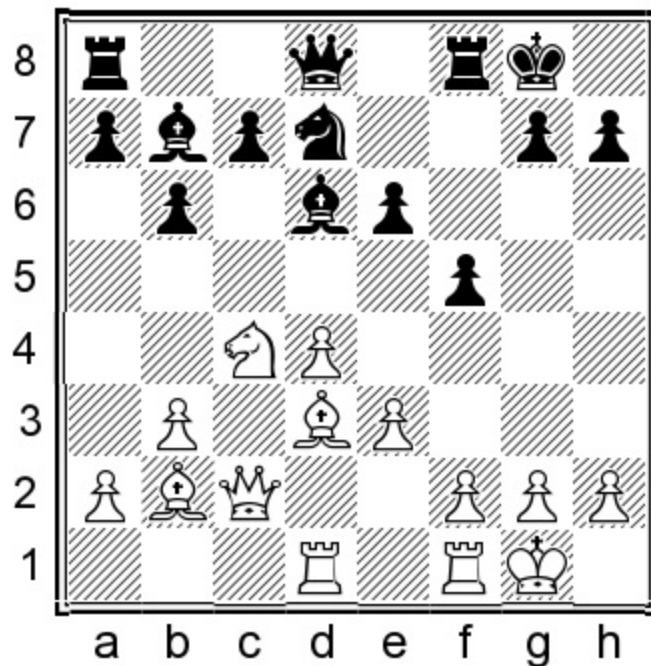
[8. ♖g3+ ♔h7 9. ♕b1+? (9. ♖g7+ ♔h8 10. ♖ee7!+-) 9... ♕f5 10. ♖g7+ ♔h8 11. ♖ee7 ♖f6! 12. ♕xf6 ♖xf6 13. ♕xf5 ♖xf5 14. ♖h7+ ♔g8 15. ♖eg7+ ♔f8 16. ♖d7!-=]

8... ♖f6 [8... ♖xe7 9. ♖xe7+ ♔g8 10. d6+-]

9. ♖gf7 ♔g8 10. ♖xf6+-

[Krantz,K-Dahlin,G Sverige 1974, 1/2]

Exercise 27



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

13...♙xh2+! 14.♔xh2 ♚h4+ 15.♔g1 ♕f3!!-+

[15...♙xg2? 16.f4! ♕xf1 17.♔xf1 ♜f6 18.♚f2±]

16.♘d2 [16.gxf3 ♜f6-+]

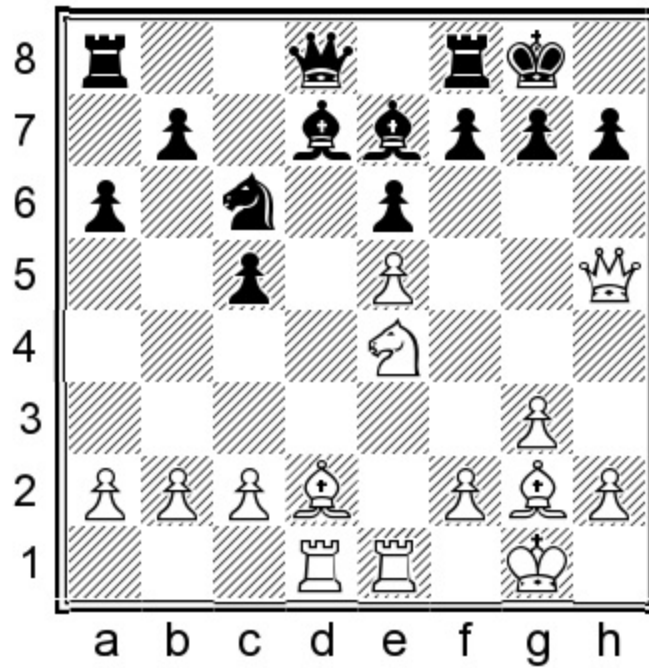
16...♙xg2! 17.f3 [17.♔xg2 ♚g4+ 18.♔h1 ♜f6-+]

17...♜f6 18.♘c4 ♕h3!-+

[Dizdarevic,E-Miles,A Biel 1985, 0-1]

[18...♞g6?? 19.♚xg2! ♞xg2+ 20.♔xg2±]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

20. ♖f6+! gxf6 [20... ♙xf6 21. exf6 ♜xf6 22. ♙g5+-]

21. exf6 ♙xf6 22. ♙e4 ♜e8 23. ♜xh7+ ♖f8 24. ♙g6!! ♙g7

[24... ♗e5 25. ♜xe5+-; 24... fxg6 25. ♙h6+ ♙g7 26. ♜xg7#]

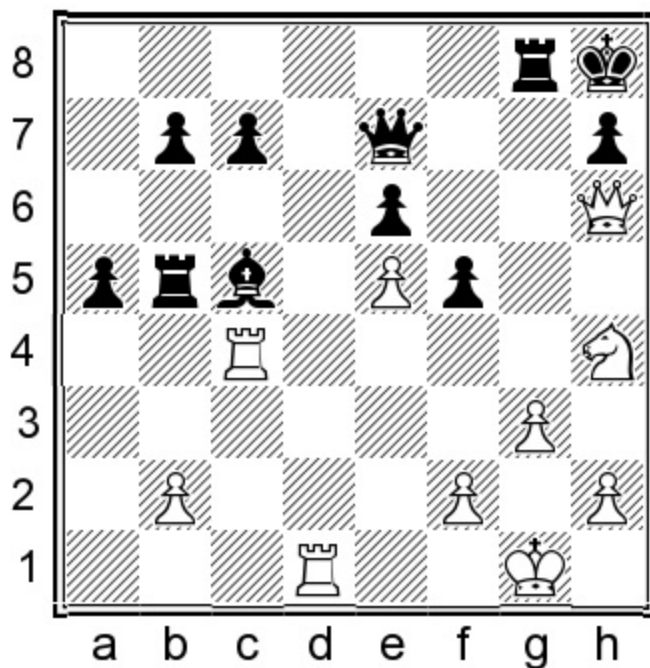
25. ♙h6! ♜f6 26. ♜xd7 ♗e7 27. ♜h8+ ♗g8 28. ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 29. ♜xf7#

[Reshevsky,S-Matsumoto,Y Siegen 1970, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

DEFENSIVE TACTICS 4

Exercise 1



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

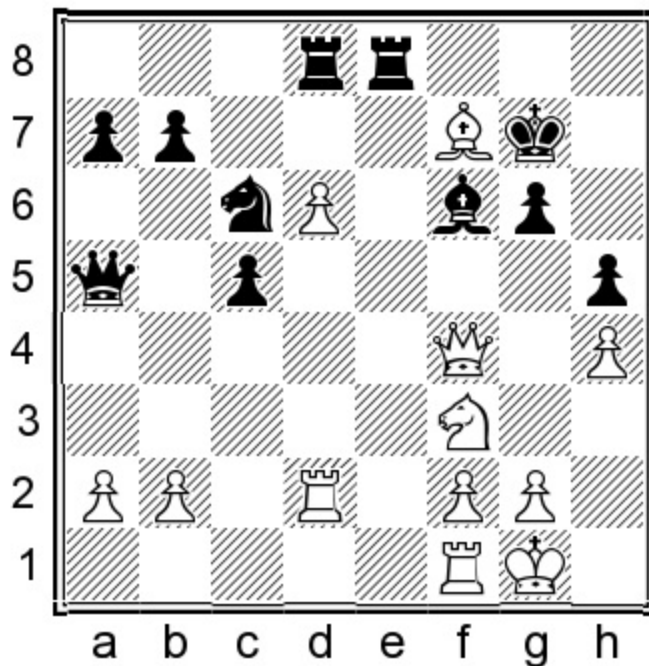
26. ♖xc5! ♜xc5 [26... ♛xc5? 27. ♛f6+ ♜g7 28. ♜d8+ ♛f8 29. ♖xf8#]

27. ♜d7! ♛xd7 [27... ♜c1+ 28. ♔g2 ♛xd7 29. ♛f6+ ♛g7 30. ♜g6+! =]

28. ♛f6+ ♛g7 29. ♜g6+! hxg6 30. ♛h4+ ♛h7 31. ♛f6+ ♜g7 32. ♛d8+ ♛g8 33. ♛h4+ ♜h7 34. ♛f6+ =

[Prusikin, M-Buhmann, R Griesheim 2003, 1/2]

Exercise 2



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

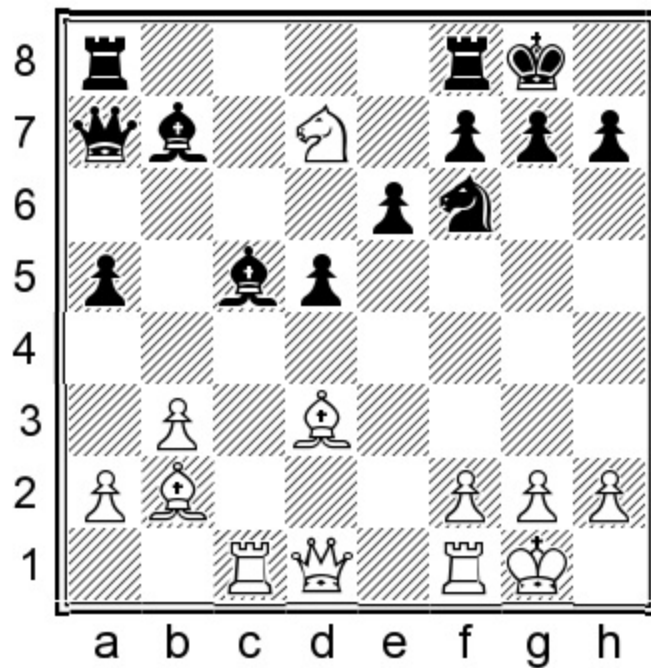
21...♔xf7! [21...♖f8? 22.♙xg6+-]

21...♔xf7! 22.d7! ♖f8! 23.♘g5+ ♔g8 24.♘e6 ♚xa2! [24...♚b4! 25.♚h6 ♚e4 26.♖e2 ♚xe2 27.♚xg6+ ♔h8 28.♚h6+ ♔g8 29.♚g6+]

25.♚h6 ♚xe6 26.♚xg6+ ♔h8 27.♚h6+ ♔g8 28.♚g6+=

[Morozevich,A-Gelfand,B Beijing 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 3



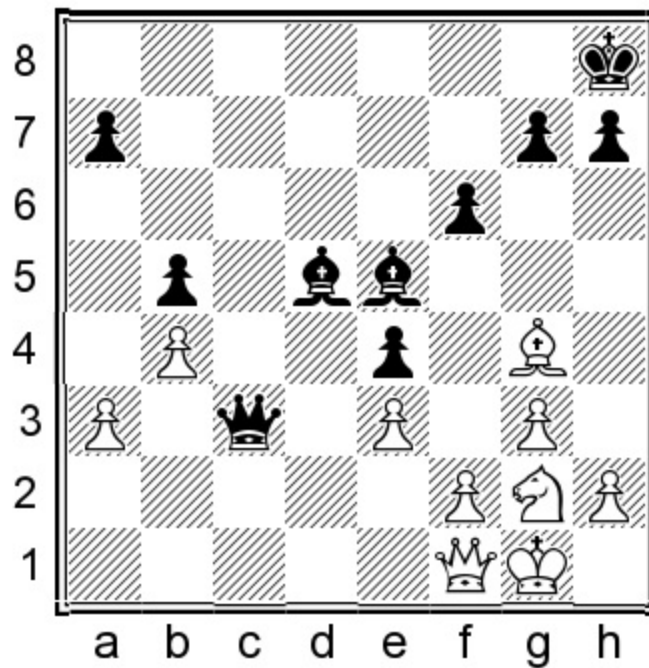
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

18... ♖xd7! 19. ♔xh7+! ♕xh7 20. ♖h5+ ♔g8 21. ♔xg7! ♕xg7! 22. ♖g5+ ♔h7 23. ♖h5+ ♔g7 24. ♖g5+ ♔h7 25. ♖c3! ♔e3!! 26. ♖xe3 ♖xe3!! 27. fxe3 f6⇝

[Fressinet, L-Kempinski, R Bremen 2009, 1/2]

Exercise 5



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

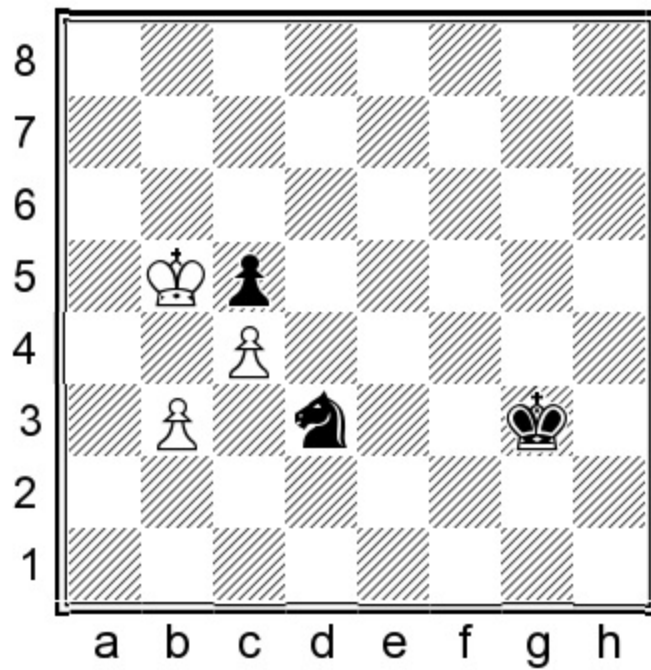
1. ♖xb5! ♜c1+ 2. ♘e1! ♜xe1+ 3. ♔g2 ♙f7! [3... ♙g8 4. ♜e8!+-]

4. ♜d7 ♗h5! 5. ♙f5! [5. ♜xf7 ♗hxg4 6. ♜e8+ ♔h7 7. ♜h5+=]

5... ♗g6! 6. ♜xf7 ♗gxf5 7. ♜f8+ ♔h7 8. ♜f7+=

[Van Forreest, 1/2]

Exercise 6



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

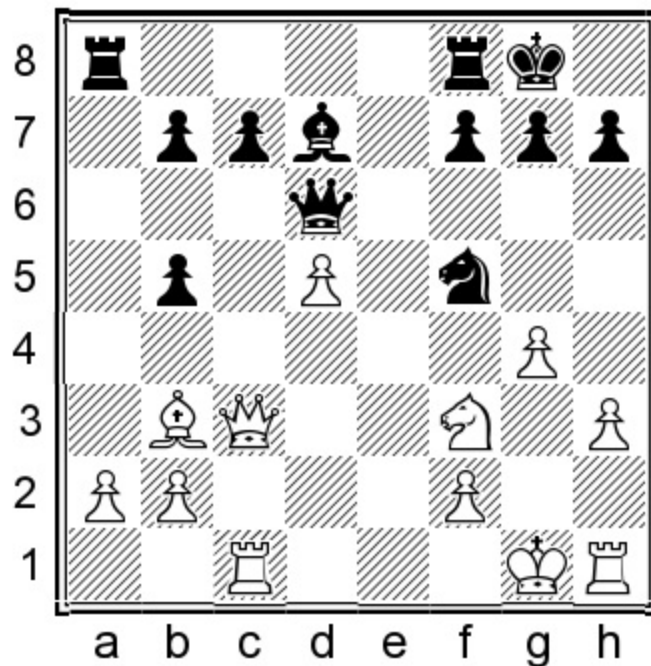
1.b4! cxb4 2.♔a4! ♕f4 3.c5! ♔e5

[3...♖xc5+ 4.♔xb4=]

4.c6 ♔d6 5.♔b3! ♕xc6 6.♔c4! =

[Ceshkovski-Bagirov Lvov 1978, 1/2]

Exercise 7



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

21... ♖g3! 22.fxg3!?

[22. ♖xc7! ♗e2+ 23. ♔g2 ♗f4+ 24. ♔f1 ♖xc7 25. ♖xc7 ♖ac8 26. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 27. ♔g1 ♔f8 (27... ♖c1+ 28. ♔h2 ♖xh1+ 29. ♔xh1±) 28. ♔h2 ♗d3=]

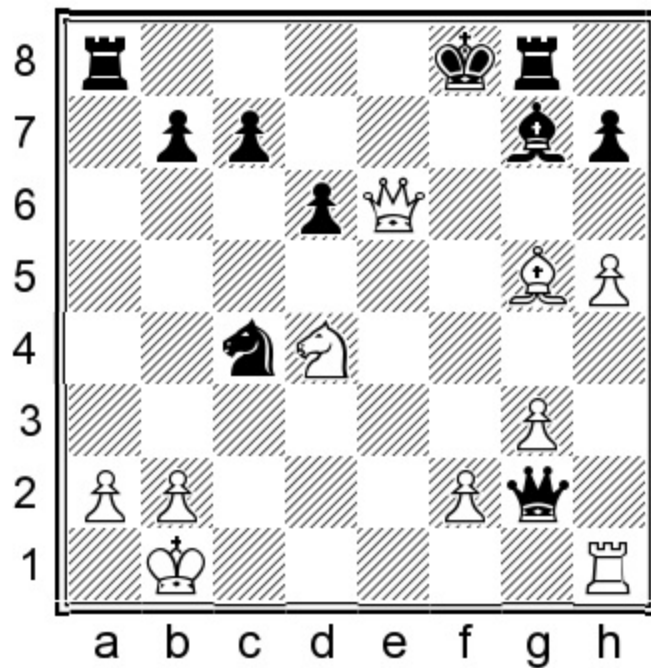
22... ♖xg3+ 23. ♔f1 f5! 24.g5 f4! 25.d6+ ♔h8 26.dxc7 ♖ae8

[26... ♗c6 27. ♗d1=; 26... b4 27. ♖d3 ♖ae8 28. ♗d1! ♗xh3+ 29. ♖xh3 ♖xh3+=]

27. ♗d5 ♗xh3+ 28. ♖xh3 ♖xh3+ 29. ♔f2=

[Tal, M-Fischer, R Curacao 1962, 1/2]

Exercise 8



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖d2+! [1... ♚xh1+?? 2. ♔c2+-]

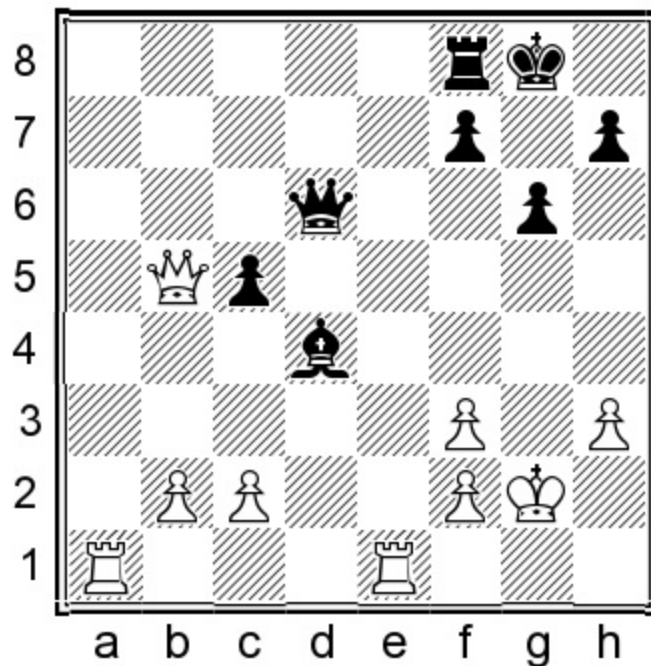
1... ♖d2+! 2. ♔c1! ♜b3+!! 3. axb3

[3. ♜xb3?? ♚xh1+ 4. ♔d2 (4. ♔c2 ♚c6+ 5. ♔b1 ♚e8--+) 4... ♜c3+!! 5. ♔xc3 (5. bxc3 ♜xa2+-+) 5... ♚f3+-+]

3... ♜a1+ 4. ♔d2 ♚xf2+ 5. ♜e2 ♜c3+!! 6. ♔xc3 ♚c5+! 7. ♔d3 ♚b5+! 8. ♔c2 ♚c5+ 9. ♜c3 ♚f2+=

[Bluvshstein, M-Seyb, A Deutschland 2010, 1-0]

Exercise 9



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♙xf2! 2.♖xf2 ♜h2+ 3.♔f1 [3.♔e3 ♜e5+=]

3...♜xh3+ 4.♔e2 ♜h2+ 5.♔d3 ♜d8+ 6.♔c3 ♜d2+ 7.♔b3 c4+!!

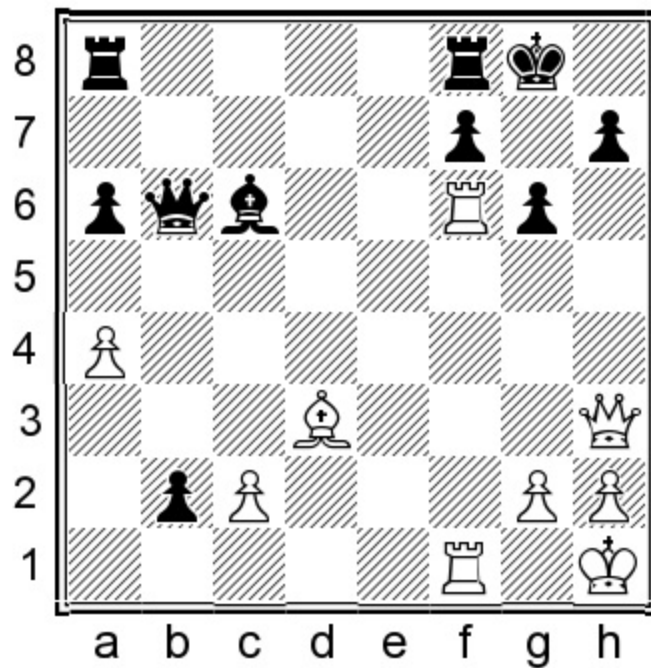
[7...♜d5+?? 8.♜c4 ♜b8+ 9.♔c3 ♜xf3+ 10.♔d2 ♜f2+ 11.♜e2 ♜d4+ 12.♜d3+-]

8.♜xc4 ♜b8+ 9.♔a3 [9.♔a4 ♜a8+ 10.♔b5 ♜b8+ 11.♔a4= (11.♔a6?? ♜d6+ 12.♔a7 ♜b6#)]

9...♜a8+ 10.♔b3 ♜b8+ 11.♔a3 ♜a8+ 12.♔b3 ♜b8+=

[Lie,K-Nakamura,H Gjovik 2009, 1/2]

Exercise 10



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

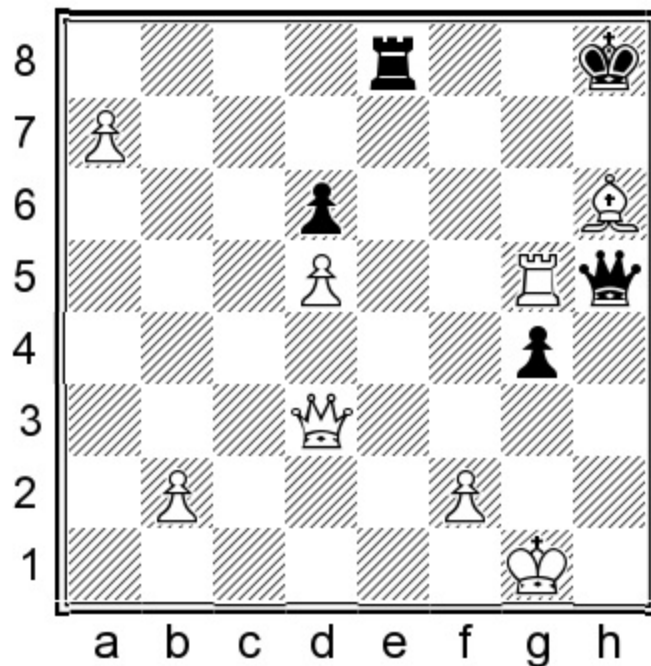
1.♙xg6! hxg6

[1...♙xg2+? 2.♖xg2! (2.♙xg2? ♖b7+! 3.♗f3 ♗xf3+ 4.♖6xf3 hxg6±) 2...♗xf6! 3.♙e4+ (3.♙xh7+!? ♙xh7 4.♖xf6 b1=♗+ 5.♖f1=) 3...♗g7! (3...♙h8? 4.♖xf6+-) 4.♙xa8 ♗xg2+ 5.♙xg2 ♖c8 6.♙e4 ♖c4 7.♙d3 ♖xa4 8.♖b1 ♖a1 9.c4±]

2.♖xg6+!! fxg6 3.♗e6+ ♙g7 4.♗e7+ ♙h8 5.♗e5+

[Perez Mitjans,O-Quesada Perez,Y Sabadell 2010, 1/2]

Exercise 11



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

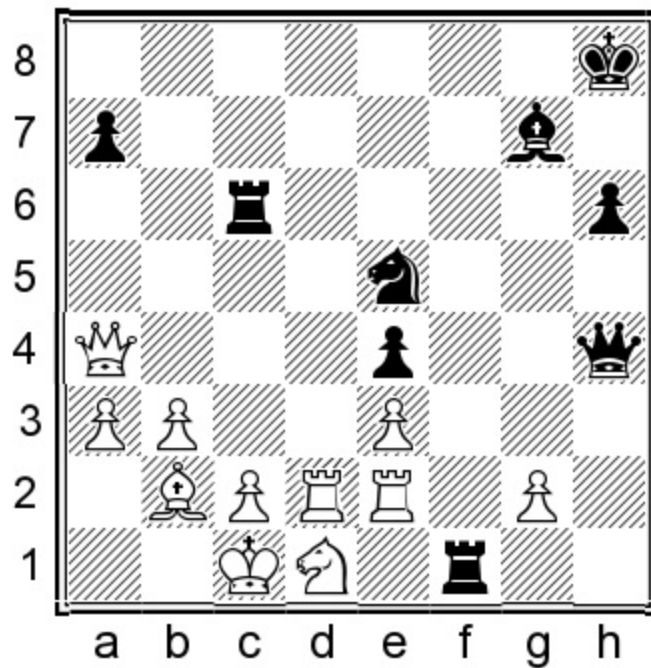
43...♖e1+! 44.♔g2

[44.♚f1 ♜xf1+ 45.♔xf1 ♚h1+ 46.♔e2 ♚e4+ 47.♔f1 ♚h1+=]

44...♚h1+ 45.♔g3 ♚g1+ 46.♔f4 ♚xf2+ 47.♔xg4 ♜g1+ 48.♔h5 ♜h1+ 49.♔g6 ♜xh6+!! 50.♔xh6 ♚f6+ 51.♔h5 ♚h6+ 52.♔g4 ♚h4+ 53.♔f3 ♚f2+ 54.♔g4 ♚f4+ 55.♔h3 ♚h2+ 56.♔g4 ♚f4+ 57.♔h5 ♚h4+ 58.♔g6 ♚h7+ 59.♔f6 ♚f7+ 60.♔xf7

[Naumkin, I-Sebenik, M Maribor 2015, 1/2]

Exercise 12



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖d3+! [1... ♕f6? 2. ♔b1+-]

1... ♖d3+! 2. ♙xd3 [2. ♔b1 ♖xb2-+]

2... ♙xb2+ [2... exd3 3. ♕xh4 ♙xb2+=]

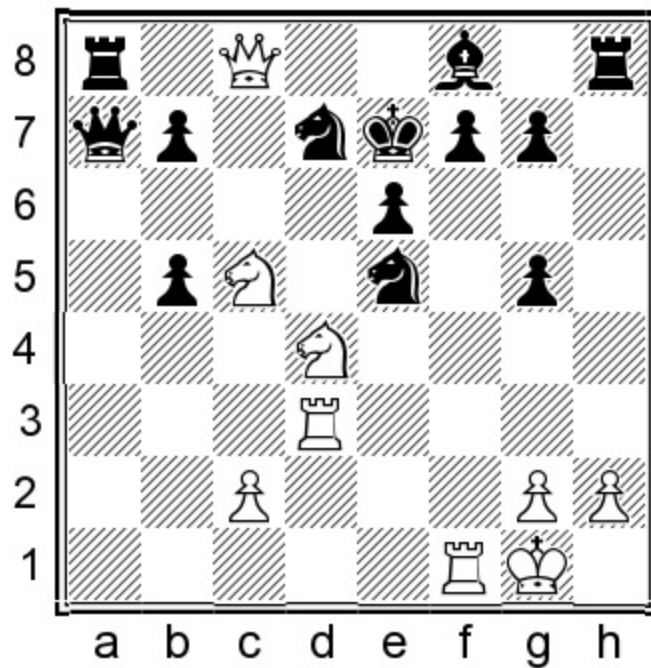
3. ♔xb2 exd3!! 4. ♕xh4 dxe2 5. ♕d8+ ♔g7 [5... ♔h7? 6. ♕d3++-]

6. ♕d7+ ♔f8 [6... ♔h8=]

7. ♕d8+ ♔f7 8. ♕d7+ ♔f8 =

[Piskov, Y-Cheparinov, I Hoogeveen 2006, 1/2]

Exercise 13



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖f5+! exf5 [1... ♔f6? 2. ♗e7+ (2. ♗h4+-) 2... ♔xe7 3. ♖xd7+! ♗xd7 4. ♕xd7#]

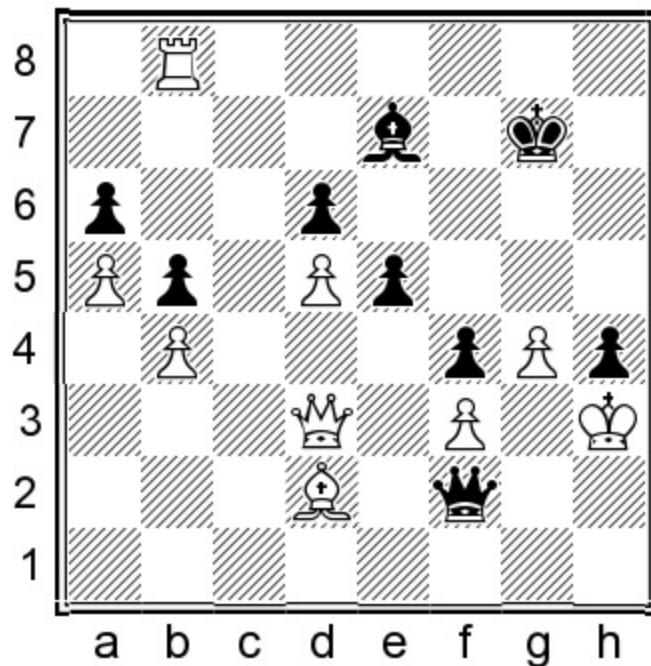
2. ♖xd7+! ♔f6 [2... ♗xd7? 3. ♕xd7+ ♔f6 4. ♕xf5+ ♔e7 5. ♕d7#]

3. ♖xf7+! ♔g6 [3... ♔xf7?? 4. ♕e6#]

4. ♕xf5+ ♔h6 5. ♕h3+ ♔g6 6. ♕f5+

[Shabalov, A-Areshchenko, A Port Erin 2006, 1/2]

Exercise 14



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

1.♙xf4! [1.♖g8+? ♔xg8 2.♙xf4 ♔g7 3.♚e3 (3...♙h2 ♙g5) 3...♚f1+ 4.♔h2 h3 5.♙h6+ ♔g6 6.♚d2 ♚xf3--]

1.♙xf4! exf4 2.♖g8+! ♔xg8 3.♚g6+ ♔f8! [3...♔h8? 4.♚e8+ ♔g7 5.♚xe7+ ♔g8 6.♚g5+ ♔f8 7.♚xf4++-]

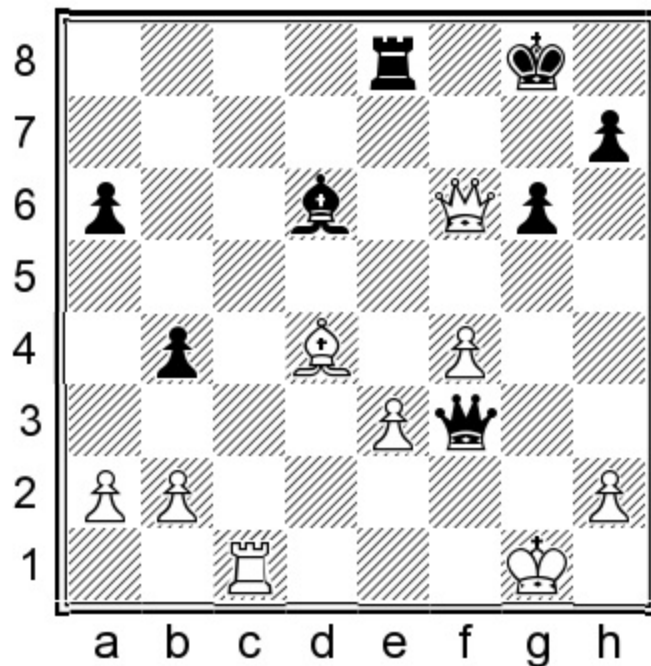
4.♚f5+ ♔g7 [4...♔e8 5.♚c8+ ♔f7 (5...♙d8 6.♚e6+ ♔f8 7.♚f5+ ♔e8 8.♚e6+=) 6.♚f5+ ♔e8 7.♚c8+=]

5.♚g5+!! ♔f7 [5...♙xg5=]

6.♚h5+ ♔f8 7.♚f5+

[Otero,D-Rivera,A Cuba 2002, 1/2]

Exercise 15



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♙e5! 2.fxe5

[2.♙xe5 ♜xe3+ 3.♙g2 ♜e2+=; 2.♜c6 ♜xc6 3.♞xc6 ♙xd4 4.exd4 ♞e2=; 2.♜xa6!? ♙xd4 3.♜c4+ ♙g7 4.♜xd4+ ♙h6! 5.♞c7 (5.♞f1 ♜g4+ 6.♙h1 ♜e2=) 5...♜xe3+ 6.♜xe3 ♞xe3 7.♙f2 (7.♞c4 b3!=) 7...♞h3 8.♙g2 ♞d3 9.♞c2 b3=]

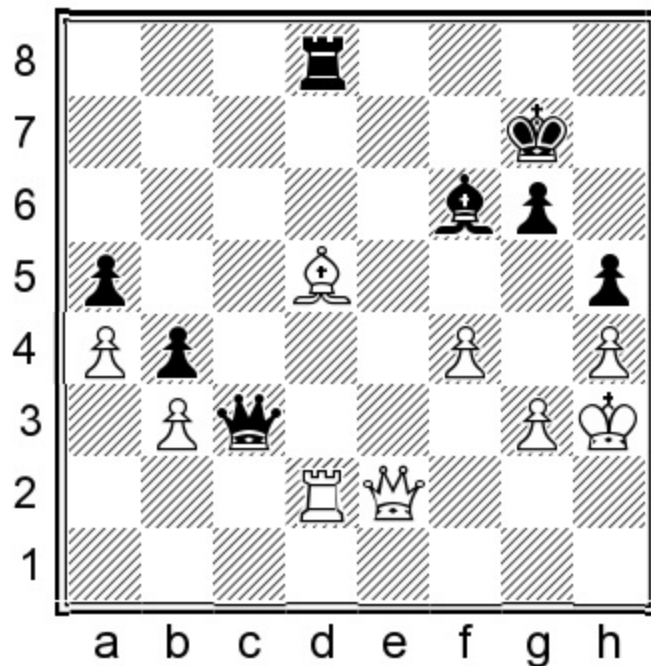
2...♜g4+ 3.♙f2 [3.♙h1 ♜e4+=]

3...♞f8 4.♞c7 ♞xf6+ 5.exf6 ♜h4+! 6.♙f1 ♜h3+ 7.♙e1 ♜h4+ 8.♙d1 ♜g4+ 9.♙c2 [9.♙d2 ♜g2+ 10.♙d3 ♜f1+=]

9...♜e2+

[Valdes,L-Gonzalez,H Cuba 2001, 1/2]

Exercise 16



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♙xh4! 2.♖d3!

[2.♙xh4 ♜f6+ 3.♙h3 ♜f5+ 4.g4 (4.♙g2 ♜xd5=) 4...hxg4+ 5.♜xg4 ♜xd5=]

2...♜c5! [2...♜f6? 3.♜e4+-]

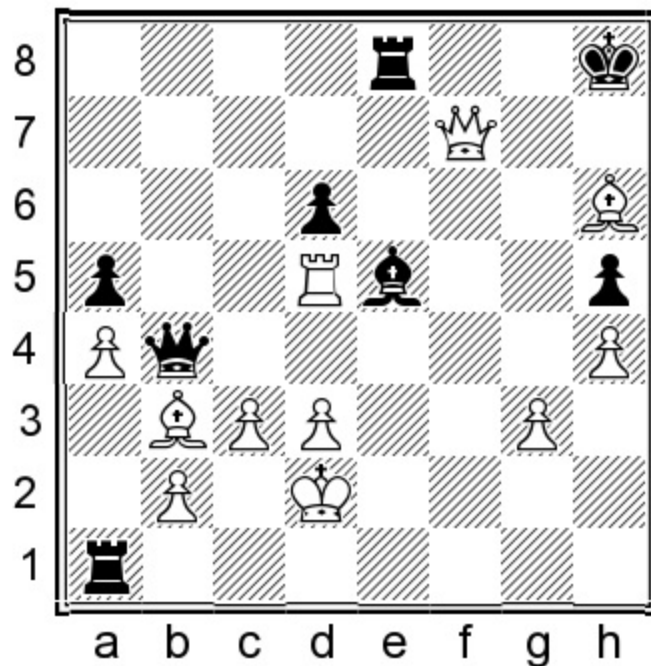
3.♜e6

[3.gxh4 ♜xd5 4.♜xd5 ♜xd5=; 3.♙xh4 ♜xd5 4.♜xd5 (4.♜e3 ♜c1∞) 4...♜xd5=; 3.♙e4 ♜xd3 4.♜xd3 ♜c8+ 5.♙h2 (5.♙g2 ♜g4=) 5...♙f6 6.♙xg6 ♜c3=]

3...♜e7! =

[Gofshtein,Z-Yudasin,L Israel 1998, 1/2]

Exercise 17



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xc3+! [1... ♜d1+? 2. ♔c2+-]

1... ♖xc3+! 2. bxc3 [2. ♔c2? ♜e2+-+]

2... ♜a2+!

[2... ♜d1+! 3. ♔c2 (3. ♖xd1 ♜b2+ 4. ♖c2 ♜e2+ 5. ♔xe2 ♜xc2+ 6. ♔f1 ♜e2+ 7. ♔g1 ♜g2+=) 3... ♜e2+!
4. ♔xd1 ♜xb3+ 5. ♔xe2 ♜d1+ 6. ♔e3 ♜e2+ 7. ♔d4 ♜xd3+ 8. ♔xd3=]

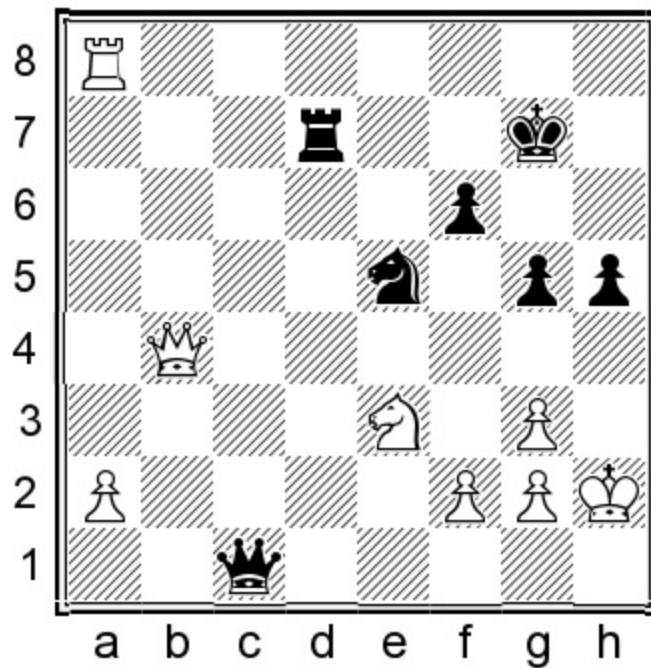
3. ♖xa2 [3. ♖c2 ♜xc2+ 4. ♔xc2 ♜e2+ 5. ♖d2 ♜xd2+ 6. ♔xd2 ♜b2+=]

3... ♜b2+ 4. ♔d1 ♜e1+ [4... ♜e2+ 5. ♔c1 ♜e1+ 6. ♔b2 ♜e2+ 7. ♔b3 ♜d1+ 8. ♔a3 ♜xa2+ 9. ♔xa2
♜b3+!! 10. ♔a1 ♜b2+ 11. ♔xb2=]

5. ♔xe1 ♜e2+=

[Rodriguez,A-Castella,F Cuba 1998, 1/2]

Exercise 18



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xe3!! 2. ♜f8+ [2... fxe3 ♘g4+ 3. ♜xg4 (3... ♔h3 ♘f2+=; 3... ♔g1 ♜d1+ 4. ♜e1 ♜xe1#) 3... hxg4 4. a4 (4... ♔g1 ♜d2=) 4... ♜d1=]

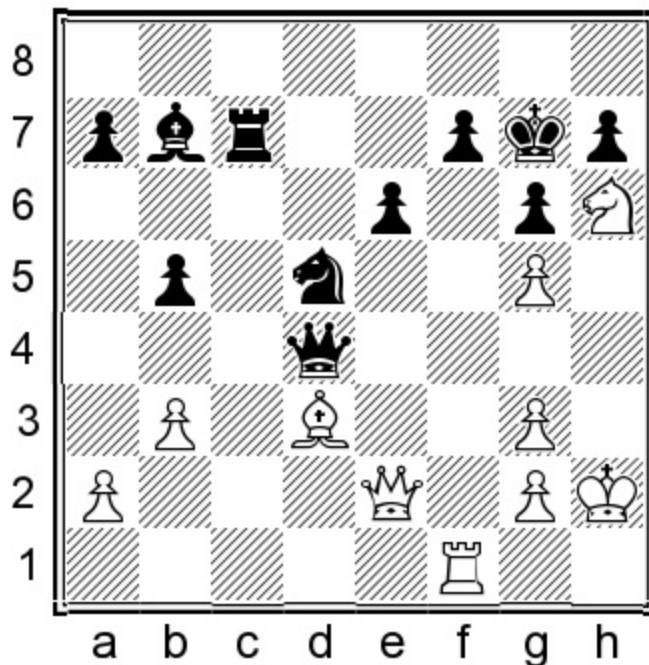
2... ♔g6 3. ♜e8+ [3... ♜g8+ ♔f5=]

3... ♔h6 4. ♜xd7 ♘f3+! 5. gxf3 [5... ♔h3 g4+-+]

5... ♜xf2+ 6. ♔h3 ♜f1+=

[Martinez Alpizar, B-Bezanilla, A Cuba 1995, 1/2]

Exercise 19



1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf7+! ♜xf7 2. ♚xe6 ♜f8!

[2... ♚f2? 3. ♘e4!! ♔f8 4. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 5. ♚xd5 ♔g7 6. ♘xf7 ♚xf7 7. ♚xb5+-]

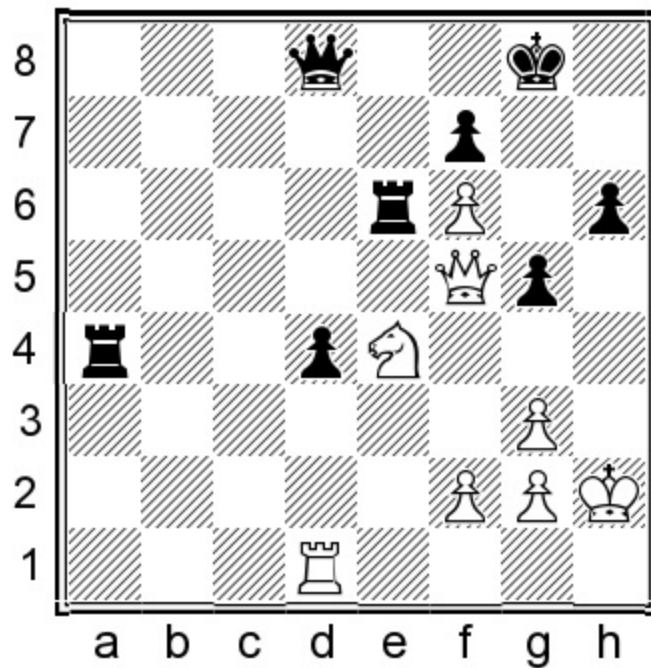
3. ♚d7+ ♔h8 4. ♘f7+! [4... ♚xb7? ♚xd3 5. ♘f7+ ♖xf7! 6. ♚xf7 ♚f5-+]

4... ♔g8! [4... ♖xf7? 5. ♚xf7 ♚g7? 6. ♚e8+ ♚g8 7. ♚e5+ ♚g7 8. ♚b8+-]

5. ♘h6+ ♔h8 6. ♘f7+ ♔g8 7. ♘h6+=

[Hachatrian,A-Umansky,V Moscow 1995, 1/2]

Exercise 20



1.? =

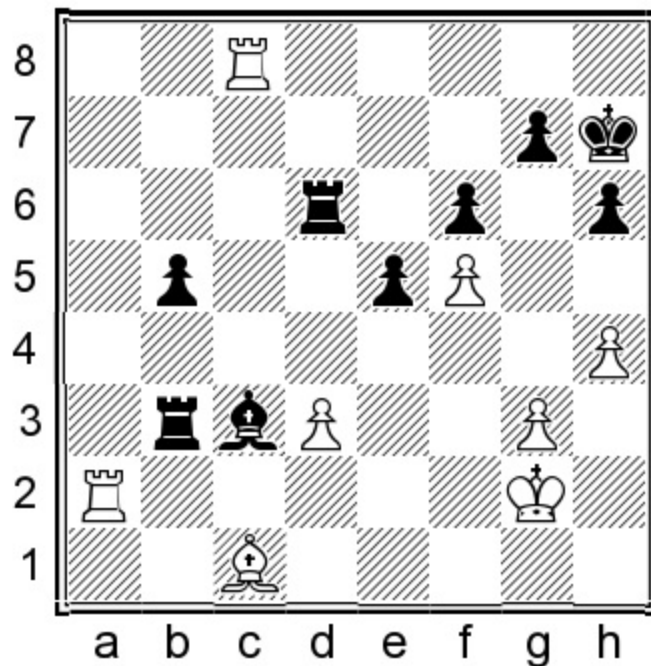
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖h3! ♜f8! [1... ♖xe4? 2. ♖xh6 ♜f8 3. ♖xg5+ ♔h8 (3... ♔h7 4. ♖f5+-) 4. ♖h1!+-; 1... ♖xf6? 2. ♖d7!!+-]

2. ♘c5! ♜xc5 3. ♖xh6 ♜f8 4. ♖xg5+ ♔h7 5. ♖f5+ ♔g8 [5... ♔h6? 6. ♖h1!+-; 5... ♔h8 6. ♖h5+=] 6. ♖g5+=

[Volchok,A-Ramirez,A Corr, 1/2]

Exercise 21



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♙a5!

[1...♖xd3?? 2.♖aa8+-;

1...♖d7? 2.h5!+-]

1...♙a5! 2.♖xa5 ♖dxd3 3.g4

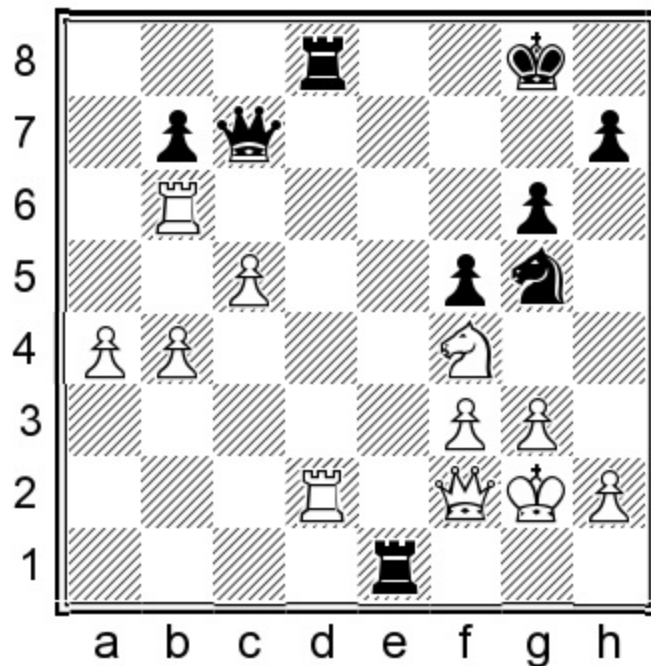
[3.♙f4 exf4 4.♖aa8 ♖b2+-+; 3.♖aa8 ♖xg3+ 4.♙f2 (4.♙h2 ♖h3+) 4...♖bf3+ 5.♙e2 ♖xf5 6.♖h8+ ♙g6 7.♙xh6! =]

3...♖g3+ 4.♙f2 ♖bf3+ 5.♙e2 e4! 6.♖aa8 [6.♙d2 ♖g2+ 7.♙d1 (7.♙e1 ♖g1+) 7...♖d3 8.♖aa8 ♖gxd2+ =]

6...♖g2+ 7.♙e1 ♖g1+ 8.♙e2 ♖g2+

[Shantharam, K-Prasad, D Madras 1994, 1/2]

Exercise 22



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖g1+! 2.♔xg1

[2.♚xg1 ♜xd2+ 3.♔h1 ♘xf3—+]

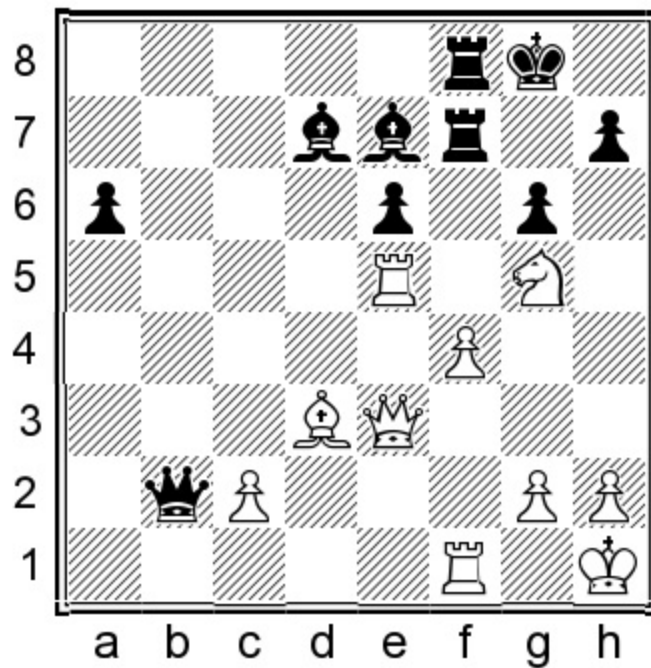
2...♜xd2 3.♚e3!

[3.♚f1 ♚e5 4.♜d6 ♚e3+ 5.♔h1 ♜f2 6.♚c4+ ♔g7! 7.♜d7+! ♔h6! 8.♘g2! ♘xf3 9.♜xh7+ ♔xh7 10.♚f7+ ♔h6 11.♚f8+=]

3...♚e5!! 4.♚xe5! ♘xf3+ 5.♔f1 ♘xh2+ 6.♔e1 ♘f3+ 7.♔f1

[Joshi,S-Muralidharan,M India (ch) 1993, 1/2]

Exercise 23



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

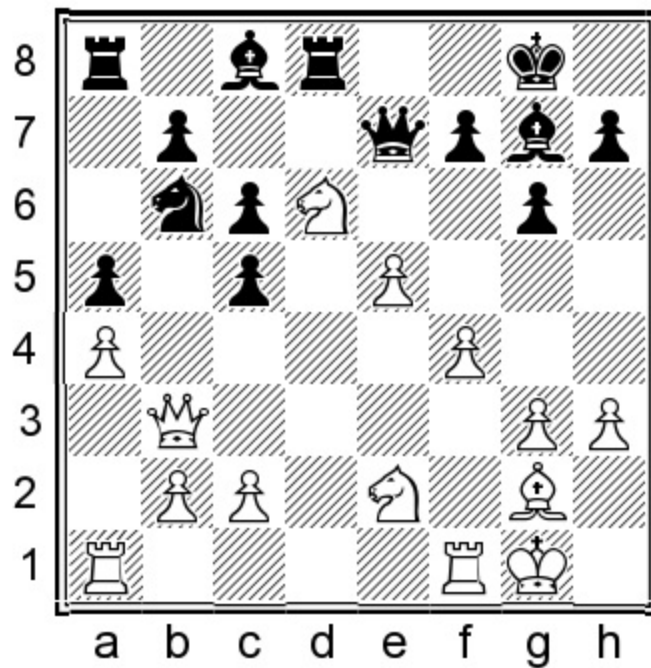
1...♖xf4! [1...♙xg5 2.♖xg5±]

1...♖xf4! 2.♖xf4 ♚a1+ 3.♙f1 ♚xf1+! 4.♖xf1 ♖xf1+ 5.♚g1 ♖xg1+ 6.♙xg1 ♙f6! 7.♖a5 ♙d8!

[Pritchett,C-Polugaevsky,L England-USSR 1981, 1/2]

[7...♙d8 8.♖e5 ♙f6=]

Exercise 24



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖xd6! 2.exd6 [2.♙xb6 ♜d2⊕]

2...♚xe2 3.♙xb6 ♜d4+ 4.♔h1!

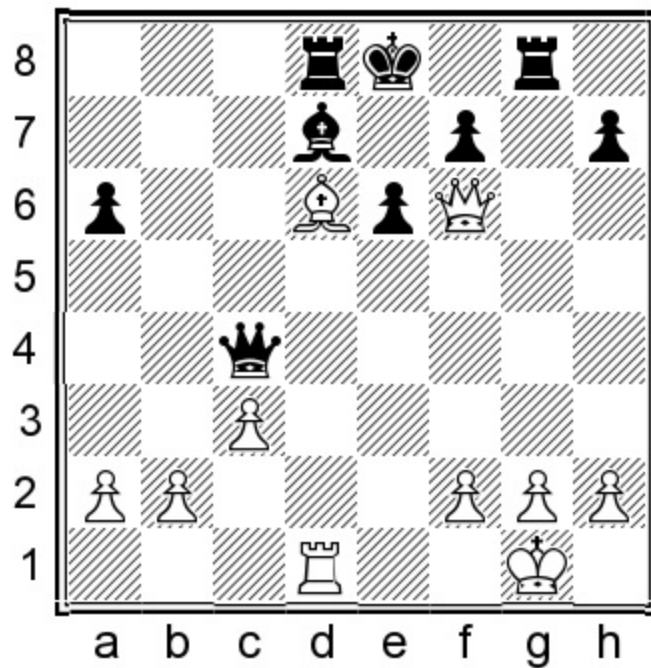
[4.♔h2 ♜xh3! 5.♔xh3 ♙h5#]

4...♜xh3!! 5.♜xh3 [5.♜f3? ♜g2+-+]

5...♙h5 6.♔h2 ♙e2+=

[Grigorov,J-Boudy,J Varna 1979, 1/2]

Exercise 25



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xg2+! 2. ♔h1 [2. ♔xg2? ♕g4+-+]

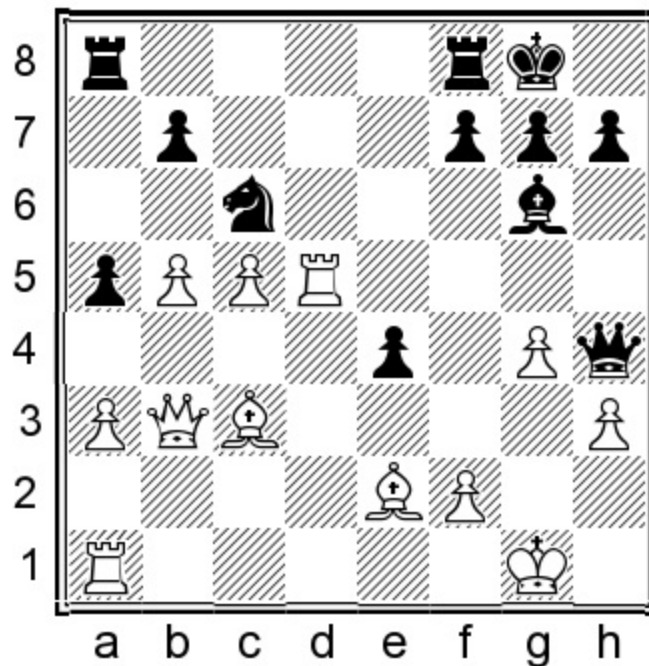
2... ♖g1+!! 3. ♖xg1 [3. ♔xg1? ♕g4+-+]

3... ♕c6+ 4. f3 ♕xf3+ [4... ♖xd6?? 5. ♖g8+ ♔d7 6. ♕d8#]

5. ♕xf3 ♖xd6 =

[Gimpel-Shubin, M USSR 1977, 1/2]

Exercise 26



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

1... ♖xh3! [1... ♘e7 2. ♖d7 ♜ae8 (2... e3 3. ♙e1±) 3. ♙e1±]

1... ♖xh3! 2. bxc6 e3! 3. ♞e5 [3. ♛c4 ♜ae8 4. f3 ♛g3+=; 3. cxb7 ♙e4 4. f3 ♙xd5 5. ♛xd5 ♛g3+ 6. ♔h1 ♛h3+=]

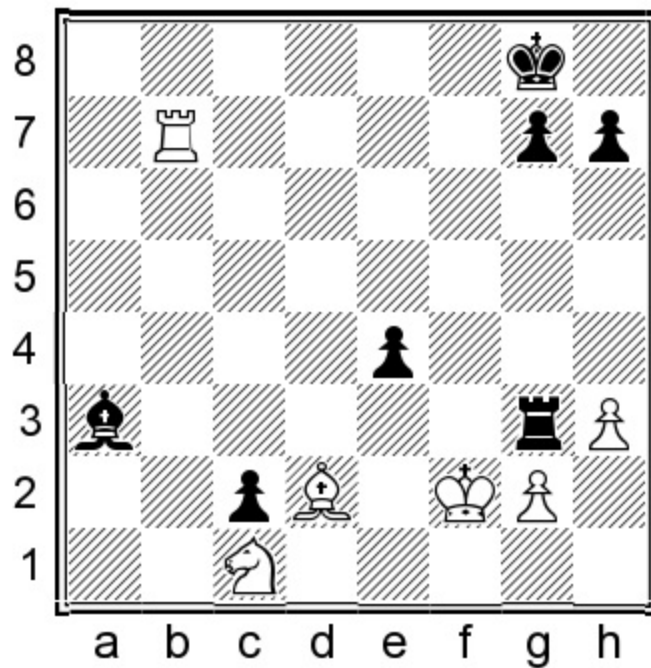
3... exf2+ 4. ♔xf2 ♜ae8! 5. ♛b2 ♛h2+ 6. ♔f1! [6. ♔f3? h5 (6... ♛h3+ 7. ♔f4 ♛h2+ 8. ♔f3 ♛h3+ 9. ♔f2 ♛h2+ 10. ♔f3) 7. g5 h4-+]

6... ♛h1+ [6... bxc6 7. ♖d1↗]

7. ♔f2 ♛h2+=

[Ribli,Z-Liljedahl,L Skopje (ol) 1972, 1/2]

Exercise 27



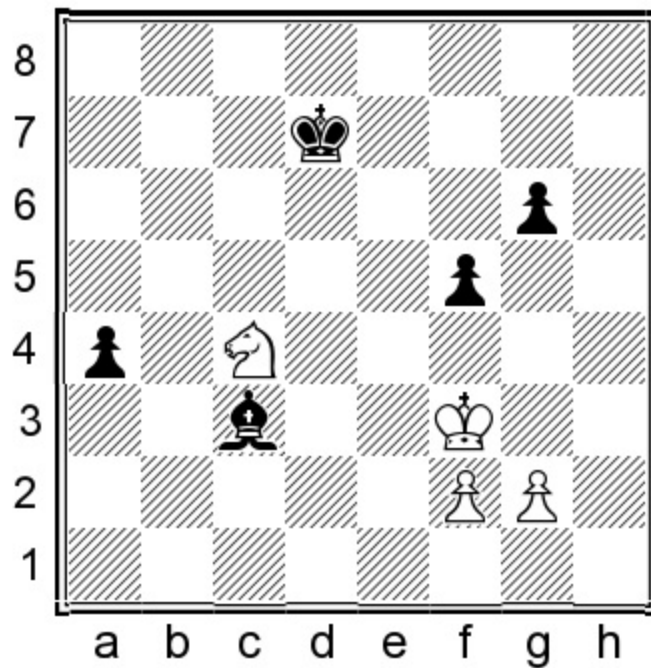
1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

47...e3+! 48.♙xe3 ♜xe3 49.♔xe3 ♙xc1+ 50.♔d3 h5! 51.♔xc2 ♙h6 52.♔d3 g6 =

[Leko,P-Beliavsky,A Istanbul (ol) 2000, 1/2]

Exercise 28



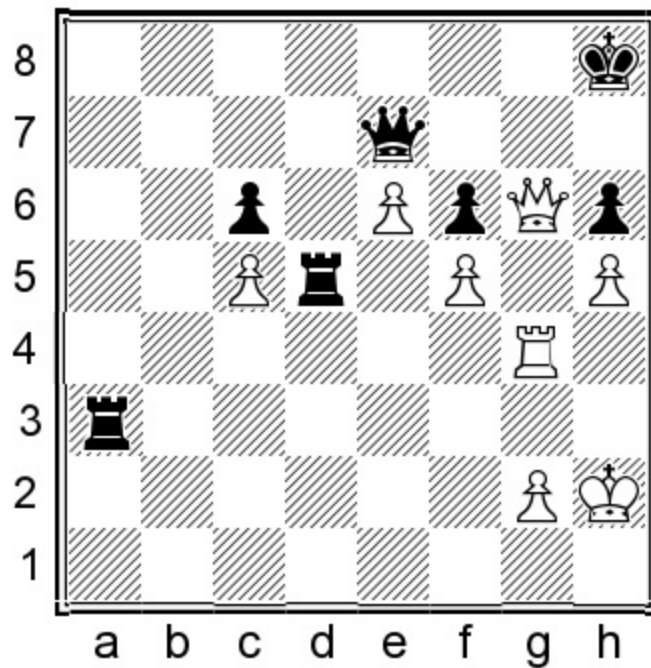
1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

49. ♖b6+! ♔c6 50. ♖xa4 ♕e5 51. g4!! ♔b5 52. gxf5 gxf5 53. ♖c3+! ♕xc3 54. ♔f4=

[Rodriguez Cespedes, A-Mikhalchishin, A Belgrade 1988, 1/2]

Exercise 29



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

39... ♖c7+!

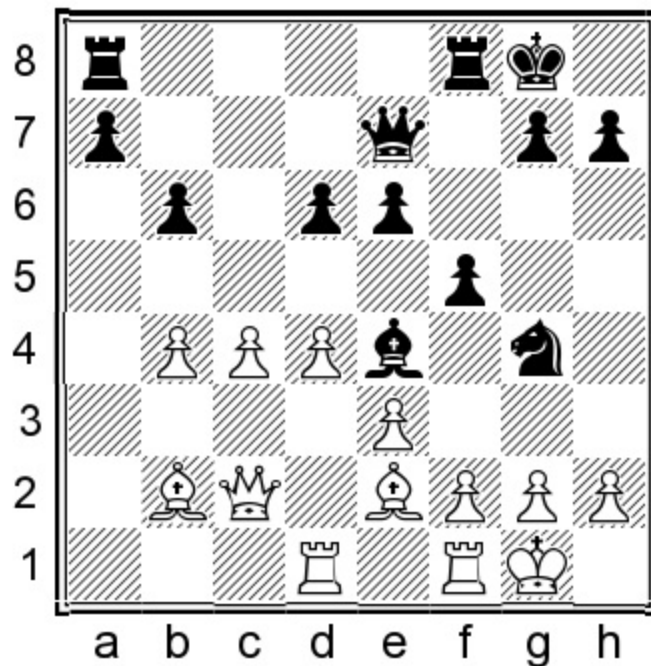
[39... ♖f8?? 40.e7 ♖b8+ 41.g3]

39... ♖c7+! 40.g3 ♜d2+ 41.♔h3 ♜h2+! 42.♔xh2 ♜a2+ 43.♔h3 ♜h2+! 44.♔xh2 ♖xg3+! 45.♜xg3=

[Sax,G-Smejkal,J Vrbas 1977, 1-0]

[45.♔h1 ♖h2+ 46.♔xh2=]

Exercise 30



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

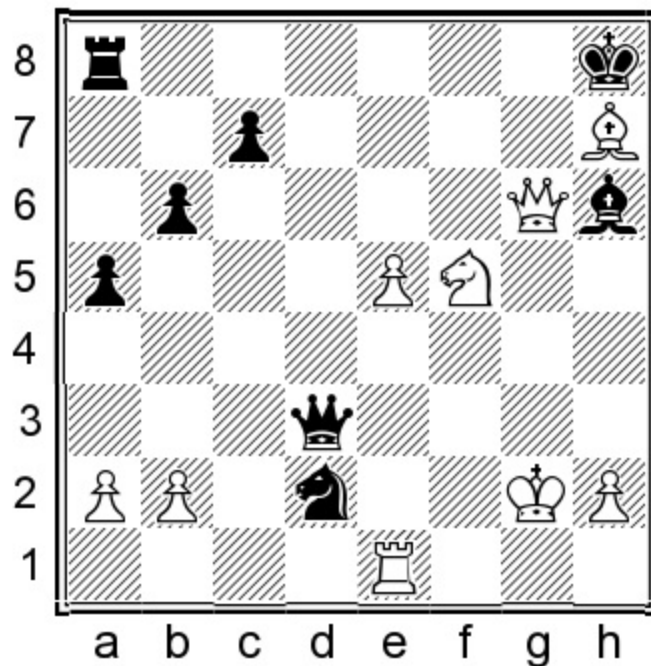
18. ♖d2!

[18. ♔d3? ♕f3!! 19. h3 (19. gxf3 ♖h4 20. ♖fe1 (20. fxg4 ♗xg4+ 21. ♔h1 ♖f3+ 22. ♔g1 ♖f6 23. ♖fe1 ♖g6+ 24. ♔f1 ♖h6—+) 20... ♗xh2 21. d5 ♗xf3+ 22. ♔f1 ♖g4—+) 19... ♗g5 20. ♖fe1 ♗e5 21. ♔f1 ♔e4 22. ♗e2 ♗f3+—+]

18. ♖d2! ♗xh2! 19. ♔xh2 ♖h4+ 20. ♔g1 ♔xg2! 21. f4!! ♖f6 22. ♔f3! ♔xf3 23. ♖xf3 ♖g6+ 24. ♔f1 ♖h1+ 25. ♔e2 ♖g2+ 26. ♖f2 ♖h5+ 27. ♔e1 =

[Svetushkin, D-Inkirov, V 15th Leonardo di Bona Magistrale 2009, 0–1]

Exercise 31



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

28... ♖f3+!

[28... ♖d5+? 29. ♔h3 ♖d3+ 30. ♔h4 ♖d8+ 31. ♔h5 ♖g5+ 32. ♗xg5 ♕xg5 33. ♔xg5 ♔xh7 34. ♔f4+-]

28... ♖f3+! 29. ♔g1 ♖f4! 30. ♗xh6 ♕f3+ 31. ♔f2 ♕g5+!

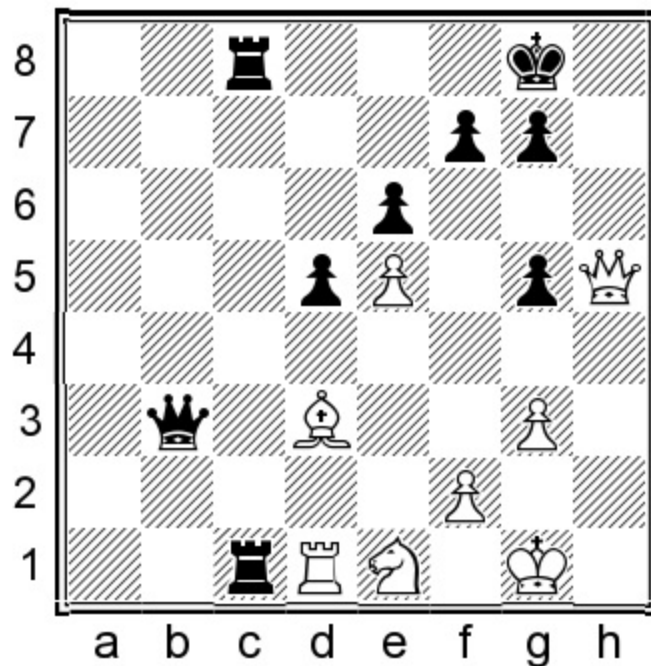
[31... ♖xe1+! 32. ♗xf4 ♕d3+ 33. ♔e3 ♖xf4 34. ♔xf4 ♔xh7=]

32. ♔g1 [32. ♔e2? ♖g4+ 33. ♔d2 ♖d8+ 34. ♕d6 ♕xh7]

32... ♕f3+ 33. ♔f2 =

[Najer, E-Anand, V FIDE Grand Swiss 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 32



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

38. ♖xc1!

[38. ♔e2?? g6 39. ♕g4 ♖8c4 40. ♘d3 ♖xd1+-+;

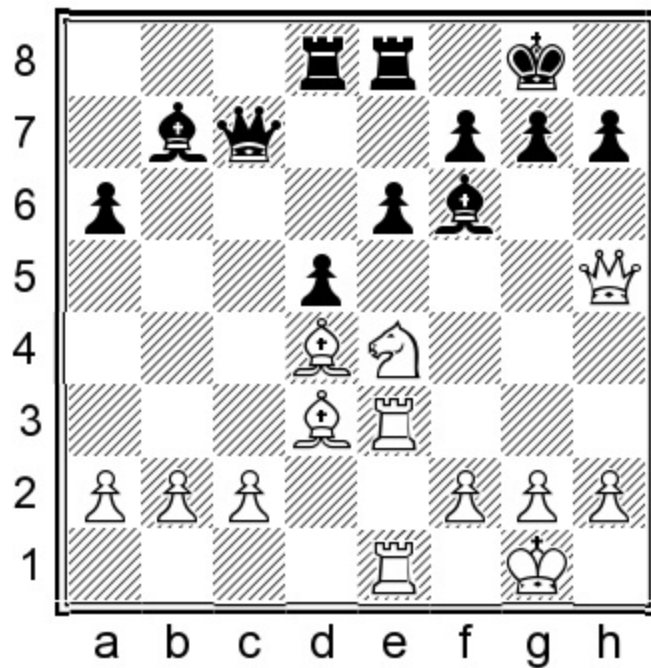
38. ♕h7+ ♔f8 39. ♖xc1! (39. ♕h8+? ♔e7-+)]

38. ♖xc1! ♖xc1 39. ♔g2!! ♖xe1 40. ♕h7+ ♔f8 41. ♕h8+ ♔e7 42. ♖c8! ♖b6 43. ♖c3!! ♖d1 44. ♕a3+ ♔d8 [44... ♔e8 45. ♕a4+]

45. ♕f8+ ♔c7 46. ♕xf7+=

[Rinat Jumabayev-Sergey Karjakin Isle of Man 2019, 0-1]

Exercise 33



1...? =

Show/Hide Solution

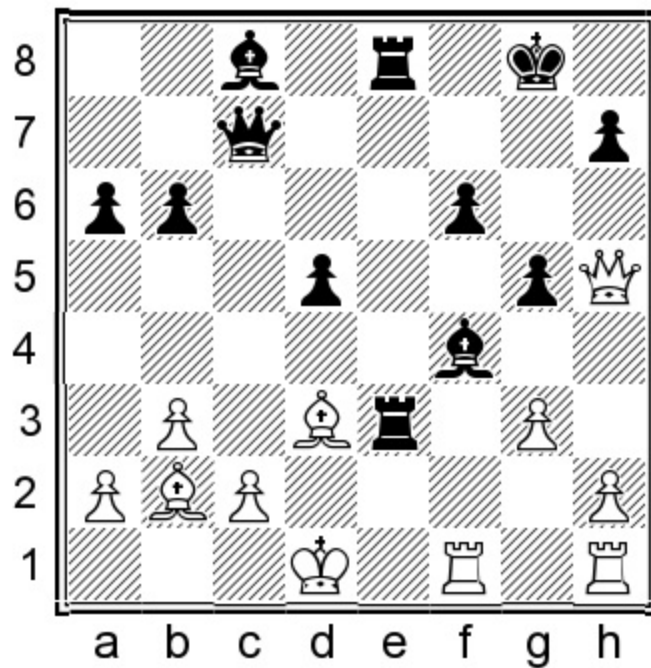
19... ♖xd4! 20. ♜xh7+! ♔xh7 21. ♘f6+! ♔h6! 22. ♝h3+ ♔g5 23. ♘h7+! ♔g4! [23... ♔f4 24. ♝h4#]

24. ♙e2+ ♔f4 25. ♙d3! [25. ♝h4+ ♔e5--]

25... ♔g4! 26. ♙e2+ ♔f4 27. ♙d3 ♔g4 =

[O'Kelly de Galway, A-Penrose, J Varna 1962, 1/2]

Exercise 34



1...? =

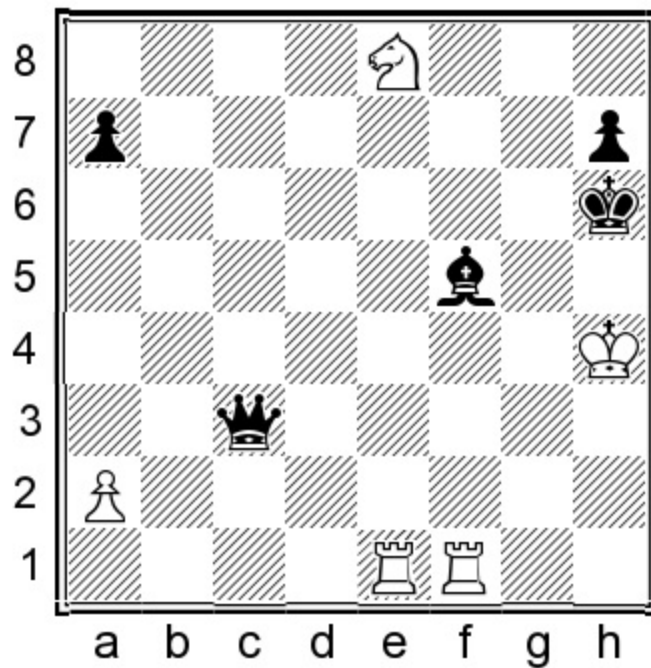
Show/Hide Solution

24... ♖xd3+! [24... ♔d6? 25. ♖xf6+-]

24... ♖xd3+! 25. cxd3 ♖e3! 26. ♖f3 ♖e2!! 27. ♔xe2 ♚c2+ 28. ♔f1 ♚d1+ 29. ♔f2 ♚d2+=

[Dus Chotimirsky, F-Cohn, E St Petersburg 1909, 1/2]

Exercise 35



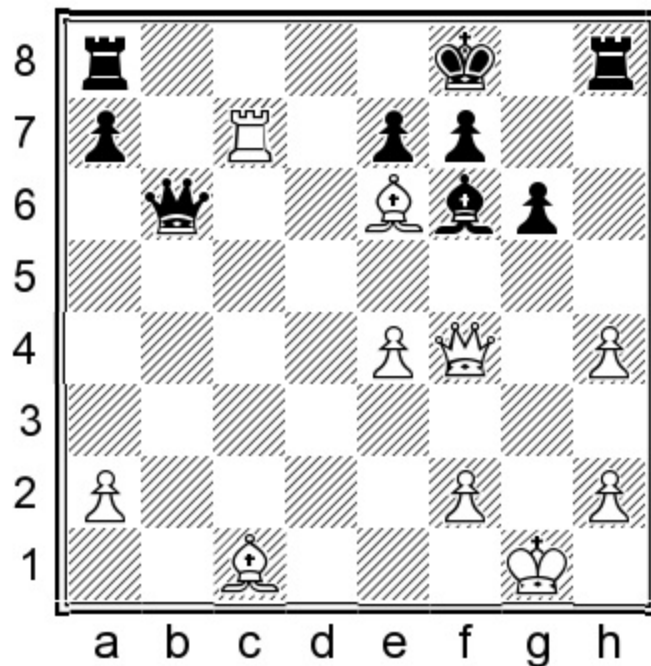
1.?=

Show/Hide Solution

47.♖e6+!! ♔xe6 48.♖f6+!! ♚xf6+ 49.♘xf6 ♔xa2 50.♕g3 ♔b3 51.♕f4 a5 52.♕e3 a4 53.♕d2 a3
 54.♕c1 ♔a2 55.♕c2 ♕g6 56.♘xh7 ♕xh7 57.♕c3! ♔e6 58.♕c2! =

[Estrin, Y-Ravinsky, G Moscow 1950, 1/2]

Exercise 36



1.? =

Show/Hide Solution

26. ♖xe7!! ♔xe7 27. ♕a3+! ♔xe6 [27... ♔e8 28. ♖xf6 ♖xe6 29. ♖xh8+ ♔d7 30. ♖xa8 ♖g4+ 31. ♔f1 ♖d1+=]

28. ♖g4+ ♔e5 29. ♖g3+ ♔xe4 30. ♖g4+ ♔d3 31. ♖d1+ ♔c3 32. ♖f3+ ♔c2 33. ♖e4+! [33. ♖e2+?? ♔b1 34. ♖d1+ ♔xa2--]

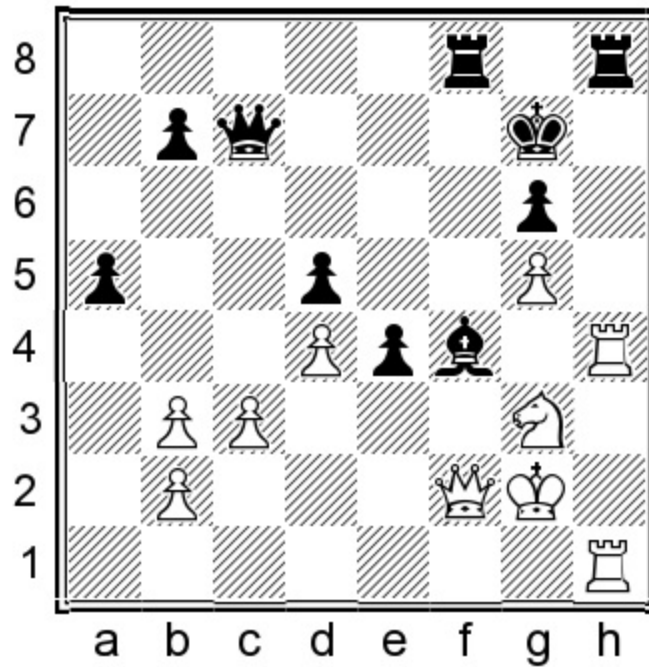
33... ♔d2 34. ♖f4+! ♔d1 35. ♖f3+ ♔c2 36. ♖e4+! ♔c3 37. ♖f3+=

[Bilek, I-Keres, P Budapest 1955, 1/2]

Show in Text Mode

QUEEN SACRIFICE 4

Exercise 1



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

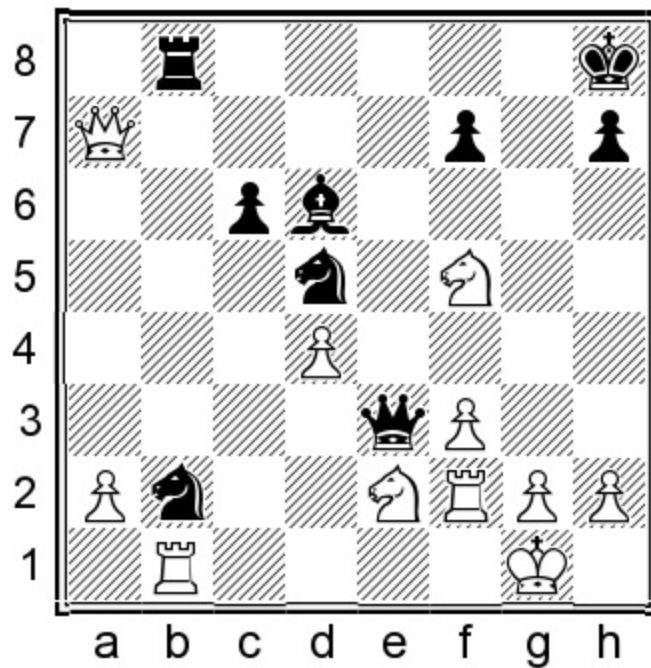
39. ♖e2! ♗xg5

[39... ♖xh4 40. ♗xh4+-; 39... ♗h2! 40. ♗xf8+!! ♖xf8 41. ♖4xh2! (41. ♖1xh2?? ♗d8 42. ♖h7+ ♔g8 43. ♖h8+ ♔f7 44. ♖xf8+ ♗xf8) 41... ♗d8 42. ♖h7+ ♔g8 43. ♖h8+ ♔f7 44. ♖xf8+- ♗xf8 45. ♖f1+-]

40. ♗xf8+! ♖xf8 41. ♖h7+ ♔g8 42. ♖xc7+-

[Maze,S-Myhrvold,R Fornebu 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 2



1...? -+

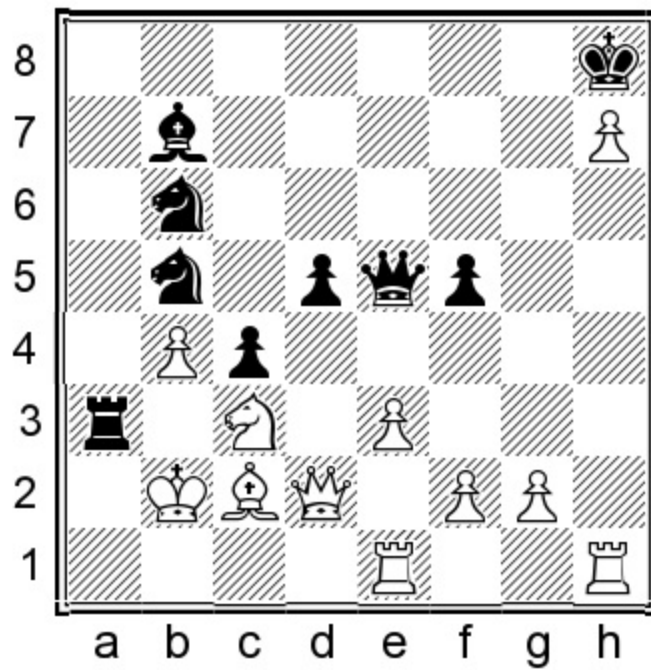
Show/Hide Solution

25...♙xf2+!! 26.♗xf2 ♘d3+ 27.♗f1 ♖xb1+ 28.♘c1 ♖xc1+ 29.♗e2 ♘5f4+! 30.♗e3 [30.♗d2 ♗b4+ 31.♗e3 ♖e1#]

30...♖e1+! 31.♗d2 ♗b4+! 32.♗c2 ♖c1+ 33.♗b3 ♖c3+ 34.♗a4 ♖a3#

[Sidiropoulos,N-Korniotis,F Greek league 2013, 0-1]

Exercise 3



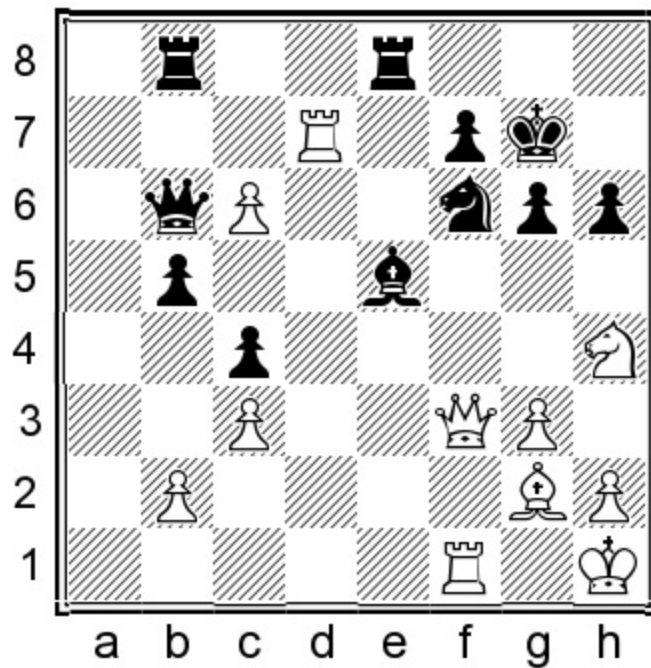
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♔d4!! ♘xd4 2. exd4 ♚b8 3. ♕xa3+-

[Pieper-Gerstner BRD 1997, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

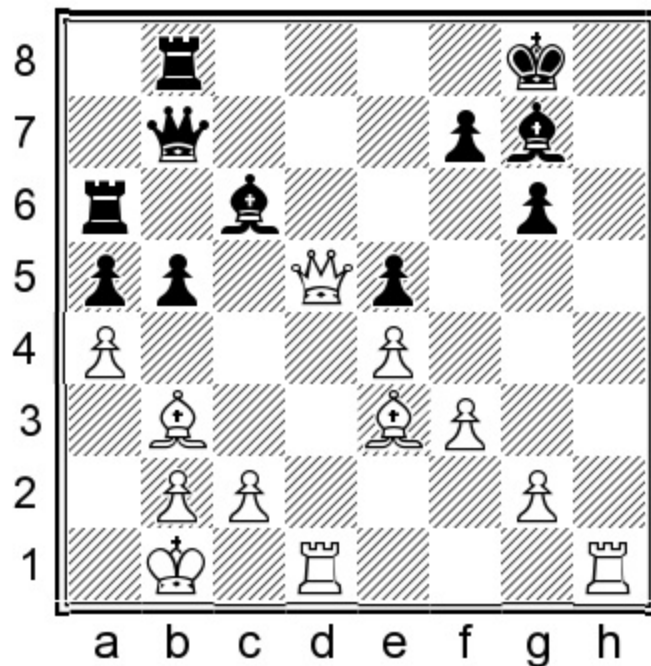
30. ♖d5! [30. ♘xg6 ♔xg6 31. ♜d6+-]

30. ♖d5! ♘xd5 31. ♜xf7+ ♔g8 32. ♙xd5 ♜e6 33. ♙xe6 [33. ♜f6! ♙xf6 34. ♙xe6+ ♔f8 35. ♘xg6+ ♔e8 36. ♙f7#]

33... ♜xc6+ 34. ♙d5+-

[Miroshnichenko,E-Gajewski,G Polanica Zdroj 1999, 1-0]

Exercise 5



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖d8+! ♜xd8 2. ♜xd8+ ♕f8 3. ♘g5!

[3. ♘h6? ♜a8=]

3... ♘d7

[3... ♜a8? 4. ♘f6 ♜xd8 5. ♜h8#]

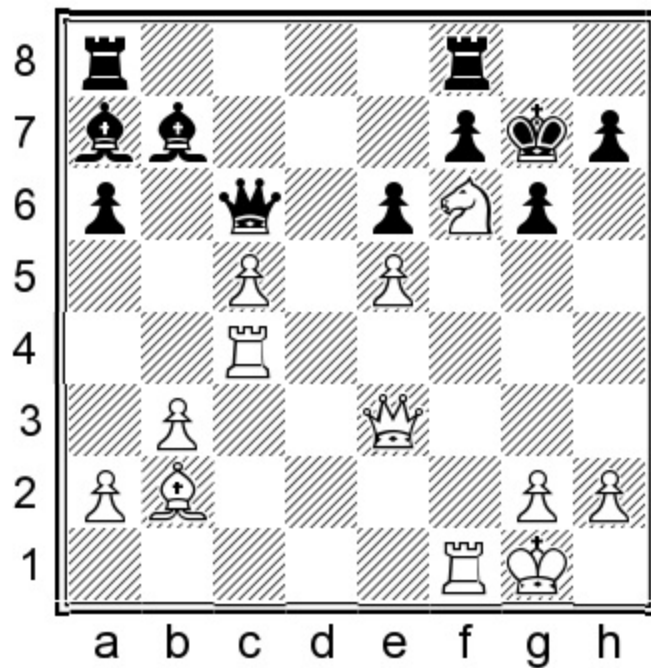
4. ♘d5!

[4. ♘e7 ♘e6! 5. ♜xf8+ ♔g7 6. ♜e8 ♘xb3 7. ♜hh8=; 4. ♜h8+? ♔xh8 5. ♜xf8+ ♔g7 6. ♜xf7+ ♔h8 7. ♜f8+=]

4... ♜c7 5. ♘e7 ♜xd8 6. ♘xd8 bxa4 7. ♘c7 ♘d6 8. ♘xd6 ♜xd6 9. c4+-

[Romanishin,O-Lebovich USSR 1968, 1/2]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

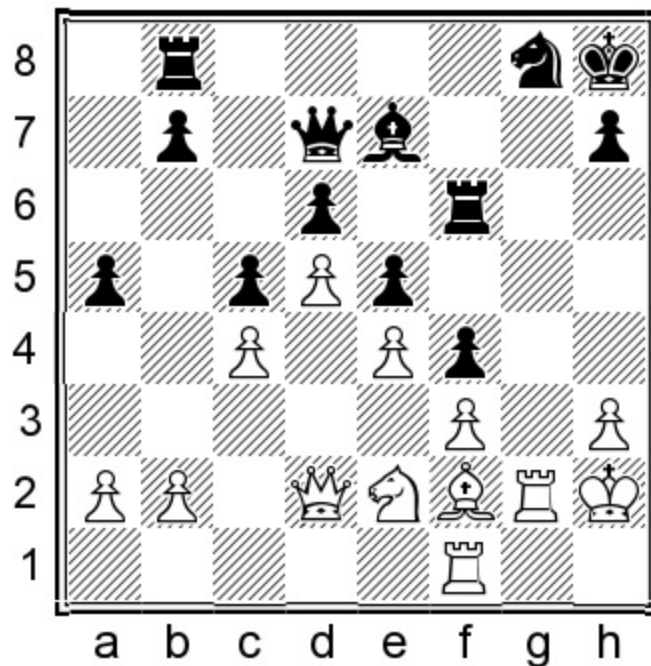
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖h6+!! ♔xh6 2. ♜h4+ ♕g5 [2... ♖g7 3. ♞xh7#]

3. ♙c1+ ♕xh4 4. ♞f4+ ♕g5 5. ♞f3+ ♕h4 6. ♞h3#

[Kulis-Balik Praha 1949, 1-0]

Exercise 7



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

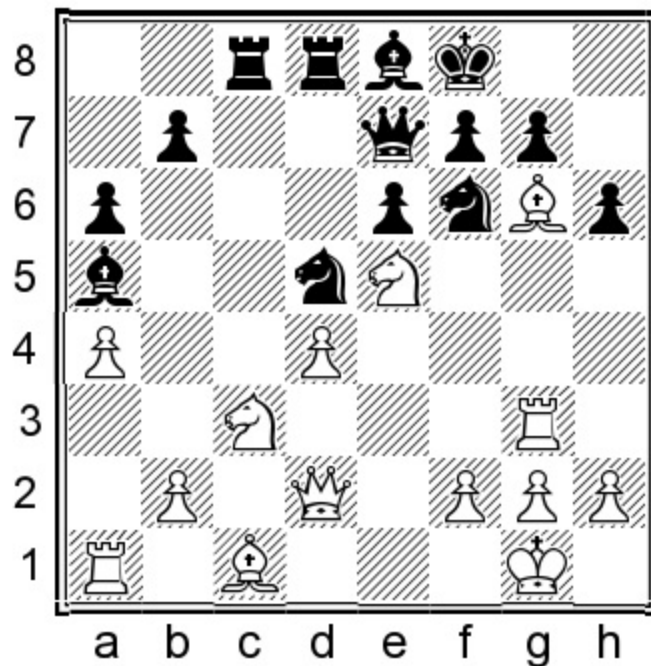
1...♖xh3+!! 2.♔xh3 ♜h6+ 3.♔g4 ♜f6+ 4.♔f5 ♜d7!?

[4...♜g4!! 5.♜xf4 (5.fxg4 ♜f8#) 5...♜g8! 6.♜h5 ♜hg6-+]

5.♜g5! ♜f8+ 6.♔g4 ♜f6+ 7.♔f5 ♜xd5+ 8.♔g4 ♜f6+ 9.♔f5 ♜g8+! 10.♔g4 ♜xg5! 11.♔xg5 ♜f7!
12.♜h4 ♜g6+ 13.♔h5 ♜fg7!-+

[Averbakh-Kotov Zurich 1953, 0-1]

Exercise 8



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖xh6! ♗b4

[21...gxh6 22. ♕xh6+ ♔g8 23. ♕e4+ ♔h8 24. ♕g7+ ♔g8 25. ♕xf6+ ♔f8 26. ♘xd5! exd5 27. ♕xe7+ ♔xe7 28. ♕f5+-; 21...fxg6 22. ♗h8+ ♘g8 23. ♖f3+-; 21...♘xc3 22. ♗h8+ ♘g8 23. bxc3+-]

22. ♗h8+ ♔e7 23. ♗xg7 ♗xd4

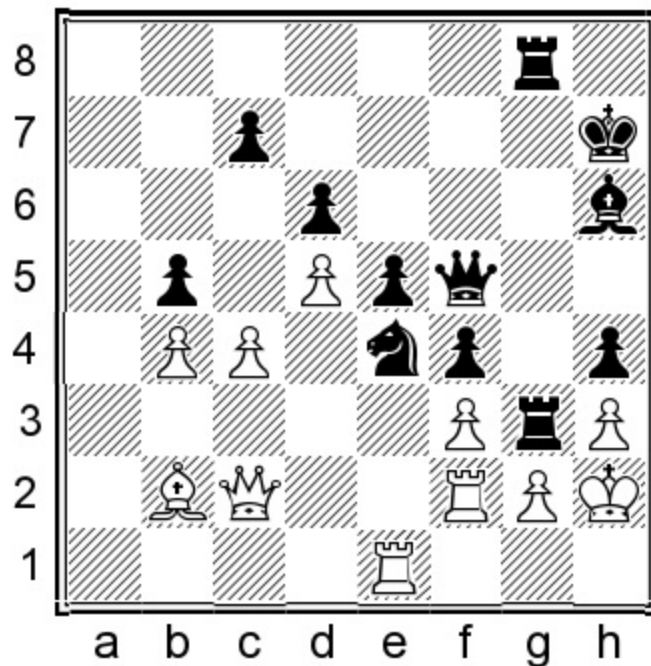
[23...♘xc3 24. bxc3 ♖xd4 25. ♕g5+-]

24. ♘d3 [24. ♘f3!+-]

24... ♕xc3 25. bxc3 ♘xc3 26. ♕a3+ ♔d7 27. ♖e1+-

[Tukmakov, V-Kortschnoj, V Riga 1970, 1-0]

Exercise 9



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♞xf2!!

[1...♔h8? 2.♚xe4 ♚g5 3.♚e2 bxc4 4.♞c1 ♘g7 5.♞xc4 ♘f6 6.♚f1]

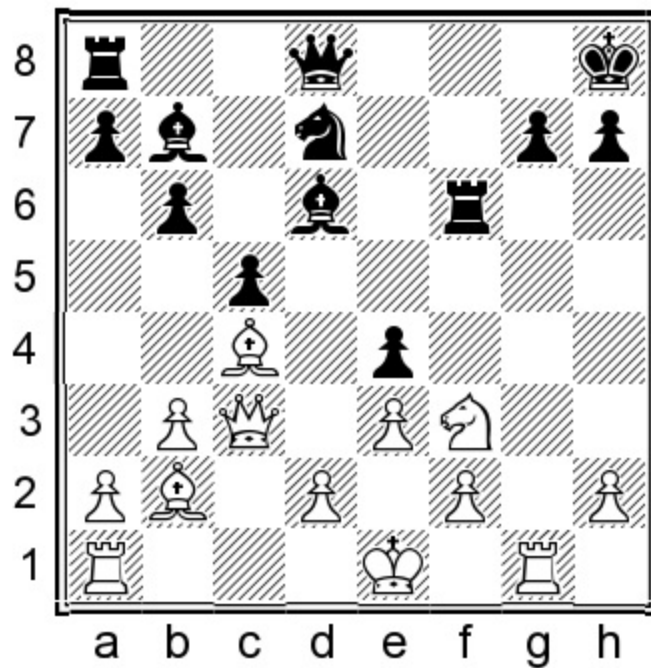
1...♞xf2!! 2.♚xf5+ ♞g6 3.♞g1 ♞xh3! 4.♚xh3

[4.♞f1 ♞xg2+ (4...♞g5 5.♘xe5! h3 6.♚d7+ ♘g7 7.♘xg7 ♞xg7 8.♚f5+ ♞g6 9.gxh3=) 5.♔xh3 ♔g8!
6.♚xg6+ ♞xg6 7.cxb5 ♞g3+ 8.♔h2 ♔f7-+]

4...♞xh3+ 5.♔xh3 ♞g3+ 6.♔h2 bxc4 7.♞c1 h3!-+

[Rogers,I-Kochyev,A Tallinn 1985, 1/2]

Exercise 10



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

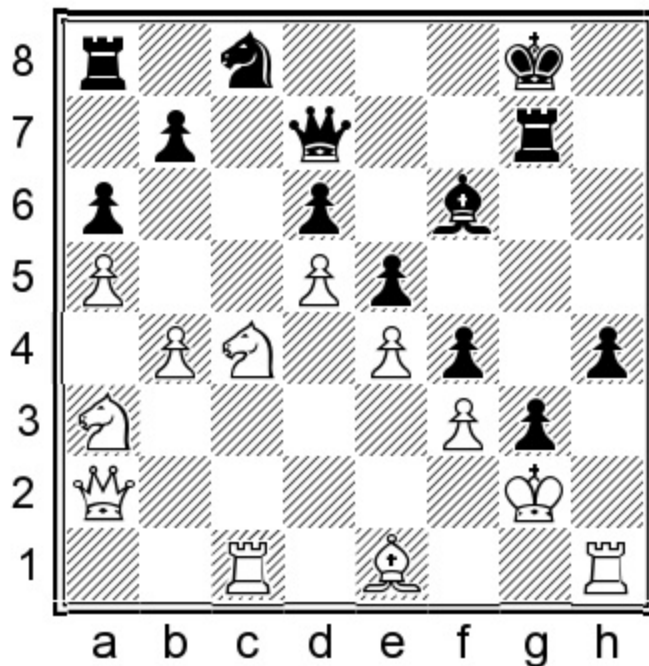
17. ♖xf6! ♜xf6

[17...gxf6 18. ♘g5!+-]

18. ♘g5! ♚e7 19. ♘f7+ ♜g8 20. ♘xd6+ ♜f8 21. ♘f5+-

[Nicolas Zapata,I-Styazhkina,A Maribor 2012, 1/2]

Exercise 11



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

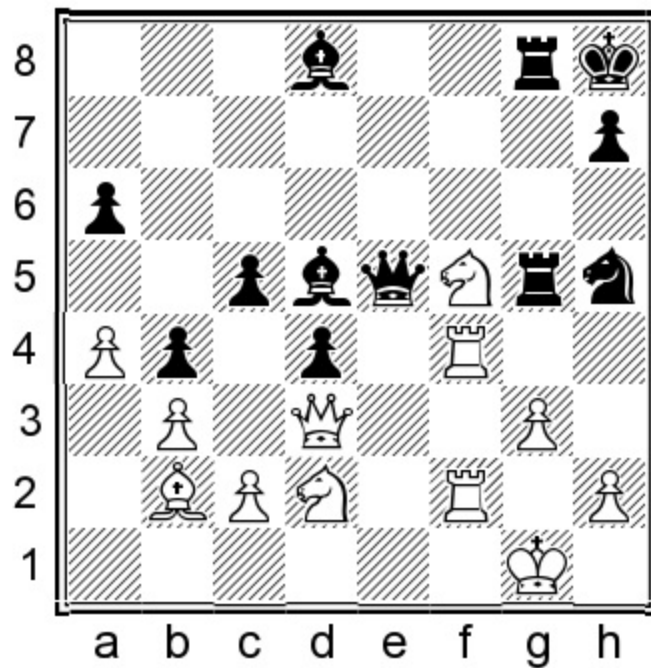
35...h3+! 36.♖xh3 ♜xh3+! 37.♗xh3 ♞h7+ 38.♗g4 ♜e7

[38...♞h4+ 39.♗f5 ♗f7! 40.♜xe5+ ♝xe5 41.♞xc8 ♞xc8 42.♜c4 ♞h5+! 43.♗g4 ♞ch8! 44.♜xe5+ dxe5 45.♝xg3 ♗f6! 46.♝xf4 ♞h4+-+]

39.♝xg3 ♗h8!! 40.♜xe5 ♞g8+ 41.♗xf4 ♝g5+ 42.♗g4 ♝e3+ 43.♜g6+ ♞xg6#

[Belov,I-Zimmerman,Y Smolensk 1991, 0-1]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

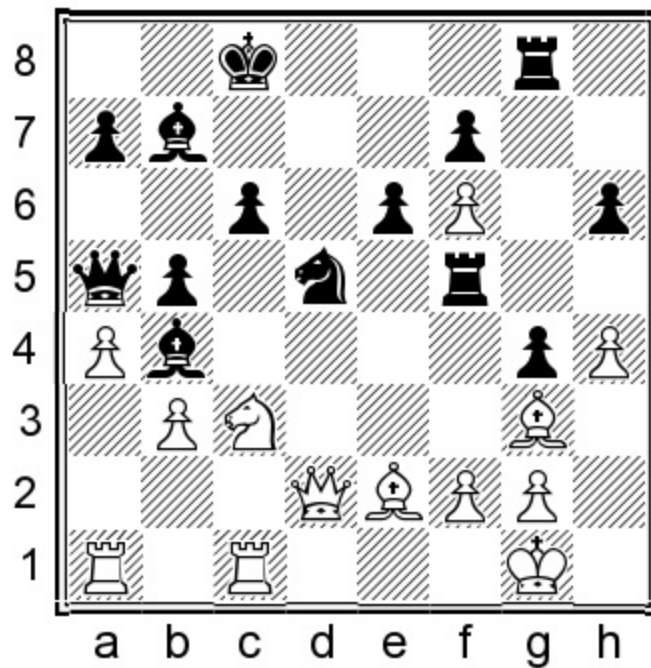
34.♖xd4! ♜xg3!

[34...cxd4 35.♙xd4+-; 34...♞f6 35.♖xd5 ♚xb2 36.♖xd8+-; 34...♙f6 35.♖xd5 ♚xb2 36.♞e4+-]

35.♞xg3 ♖xg3+ 36.hxg3 ♖xg3+ 37.♙f1!! ♖xd3 38.♖g4!+-

[Tarrasch,S-Walbrodt,C Hastings 1895, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1.?±

Show/Hide Solution

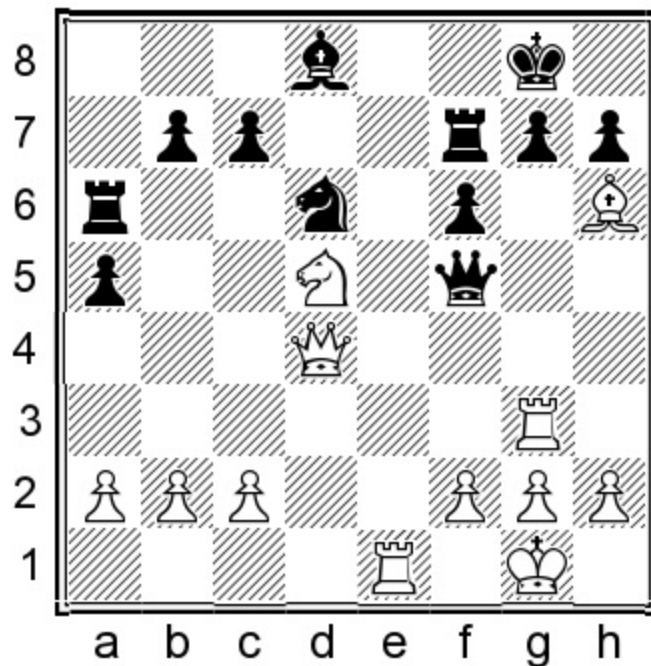
28. ♖xd5! ♗xd2 29. ♖e7+ ♔d7 30. axb5 ♜c5!

[30... ♜b6 31. bxc6+ ♗xc6 32. ♜xc6 ♜xc6 33. ♜xa7+ ♔e8 34. ♖xc6+-]

31. ♜d1 ♜xa1 32. ♜xa1 ♜a8 33. bxc6+ ♗xc6 34. ♖xc6 ♔xc6 35. ♜a6+ ♔b7 36. ♜d6±

[Williams,S-Stefansson,H Port Erin 2016, 1/2]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19. ♖b4!! axb4 20. ♗xd6!! ♔d7

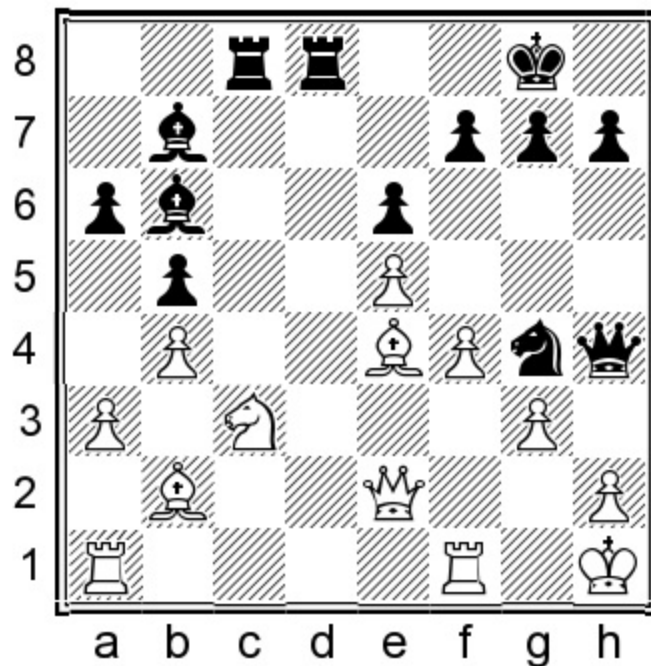
[20... ♖xd6 21. ♖e8+ ♖f8 22. ♖xg7+ ♔h8 23. ♖xf8#]

21. ♗d5!! ♔f8 [21... g6 22. ♖ge3+-]

22. ♖xg7! ♗xd5 23. ♖g8+ ♔xg8 24. ♖e8+ ♖f8 25. ♖xf8#

[Korchmar,E-Poliak,A Kiev 1931, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

22...♖xc3! 23.gxh4

[23.♙xb7 ♜xg3 24.♜f3 ♜xf3 25.♙xf3 ♘f2+ 26.♔g1 ♘e4+ 27.♔f1 ♘d2+ 28.♔g2 ♘xf3 29.♚xf3 ♜d2+-+; 23.♙xc3 ♙xe4+]

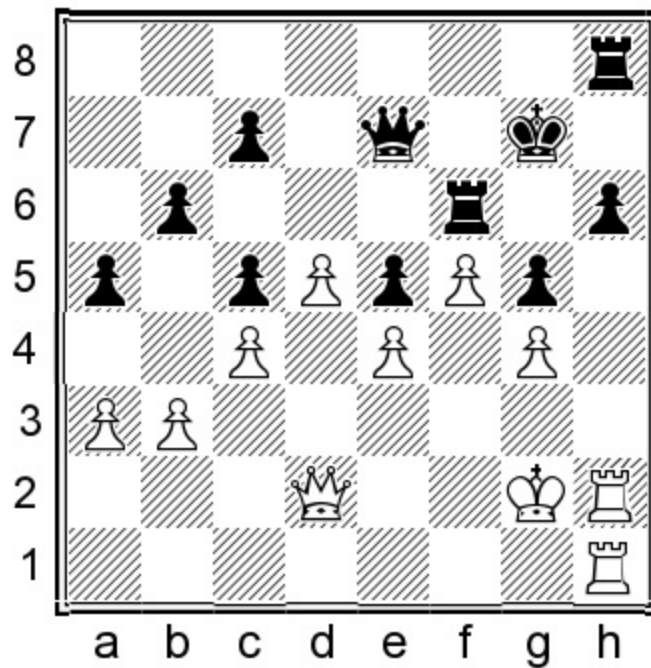
23...♜d2!! 24.♚xd2

[24.♙xc3 ♜xe2-+; 24.♙xb7 ♜xe2-+; 24.♚xg4 ♙xe4+ 25.♜f3 ♙xf3+-+]

24...♙xe4+ 25.♚g2 ♜h3!!-+

[Rotlewi,G-Rubinstein,A Lodz 1907, 0-1]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xg5+! hxg5 2. ♜xh8 ♜f7 3. ♜1h7+

[3. a4!!+-]

3... ♔f6 4. ♜h6+ ♔g7 5. a4!!

[5. f6+? ♜xf6 6. ♜xf6 ♜xf6±]

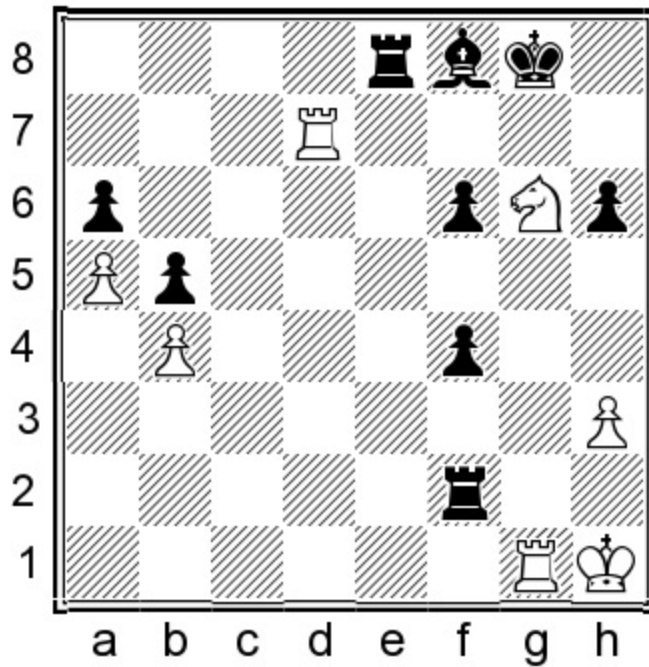
5... ♜d7 [5... c6 6. dxc6+-]

6. f6+! ♜xf6 7. ♜6h7+

[Benko-Weinberger USA 1965, 1-0]

EXERCISES 4

Exercise 1



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

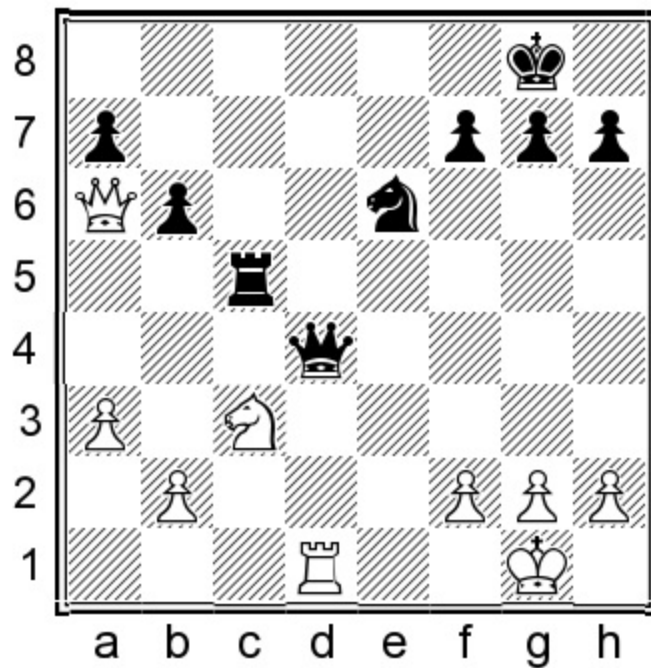
39. ♖e5+! [39. ♖xf4+?? ♜h8 40. ♖g6+ ♜g8 41. ♖e5+ ♜h8 42. ♖f7+ ♜h7 43. ♖g5+ ♜h8 44. ♖f7+ ♜h7=]

39. ♖e5+! ♜h8 **40.** ♖f7+! ♜h7 **41.** ♖d6+! ♞e7 [41... ♜h8 42. ♖xe8+-]

42. ♖e4!+- ♞xd7 **43.** ♖xf6+ ♜h8 **44.** ♞g8#

[Admiraal, M-Sethuraman, S Dieren 2013, 1/2]

Exercise 2



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♖xc3! 2.♚f1! [2...♖xd4 ♖c1+ 3.♚f1 ♖xf1+ 4.♔xf1 ♘xd4-+]

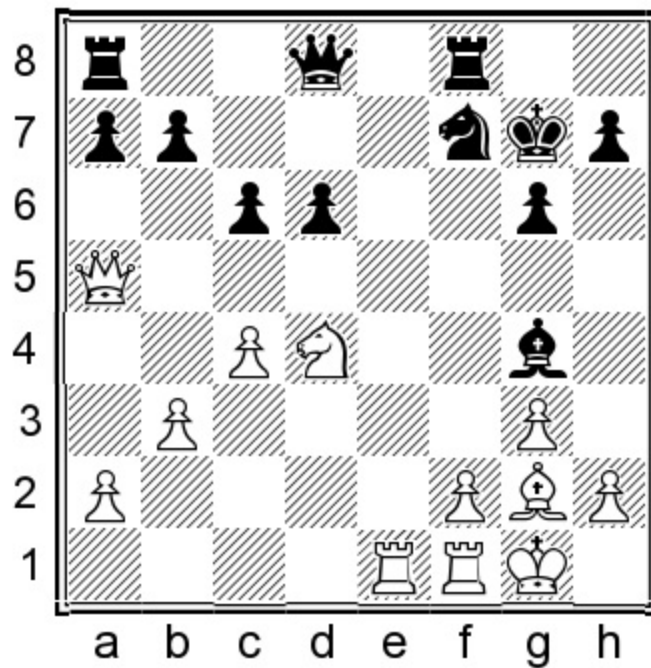
2...♖c8! 3.♖xd4 ♘xd4 4.♔h1 [4.f3 ♖c1 5.♚xc1 ♘e2+-+]

4...♘e2! -+

[Poliak,A-Levin,M Kiev 1949, 0-1]

[4...♘b3-+]

Exercise 3



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

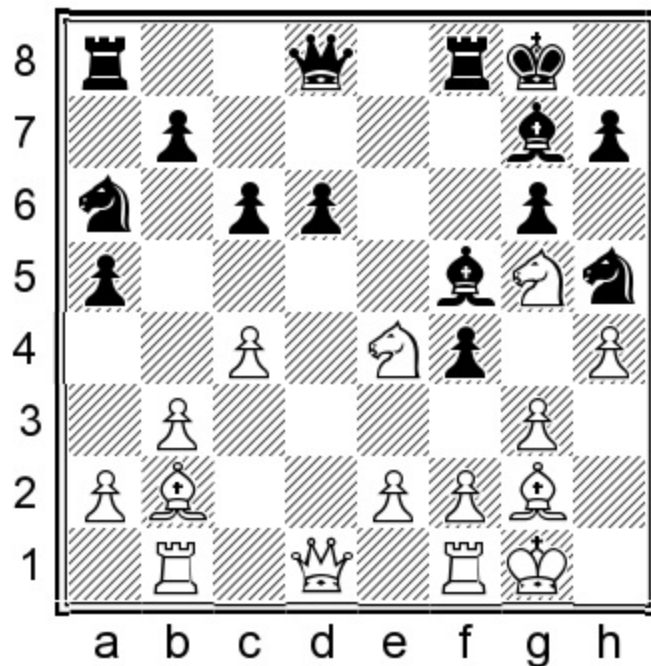
20. ♖c3! ♔g8

[20... ♗f6 21. ♖e6! ♕xe6 22. ♘xe6+ ♔g8 23. ♗xf6+-]

21. ♕xc6! bxc6 22. ♘xc6 ♗d7 23. ♘e7+-

[Khasin,A-Videki,S Budapest 1990, 1-0]

Exercise 4



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

16. ♖xd6! ♙xb2 [16... ♙xb1 17. ♙d5+! cxd5 18. ♖xd5+-]

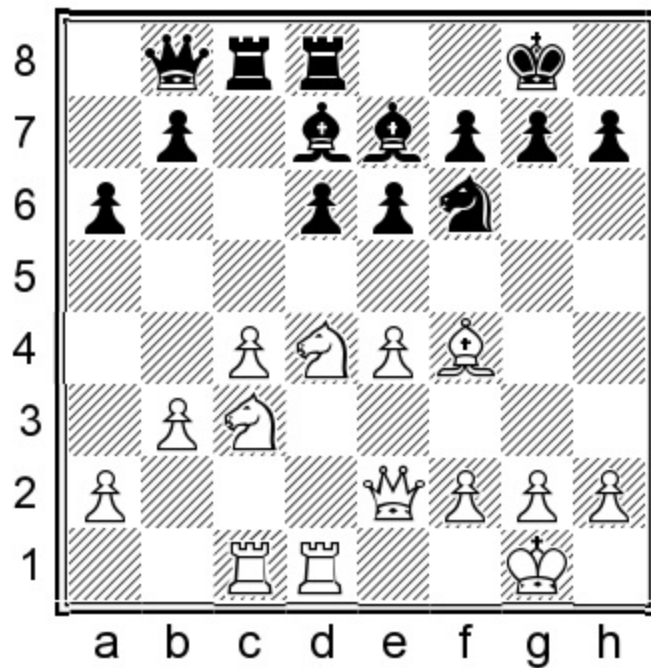
17. ♙d5+! [17. ♖xb2?! ♖f6 18. ♖d2 ♖c5 19. ♖xf5?! (♙19. ♙f3!±) 19... ♖xf5]

17... ♖g7 [17... cxd5 18. ♖xd5+ ♖g7 19. ♖xf5+ ♖xf5 20. ♖xb7+ ♖g8 21. ♖xh7+-]

18. ♖xf5+-

[Javakhishvili,L-Ivanchuk,V Caleta 2017, 1/2]

Exercise 5



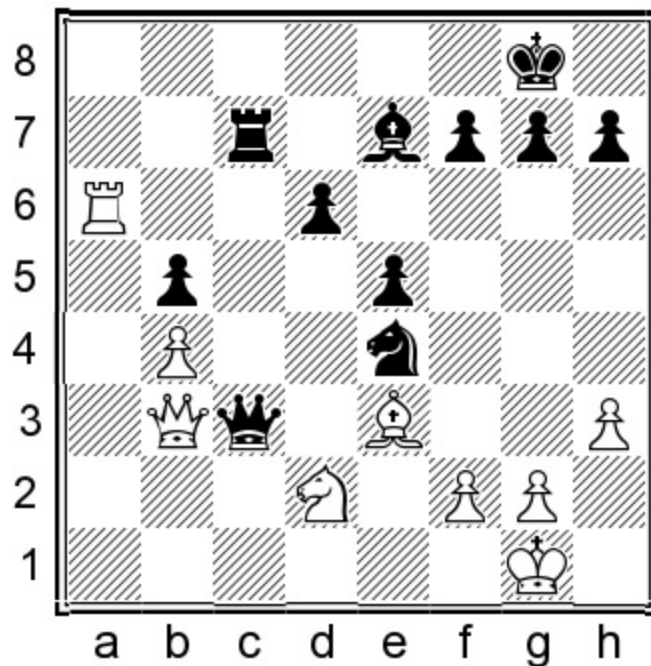
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

18...e5! 19.♘f5 ♙xf5 20.exf5 exf4 21.♙xe7 ♜e8 22.♙xd6 ♜e1+ 23.♞xe1 ♙xd6-+

[Ivic,V-Livaic,L Zalakaros 2017, 0-1]

Exercise 6



1.? +-

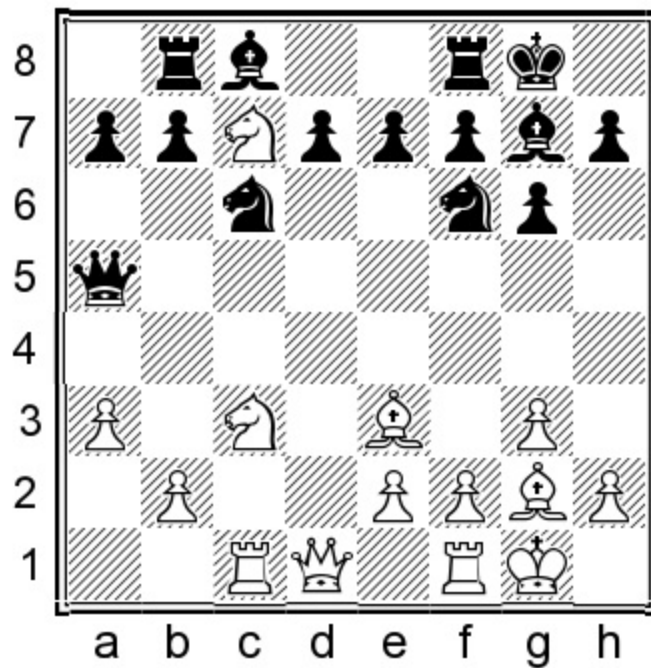
Show/Hide Solution

29. ♖xe4!! [29. ♖a8+? ♕f8! (29... ♖c8 30. ♗xc3+-) 30. ♖xe4 ♗c6! (30... ♗xb3? 31. ♖f6+ gxf6 32. ♕h6+-) 31. ♖xf8+ ♔xf8 32. ♗d3 ♕e7↗]

29. ♖xe4!! ♗xb3 30. ♖a8+ ♕f8 31. ♖f6+! gxf6 32. ♕h6 ♖c1+ 33. ♕h2+-

[Zawadzka,J-Kosintseva,N Crete 2007, 1/2]

Exercise 7



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

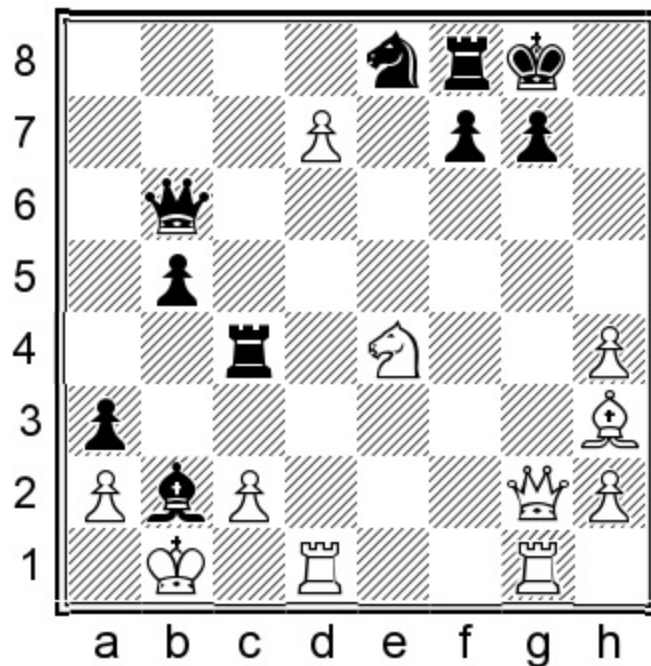
14. ♖3b5! ♜g4 [14...a6 15.b4+-]

15. ♙c5! [15.b4? ♜xe3 16.fxe3 ♚b6-+]

15... ♙xb2 16. ♖c4! d6 17. ♖a4 ♚xa4 18. ♚xa4 dxc5 19. ♜xa7+-

[Dubov,D-Dominguez Perez,L Sochi 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 8



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

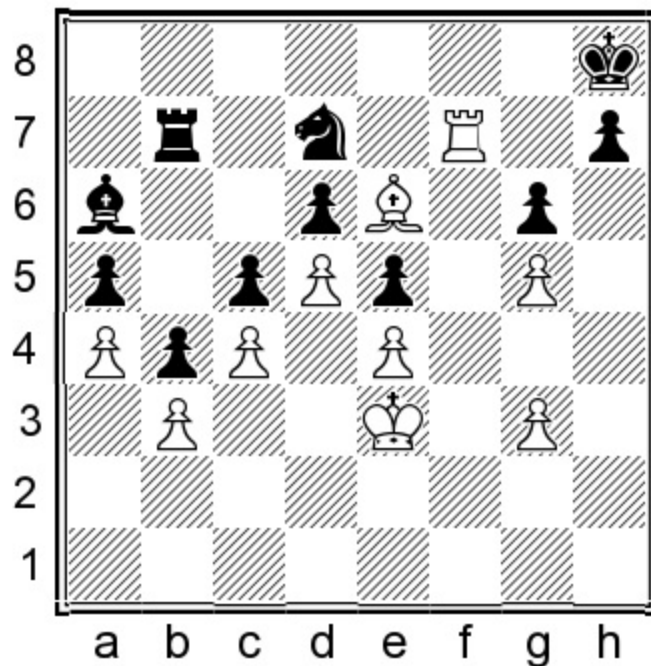
30...♖b4! 31.♞d3

[31.d8=♚ ♕d4+ 32.♔c1 ♚xd8-+; 31.dxe8=♚ ♕e5+ 32.♔c1 ♚e3+ 33.♚d2 (33.♞d2 ♞xe8-+)
33...♙b2+ 34.♔b1 ♕c3+ 35.♔c1 ♕xd2+ 36.♞xd2 ♞xe8-+; 31.♞d2 ♞d6! 32.♞b3 ♞e4-+]

31...♙f6+ 32.♔c1 ♞xe4!-+

[Aronian,L-Nakamura,H Saint Louis 2018, 0-1]

Exercise 9



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

49.♔d2!!

[49.♖xd7? ♜xd7 50.♙xd7 ♔g7=;

49.♙xd7? ♙xc4!! 50.bxc4 b3 51.♖f1 ♜xd7=]

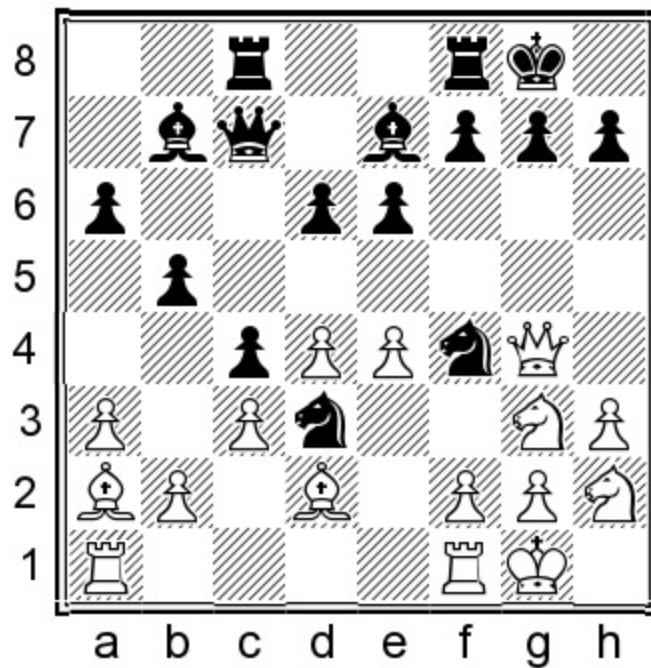
49.♔d2!! h6 [49...♙xc4 50.bxc4 b3 51.♔c1 b2+ 52.♔b1+-]

50.♙xd7 ♔g8 51.♖e7 hxg5 52.♖e8+ ♔f7 53.♙c6 ♜c7 [53...♖a7 54.♖e6+-]

54.♖a8 ♙c8 55.♖xa5+-

[Muzychuk,A-Sebag,M Hersonissos 2017, 1/2]

Exercise 10



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

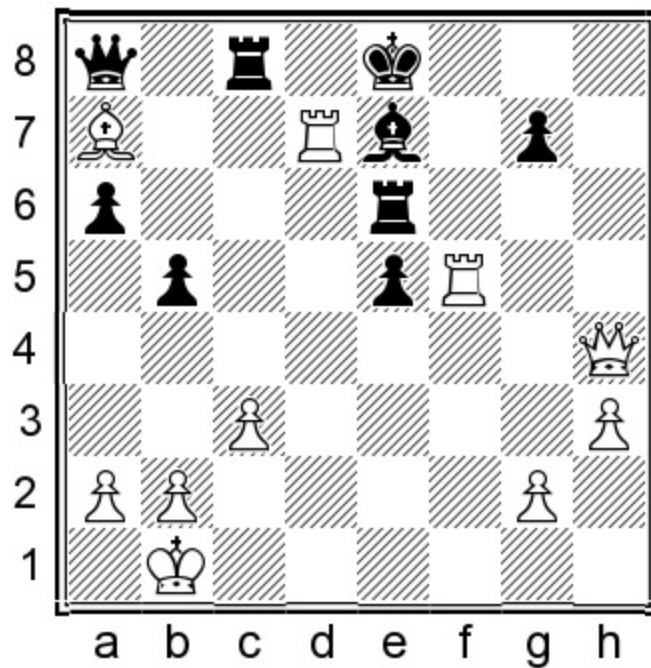
18...f5! 19.exf5

[19.♖f3 fxe4 20.♘xe4 d5 21.♘g3 (21.♘g5 ♙xg5-+) 21...♘h3+-+]

19...exf5 20.♘xf5 ♖xf5! 21.♖xf5 ♖f8 22.♖g4 h5 23.♖d1 ♙xg2-+

[Mons,L-Almasi,Z Berlin 2019, 0-1]

Exercise 11



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

35.♖xe7+! ♜xe7 36.♙c5! ♜e6 [36...♖xc5 37.♚h8+-; 36...♚b7 37.♙xe7 ♚xe7 38.♚h5+-]

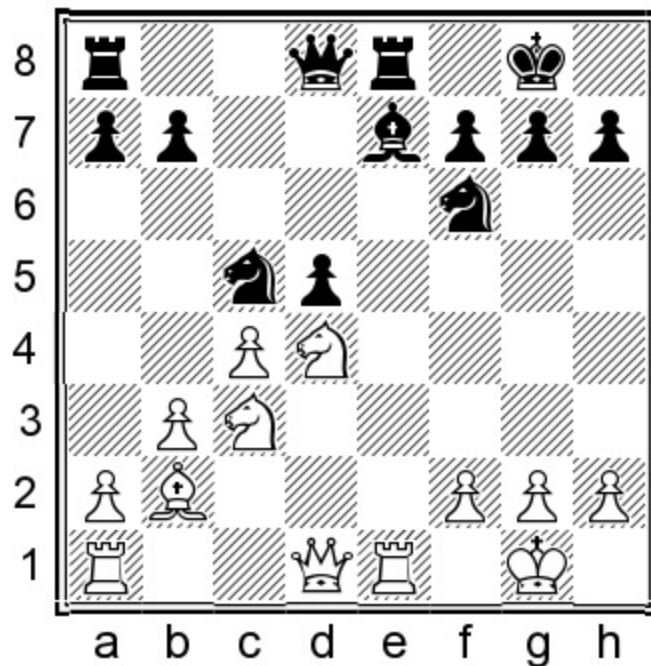
37.♖f8+ ♔d7 38.♖f7+- ♔c6 [38...♔e8 39.♖e7+ ♖xe7 40.♚xe7#]

39.♙f2!+-

[Zhigalko,S-Meszaros,M Rogaska Slatina 2011, 1-0]

[39.♙a7!+-]

Exercise 12



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

14. ♖f5! ♔f8 [14...dxc4 15. ♘xe7+ ♜xe7 16. ♙xd8+ ♜xd8 17. ♜xe7+-]

15. ♜xe8 ♚xe8 16. ♘xd5 ♘xd5 17. ♘h6+! [17.cxd5 ♚e4±; 17. ♙xd5 ♜d8 18. ♙f3 ♜d2±]

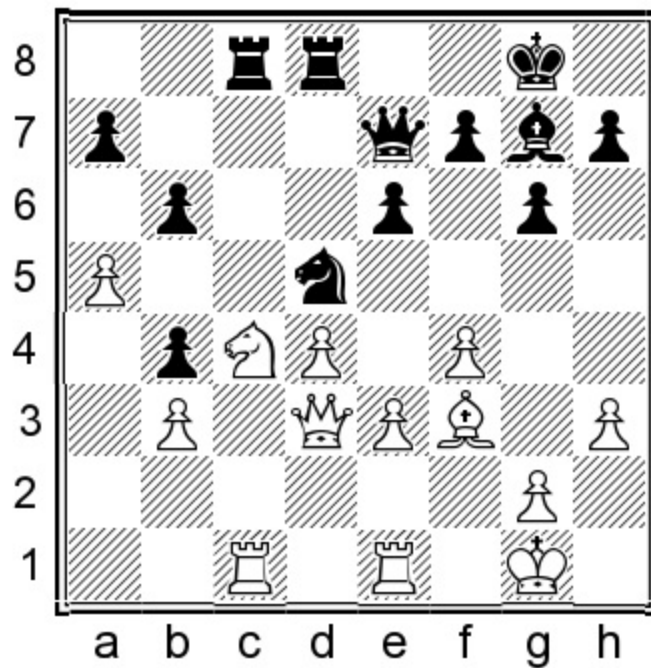
17... ♔h8 [17...gxh6 18. ♙g4+ ♔g7 19. ♙xg7#]

18. ♙xd5 ♚e6 [18...♘e6 19. ♜e1+-]

19. ♘xf7+-

[Adams,M-Grandelius,N Caleta 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 13



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

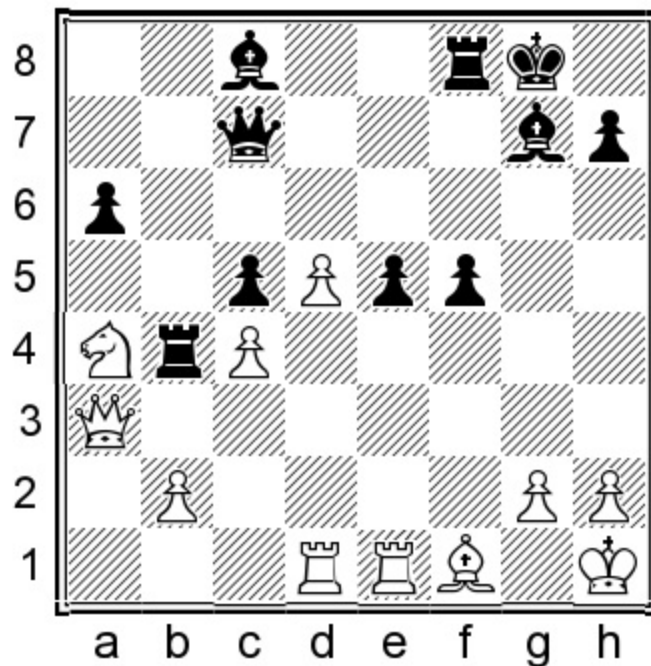
22... ♖xf4! [22...b5 23. ♕xd5 exd5 24. ♗e5±]

22... ♗xf4! 23. exf4 ♕xd4+ 24. ♔h1 b5! 25. ♖e3 [25. ♗d2 ♕c3-+]

25... ♖xc1 26. ♖xc1 ♕b2! 27. ♗f1 ♕xc1 28. ♗xc1 ♖d3-+

[Shimanov,A-Ziaziulkina,N Minsk 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 14



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

29.d6! ♖c6 30.♘xc5! ♜xc5 31.♞d5 ♜b6 32.c5 ♜b8

[32...♜b7 33.c6! ♜xc6 34.♜xb4 ♜xd5 35.♙c4+-]

33.d7 ♙xd7 34.♞xd7 ♞c8

[34...♞xb2? 35.♜g3!+-; 34...♞b7 35.♞xb7 ♜xb7 36.♙xa6 ♜c7 37.b4+-]

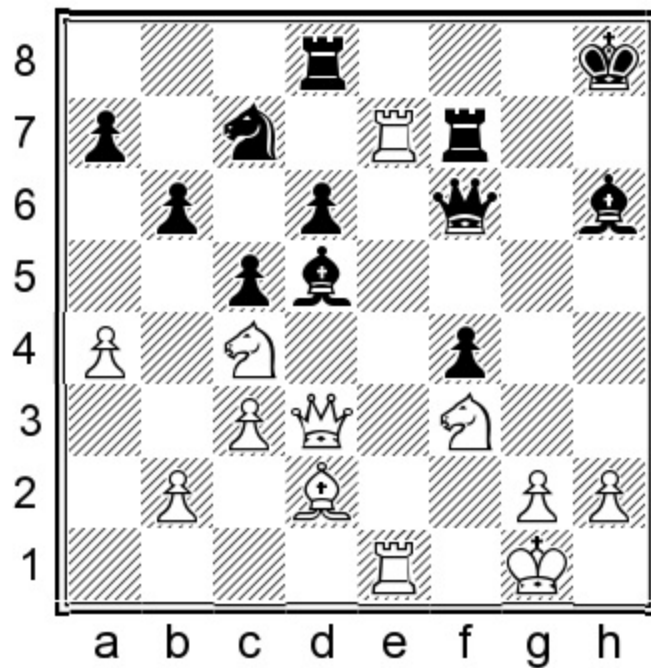
35.♜xa6 [35.♙xa6! ♞xc5 36.♞ed1+-]

35...♞xc5 [35...♙h8 36.♞ed1+-]

36.♜e6+ ♙h8 37.♜e7+-

[Javakhishvili,L-Mekhitarian,K Tradewise Chess Festival 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 15



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖xc7! ♕xc4 [30... ♖xc7 31. ♗xd5+-]

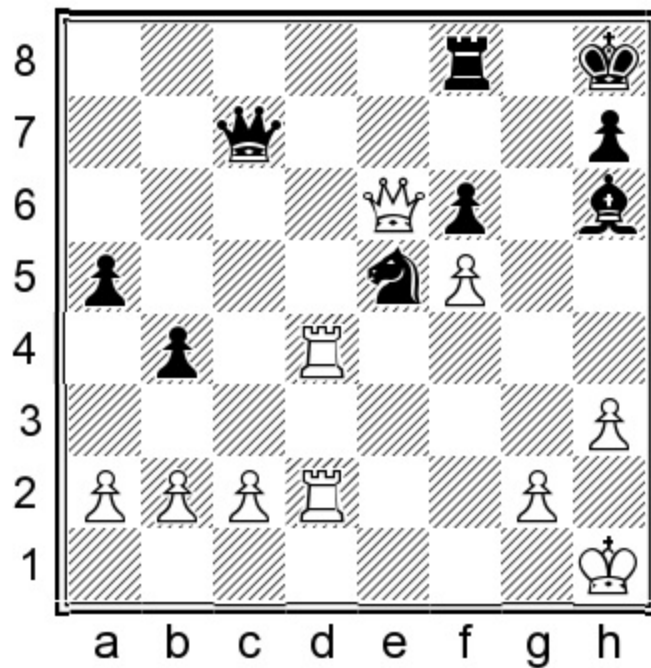
31. ♗xc4 ♖xc7 32. ♖e6 ♗g7 33. ♘h4! ♖f7?

[33...d5! 34. ♗e2 ♖f7 35. ♗h5 ♖f6 36. ♖xf6 ♗xf6 37. ♕xf4 ♖h7 38. ♘f5+-]

34. ♖xh6+ ♗xh6 35. ♗xf7+-

[Ljubojevic,L-Van der Wiel,J Amsterdam 1986, 1-0]

Exercise 16



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30.♖d8! ♕f7 [30...♖xd8 31.♗xf6+ ♔g7 32.♖xd8+ ♗xd8 33.♗xd8+ ♔f8 34.♗xf8#]

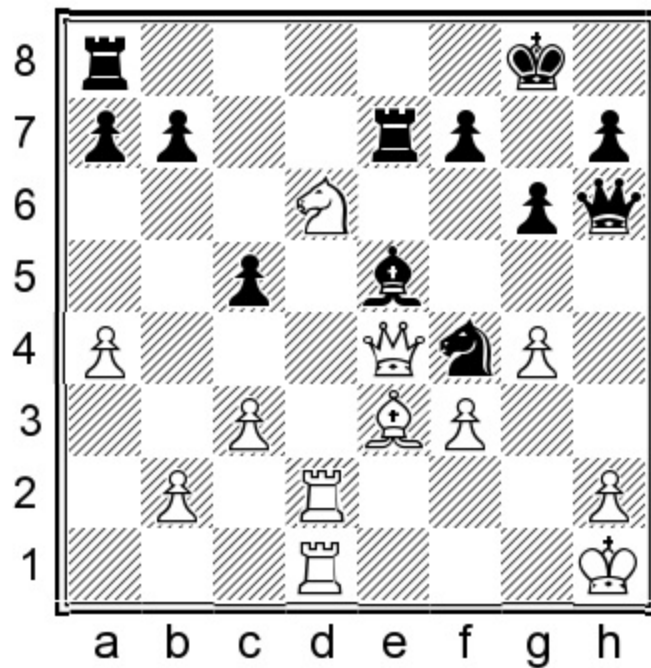
31.♖2d7! ♗xe6 [31...♘xd7 32.♗xf7 ♖xd8 33.♗e7+-]

32.fxe6 ♘xd7 [32...♘g6 33.♖xf8+ ♔xf8+-]

33.e7! ♔g7 34.♖xf8 ♘xf8 35.e8=♗+-

[Ljubojevic,L-Milicevic,M Yugoslavia 1974, 1-0]

Exercise 17



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

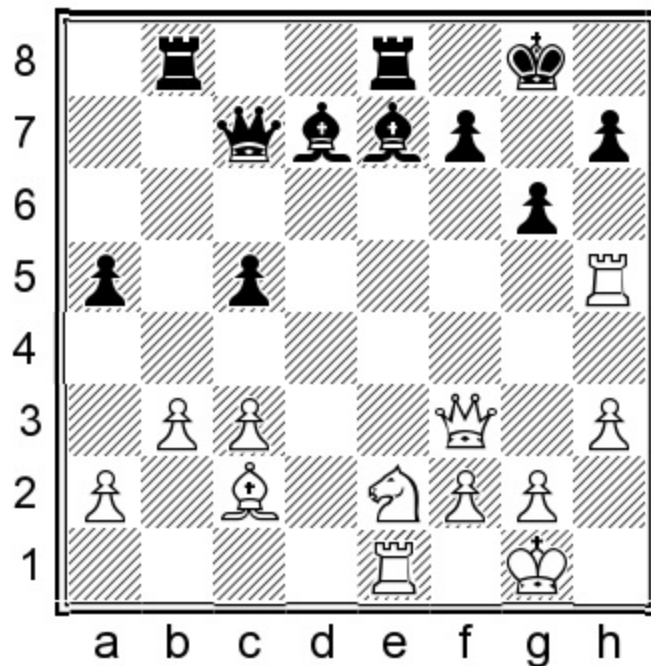
28. ♖xf7! ♔xf7 [28... ♜xf7 29. ♚xe5+-]

29. ♜d7! ♜xd7? [29... ♚g5! 30. ♘xc5 ♜xd7 31. ♜xd7+ ♔g8 32. ♚xb7 ♜e8 33. ♘e7!+-]

30. ♜xd7+ ♔f6 31. ♚xb7+-

[Planinec,A-Garcia Gonzales,G Hastings 1974, 1-0]

Exercise 18



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

23. ♖xh7! ♕f5!

[23... ♖f8? 24. ♘f4+-; 23... ♖xh7 24. ♗xf7+ ♖h8 25. ♕xg6+-]

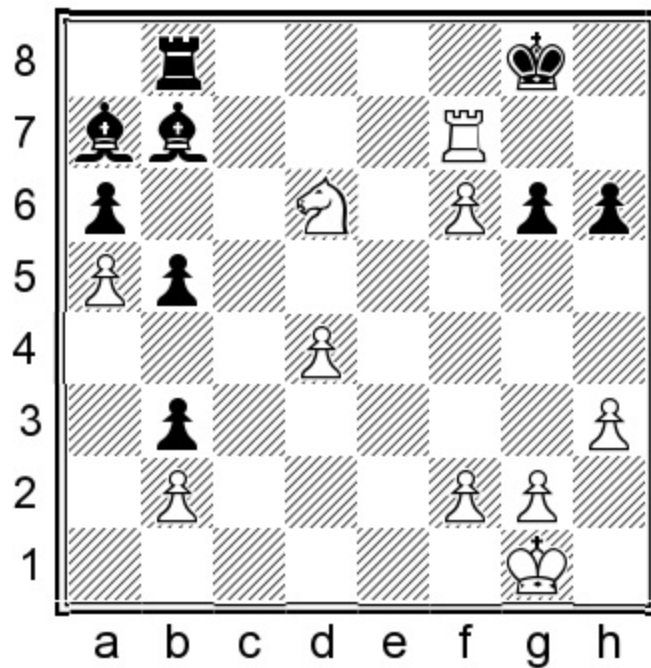
24. ♖xf7! [24.g4±]

24... ♖xf7 [24... ♕xc2 25. ♘f4+-]

25. ♕xf5 gxf5 26. ♗h5+! ♖f8 27. ♗h6+ ♖g8 28. ♘f4+-

[Wozniak,M-Kantane,A Poznan 2016, 1-0]

Exercise 19



1.? +-

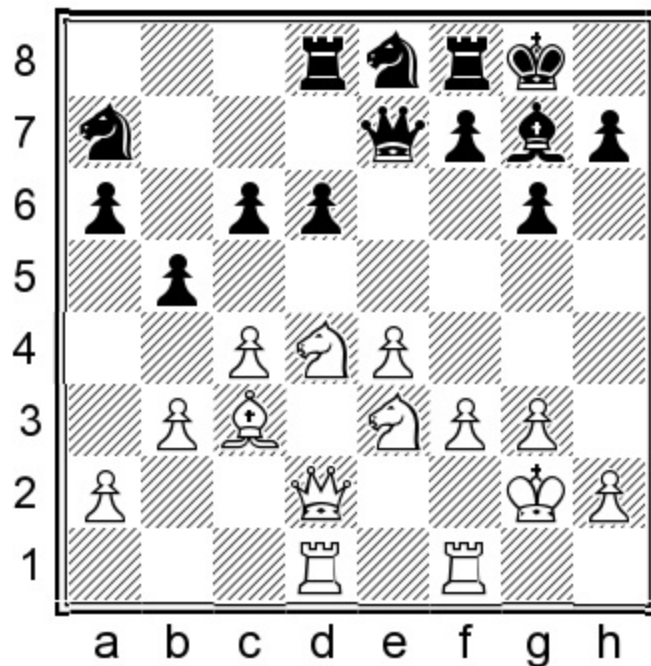
Show/Hide Solution

33.♖g7+! [33.♖d7? ♕xd4 34.f7+ ♔f8 35.♗xb7 ♖xb7 36.♖xb7 ♕xb2 37.♖c7 ♕d4 (37...b4!=) 38.♖c1±]

33.♖g7+! ♔f8 34.♖h7 ♔g8 35.f7+! ♔xh7 36.♗e8!+-

[Saric,I-Maghsoodloo,P Batumi 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 20



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

21. ♖df5! gxf5 22. ♗xf5 ♖c7 [22... ♗e6 23. ♕xg7 ♗xg7 24. ♗g5 ♗e5 25. ♗h6+ ♖h8 26. ♗xe5 dxe5 27. ♖xd8 ♖xd8 28. ♗xf7+ ♖g8 29. ♗xd8+-]

23. ♗xg7 ♗xg7 24. ♕f6!+- ♖h8 [24... ♗e6 25. f4 ♖fe8 (25...h6 26. f5 ♗g5 27. ♕xg5 hxg5 28. ♗xg5+ ♖h7 29. f6) 26. f5 ♖d7 27. ♖f4 h6 28. ♖g4+ ♖h7 29. ♗xh6+ ♖xh6 30. ♖h4#]

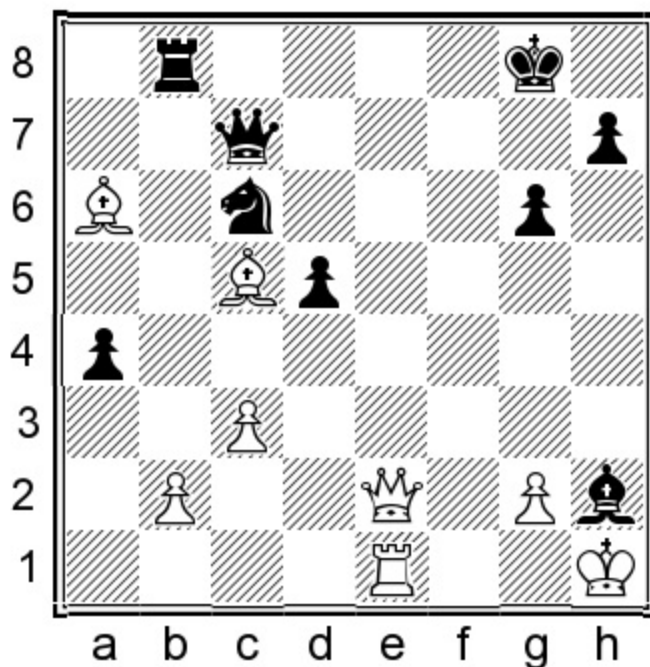
25. ♗g5 ♖g8 26. h4 [26. e5+-]

26... ♖de8 27. h5 ♖e5 28. ♕xe5 dxe5 29. ♗f6! ♗c8 30. h6 ♗e7 31. ♖d2

[Kotov,A-Barcza,G Saltsjobaden 1952, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 21



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

28. ♖e6+! [28. ♙b5?! ♘e5 29. ♙d4 ♙g3 30. ♙xe5=]

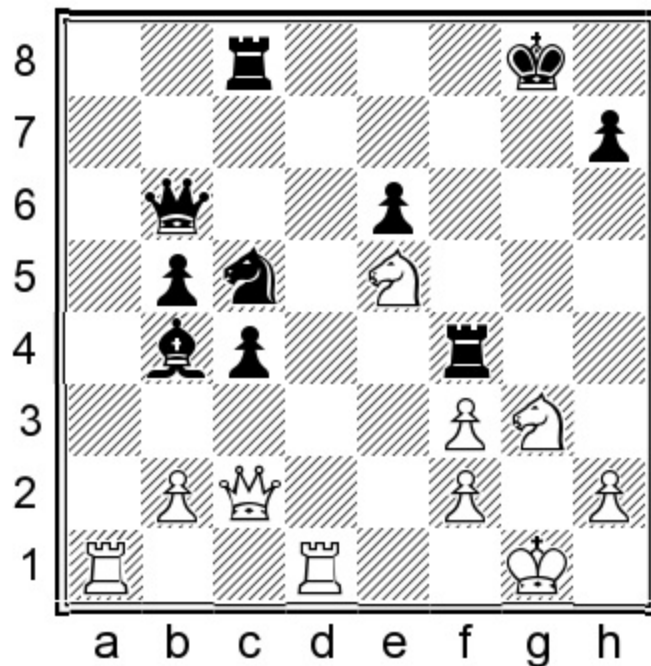
28. ♖e6+! ♔g7 29. ♙b5!! ♚xb5 [29... ♘a5 30. ♙d4++-]

30. ♙f8+!! ♔xf8 31. ♖f6+ ♖f7 [31... ♔g8 32. ♚e8#]

32. ♖h8+ ♖g8 33. ♚f1++-

[Svidler,P-Short,N Tradewise Masters 2017, 1/2]

Exercise 22



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24. ♖c1! ♜cf8

[24... ♜ff8 25. ♖g5+ ♔h8 26. ♜d7! ♜xd7 27. ♜h5+- ♜g8 28. ♜f7#]

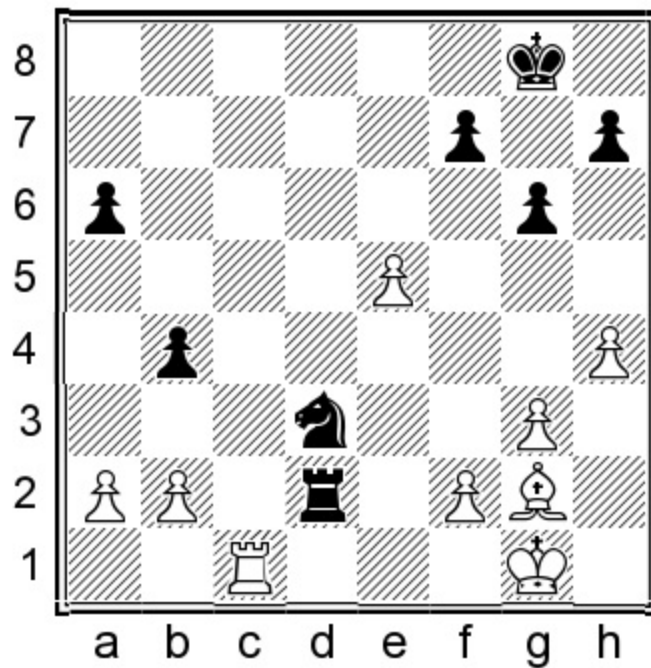
25. ♜a8!! ♜b7 26. ♖xf4 ♜xa8 27. ♜h5 ♜f8 28. ♜f6+

[28. ♖g5+ ♔h8 29. ♖f6+! ♔g8 (29... ♜xf6 30. ♜d8+ ♜f8 31. ♜xf8#) 30. ♜d8+-]

28... ♜xf6 29. ♖xf6+-

[Cramling,P-Stefanova,A Monaco-Ville 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 23



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

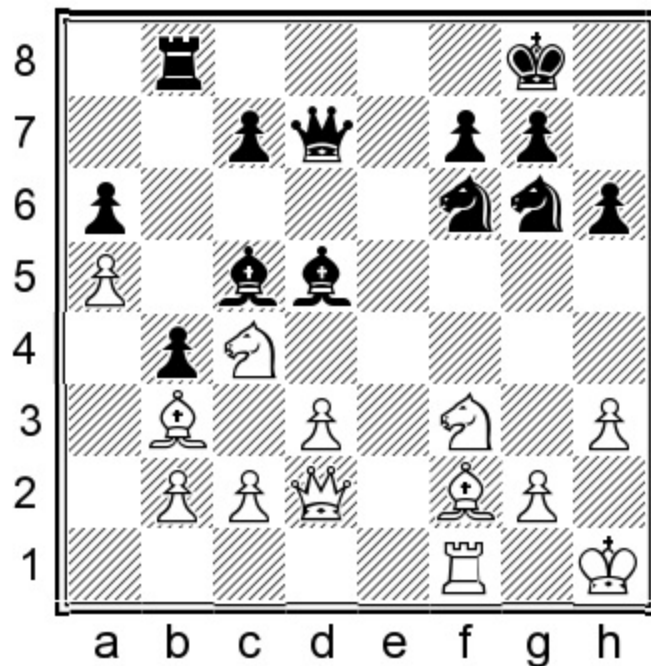
30.♖c8+! ♕g7 31.♞d8 ♞d1+ 32.♙f1! ♜xf2

[32...♜xb2 33.♞xd1 ♜xd1 34.♙xa6 ♜f6 35.exf6+ ♜xf6 36.♕g2 ♜e5 37.♙c4+-]

33.♞d6!!+- ♜h3+ 34.♕g2 ♞a1 35.♙c4 ♞c1 36.b3 ♜g1 37.♞f6+-

[Eljanov,P-Ipatov,A FIDE World Chess Cup 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 24



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

26...♙xf3! [26...♙xf2? 27.♖xf2 ♜e8 28.♘cd2 ♘h5 29.♞e1 ♞xe1+ 30.♗xe1 ♘hf4]

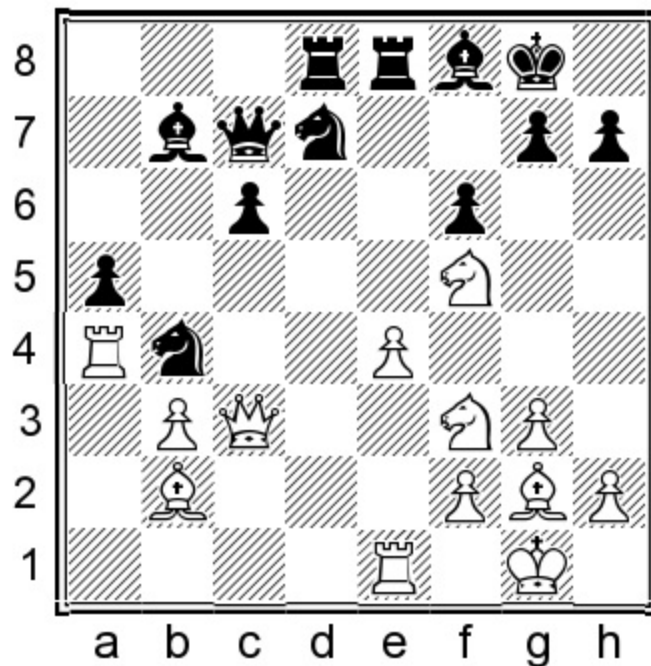
26...♙xf3! 27.♙xc5! [27.gxf3 ♗xh3+ 28.♔g1 ♗g3+ 29.♔h1 ♗xf3+ 30.♔g1 ♘f4-+]

27...♘h4!! 28.gxf3 [28.♞xf3 ♘xf3 29.gxf3 ♗xh3+ 30.♔g1 ♞e8! 31.♘e3 (31.♙e3 ♘d5-+) 31...♞e5-+]

28...♗xh3+ 29.♔g1 ♗g3+ 30.♔h1 ♘xf3-+

[Safarli,E-Tkachiev,V Tromso 2014, 1/2]

Exercise 25



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

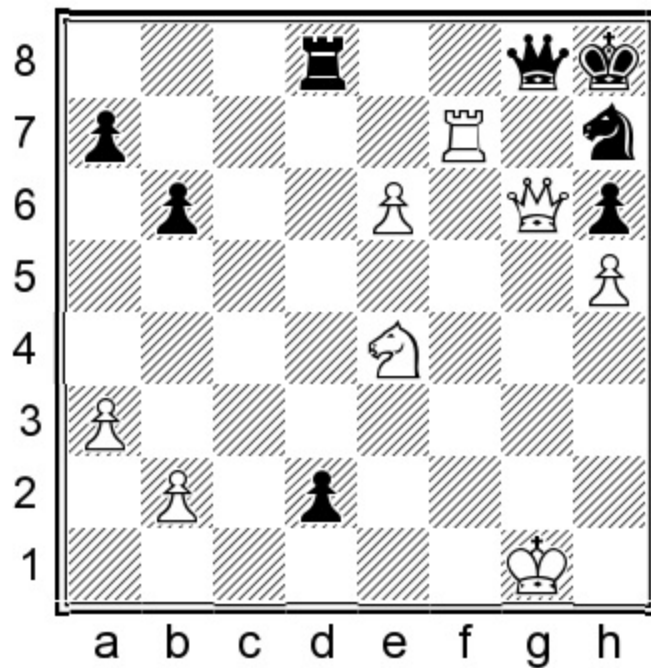
23. ♖xb4! axb4 24. ♖c4+ ♗h8 25. ♘g5!! h6 [25...fxg5? 26. ♘h6! ♘f6 27. ♘f7+ ♖xf7 (27...♗g8 28. ♘xd8+-) 28. ♖xf7+-]

26. ♖f7! [26. ♘f7+ ♗h7 27. ♘7xh6+- (27.e5? ♘xe5↗ (27...♘c5? 28. ♘xd8 ♖xd8 29. ♗e4+-))]

26...hxg5 27. ♗f1!+-

[Duda,J-Zagorskis,D Warsaw 2013, 1-0]

Exercise 26



1.? +-

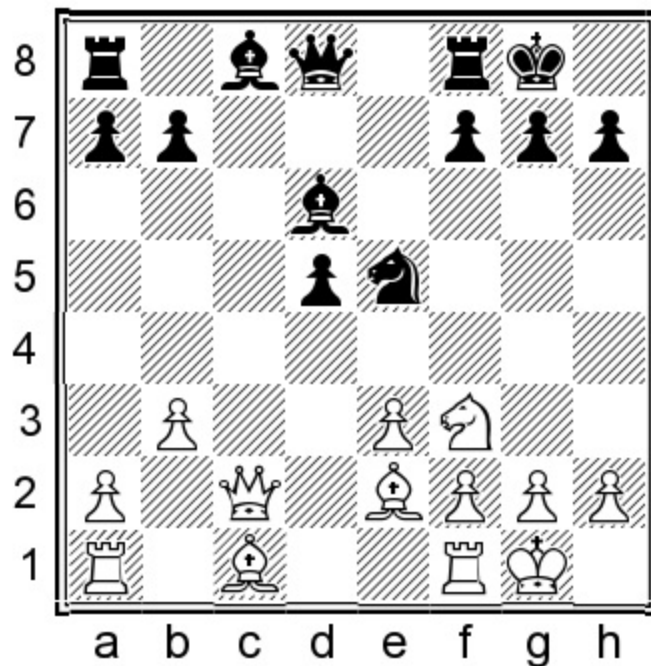
Show/Hide Solution

43. ♖xd2! ♜xd2 44. e7 ♜e2 45. ♔f1!! ♜e5 [45... ♜e3 46. ♜f8 ♖xf8 47. ♜f6+ ♔h7 48. exf8=♖+!+-]

46. ♜f8! ♖xf8 47. ♜f6+ ♔h7 48. exf8=♖+! ♜xf8 49. ♜xf8+-

[Mikhalchishin,A-Schmittziel,E Dortmund 1999, 1-0]

Exercise 27



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

12... ♖xf3+! 13. ♕xf3 ♖h4 14.g3 [14.h3 ♕xh3-+]

14... ♖f6 15. ♕xd5! [15. ♕g2 ♕f5!-+]

15... ♕f5! [15... ♖xa1?? 16. ♕b2 ♖xf1+ 17. ♖xf1±]

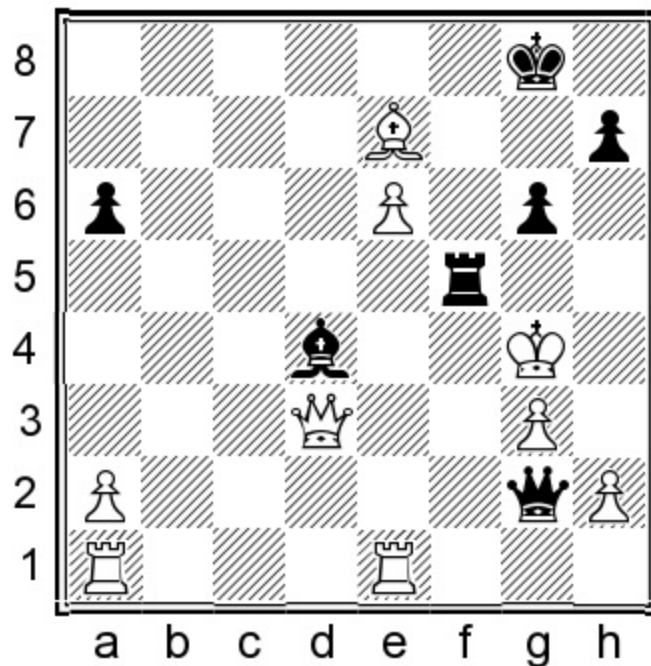
16.e4 ♕h3! [16... ♖xa1? 17. ♕b2 ♖ac8 18. ♕c4 ♖xf1+ 19. ♖xf1 ♕e6↗]

17. ♖d1 ♕e5!-+

[Prusikin,M-Buhmann,R Bad Koenigshofen 2007, 0-1]

[17... ♖f3?? 18.e5+-]

Exercise 28



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

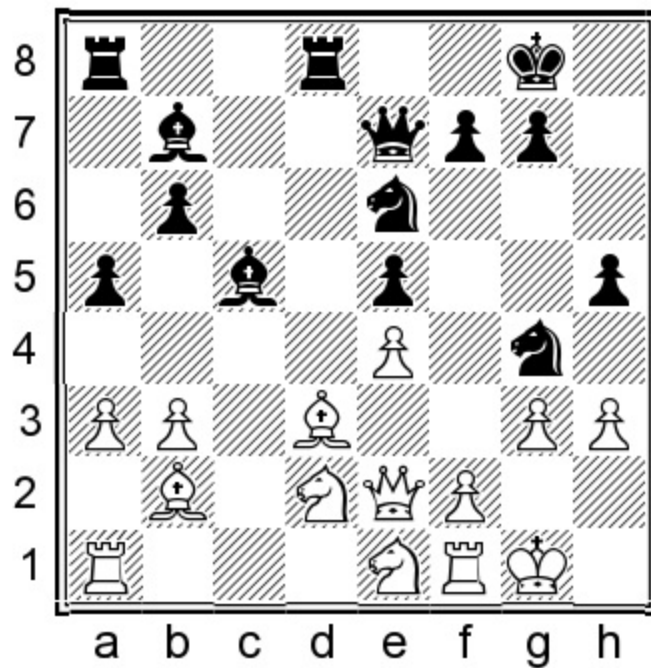
32.h3!! [32.♚e2? h5+ 33.♜h4 ♜f4+! 34.♜g5 (34.gxf4 ♜f2+ 35.♚xf2 ♚g4#) 34...♚xe2 35.h3 (35.♞xe2 ♞g4+ 36.♜h6 ♜g7#) 35...♚c2]

32.h3!! h5+ 33.♜h4 ♜f4+! 34.♜g5! [34.gxf4 ♜f2+-+]

34...♞f5+ 35.♜xg6+-

[Miroshnichenko,E-Gladyshev,O Budapest 1998, 0-1]

Exercise 29



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

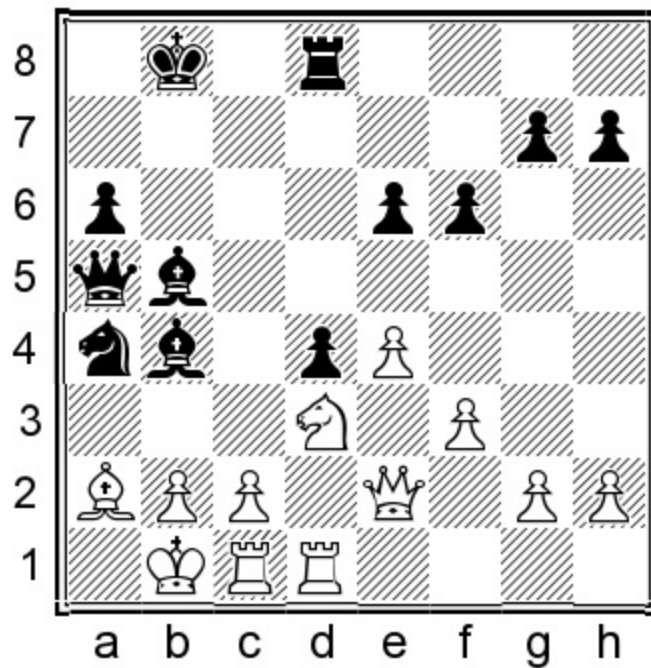
20...♖xf2! 21.♜xf2 h4!! 22.♗f1

[22.g4 ♗f4 23.♚f1 ♜xf2+ 24.♔xf2 ♞xd3! 25.♗xd3 ♞d8! 26.♗xf4 ♞xd2+-+; 22.♔h1 ♜xf2 23.♚xf2 ♗c5 24.♜f1 ♞xd2 25.♚xd2 ♗xe4-+]

22...hxg3 23.♗xg3 ♗f4 24.♚g4 ♜c8-+

[Platonov,I-Kupreichik,V Beltsy 1977, 0-1]

Exercise 30



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

31. ♖xb4!

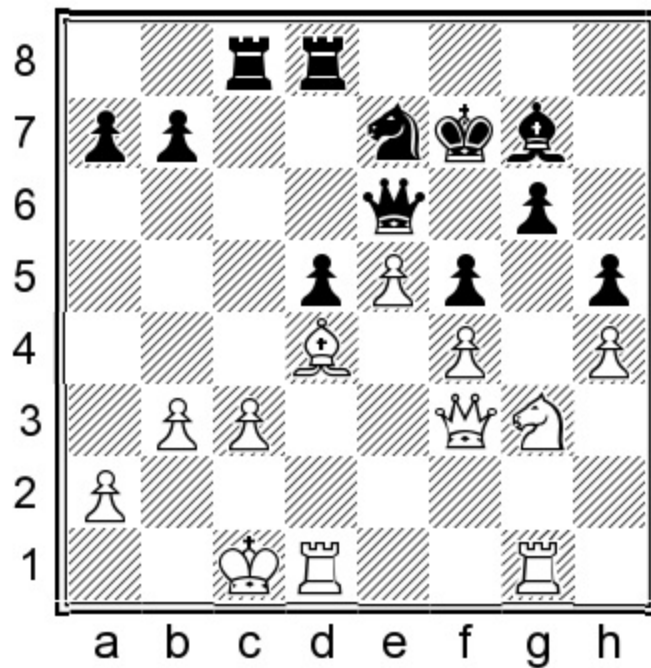
[31.c3? ♙xc3! 32.bxc3 ♘xc3+ 33.♖xc3 dxc3-+]

31. ♖xb4! ♙xb4 32.c4 ♙c6 [32...dxc3 33.♖xd8+ ♔c7 34.♙d2!+-]

33.c5!+-

[Gulko,B-Petrosian,T USSR (ch) 1976, 0-1]

Exercise 31



1.? +-

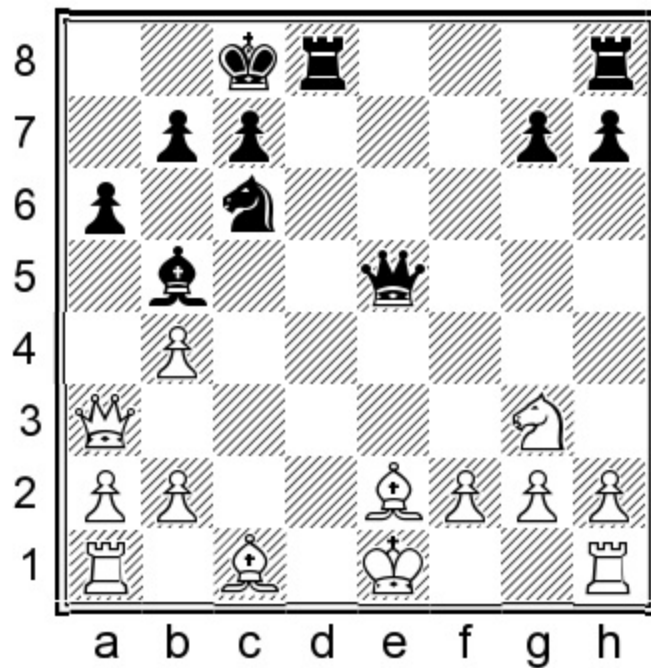
Show/Hide Solution

24. ♖xh5 gxh5 25. ♗xh5+ ♔f8 [25... ♘g6 26. ♖xg6! ♗xg6 27. e6+-]

26. ♖xg7! ♔xg7 27. ♖g1+ ♔f8 28. ♗h8+ ♘g8 29. h5! ♖d7 30. ♖g6+-

[Kupreichik, V-Sveshnikov, E Cheliabinsk 1974, 1-0]

Exercise 32



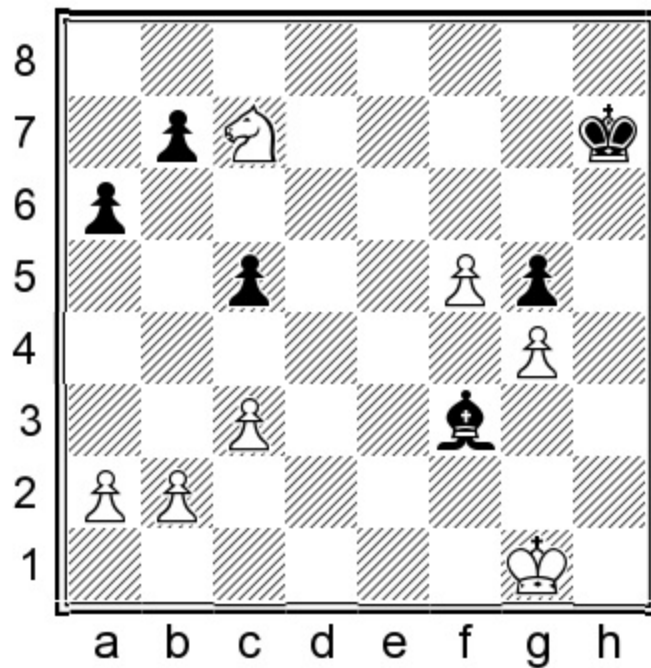
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

17...♞d3! 18.♙f4! ♚e6! 19.b3 ♜xg3! 20.0-0 ♜xg2+! 21.♔xg2 ♙xe2-+

[Petrosian,A-Panchenko Odessa 1973, 0-1]

Exercise 33



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

38. ♖e8! ♜h6 39. ♖f6! ♜g7 40. ♜f2! ♚d1 [40... ♜c6 41. ♖h5+-]

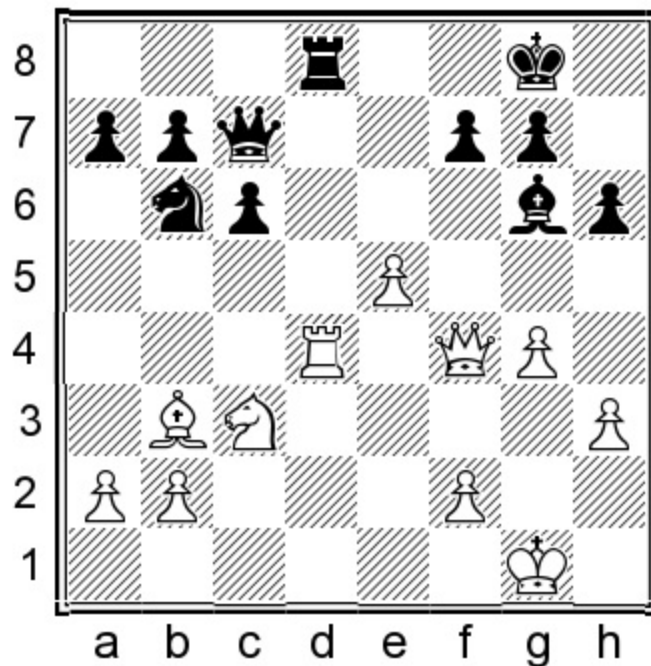
41. ♖d7! c4

[41... ♜xg4? 42. f6+ ♜g8 43. f7+ ♜xf7 44. ♖e5+]

42. ♜g3+-

[Fischer,R-Unzicker,W Siegen 1970, 1-0]

Exercise 34



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

24.e6! ♖c8 [24...♚xf4 25.♗xd8+ ♔h7 26.e7+-]

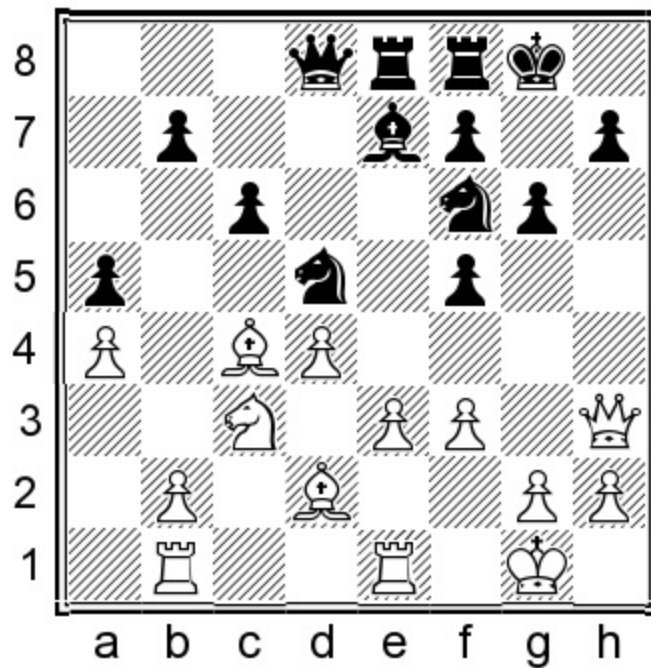
25.♚xc7 ♗xc7 26.♗d8+ ♔h7 27.f4! fxe6 28.f5! ♕f7

[28...exf5 29.♕g8+ ♔h8 30.gxf5 ♕xf5 (30...♖c8 31.♗xc8 ♜xc8 32.♕e6+-) 31.♕e6+-]

29.fxe6+-

[Radjabov,T-Sargissian,G Batumi 2018, 1-0]

Exercise 35



1...?±

Show/Hide Solution

21...♖f4! 22.♗g3 [22.exf4 ♜xd4+ 23.♔h1 ♜xc4+]]

22...♘6h5! 23.♗f2 ♙h4 24.♗f1 ♘g3! [24...♙xe1 25.♗xe1±]

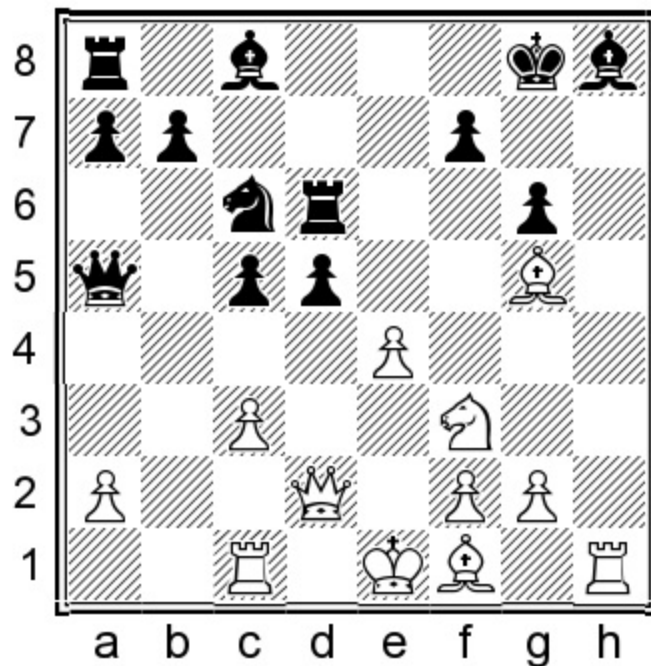
25.♙xf7+! [25.hxg3 ♙xg3 26.♘e2 ♘xe2+ 27.♗xe2 ♗h4+]]

25...♔xf7! [25...♖xf7 26.hxg3 ♙xg3 27.exf4±]

26.♗c4+ ♘e6 27.hxg3 ♙xg3±

[Shipov,S-Amonatov,F Moscow 2002, 0-1]

Exercise 36



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17. ♖xh8+! ♔xh8 18. ♗f4! ♚c7 [18... ♞e6 19. ♗xf7 ♞xe4+ 20. ♔d2 ♗xa2+ 21. ♞c2+-]

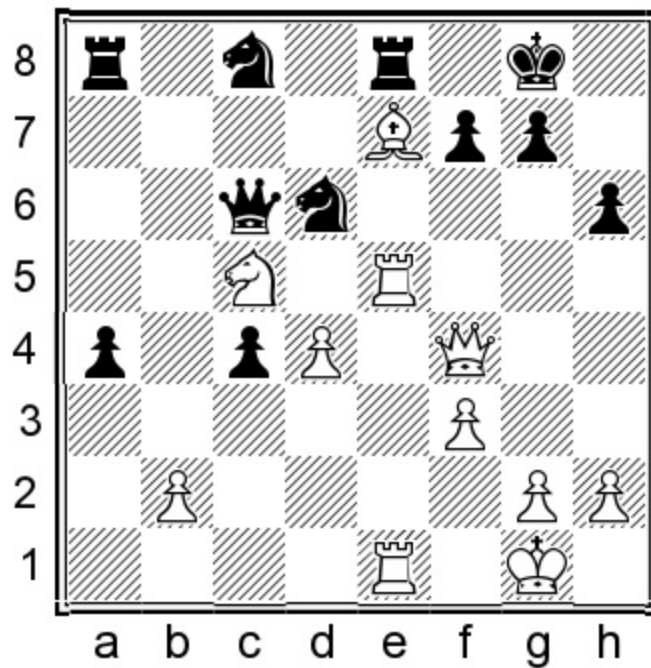
19. ♗h2+! [19. ♕f6+? ♔g8 20. ♗h2? ♕h3!! 21. gxh3 (21. ♗xh3 ♞xf6-+) 21... dxe4⚡]

19... ♔g7 [19... ♔g8 20. ♕f4!+-]

20. ♕h6+ ♔g8 21. ♕f4+-

[Kozul,Z-Brkic,A Zagreb 2012, 1-0]

Exercise 37



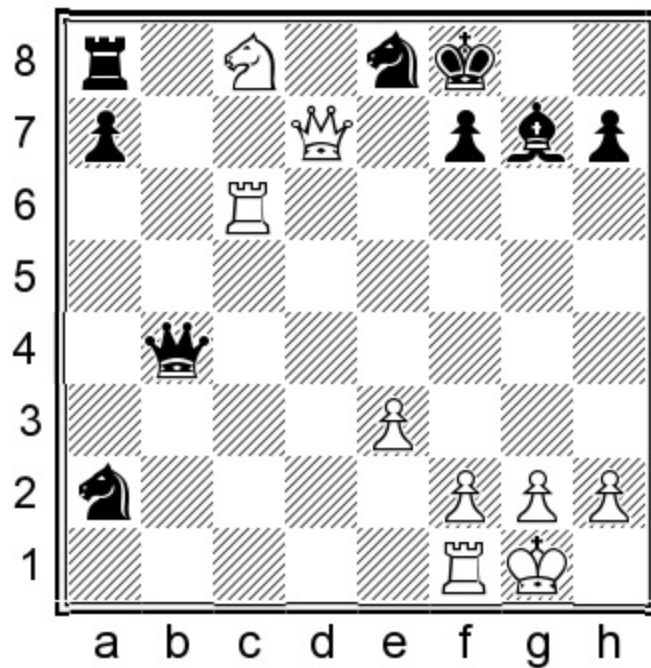
1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

31...♘xe7! 32.♖xe7 ♖xe7 33.♖xe7 c3! 34.bxc3 a3 35.♖e1 a2 36.♖a1 ♔b5-+

[Laznicka,V-Tomashevsky,E World chess Olympiad 2016, 0-1]

Exercise 38



1.? +-

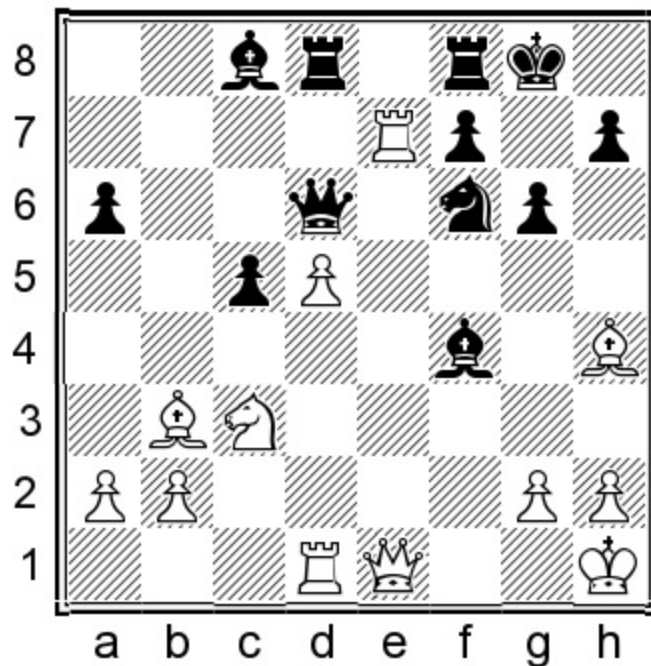
Show/Hide Solution

26.♖c4! ♜xc4 [26...♜a3 27.♖e4+-]

27.♜e7+ ♔g8 28.♜xe8+ ♕f8 29.♘e7+ ♔g7 30.♘f5+! ♔g6 31.♜xa8+-

[Dreev,A-Svidler,P Kallithea 2002, 1-0]

Exercise 39



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

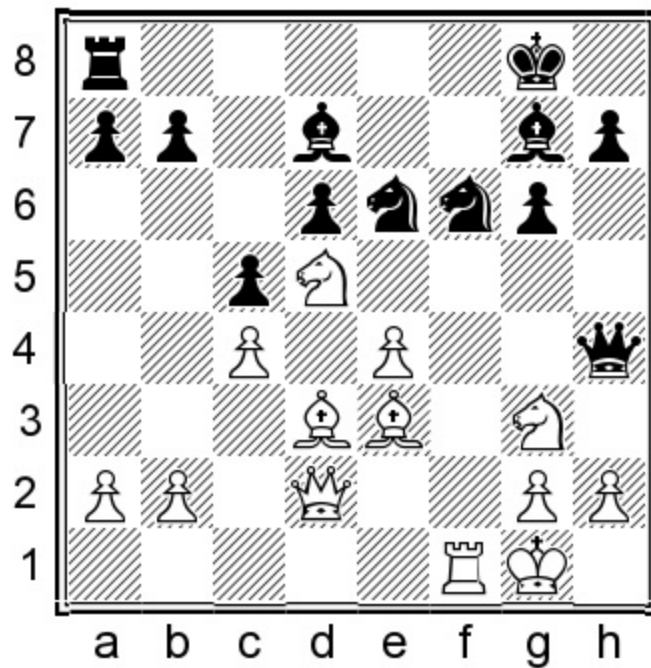
30.♖e6! ♗xe6

[30...fxe6 31.dxe6 ♕e7 (31...♖xd1 32.♘xd1+-) 32.♖xd8 ♖xd8 33.♗xf6 ♖xf6 34.e7+ ♔g7 35.♘d5! ♖d6 36.exd8=♖ ♖xd8 37.♘xf4+-]

31.dxe6 ♕e5 32.e7 ♖xd1 33.exf8=♖+ ♔xf8 34.♖xd1+-

[Cheparinov,I-Wang,H Changsha 2019, 1-0]

Exercise 40



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

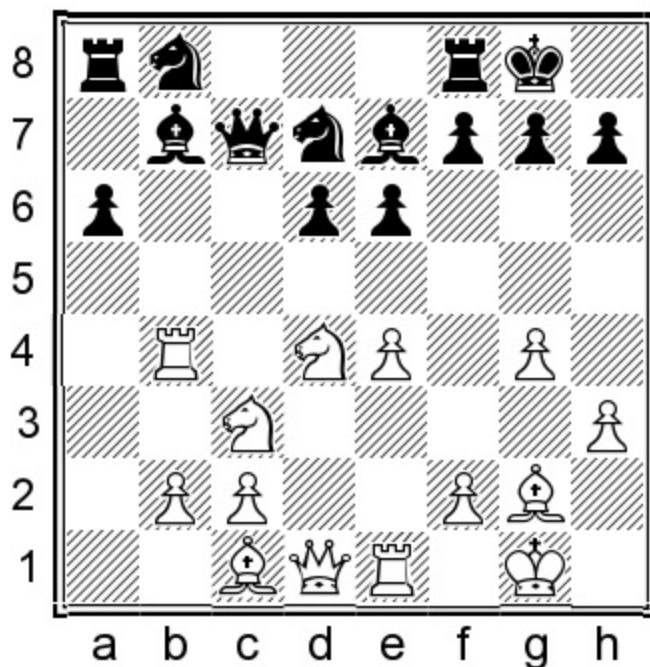
19.♖xf6!! ♔xf6 20.♘f5!! gxf5 21.g3 ♔c3 [21...♚h3 22.♘xf6+ ♔g7 23.♔f1+-]

22.bxc3 ♚d8 23.exf5+-

[Kavalek,L-Matulovic,M Bucharest 1966, 1-0]

Show in Text Mode

Exercise 41



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

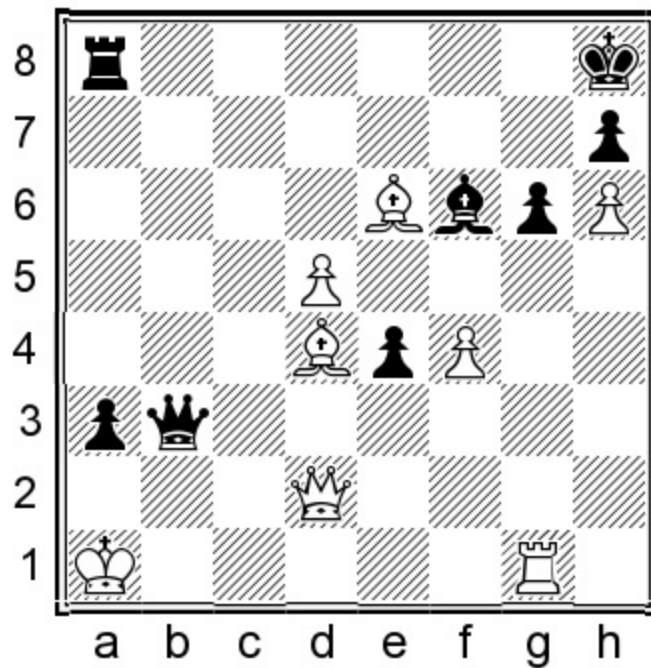
14. ♖xb7! ♚xb7 15.e5! d5

[15... ♚a7 16. ♘e3!+- (16. ♘xa8 ♚xa8 17.exd6 ♘f6±)]

16. ♘xe6! fxe6 17. ♘d5!+-

[Zhou, Y-Georgiev, K 13th Kesarovski-Stanchev 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 42



1...? -+

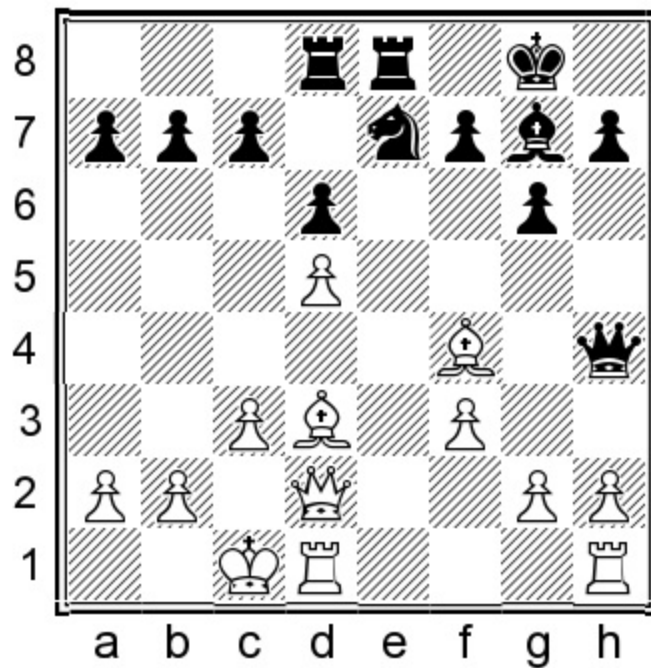
Show/Hide Solution

39...♙b2+! 40.♘xb2 [40.♚xb2 axb2+ 41.♙xb2 ♘xd4+-+]

40...axb2+ 41.♙b1 ♖a1+ 42.♙c2 ♖xg1 43.♙b4! ♖c1+! 44.♙d2 ♘c3+! 45.♙xc3+ ♖xc3-+

[Gulbas,C-Popovic,D Turin 2006, 0-1]

Exercise 43



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17.♙b5! c6 18.dxc6 bxc6 19.♙g5 ♖h5

[19...♙h6 20.♙xh6 cxb5 21.♙g5 ♖c4 22.♖he1 ♗c7 23.♙f6+-]

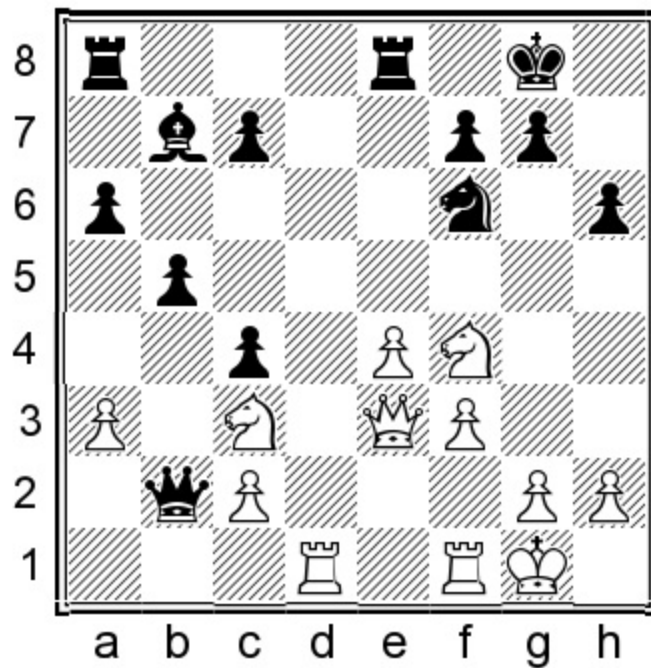
20.h4! cxb5

[20...f5 21.♙e2 f4 22.g4 fxg3 23.f4+-]

21.g4+-

[Kholmov,R-Beliavsky,A USSR 1976, 1-0]

Exercise 44



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

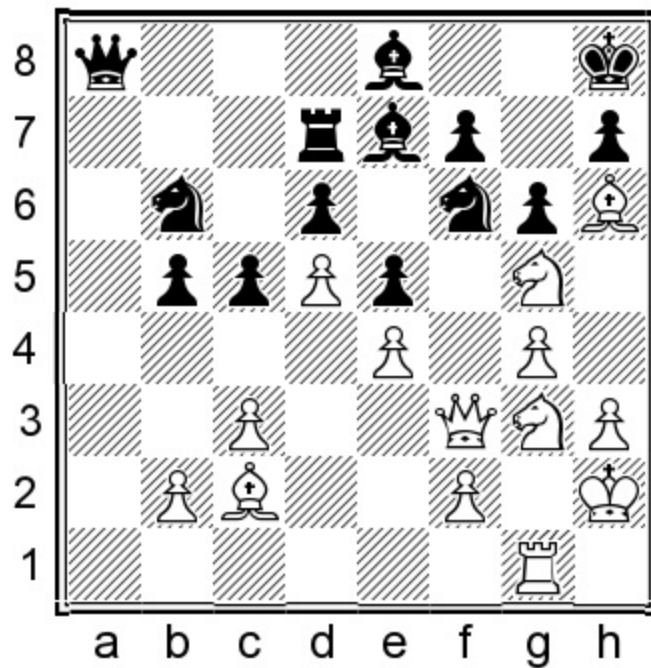
21.♖a1! b4! [21...g5 22.♖a2 gxf4 23.♔e1+-]

22.axb4 ♖ad8! [22...♔xb4 23.♖fb1+-]

23.♖a2 ♔xb4 24.♖b1 ♖xe4! 25.fxe4 ♔xb1+ 26.♗xb1 ♖d1+ 27.♔f2 ♗g4+ 28.♔e2 ♗xe3 29.♖b2+-

[Naiditsch,A-Morozov,N European Team Championship 2017, 1-0]

Exercise 45



1...?±

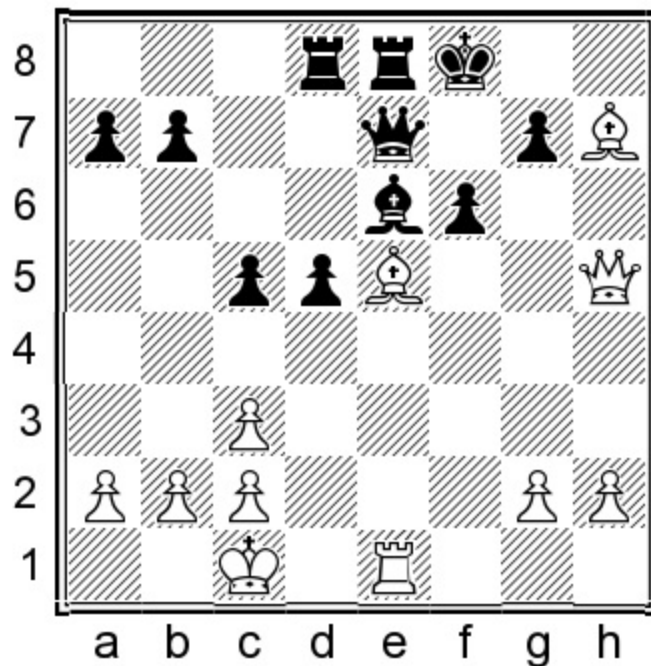
Show/Hide Solution

24...♖g8! 25.♙xf7 ♔f6 26.♙f8 ♚e7! 27.♘e6 [27.♘f5! ♘d7 28.♙xe8 ♙xe8 29.♘xd6 ♔xg5! 30.♘xe8 ♘xh6±]

27...♘d7 28.♙xe7 ♘xe7-+

[Bernstein,O-Vidmar,M St Petersburg 1909, 0-1]

Exercise 46



1.?±

Show/Hide Solution

26.♙g6! ♜f7

[26...fxe5 27.♚h8+ ♜g8 28.♞f1+ ♚f6 29.♞xf6+ gxf6 30.♚xf6+ ♜f7 31.♚xf7#]

27.♚h8+ ♜g8 28.♜xe8 ♞xe8

[28...fxe5 29.♞f1+ ♚xe8 30.♚xg8+ ♚d7 31.♚xd5+ ♚c8 32.♚e4±]

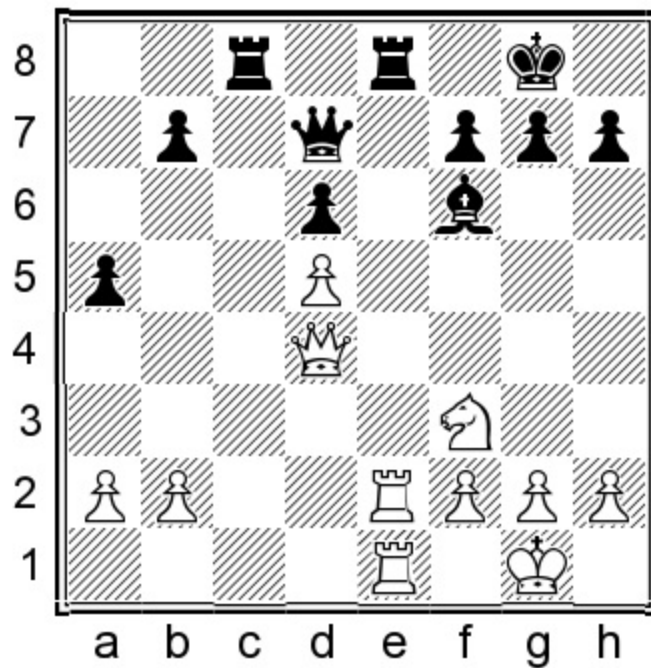
29.♜g3! ♚xe1+

[29...♚d7 30.♞xe8+ ♚xe8 31.♜d6+ ♚f7 32.♚h5+ g6 33.♚xd5+ ♚g7 34.♚xb7++-]

30.♜xe1 ♞xe1+ 31.♚d2±

[Navara,D-Gelfand,B Prague 2019, 1/2]

Exercise 47



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

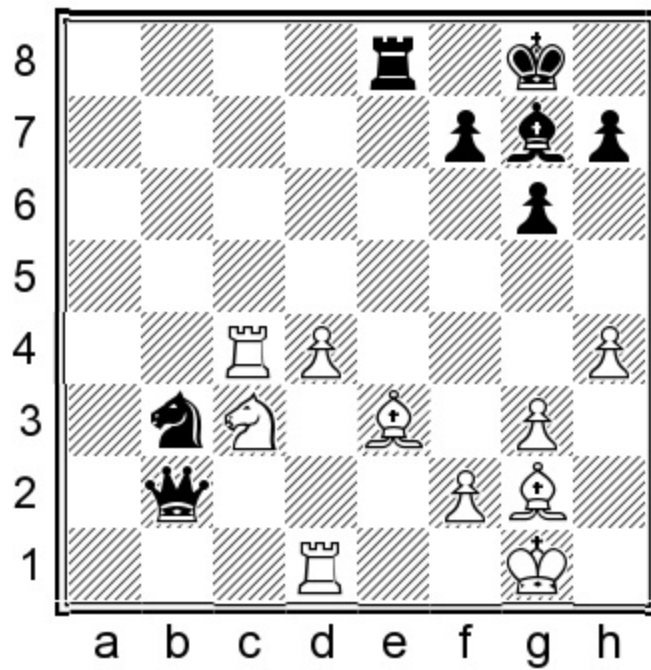
18. ♖g4! ♜b5 19. ♖c4!! ♜d7 20. ♖c7!! ♜b5 [20... ♜a4 21. b3+-]

21. a4! [21. ♖xb7? ♜xe2 22. ♖xe2 ♜c1+-+]

21... ♜xa4 22. ♖e4 ♜b5 23. ♖xb7!+-

[Adams, E-Torre Repetto, C New Orleans 1920, 1-0]

Exercise 48



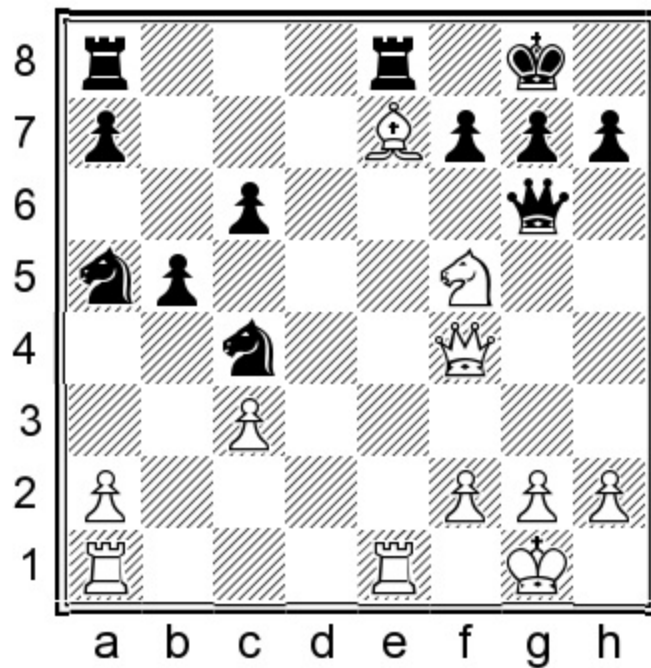
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

33.♖b1! ♔c2 34.♙e4!! ♖xe4 35.♖c8+ ♙f8 36.♙h6+-

[Mongontuul,B-Ushenina,A Moscow 2009, 1-0]

Exercise 49



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

23. ♔d8!! ♖xe1+

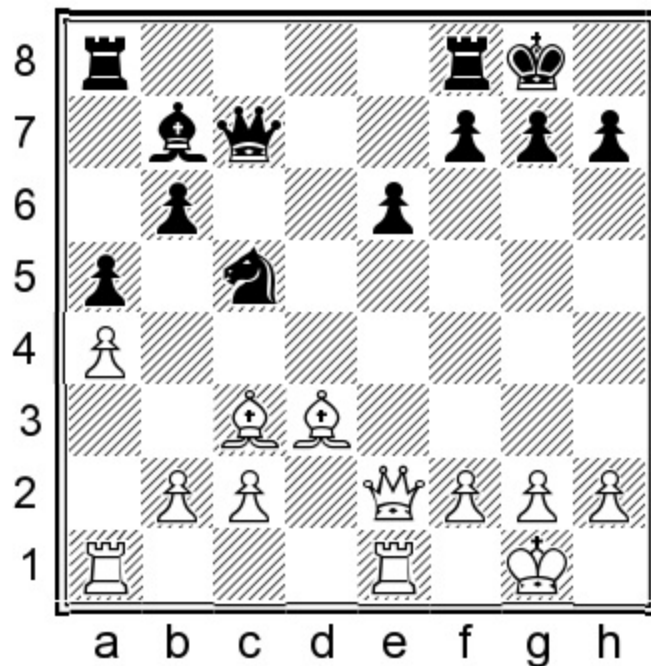
[23... ♖axd8 24. ♖xe8+ ♖xe8 25. ♘e7+! ♖xe7 (25... ♔f8 26. ♘xg6+ hxg6+-) 26. ♚b8+ ♖e8 27. ♚xe8#]

24. ♖xe1 ♔f8 [24... ♖xd8 25. ♘e7+-]

25. ♔xa5 ♘xa5 26. ♚b4+ ♔g8 27. ♘e7+-

[Gaehwiler,G-Bok,B World Juniors 2014, 1-0]

Exercise 50



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

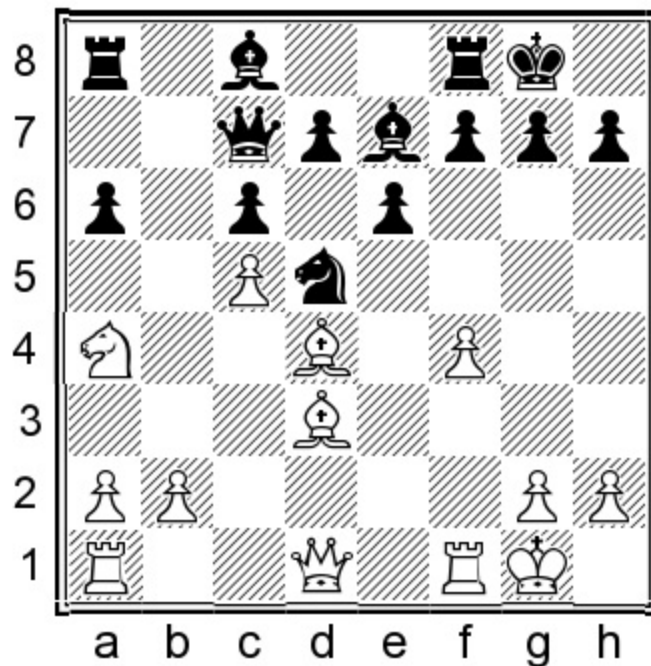
18. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 19. ♗h5+ ♔g8 20. ♖xg7 ♔xg7 21. ♗g5+ ♔h8! 22. ♖a3!

[22. ♗h5+?! ♔g7 23. ♗g5+ ♔h8 24. ♗h6+ ♔g8 25. ♖a3? f5! 26. ♖g3+ ♗xg3 27. hxg3 ♖; 22. ♗f6+? ♔g8 23. ♖a3? ♖e4! 24. ♖xe4 ♖xe4 25. ♖h3 (25. ♖g3+?? ♗xg3 26. hxg3 ♖xc2+-) 25... ♖h7=]

22...f6 23. ♖h3+ ♗h7 24. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 25. ♗h4+! ♔g8 26. ♗g3+ ♔h8 27. c3+-

[Benjamin,J-Bartholomew,J Philadelphia 2003, 1/2]

Exercise 51



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

16. ♖b6!!

[16. ♖xh7+? ♔xh7 17. ♕h5+ ♔g8 18. ♖xg7 ♔xg7 19. ♕g4+ ♔h7 20. ♖f3 ♖xf4! 21. ♖xf4 f5⌘]

16. ♖b6!! ♖xb6

[16... ♖b8 17. ♖xh7+ ♔xh7 18. ♖xd5 cxd5 19. ♕h5+ ♔g8 20. ♖xg7 ♕xc5+ 21. ♔h1 ♔xg7 22. ♕g4+ ♔h8 23. ♖f3 ♕c2 24. f5+-]

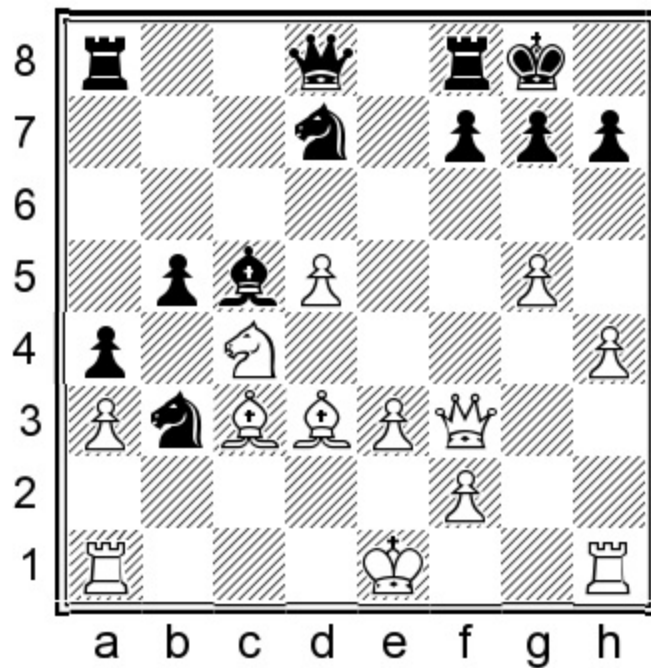
17. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 18. ♕h5+ ♔g8 19. ♖xg7! ♔xg7

[19... f5 20. ♕g6 ♖f7 21. ♖h6+ ♔h8 22. ♖f3+-]

20. ♕g4+ ♔h7 21. ♖f3 ♖xc5+ 22. ♔h1+-

[Kuzmin,G-Sveshnikov,E USSR (ch) 1973, 1-0]

Exercise 52



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

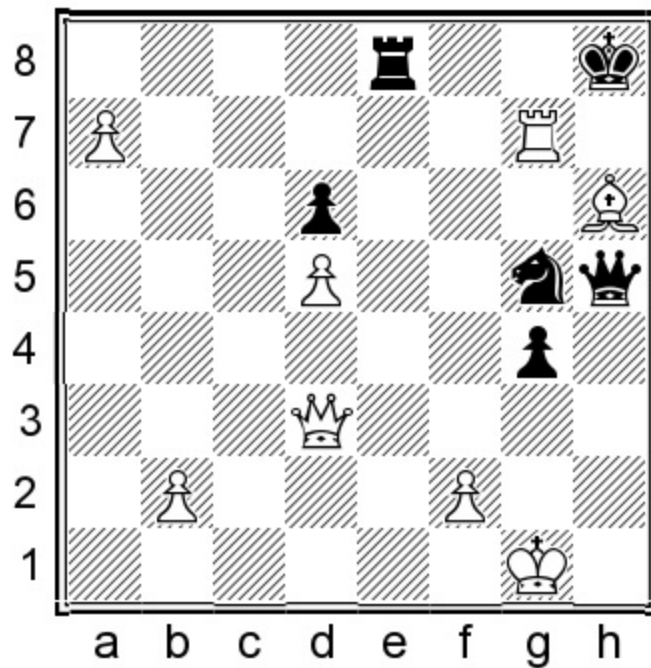
1.♙xh7+! ♔xh7 2.♚h5+ ♔g8 3.♙xg7! ♔xg7

[3...f5 4.♚h8+ (4.gxf6+-) 4...♔f7 5.g6+! ♔xg6 6.♖g1+ ♔f7 7.♚h5+ ♔e7 8.♙f6+ ♖xf6 9.♖g7+ ♔f8 10.♚h8#]

4.♚h6+ ♔g8 5.g6! ♗f6 6.♖g1 ♚xd5 7.g7!+-

[Tajmanow,M-Szaszin,M USSR 1978, 1-0]

Exercise 53



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

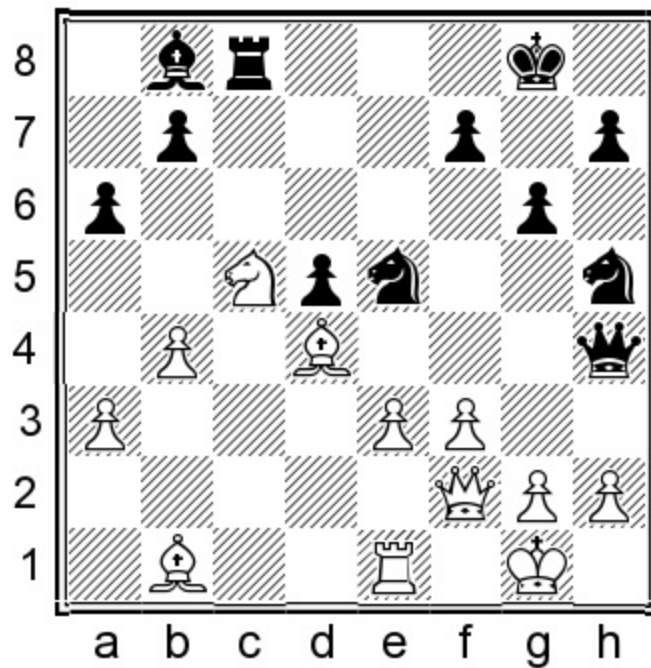
43.♔g2!

[43.♖xg5? ♜e1+ 44.♔g2 ♚h1+ 45.♔g3 ♚g1+ 46.♔f4 ♚xf2+ 47.♔xg4 ♜g1+ 48.♔h5 ♜h1+ 49.♔g6 ♜xh6+! =]

43.♔g2! ♚xh6 44.♜e7! ♜f8 45.♚e3!+-

[Naumkin, I-Sebenik, M Maribor 2015, 1/2]

Exercise 54



1...?±

Show/Hide Solution

29...♖xf3+! 30.gxf3 ♘xh2+! 31.♚xh2 [31.♔g2 ♘g3-+]

31...♚xe1+ 32.♔g2 ♜e8!

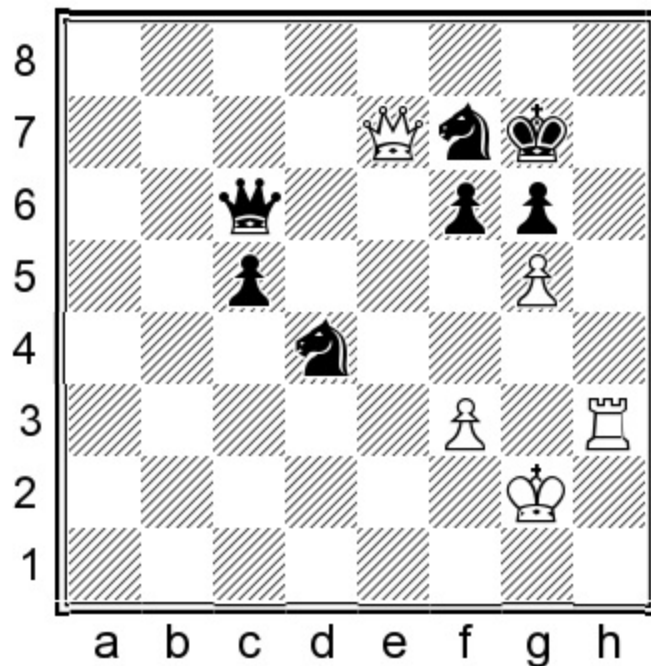
[32...♚e2+ 33.♔g1 ♚e1+]

33.♘c2 [33.♘d3 b6 34.♖b3 ♚d1-+]

33...♚e2+ 34.♔g1 ♜xe3! 35.♘xe3 ♚xe3+ 36.♚f2 ♚xa3±

[Gershman-Mikhalchishin, 1/2]

Exercise 55



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔g8!!

[1...♖e6? 2.gxf6+ ♔g8 (2...♗xf6 3.♖h7+!+-) 3.♖h8+! ♔xh8 4.♗f8+-;-;

1...♟f5 2.♖h7+! (2.gxf6+? ♔g8 3.♗a7 ♟g5-+) 2...♔xh7 3.♗xf7+ ♔h8 (3...♟g7?? 4.gxf6+-) 4.♗f8+ (4.gxf6? ♗c8-+) 4...♔h7 5.♗f7+=;

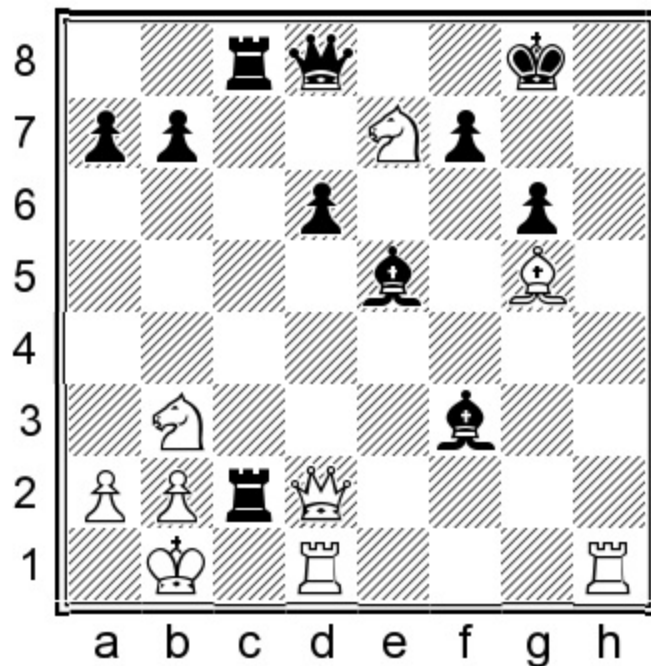
1...fxg5 2.♖h7+! ♔xh7 3.♗xf7+ ♔h6 4.♗f8+ ♔h7 (4...♔h5?? 5.♗h8#) 5.♗f7+=]

1...♔g8!! 2.gxf6 [2.♖h7 ♗xf3+-+]

2...♟f5-+

[Kantsler,B-Malisov,B Modein 2000, 1/2]

Exercise 56



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

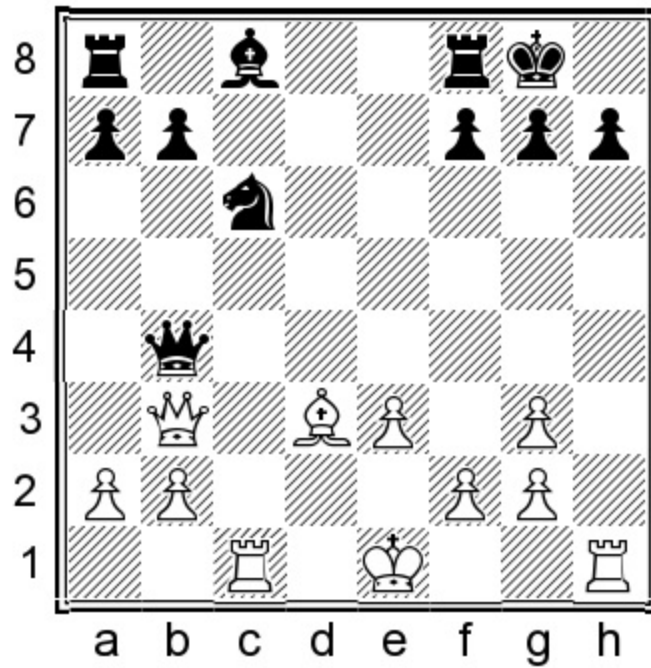
23...♖xe7!!

[23...♔f8 24.♘xg6+ fxg6 25.♚xc2 ♜xc2 26.♙xd8 ♙xd1 27.♞xd1 ♞xb2+ 28.♕c1 ♞xa2=]

23...♖xe7!! 24.♙xe7 ♙e4! 25.♚xc2! ♜xc2 26.♞h4! ♞xb2+ 27.♕c1 ♞c2+ 28.♕b1 ♙f5! 29.♘d4! ♙xd4 30.♞hxd4 ♞c7+ 31.♕b2 ♞xe7-+

[Minic,D-Bykhovsky,A Belgrade 1967, 0-1]

Exercise 57



1.? +-

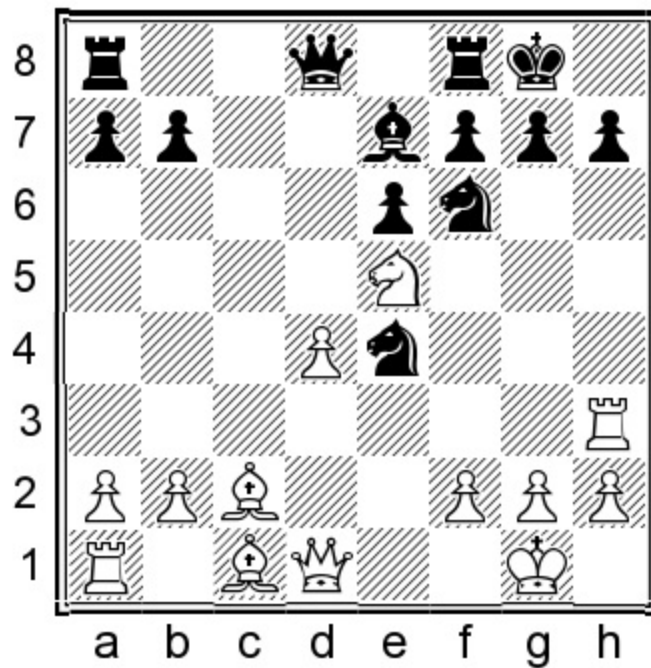
Show/Hide Solution

18. ♖xb4! ♜xb4 19. ♙xh7+ ♔h8 20. ♙b1+! ♔g8 21. ♖c4! a5 [21...g6 22. ♖xb4+-]

22. ♙h7+! ♔h8 23. ♙f5+! ♔g8 24. ♖ch4 g5 25. ♖h8+ ♔g7 26. ♖1h7+ ♔f6 27. ♖xf8 ♔xf5 28. ♖hxf7+-

[1-0 (11) Petrosian, T-Kupreichik, V Moscow 1976]

Exercise 58



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

17.g4! ♖d6 [17...h6 18.g5 ♜xg5 (18...hxg5 19.♙xe4 ♜xe4 20.♚h5+-) 19.♙xg5 hxg5 20.♙h7+! ♜xh7 21.♚h5+-]

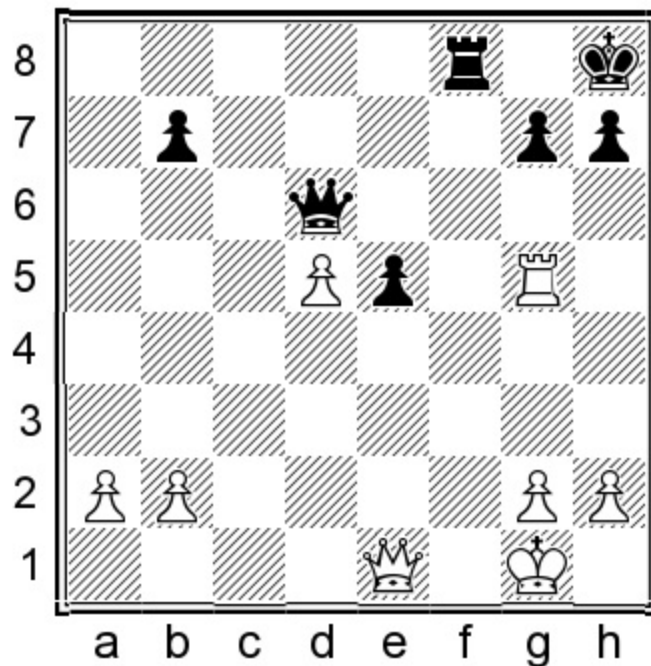
18.g5 ♜fe4 **19.♚h5** h6 **20.gxh6** ♜f6 [20...g6 21.♜xg6+-]

21.♚g5+-

[Arslanov,S-Dragomarezkij,E Moscow 2015, 1-0]

[21.h7+ ♔h8 22.♚xf7+-]

Exercise 59



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

31...♖b6+! 32.♔h1 ♜b5! [32...♜f6 33.h4±]

33.♔g1 ♜c5+ [33...♜b6+ 34.♔h1 ♜f6 35.h4!±]

34.♔h1 ♜c4! 35.♔g1 ♜d4+ 36.♔h1 ♜e4!

[36...♜d2? 37.♞xe5+-; 36...♜f4 37.h4±; 36...♜d3 37.♔g1=]

37.♜c1

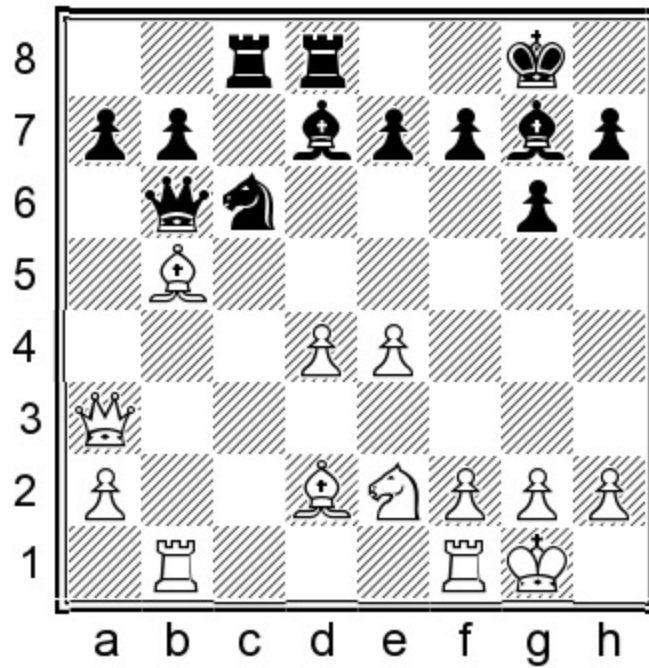
[37.♜d1 ♜f4!-+; 37.♜g1 ♜e2!-+; 37.♞xe5 ♜xe5-+]

37...♜d3! [37...♜e2 38.♞f5!±]

38.♔g1 ♜d4+! 39.♔h1 ♜d2!-+

[Lowcki,M-Tartakower,S Jurata 1937, 0-1]

Exercise 60



1...?±

Show/Hide Solution

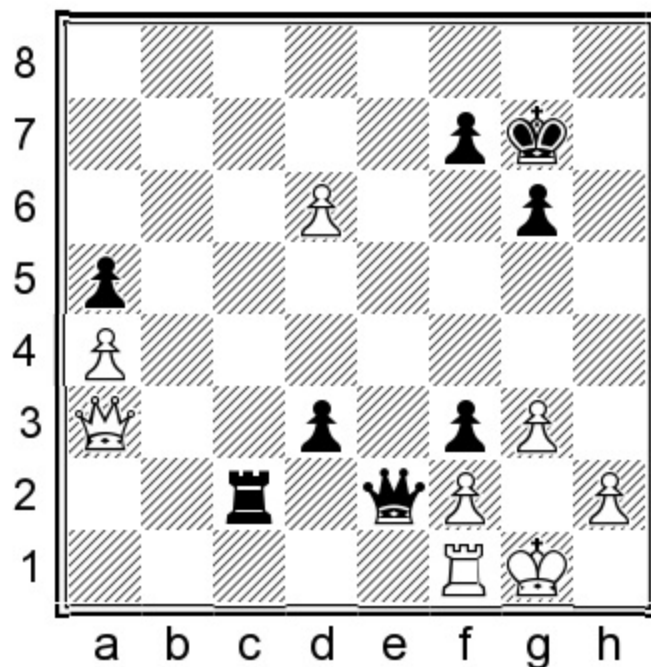
17...♙xd4! 18.♙xc6 ♙c5! 19.♞xb6 ♙xa3 20.♙xd7 [20.♞b3 ♙xc6 21.♙a5 b6 22.♞xa3 bxa5 23.♞xa5 ♙xe4± 24.♞xa7? ♙d3-+]

20...♞xd7 21.♙b4?! [21.♞b3! ♞xd2 22.♞xa3 ♞xe2 23.♞xa7 ♞b2±]

21...axb6 22.♙xa3 ♞c4 23.♘g3 ♞a4! 24.♙c1 ♞xa2±

[Gulko,B-Tal,M USSR 1970, 0-1]

Exercise 61



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.d7! ♔xf1+ [1...d2 2.♔a1+!+-]

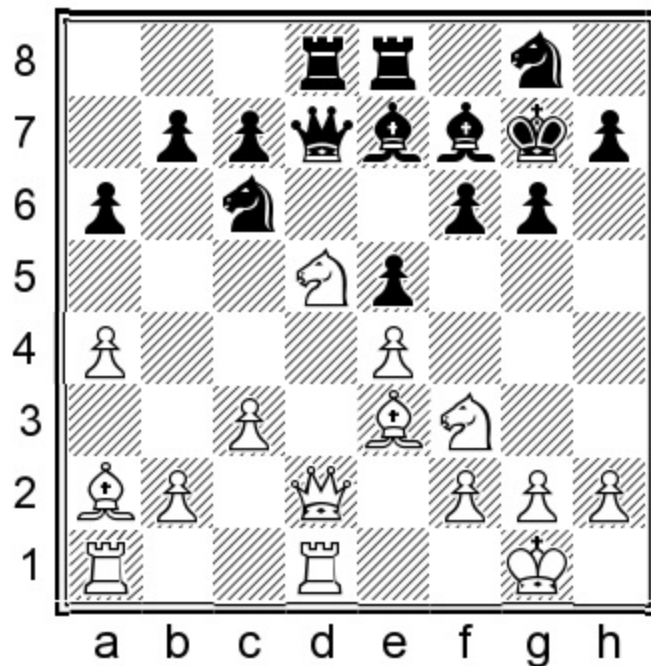
2.♕xf1 d2 3.♔xf3 ♖c1+ 4.♔d1!! ♖xd1+ 5.♕e2 ♖b1

[5...♖e1+ 6.♕xd2+-]

6.d8=♔ d1=♔+ 7.♔xd1 ♖xd1 8.♕xd1+-

[Ermenkov,E-Sax,G Warsaw Int. Youth 1969, 1-0]

Exercise 62



1.? +-

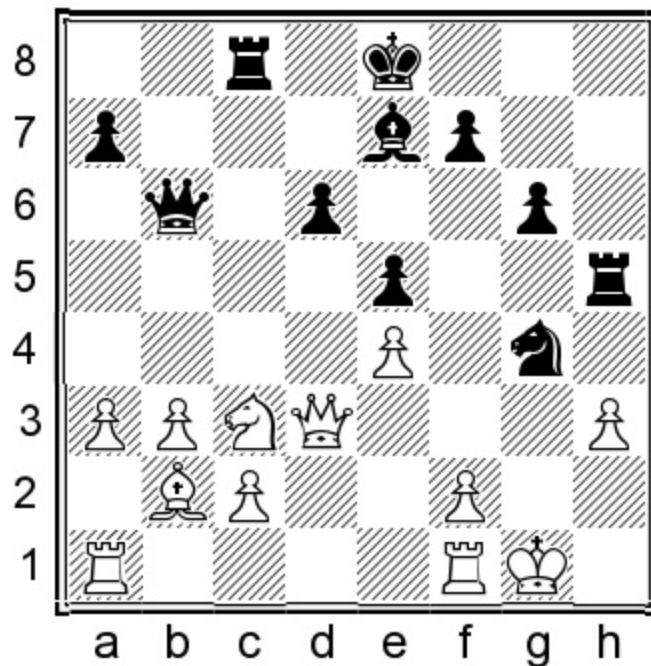
Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xf6! ♜xf6 [1... ♜xd2 2. ♜xe8+ ♜xe8 3. ♜xd2+-; 1... ♙xf6 2. ♜xd7 ♜xd7 3. ♜xd7+-]

2. ♙h6+! ♜g8 3. ♙xf7+! ♜xf7 4. ♜g5+ ♜g8 5. ♜c2! ♜c8 6. ♜b3+ ♜h8 7. ♜f7 ♜g8 8. ♜xf6+ ♙xf6
9. ♜f7#

[Rotariu-Vlad Corr, 1-0]

Exercise 63



1...?±

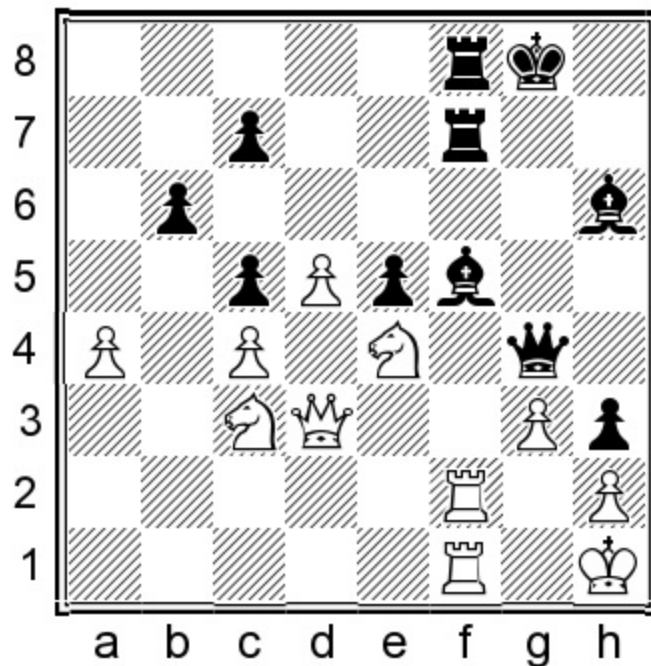
Show/Hide Solution

19...♖g5! 20.♚f3 [20.hxg4? ♜xg4+ 21.♔h2 ♔d7! 22.♚h3 f5! 23.♘d5 ♚b8 (23...♚d8–+) 24.♘xe7 ♜h8–+]

20...♘e3+! 21.♔h2 ♘xf1+ 22.♖xf1 ♚b7±

[Rublevsky,S-Varga,Z Kallithea 2002, 1/2]

Exercise 64



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

1...♔d2!! 2.♚xd2 [2.♖xf5 ♜xf5 3.♞xd2 ♜xf1+ 4.♞xf1 e4 (4...♚f3+ 5.♚xf3 ♜xf3-+) 5.♞xe4 ♚xe4+ 6.♚xe4 ♜xf1#]

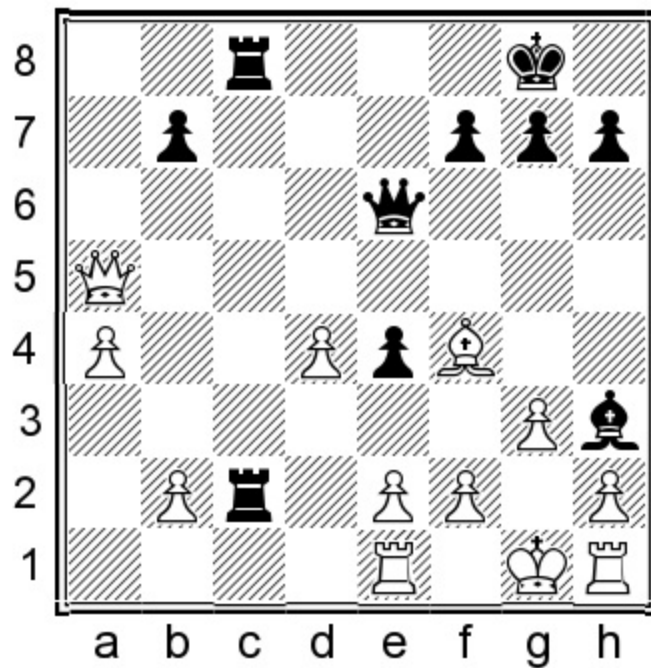
2...♔xe4+ 3.♞g1 [3.♞xe4 ♚xe4+ 4.♞g1 ♚g2+ 5.♖xg2 ♜xf1#]

3...♚xg3+! 4.hxg3 h2+-+ 5.♖xh2 [5.♞xh2 ♜h7+ 6.♞g1 ♜h1#]

5...♖xf1#

[Trubnikov-Radchenko Novorosijsk 1965, 0-1]

Exercise 65



1...? -+

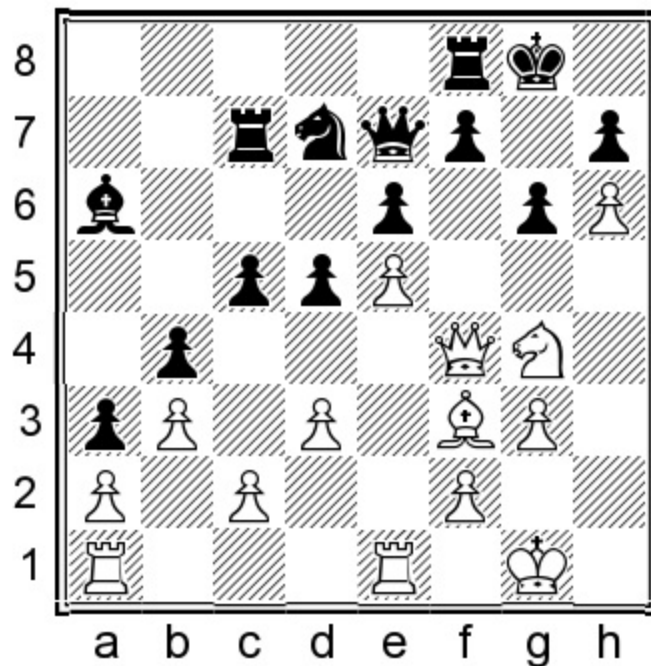
Show/Hide Solution

1...e3! 2.f3 [2...d5 ♖xe2!! 3.♖xe2 ♔xd5-+]

2...♖xe2!! 3.♖xe2 ♔a6!! 4.♔e1 ♔xe2-+

[Breitmann-Khasin Minsk 1950, 0-1]

Exercise 66



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

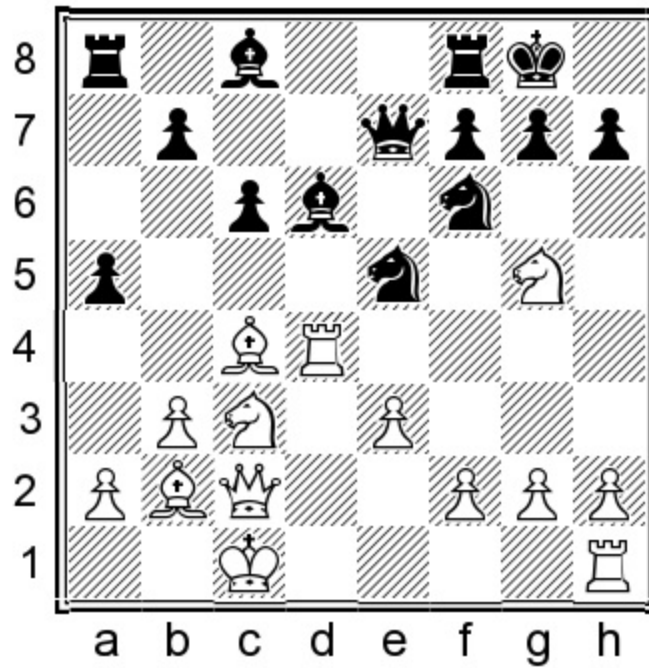
23. ♔xd5! exd5 24. e6! ♖b6 [24...fxe6 25. ♕xc7+-]

25. ♕xc7!! [25. ♖f6+ ♔h8 26. ♖d7+-]

25... ♕xc7 26. ♖f6+ ♔h8 27. e7 ♕b8 28. exf8=♕+ ♕xf8 29. ♖e8+-

[Lee, P-Radulov, I Sinaia 1965, 1-0]

Exercise 67



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1. ♖xd6! ♜xd6 2. ♘ce4! ♙xe4 [2... ♛e7 3. ♘xf6+ ♜xf6 4. ♛xh7#]

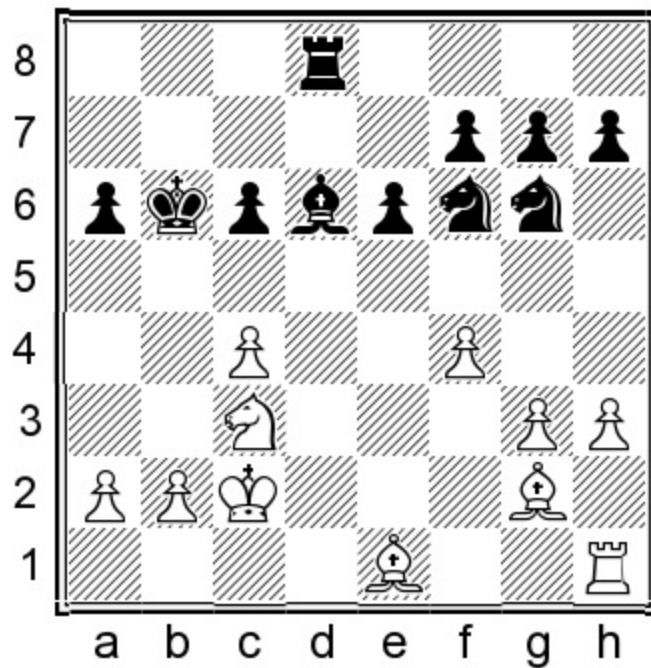
3. ♛xe4 ♘g6 [3... ♛g6 4. ♛xe5+-]

4. ♘xf7! ♖xf7 [4... ♛e7 5. ♘e5+]

5. ♛e8+ ♜f8 6. ♘xf7+ ♙h8 7. ♘xg6+-

[Petry-Bot, 1-0]

Exercise 68



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

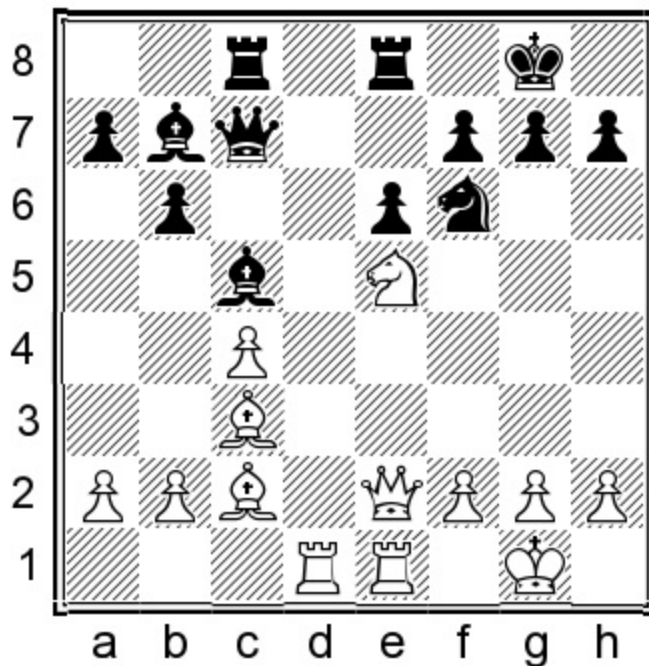
28.c5+! ♖xc5 [28...♗xc5? 29.♗f2+ ♖b4 30.a3+ ♗a5 31.b4+ ♗xb4 32.axb4+ ♗xb4 33.♞b1+ ♗c4 34.♗f1+ ♞d3 35.♗xd3#]

29.♘a4+ ♗b5 **30.♗b3!!** ♞d3+ **31.♗c3** ♞xc3+ [31...♘d5 32.♗f1+-]

32.♘xc3++-

[Karpov,A-Sergievsky,V Kuibyshev 1970, 1-0]

Exercise 69



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

18. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 [18... ♗xh7 19. ♖d7 ♚b8 20. ♖xf7 ♕f8 (20... ♗f6 21. ♖xf6 gxf6 22. ♚g4+-) 21. ♚h5 ♖c7 22. ♖xc7 ♚xc7 23. ♚xe8+-]

19. ♖d7! ♗xd7 [19... ♚b8 20. ♖xf7 ♖c7 21. ♚d3+ ♔g8 (21... ♕e4 22. ♖xe4) 22. ♚g6]

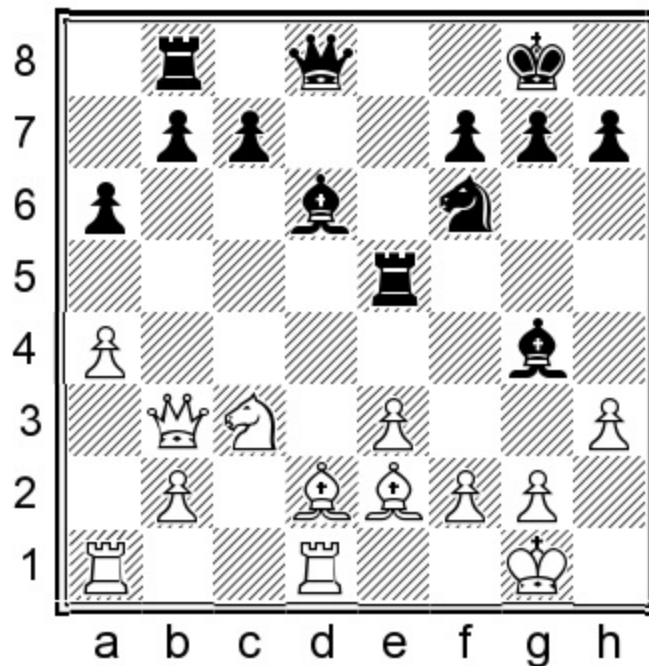
20. ♚h5+ ♔g8 **21. ♚xf7+** ♔h7 **22. ♗xd7** ♚xd7

[22... ♖e7 23. ♗f6+ ♔h8 24. ♚h5#]

23. ♚xd7+-

[Kots, Y-Riskin, M Sverdlovsk 1963, 1-0]

Exercise 70



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

15...♙xh3! 16.gxh3 ♖d7! 17.♙f1

[17.f4 ♖xh3 18.fxe5 ♙xe5 19.♙f3 ♖xf3 20.♙e1 ♖xe3+ 21.♙f2 ♖h3-+]

17...♞g5+ 18.♔h1 ♘g4!

[18...♖c6+!? 19.e4? (19.♘d5! ♞xd5 20.♙g2+) 19...♘xe4-+ 20.♘xe4 ♖xe4+ 21.f3 ♖e5 22.f4 ♖e4+ 23.♔h2 ♙xf4+ 24.♙xf4 ♖xf4+ 25.♔h1 ♖f2]

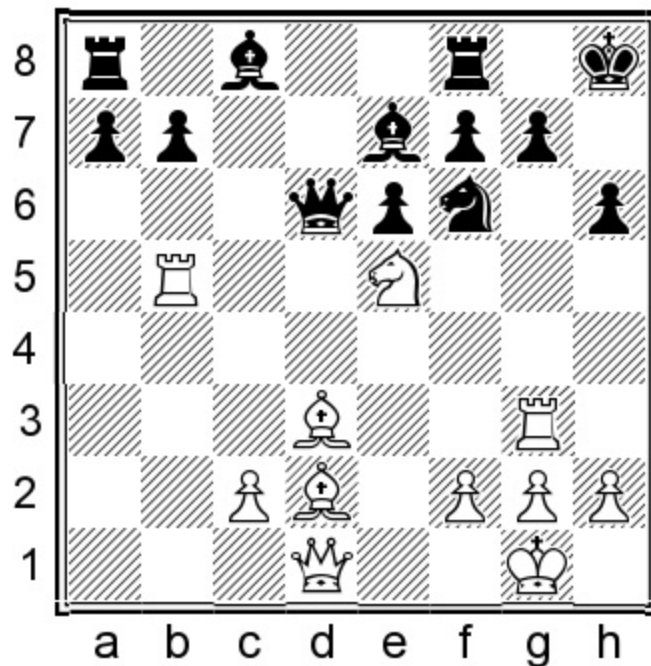
19.hxg4

[19.♙e1 ♘xf2+ 20.♙xf2 ♖f5 21.♖d5 ♖xf2 22.♙g2 ♖g3-+]

19...♖xg4-+

[Gilfer,E-Book,E Stockholm 1937, 0-1]

Exercise 71



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

19.♖xg7!!

[19.♔xh6 gxh6 20.♕d2 ♖g8 21.♗f4 f5 22.♘g6+ ♔h7 23.♙xf8+ ♕xf8 24.♗g4!+-]

19.♖xg7!! ♔xg7 20.♔xh6+! ♔g8

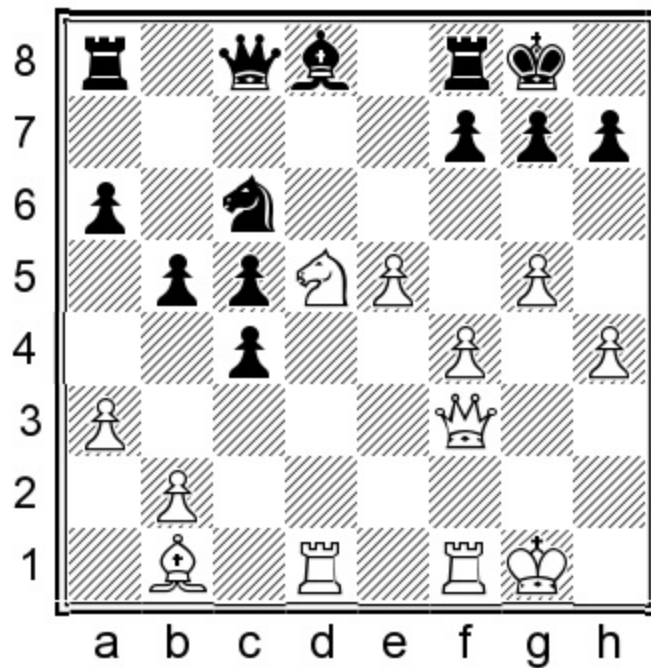
[20...♔xh6 21.♕d2+ ♔g7 22.♗g5+ ♔h8 23.♗h4+ (23.♗h6+ ♔g8 24.♘g4 ♕xd3 25.♙xf6+! ♕xf6 26.cxd3+-) 23...♔g7 24.♘g4+-; 20...♔h8 21.♕xf8 ♕xf8 22.♙xf7++-]

21.♗f3 ♖e8 22.♗g4+ ♔h8 23.♕g7+! [23.♕xf8!+-]

23...♙xg7 24.♗h3+ ♕h4 25.♗xh4+ ♖h5 26.♗xh5+ ♔g7 27.♗g5++-

[Richter,K-Alexandrescu,G Munich 1936, 1-0]

Exercise 72



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

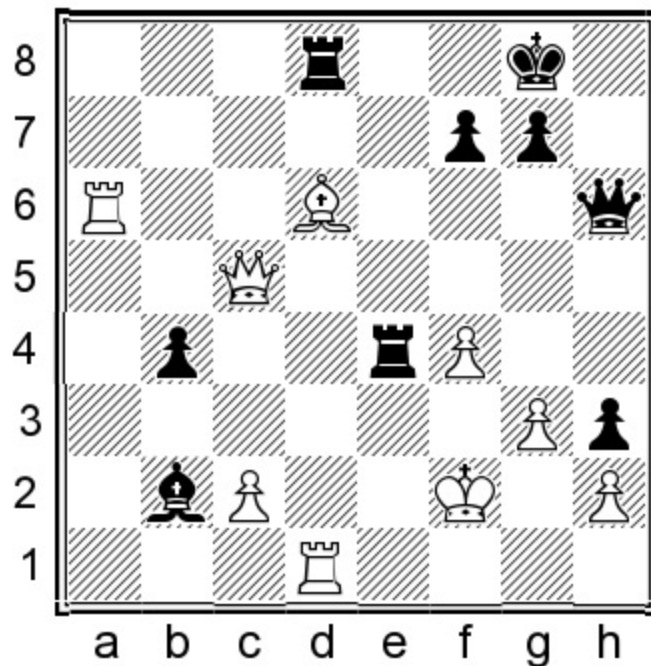
26. ♖xh7+! ♔xh7 27. ♘f6+! ♕xf6 [27...gxf6 28. ♖h5+ ♔g8 29. gxf6+-]

28. ♖h5+ ♔g8 29. gxf6! ♘xe5 [29...♖d8 30. ♖g5 g6 31. ♖h6 ♖g4+ 32. ♔f2+-]

30. fxe5 ♖e6 31. ♖g5 g6 32. ♖h6 ♖g4+ 33. ♔h2 ♖e2+ 34. ♔h3+-

[Zwaig,A-Martinez,G Havana 1966, 1-0]

Exercise 73



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

1.♙e5!! ♜xa6 2.♞xd8+ ♔h7 3.♞h8+!! ♔g6

[3...♔xh8 4.♞f8+ ♔h7 5.♞xg7#]

4.f5+ ♔g5 [4...♔xf5 5.♙xb2+-]

5.♞e7+! [5.♙xb2?? ♞e2+ 6.♔g1 ♞g2#]

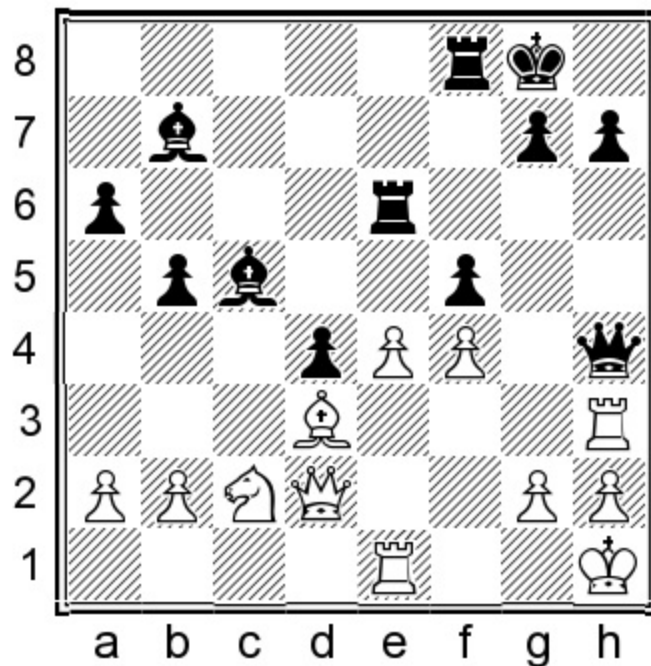
5...f6 [5...♔xf5 6.♞h5+]

6.♞h5+ [6.♞xg7+ ♔xf5 7.♞h5+ ♔e6 8.♞xf6+-]

6...♔xh5 7.♞f7+ ♔g4 8.♞g6#

[Werle-Lundin Stockholm 1969, 1-0]

Exercise 74



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

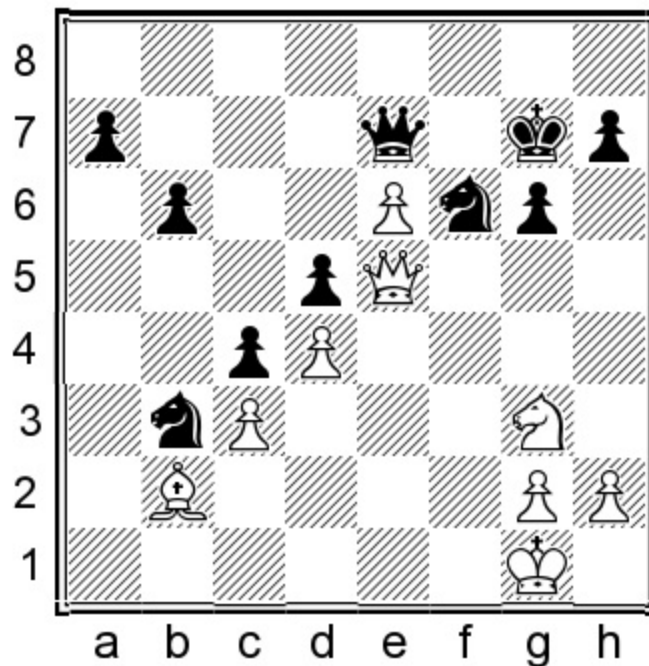
23...♖xh3! 24.gxh3 fxe4 25.♔g1

[25.♙xe4 ♜xe4! (25...♙xe4+ 26.♜xe4 ♜xe4+-) 26.♜xe4 ♙xe4+ 27.♔g1 d3+ 28.♘e3 ♜e8! 29.♔f1 ♙xe3 30.♖xe3 ♙g2+-+]

25...♜g6+ 26.♔f1 e3 27.♘e3 ♜xf4+-+

[Liashenko,A-Krasenkow,M Moscow 1985, 0-1]

Exercise 75



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

30. ♖a3! ♜xa3

[30... ♜e8 31. ♜c7+ ♔g8 (31... ♔h6 32. ♙e7 ♘g4 33. ♜f4+ ♔g7 34. ♜xg4 ♜xe7 35. ♘f5+-) 32. ♙e7 ♘g4 33. ♜d7+-; 30... ♜d8 31. ♘h5+ gxh5 32. ♜g5+ ♔h8 33. e7 ♜e8 34. ♜xf6+ ♔g8 35. ♜f8+-]

31. ♘h5+! gxh5

[31... ♔h6 32. ♘xf6 ♜c1+ 33. ♔f2 ♜d2+ 34. ♔g3 ♜xc3+ 35. ♔h4 ♜xd4+ 36. ♘g4+-]

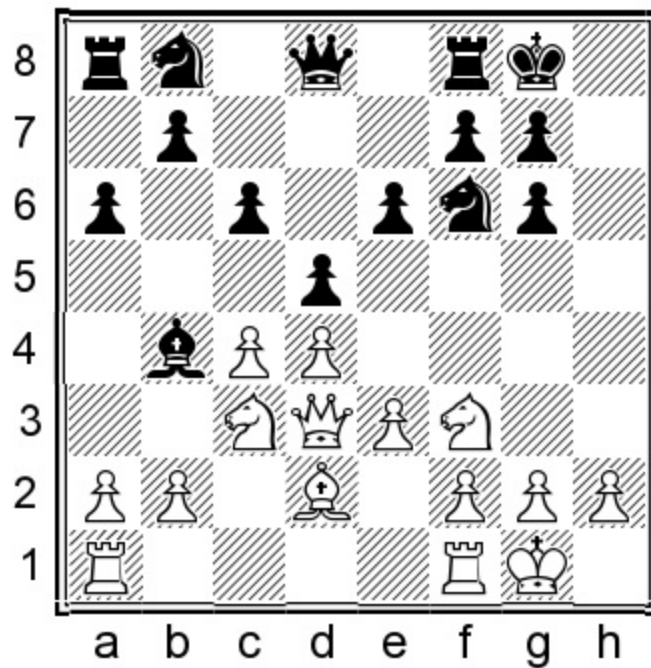
32. ♜g5+ ♔f8 33. ♜xf6+ ♔g8 34. e7 ♜c1+ 35. ♔f2 ♜c2+ 36. ♔g3 ♜d3+ 37. ♔h4 ♜e4+ 38. ♔xh5 ♜e2+

[38... ♜g6+? 39. ♜xg6+ hxg6+ 40. ♔xg6+-]

39. ♔h4 ♜e4+ 40. g4 ♜e1+ 41. ♔h5+-

[Botvinnik,M-Capablanca,J Netherlands 1938, 1-0]

Exercise 76



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

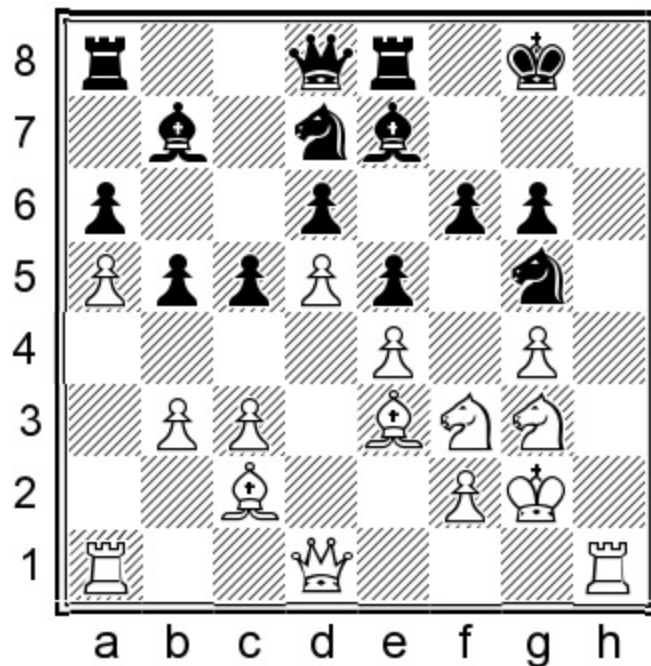
11. ♖xd5! ♜xd5 12. cxd5 ♙xd2 13. dxe6! ♙a5 14. exf7+ ♜xf7 15. ♜e5 ♜c7? [15... ♜e8 16. ♜xf7 ♜xf7 17. d5±]

16. e4 [16. ♜a3! ♜e7 17. f4+-]

16... ♜d7 17. ♜b3+ ♜h7 18. ♜h3+-

[Lysyj,I-Inarkiev,E Poikovsky 2015, 1-0]

Exercise 77



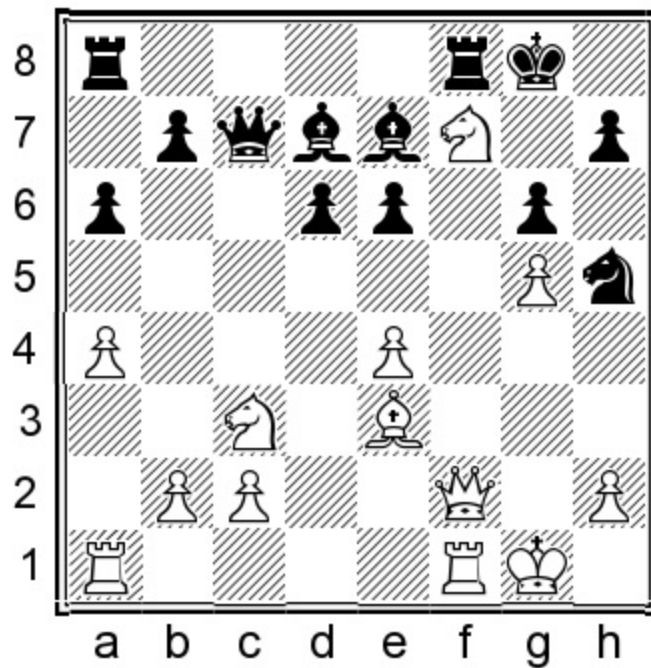
1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

29.♖h6 ♔g7 30.♜h4!! [30.♚h1 ♖h8 31.♖xh8 (31.♜h4!! ♖xh6 32.♜hf5+ gxf5 33.♜xf5+ ♔f7 34.♜xh6+!+-) 31...♚xh8 32.♚xh8+ ♖xh8 33.♜xg5 fxg5=]

30...♔xh6 31.♜hf5+! gxf5 32.♚h1+ ♔g7 33.♜xf5+ ♔g8 34.♚h6 ♕f8 35.♚g6+ ♔h8 36.♖h1+ +-
[Farahat,A-Melkumyan,H WTCC 2015, 1/2]

Exercise 78



1.? +-

Show/Hide Solution

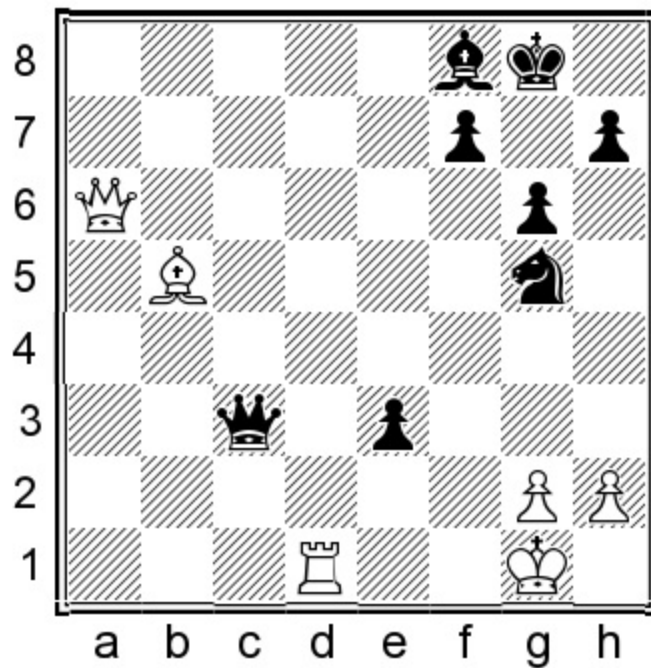
22. ♖d5! exd5 23. ♖h6+ ♔g7

[23... ♖h8 24. ♕d4+ ♕f6 25. ♗xf6+! (25. gxf6+-) 25... ♖xf6 26. ♖xf6 ♖xf6 27. ♕xf6#]

24. ♗f7+! ♖xf7 25. ♖xf7+ ♔h8 26. ♕d4+ ♕f6 27. ♖xf6!+-

[Geller,E-Anikaev,Y Minsk 1979, 1-0]

Exercise 79



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

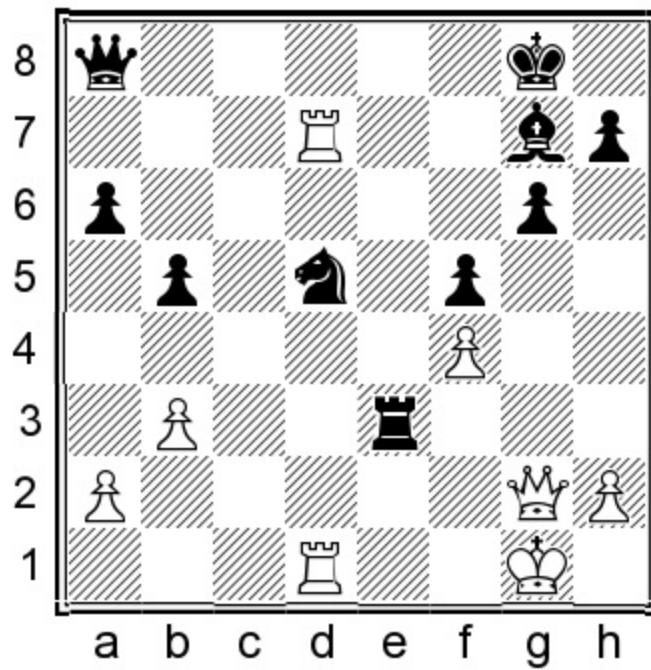
1...e2! 2.♙xe2 ♚e3+ 3.♔h1 [3.♔f1 ♘e4-+]

3...♘h3!! 4.gxh3 [4.♖f1 ♚g1+ 5.♗xg1 ♘f2#]

4...♚e4+ 5.♔g1 ♙c5+ 6.♗d4 ♙xd4+ 7.♔f1 ♚h1#

[Training position, 0-1]

Exercise 80



1...? -+

Show/Hide Solution

33...♙d4! 34.♖xd4 ♜e1+! 35.♚f1

[35.♙f2 ♜e2+ 36.♙xe2 ♞xf4+ 37.♖xf4 ♚xg2+-+]

35...♞e3!-+

[Krasenkow,M-Jobava,B Rijeka 2010, 0-1]

Table of Contents

Start

2